This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

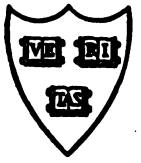
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

EduCT 918.49.163

JOHN PAUL

DISCE ET SAPI.

Harvard College
Library



By Exchange

3 2044 097 061 931

CLASSICAL & SCHOOL BOOKS.

ARNOLD.—A FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK

And Practical Grammar. By Thomas K. Arnold, A.M. Revised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. Spencer, A.M. One volume, 12mo., neatly bound, 75 cents.

☞ If preferred, the First Latin Book, or the Second Latin Book and Grammar can be had separately. Price 50 cents each.

The chief object of this work (which is founded on the principles of imitation and frequent repetition) is to enable the pupil to do exercises from the first day of his beginning his accidence

ARNOLD.—LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION:

A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. By Thomas K. Arnold, A.M. Revised and Corrected by J. A. Spencer, A.M. One volume, 12mo., neatly bound, $1,00.

This work is also founded on the principles of imitation and frequent repetition. It is at once a Syntax, a Vocabulary, and an Exercise Book; and considerable attention has been paid to the subject of Synonymes.

ARNOLD.—A FIRST GREEK BOOK;

With Easy Exercises and Vocabulary. By Thomas K. Arnold, A.M. Revised and Corrected by J. A. Spencer, A.M. 12mo. 62½ cts.

ARNOLD.—GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION:

A Practical introduction to Greek Prose Composition. By Thomas K Arnold, A.M Revised and Corrected by J. A. Spencer, A.M. One volume, 12mo. 75c.

This work consists of a Greek Syntax, founded on Buttmann's, and Easy Sentences translated into Greek, after given Examples, and with given Words.

ARNOLD.—A GREEK READING BOOK;

Including a Complete Treatise on the Greek Particles. By Thomas K. Arnold, A.M Revised by J. A. Spencer, A.M. One volume, 12mo.

ARNOLD.—CORNELIUS NEPOS;

With Practical Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. By Thomas K. Arnold, A.M. Revised, with Additional Notes, by Prof. John Anthon, Professor of the Latin Language in the University of the City of New-York One neat volume, 12mo. 62½ cts.

"ARNOLD'S GREEK AND LATIN SERIES.—The publication of this valuable collection of classical school books may be regarded as the presage of better things in respect to the mode of teaching and acquiring languages. Heretofore boys have been condemned to the drudgery of going over Latin and Greek Grammar without the remotest conception of the value of what they were learning, and every day becoming more and more disgusted with the dry and unmeaning task; but now, by Mr. Arnold's admirable method—substantially the same with that of Ollendorff—the moment they take up the study of Latin or Greek, they begin to learn sentences, to acquire ideas to see how the Romans and Greeks expressed themselves, how their mode of expression differed from ours, and by degrees they lay up a stock of knowledge which is utterly astonishing to those who have dragged on month after month in the old-fashioned, dry, and tedious way of learning languages.

"Mr. Arnold, in fact, has had the good sense to adopt the system of nature. A child learns his own language by *imitating* what he hears, and constantly *repeating* it till it is fastened in the memory; in the same way Mr. A. puts the pupil immediately to work at Exercises in Latin and Greek, involving the elementary principles of the language—words are supplied—the mode of putting them together is told the pupil—he is shown how the ancients expressed their ideas; and then, by repeating these things again and again—*iterum iterumque*—the docile pupil has them indelibly impressed upon his memory and rooted in his understanding.

"The American editor is a thorough classical scholar, and has been a practical teacher for years in this city He has devoted the utmost care to a complete revision of Mr. Arnold's works has corrected several errors of inadvertence or otherwise, has rearranged and improved various matters in the early volumes of the series, and has attended most diligently to the accurate printing and mechanical execution of the whole. We anticipate most confidently the speedy adoption of these works in our schools and colleges."—*Cour. & Enq.*

☞ Arnold's Series of Classical Works has attained a circulation almost unparalleled in England being introduced into nearly all the great Public Schools and leading Educational Institutions They are also very highly recommended by some of the best American Scholars, for introduction into the Classical Schools of the United States. They are already used in the University of the City of New-York, Rutger's Female Institute, N. Y.; Union College, Schenectady; Mt St Mary's College, Md.; Yale College, New-Haven, and numerous large schools throughout the States

ARNOLD'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

OPINIONS OF SCHOLARS.

PRINCETON, December 3, 1846.

GENTLEMEN,—In reply to your letter, I have to say that I can, from the most satisfactory experience, bear testimony to the excellence of your series of Text Books for Schools. I am in the daily use of Arnold's Latin and Greek Exercises, and consider them decidedly superior to any other Elementary Works in those Languages. LYMAN COLEMAN, D., D.,
Prof. of the German, Greek, and Latin Languages.

DEAR SIR,—I am much pleased with *Arnold's Latin Books*. A class of my older boys have just finished the first and second books. They had studied Latin for a long time before but never *understood* it, they say, as they do now. CHAS. M. BLAKE,
Classical Teacher in Brown's Prince-street Academy, Philadelphia.

ARNOLD'S LESSONS in Latin I find unsurpassed; and, if the Greek Lessons by the same author shall prove as useful, they will form the commencement of a new era in the study of the classics in this country. I wish you abundant success in so noble an enterprise as furnishing our schools and scholars with such valuable books. SETH DAVIS,
Rector of Zion's Church, Rome.

ARNOLD'S LATIN AND GREEK COMPOSITION. In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the Ancient Languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an *interest* in the study of language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste. N. WHEELER,
Principal Worcester County High School.

MESSRS. APPLETON: PENN. COLLEGE, GETTYSBURG, Oct. 29, 1846.

Dear Sirs,—The friends of education are under great obligations to you for the valuable service you have rendered by the recent publication of Arnold's Cornelius Nepos. I have examined the edition with much interest, and it gives me pleasure to say that I highly approve of it. A text-book prepared by a man so distinguished for scholarship, experience, and success in teaching, as Dr. Arnold, cannot fail to secure universal favor. The mechanical execution, and the great accuracy which prevails throughout, are highly creditable to the American editor and the publisher.

I have determined to introduce the edition at once into the Academical Department of Pennsylvania College, and have accordingly directed our book merchants to procure copies.

Respectfully, yours,
M. L. STOERER, A. M.,
Prof. of History in Pennsylvania College, and Principal of the Academical Department.

MESSRS. APPLETON & CO.: OAKLAND HIGH SCHOOL, April 28, 1846.

Gentlemen,—I acknowledge with many thanks the receipt of T. K. Arnold's First and Second Latin Book, and his Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. The style in which the books are got up is not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction, on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to begin I have little doubt of the result of the experiment. Very respectfully,
A. B. RUSSELL.

Extract from a Report of an Examination of the Male Department of the Parochial School of St. Paul's Church, Rome, N. Y., on Friday, March 26, 1847.

* * * * "But were we to single out any part of the examination as worthy of special notice we would be that upon "Arnold's First Book in Latin." Many an Academician, who has studied Latin in the ordinary way for two years, could not sustain an examination as did the lads of this class, who have studied Arnold's First Lessons only about six months. Arnold's method is admirable for making *thorough* scholars and accurate grammarians; but then it needs a thorough and industrious teacher to use it to advantage. Such, evidently, is Mr. Platt. He has not been content to put his pupils upon *writing out* the exercises, but they have been required to commit thoroughly to memory the vocabulary of words in each lesson, beginning with nouns and verbs; and as soon as they have learned the words they begin to make sentences. They learn occasionally a declension, and immediately are made to put it to use by composing sentences that require the cases of that declension A similar method was pursued in English Grammar and in the French"

FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK

AND

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.

BY

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M. A.,

AUTHOR OF LATIN AND GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION, ETC.

CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.

TENTH EDITION, REVISED.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON & CO., 200 BROADWAY.

PHILADELPHIA:
G. S. APPLETON, 164 CHESNUT-STREET.

M DCCC XLIX.

Educ. T 918.49.163
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
BY EXCHANGE
JAN 8 1937

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by

D. APPLETON & COMPANY,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New York.

A

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

BY

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M. A.,

RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.

TENTH AMERICAN,
FROM THE FIFTH LONDON EDITION.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON & CO., 200 BROADWAY.
PHILADELPHIA:
G. S. APPLETON, 164 CHESNUT-STREET.

M DCCC XLIX.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by

D. APPLETON & COMPANY

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New York

PREFACE.

THE valuable introductory work now presented to the American public is the first of a series of Classical school books, on the basis of OLLENDORFF'S much and justly admired system. *Imitation* and *frequent repetition*—which are the means by which every child learns his own language—are herein constantly acted upon; and the intelligent pupil is led by natural, and therefore easy steps, into an acquaintance with the structure and many of the peculiarities of the language of the old Romans.

The First Part, or First Latin Book, has obtained high and almost unprecedented reputation in England; it has gone through five editions in as many years; it is recommended by the Oxford Diocesan Board of Education, and adopted by the National Society's Training College at Chelsea, and is admirably adapted, both in design and execution, to the wants of beginners in the Latin language. The Second Part, or Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar, is intended as a sequel to the former Part, and carries the learner on, by a series of Exercises in translating both into Latin and into English, through some of the principal difficulties of the Latin tongue.

The American Editor has not found it necessary to make any material alteration in the original work. The title of the First Part was "Henry's First Latin Book," in imitation of "Mary's Grammar." This title has been changed

by the omission of the first word. The Editor has confined himself principally to a thorough revision of Mr. Arnold's labors; to such necessary changes as the union of the two parts into one volume required; to the addition of a few explanatory notes; an enlargement and improvement of the Latin and English vocabularies, and the correction of occasional errors of inadvertence or of typography.

Under the strong conviction that school books, above all others, should be accurately printed, the Editor has bestowed special care upon this point; and he trusts that the present volume will be found free from even trifling errors of the press.

NEW YORK, *January* 15, 1846

PREFACE

TO THE FIFTH AMERICAN EDITION.

In announcing a fifth edition of the First and Second Latin Book, the Editor very gladly embraces the opportunity afforded him, of briefly stating what changes and improvements have been made, in order to render the work more worthy of the unprecedented success which it has met with. At the suggestion of several eminent practical teachers, the matter formerly in the Appendix, and introductory to the Exercises in the Second Latin Book, has been entirely rearranged, considerably augmented, and put into a shape better suited to the purposes of those who wish to use the Second Latin Book instead of an ordinary Grammar. There has also been added a carefully drawn up Synopsis of Latin Syntax, which may be used to peculiar advantage in drilling boys in the Exercises and Reading Lessons. The Editor indulges the hope that these changes and additions will meet the approbation of classical teachers.

J. A. S.

New York, *May* 22, 1847.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

LESSON		PAGE
1.	On forming the accusative case	15
2.	On forming the 3d pers. sing. of three tenses in 1st conjugation	18
3.	——— in 2d conjugation	19
4	——— in 3d conjugation	20
5.	——— in 4th conjugation	21
6	——— in the four conjugations	22
7.	Adjectives in *us, er*	23
8.	Terminations of the Genitive sing	25
9.	Genitive of *price*	26
10.	Omission of '*man*,' '*thing*'	27
11.	On the formation of the *perfect*	28
12.	Gen. with neut. adjective	29
13.	Infinitive. Gen. with *est*	31
14.	Acc. Plural	32
15.	Dative and Ablative singular. *Time. Place*	33
16.	Adjectives in *is*	34
17.	On the perfect of the 3d Conjugation. Verbs whose root ends in *p* or *b*	35
18.	Terminations of the 3d plural	36
19.	Of the nom. and gen. plural	37
20.	On finding the nom. of the 3d Declension	38
21.	*Nē* with imperatives	40
22.	On the perf. of Verbs whose root ends in *c, g,* or *q*	41
23.	——— *d* or *t*. Dat. and Abl. plur.	42
24.	Root of the perf. with lengthened (and often changed) vowel	44

LESSON		PAGE
25.	Abl. of price	45
26.	On distinguishing root of perf. from root of present	46
27.	The personal pronouns. Apposition	48
28.	Nominative after *est*, &c. Some tenses of *esse*	49
29.	The compounds of *esse*	51
30.	Tenses of the *subjunctive*	52
31.	English infinitive expressing a *purpose*	52
32.	*That* expressing a *consequence* after *such*, *so*, &c. *Summus mons*, &c.	54
33.	Some tenses of *posse*. Interrogative Particles	55
34.	Root of *supine*	57
35.	The Participles	59
36.	Translation of the participle of the perf. active. The ablative absolute	60
37.	The Gerunds. *Occidĕre* declined	62
38.	The participle in *dus*. *Epistŏla scribenda*	64
39.	Translation of '*is to be* cultivated,' &c. Agent after the participle in *dus*	65
40.	Verbs that govern the dative	67
41.	Terminations of the *persons*	68
42.	The pronoun '*is*.' Conditional Sentences	70
43.	*Scribendum est mihi*	71
44.	Subj. pres. and imperf. of *esse*	72
45.	*Credendum est Caio*	73
46.	*Colenda est virtus*	74
47.	The Infinitive Mood	76
48.	Passive Forms	78
49.	*Qui*, *quæ*, *quod*. *Mihi creditur*, &c	80
50.	Deponent Verbs	81
51.	The Comparative and Superlative	83
52.	Prepositions	84
53.	Translation of '*may*,' '*might*'	86
54.	Translation of '*ought*'	87
55.	Ablative denoting the measure of excess or defect. *Quo—eo*; *quanto—tanto*	89
56.	*Quo*	90

LESSON		PAGE
57.	*Pœnitet, pudet*, &c.	91
58.	*Et—et ; quum—tum*, &c	93
59.	*Aut ; vel ; sive* (*seu*,) &c	94
60.	*At, sed, tamen*, &c., (adversatives)	95
61.	*Nam, igitur*, &c., (causals)	95
62.	*Ut*	96
63.	*Nē*	97
64.	*Quin*	98
65.	*Quominus*	99
66.	Vereor *ne ;* vereor *ut*	100
67.	Interrogatives	101
68.	———— in dependent sentences	101
69.	Double questions	102
70.	Conjunctions that always take subj	103
71—78.	On participles	104—110
	QUESTIONS	111
	DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM	115

A FEW REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

THE Latin being a *dead* (that is, an *unspoken*) language, it is not known how the Romans pronounced it. Hence every modern tongue adapts the pronunciation of Latin to its own peculiarities. In English, we follow the analogy or custom of the English language in respect to the sound of the vowels and the position of the accents; therefore—

1. The accent or stress of the voice is *always* on the *penultimate*, (the last syllable but one,) or the *antepenultimate*, (the last syllable but two,) as hom'o, tem'poris, dat'um, agric'ola, &c.

2. In words of more than two syllables, if the penultimate is *long*, the stress is upon it; if *short*, it is on the *antepenultimate*; as radī'cis, con'sŭlis, humā'nus, &c.

3. Every vowel has either a long or a short sound; as hōmĭnēs, fāmă, ămīcŭs, ămīcī, pŏpŭlōs, vērŭs, tūtŭs, tūtēlă, Cæsăr, rĕgĕrĕ, dĕcŏrĭs.

4. Monosyllables ending in a vowel have the *long* sound, as dă, mĕ, sĭ, dŏ, tă; otherwise, the *short* sound, as ăc, sĕd, ĭn, ŏb, hŭc.

5. When a vowel comes before or between two consonants, it has the *short* sound, though in fact *long* by its position; as ăn'nus, pĕn'nă, pĭg'nŭs, lŏn'gus, &c.

6. *E* final is never *e mute*; in other words, it always *constitutes a syllable* with a preceding consonant or consonants; as ma-re, gran-de, es-se, a-bī-re, a-cū-te, vī-ce.

7. *C* and *G* are *soft* (that is, pronounced like *s*, *j*) respectively before *e*, *æ*, *œ*, and *i*: as cĕră, cœlŭm, cĭs, gĕrŏ, gĭgnŏ, &c. In other cases they are *hard*, (i. e. have the sound of *k* and *g* hard,) as căp'ră, gŭbernā'tŏr, cōgo, Gallus, &c.

8. *Qu*, *gu* are pronounced respectively like *kw*, *gw*; as ăntĭquus = *antikwus*: sanguis = *sangwis*.

OBSERVATIONS.

Numerals above the line refer to the *Questions* when they are followed by a *curve*; to the *Table of Differences*, when not.

Two or more words connected together by a hyphen show that they are to be rendered into Latin by one word; as "natural-to-man." *humanus*; the-space-of-two-years," *biennium*; it-is, *est*, &c.

LATIN LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

Words in *Italics*, in an exercise, are phrases that are either not to be translated word for word; or about which something has been taught that should be remembered.

Lesson 1.

1. WHERE *we* in English put a preposition before a noun, the Romans often used *no preposition*, but changed the *end* of the word.

2. Thus, '*mensa*' being '*a table*;' 'mensæ' is 'OF *a table*;' 'mensâ' 'BY *a table*,' and so on.

3. A word so altered is called *a case* of that word; thus *mensæ* is called the *genitive case* of *mensa;* and so on.

4. The unaltered word is said to be in the *nominative case*, though it is not strictly a case.

5. All nouns do not form their cases exactly in the same way.

As there are five principal ways of forming the cases of a noun, nouns are divided into *five classes*, each class being called a *declension*.

6. (*a*) Nouns that end in *a* and make their genitive in *æ*, are of the *first declension.*

(*b*) Nouns that end in *us*, *er*, *um*, and make their genitives in *i*, are of the *second declension.*

(*c*) Nouns in *us* that make their genitive in *ûs*, and all nouns in *u*, are of the *fourth declension.*

(*d*) Nouns that end in *es* and make their genitive in *ei*, are of the *fifth declension.*

(*e*) Nouns with *any ending* not set down as belonging to the other declensions, and those *with* an ending belonging to some other declension but with a *genitive* in '*is*,' belong to the *third declension.*[a]

7. On the ACCUSATIVE case.

The *accusative* is the case that follows *transitive* verbs, and many *prepositions.*

8. A transitive verb is one that gives no *complete* meaning, till some person or thing is mentioned *to whom* or *which* the action was done.

He struck—(struck what?) the dog. He killed—(killed whom?) the blacksmith.

9. The following are the *accusative* endings of the five declensions for the singular number.

1.	2. 4.	3. 5.
am	um	em

But ☞ If a noun is *neuter*, its accusative is the *unaltered word.*[b]

10. These endings are to be added to the *word*, after the endings of the nominative, as set down in the table,

[a] TABLE OF THE DECLENSIONS

Nouns that end in	Genitive		
a	æ	are of the first	Declension.
us, er, um	i	. . second	
us, u	ûs*	. . fourth	
es	ei	. . fifth	
Those with *any other* ending, (or with these if their gen. end in 'is'),	is	. . third	

[b] In English all *things* are *neuter*; but in Latin the names of *things* are some *masculine*, some *feminine*, some *neuter*. Hence in Latin, *gender*, as belonging to *things*, has nothing to do with *sex.*

* In Latin grammars it has always heretofore been asserted that nouns of the fourth declension ending in *u*, are indeclinable in the singular. The latest results, however, of the labors of German scholars seem to have settled that *cornu* has the genitive *cornûs*, and that all nouns ending in *u* have the regular genitive of the fourth declension, in *ûs*. Hence Mr. Arnold uniformly gives this as the correct form. For a full discussion of this point consult the *Preface to Freund's Latin Dictionary.*—AM. ED.

in 6, note a,) are thrown away. But to this table there are two exceptions:—

(1) The *case-endings* (or '*terminations*') of nouns of the second in *er*, are added on thus: *e* is *dropped*, and the termination then added on to the *r*. Thus *ager*, *agr-*, Acc. agr-um. (Sometimes, however, the *e* is kept; as *puer*, Acc. puer-um.)

(2) The *terminations* of the *third* are added on to *some form* that is *generally not found* in the *nominative*. Thus they are added on to *lapid*, the nominative being *lapis*.

(3) The *root*, or form to which the terminations of the *third* declension are to be added, is to be got from the genitive by throwing away '*is*.'

☞ Let the learner here turn to the Accidence, p. 128, where are examples of a noun in every declension given out in full; and let him master these thoroughly before proceeding further.

Exercise 1.

[Obs. *m.*, *f.*, *n.*, stand for *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*. *G.* stands for *genitive*.]

11 Determine of what declension each of the following words is, and write down its accusative case.

Vocabulary 1.

		Key-words.*
Crown,	corōna	(*coronation.*)
Island,	insŭla	(*insular.*)
Friend,	amīcus, *G.* amici	(*amicable.*)
Umpire,	arbĭter, *G.* arbitr-i	(*arbitration.*)
Leaf,	folium, *G.* folii	(*foliage.*)
Garden,	hortus, *G.* horti	(*horticulture.*)
Law,	lex, *G.* lēg-is	(*legal.*)
Chariot,	currus, *G.* currûs	(*curricle.*)
Face,	facies, *G.* faciēi.	
Dust,	pulvis, *G.* pulvĕr-is	(*pulverize.*)
Time,	tempus, *G.* tempŏr-is, neuter	(*temporal.*)
Oak,	quercus, *G.* quercûs.	
Horn,	cornu	(*cornucopia.*)

* That is, English words that are derived from the Latin words, and may serve as a *key* or help to their meaning.

Lesson 2.

12. The *persons* of the Latin verb are distinguished by their *endings*, (as think-*est* and think-*s* are in English.) But in Latin *all* the persons have different endings; and the pronouns *I*, *thou*, &c., is generally *left out*, because the *ending* of the verb *tells* which person is meant.

(*Verbs whose infinitives end in* are.)

13. By throwing off *are* you get the root.

14. By adding *at* to the root you get the third person singular of the *present* tense: by adding *abat*, the third person singular of the *imperfect* tense: by adding *abit*, the third person singular of the *future* tense.

(*a*) Amāre, *to love:* root *am*.
am-*ăt*, *loves; is loving;* or *does love*.
am-*ābăt*, *was loving*.
am-*ābĭt*, *will love*.

15. Vocabulary 2.

		Key-words.
To praise,	laud-āre	(*laudatory.*)
To swear,	jūr-āre	(ad-*jure.*)
To plough,	ār-āre	(*arable.*)
To dance,	salt-āre.	
To avoid,	vīt-āre	(in-e-*vitable.*)
To build,	ædĭf'ĭc-āre	(*edification.*)*
Husbandman,	agricŏla.	
Wall,	mūrus, i	(*a mural* crown.)†
Death,	mors, *G.* mort-is	(*mortal.*)
Boy,	puer, *G.* pŭĕri (keeps *e*)—	(*puerile.*)
Way; road,	via	(de-*vious.*)
To show, *or* point out,	monstr-āre	(de-*monstrate.*)
Dragon,	draco, *G.* dracōn-is.	
Voice,	vox, *G.* vōc-is	(*vocal.*)
Fox,	vulpes, *G.* vulp-is.	
Not,	non, (before the verb.)	

Model sentence. (Obs. in the Latin order of words, the accusative is placed *before* the verb.)

16. Servius imperium administrat.
Servius (the) *government* *administers*.

17. ☞ The Latin language has no *article*.[d]

---

* This word means '*the building* a man *up*' in religious knowledge and practice: *building* on the *foundation of faith*.

† A crown given to the soldier who first mounted the *walls* of a besieged city.

d That is, no word for *a* or *the*.

Exercise 2.

18. [Order: Nom. Acc. Verb.]

Balbus[a] is-building a wall. The boy shows the road. Caius will build a wall. The boy will show the road. The husbandman will plough. Caius was ploughing. Caius will praise the boy. The boy will avoid death. He was swearing. The boy dances. The boy will dance. The girl was dancing. The boy will avoid the fox. The fox was avoiding the boy.

☞ When there is a '*not*,' the present with '*does*' must be used: and the auxiliary verb (*does*, *will*, *shall*, &c.) must stand before the '*not*,' as, "he does not praise the boy."

Puer mur*um* ædific*ābat*. Caius puell*am* laud*at*. Balbus jur*ābit*. Agricŏla ar*at*. Balbus puerum vit*ābat*. Puer mort*em* vit*ābit*. Puer*um* non laud*at*.

laudat, saltabat, laudabat; jurat, ædificabit, vitat, saltabat, vitabit, vitabat; laudabit, saltat, jurat, jurat, monstrabat, arabit; monstrat, ædificat, vitabit.

Lesson 3.

(*Verbs whose infinitive ends in* ēre.)

19. Vocabulary 3.

		Key-words.
To fear,	tĭm-ēre	(*timid.*)
To see,	vĭd-ēre	(pro-*vide.*)
To laugh, / To laugh-at,	rĭd-ēre	(de-*ride.*)
To hold,	tĕn-ēre	(a *ten*-ant.)
To frighten,	terr-ēre	(*terri*-fy.)
To teach,	dŏc-ēre	(*doc*-tor.)

20. The *root* is got by throwing off *ēre*.

21. The endings of the third persons singular are,

(*pres.*)	(*imperf.*)	(*fut.*)
et,	ēbat,	ēbit.

---

[a] *Balbus* and *Caius* are the Latin names. Gen. *Balbi*, *Caii*.

Exercise 3.

22. A Christian does not fear death. The boy will fear the dragon. The voice will frighten the boy. The boy was holding the fox. The boy will hold the dragon. Balbus was laughing-at the boy. He was building a wall. Caius will plough. He swears. A Christian will not fear death. Balbus was showing the way.

timet, ridēbit, terrēbat; tenet, videt, vidēbit.
ridēbat, tenēbat, timet; timēbit, terret, timēbat.

Puer vulp*em* non tim*et*. Draco puer*um* terr*ēbit*. Balbus draconem tenēbat. Puella viam monstrābat. Puer puell*am* rid*et*. Caius puer*um* docēbat.

Lesson 4.

(*Verbs whose infinitive ends in* ĕre.)

23. VOCABULARY 4

		KEY-WORDS.
To neglect, disregard,	neglĭg-ĕre	(*negligent.*)
To shut,	claud-ĕre.	
To write,	scrīb-ĕre	(de-*scribe.*)
To slay,	occīd-ĕre.	
To learn,	disc-ere.	
To lead,	dūc-ĕre	(ad-*duce.*)
Gate,	porta	(*porter.*)
Letter,	epistola	(*epistle.*)
Slave,	servus	(*servile.*)
Master,	dŏmĭnus	(*domineer.*)

24. The root is got by throwing off *ĕre*, and the terminations of the third persons singular are,

(*pres.*)	(*imperf.*)	(*fut.*)
it,	ēbat,	et.

Exercise 4.

25. The slave will shut the gate. The girl was writing a letter. Balbus disregards the voice. The boy will learn. Caius was learning. The girl will show the garden. The master will praise (his) slave.

The slave was showing the way. The slave will not fear death. The slave will plough.

discit, claudit, claudēbat; neglĭget, scribit, scribet, claudet, discēbat, scribet; occīdit, discet, ducit.

Servus domin*um* occīd*it*. Puer disc*ēbat*. Servus port*am* claud*ēbat*. Epistŏl*am* scrib*et*. Jurā*bit*. Pu ella puer*um* laud*ābat*. Puella mort*em* vitā*bit*. Puer vulp*em* non timē*bit*. Christianus mort*em* non tim*et*

Lesson 5.

(*Verbs whose infinitive ends in* ire.)

26. VOCABULARY 5.

To hear,	aud-īre	(*audi*-ble.)
To feel, To perceive,	sent-īre	(pre-*senti*-ment.)
To open, To uncover,	apĕr-īre	
To bind,	vinc-īre.	
Pain, Sorrow,	dolor, *G.* dolōr-is, *masc.*	(*dolor*-ous.)
Head,	caput, *G.* capĭt-is, *neut.*	(*capit*-al.)

27. The root is got by throwing away *ire*, and the endings of the third persons singular are,

(*pres.*)	(*imperf.*)	(*fut.*)
it,	iēbat,	iet.

Exercise 5.

28. The boy hears a voice. Balbus will feel pain. The slave uncovers his head. The girl will open the letter. Balbus will bind (his*) head. Caius will hear the voice. Caius was uncovering (his) head. Balbus will write the letter. The master neglects (his) slave.

vinciebat, sentiet, audiet; sentit, audiebat, aperit, audit, aperiebat, sentiet; vincit, audit, sentiebat.

Puer caput vinci*ēbat*. Balbus voc*em* aud*iet*. Caius dolōr*em* vitābit. Puella dolōr*em* senti*ēbat*. Servus epistŏlam scribēbat. Caius servum laudābat. Servus murum ædifĭcat. Servus currum monstrābit.

---

* Not to be translated.

Lesson 6.

29 The forms we have now gone through are the four classes (or *conjugations* as they are called) of verbs. They are distinguished by the endings of the infinitive mood.*

30. (*a*) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *āre*, are of the *first* conjugation, and their favorite vowel is *long a*.

(*b*) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ēre*, are of the *second* conjugation, and their favorite vowel is *long e*.

(*c*) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ĕre*, are of the *third* conjugation, and their favorite vowels are *short e* and *short i*.

(*d*) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *īre*, are of the *fourth* conjugation, and their favorite vowel is *long i*.

31. Terminations of the Infinitive.

	1 conjug. (*favorite vowel* ā)	2 conjug. (*fav. vowel* ē)	3 conjug. (*fav. vowels* ĕ, ĭ)	4 conjug. (*fav. vowel* ī.)
Infin.:—	āre	ēre	ĕre	īre

32. Third persons of three tenses.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Present,	ăt	ĕt	ĭt	ĭt
Imperf.,	ābăt	ēbăt	ēbăt	iēbăt
Future,	ābĭt	ēbĭt	ĕt	iĕt

33. Vocabulary 6.

To fight,	pugn-āre	(*pugn*-acious.)
To sing,	cant-āre	(*canto*.)
To play,	lūd-ēre	(de-*lude*.)
To cry out,	clām-āre	(*clam*-or.)
To answer,	respond-ēre	(*respond*.)
To sin,	pecc-āre	(*pecc*-ant.)
To run,	curr-ĕre	(*curr* icle.)
To hope for,	spērāre	(de-*sper*-ate.)

* See Accidence, p. 155, where a verb in each conjugation is given in full through all the moods and tenses.

Exercise 6.

34. The girl sings. The boy was singing. The slave will play. The slave was crying-out. The boy will answer. Balbus will laugh. The husbandman was not ploughing. Caius is ploughing. Balbus will not answer. The boy will sin. The slave will fight. The master was praising (his) slave. The boy will run. The girl was running.

Servus mortem spērābat. Pater currēbat. Servus pugnabat. Balbus sentiet. Mors Balbum terrēbit. Mors christianum non terret. Puer vocem audiet. Puer vulpem non timet. Servus dominum occidēbat. Puella peccābat. Servus cantābit. Balbus audit. Pater sentit.

Lesson 7.

(*Adjectives in* us, er.)

35. VOCABULARY 7.

To finish,	fĭn-īre.	
Labor,	labor, *G.* labōr-is.	
Mother,	māter, *G.* matr-is	(*maternal.*)
Father,	pāter, *G.* patr-is	(*paternal.*)
To bury,	sepĕl-īre	(*sepulture.*)
Dead,	mortuus, mortua, mortuum.	
Son,	filius, *G.* filii	(*filial.*)
Snake,	anguis, anguis, *m.* (*pronounced* angwis.)	
To find,	repĕr-īre	(*repertory.*)
Money, Sum-of-money,	pecunia	(*pecuniary.*)
Master,	magister, *G.* magistr-i, a master who *teaches*	(*magisterial.*)
	domĭnus, *G.* i, a master who *owns*	(*domineer.*)
To rouse-up, *or* awaken,	excĭt-āre	(*excitement.*)
Mine,	meus, mea, meum.	
Good,	bonus, bona, bonum.	
His, her, its, theirs,	suus, sua, suum; when the person *whose* the thing is, is the nominative to the verb.	

36. ☞ Adjectives in *us, er,* have a *masculine,* a *feminine,* and a *neuter* form, and they are declined exactly like substantives.

The masculine ends in *us* or *er*; Gen. *i*. (Decl. ii.)
— feminine —— *a*; G. *æ*. (Decl. i.)
— neuter —— *um*; G. *i*. (Decl. ii.)

Hence the *acc.* of an adjective is got by 9. For instance, if the adjective be *bonus*, (whose *fem.* is *bona*; *neut. bonum*,) if I want the *acc. masc.* or *neut.*, I take the *acc.* of *bonus* or *bonum* respectively; if I want the *acc. fem.*, I take the *acc.* of *bona*, which is *bonam*.

37. Every noun is *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*;[f] and every adjective must be of the same *case*, *gender*, and *number* as the noun of which it is spoken.[g]

38. Mulier ancillam suam excĭtat.
The woman maid her awakens.

Obs. Except with these little words *meus*, *suus*, &c., the adjective *generally* stands *before* its substantive. 'Bonus puer,' a good boy.
[Ancillam suam:—*suam* is put in the *accusative feminine*, because *ancillam* (the noun of which it is spoken) is in the *accusative feminine*.]

Exercise 7.

39. The father buries (his) dead son. The husbandman finds a snake. (My) friend does not hear my voice. A slave was shutting the gate. The master is teaching the boy. The master will rouse up his slave. Caius disregards the law. The boy will finish his labor. The girl was finishing her labor. The master will

---

[f] See 9, b.

[g] Table by which the gender of a substantive is to be determined.

I. Decl.	All *feminine*, except poeta, (poet,) and other designations of *men*.		
II. Decl.	us, er, *masculine:* except humus, dŏmus, (*fem.*,) and a few more.		
	um, *neuter*.		
IV. Decl.	us, *masculine*, except mănus, (fem.,) and a few more.		
	u, *neuter*.		
V. Decl.	es, *fem.* (Dies masculine, but sometimes *fem.* in singular.)		
III. Decl.	Masc. term.	Fem. term.	Neut. term.
	er, or, os,	do, go, io,	*c, a, t, e, l, n,*
	es *increasing*.*	as, is, aus,	*ar, ur, us,*
	o, when not *do, go, io*.	x,	(But ūs with long u,
		es *not increasing*,	in words of more than
		s *after a consonant*.	one syll. is *fem.*)

Obs. *Masc.* endings are in *capitals*; *fem.* in *common type*; *neut.* in *Italics*.—There are many exceptions in the *third*. See Accidence, on the Genders of Substantives, p. 127.

---

* That is, having in the genitive *a syllable more* than in the nominative.

show his garden. The father will praise (his) good son.

Pater filium suum docēbat. Agricŏla anguem non timēbit. Caius legem neglĭget. Christiānus pecuniam neglĭgit. Mortuum agricŏlam sepeliet. Pater meus vocem meam non negliget.

Lesson 8.

40. The following are the *genitive* terminations of the five declensions:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
æ	i	is	ûs	ei

☞ (1) In the Genitive of the fourth **ûs** is for **uis**.
(2) In the Genitive of the fifth, the **e** is long when *it follows a vowel*; *short* when it does not. (Faciēi, fidēi.)*

41. VOCABULARY 8.

Through,	per, governs accusative	
To walk,	ambŭlāre	(per-*ambulate.*)
To call,	vocāre	(*vocation.*)
Poet,	poēta.	
To overturn, To pull-down,	evertĕre, (the first is its own meaning: the second the word *we* should use.)	
House,	dŏmus, ûs, *f.*	(*domestic.*)
Body,	corpŭs, corpŏr-is, *n.*	(*corporal* punishment.)
Great,	magnus	(*magnitude.*)
Little, Small,	parvus.	

41.* Ipse Sullæ domum evertit.
He-himself Sulla's house pulls-down,
(properly, *overturns.*)

Obs. ☞ The governed genitive stands first, unless the governing noun is emphatic. When the governing noun is to stand before *its genitive*, it will have an accent after it, (thus; festival'.)

---

* This positive statement of Mr. Arnold seems to require some modification. The genitives and datives singular of the fifth declension, always make **e** long before **i**, as *diēi*, *aciēi*, except in the only three nouns of the fifth declension which do not end in *ies*, viz., *fides*, *spes*, *res*. In these **e** is found short in *spĕi*, common (either long or short) in *fidēi*, or *fidĕi*, and in *rēi* or *rei*. See Ramsay's Latin Prosody, p. 22.—AM. ED.

Exercise 8.

42. The slave shuts the gates of the city. He-himself will not pull down his friend's house. The father will not disregard the voice of his son. The father is burying the body of (his) dead son. The boy was pointing-out the snake's body. My mother was praising the poet's daughter. The good boy was walking through the city. My father will call the husbandman's daughter. The poet was holding the queen's crown.

Filius patr*is* su*i* mort*em* vindic*ābit*. Pater fili*i* su*i* voc*em* non neglĭg*et*. Leo asĭn*um* dilani*at*. Servus domĭn*i* su*i* mort*em* vindic*ābat*. Reg*is* sceptrum vid*ēbit*. Agricŏla per urb*em* ambul*abit*.

Lesson 9.

Say the terminations of the tenses, (32.) Give the accusative endings, (9.) Give the genitive endings, (40.)

43. Vocabulary 9.

At-nothing,	nihĭli, (the genitive of *nihĭlum*, which is only used in some particular phrases.)	
To value,	æstĭmāre	(*estimation.*)
At a great (price,) / At a high (price,)	magni.*	
At a little (price,) / At a low (price,)	parvi.*	
To think little of,	parvi æstĭmare.	
Queen,	regĭna.	
King,	rex, *G.* rēg-is	(*regal.*)
Sceptre,	sceptrum.	
Labor,	lăbor, *G.* labōr-is.	
True, real,	vērus	(*verily.*)
Virtue,	virtūs, *G.* virtūt-is.	
To tear-to-pieces,	dilaniāre.	
An ass,	asĭnus, *G.* asĭni.	
To avenge,	vindĭcāre	(*vindictive.*)
Lion,	leo, *G.* leōnis.	

44. With some words the *price* or *value* is put in the *genitive*.

---

* These are genitives, (pretii) *price* being understood.

Sapiens virtūtem magni æstĭmat.
The wise man virtue at a great (price) *values.*

45. Magna regis corona, *the king's great crown.*
Magna boni regis corona, *the good king's great crown.*

Imitate this order; *adj. gen. subst.*

Exercise 9.

46. He disregards his slave's great labor. He sees a great snake. The boy was avoiding the snake's great body. He is avoiding the great snake's great body. The master was rousing up his slave. He will feel great sorrow. The poet will feel real sorrow. The father will not neglect the sorrow of his son. Caius values true virtue *at a great* (price.) The master *thinks little of* the labor of his slave. The father will value my labor *at a great* (price.)

Caius amīci sui labōrem *parvi æstĭmat.* Pater labōrem meum *magni æstĭmat.* Leo asĭni corpus dilaniabat. Mater laudabat filiam. Vulpes leōnem timet. Boni pueri caput aperiebat. Dominus servi sui epistŏlam aperiet. Magnam urbis portam claudebat. Servus puerum vocabit.

Lesson 10.

47 VOCABULARY 10.

Very great, greatest,	maxĭmus.	
At a very great (price,) } At a very high (price,) }	maxĭmi.	
Avarice,	avaritia.[h]	
Unlearned,	indoctus.	
Avaricious; greedy,	avārus.	
Wise,	sapiens, sapientis	(*sapient.*)
Wisdom,	sapientia.	
To praise,	laudāre	(*laudatory.*)
Impious,	impius.	

[h] OBS. Nouns in *ia, tia, tas,* and *tūdo,* are *abstract* nouns, such as the names of *virtues, vices, dispositions, feelings, &c.*

48. Avārus maxĭmi
The avaricious (man) *at a very great* (price)
æstĭmat pecuniam.
values *money.*

When the noun meant is *man*, *woman*, or *thing*, it is often left out in Latin. If *man* is meant, the adjective must, of course, be *masculine*; if *woman*, *feminine*; if *thing*, *neuter*.

Exercise 10.

(Ask questions from 1—4, from the "Questions" after the Appendix.)

49. The avaricious (man) values[3*] virtue at-a-low-price. He was pulling down the avaricious (man's) house. He will avenge the death of the wise (man.) The wise (man) values virtue at-a-very-great (price.) The impious (man) will fear death. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. The poet will build a great house. The poet's daughter was walking through the great city. The unlearned (man) laughs-at the poet. The true poet will laugh-at the unlearned (man.)

Christiānus pecuni*am* parvi æstimā*bit*.[3] Impii dom*um* ever*tet*. Indoctus sapienti*am* *parvi* *æstĭmat*. Caius sapienti*am* laudā*bit*. Amīci laud*at* sapienti*am*. Christiānus avariti*am* vitā*bit*. Mater bonam filiam laudabat. Magnam regis corōnam videbit. Leo dilaniabit asĭnum. Puer magnam quercum monstrabit. Servus domĭni sui hortum monstrabat.

Lesson 11.

On the formation of the Perfect.

50. The perfect has the same ending in all the conjugations; but this one ending is added on to a *par-*

---

* These numerals refer to the *Table of Differences of Idiom*, following the Questions.

ticular root,[1] that is altered in various ways from that of the present.

51. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the root of the perfect is generally formed by adding *āv*, *ŭ*, and *īv*, respectively, to the root of the present.

Thus from	am-āre	mon-ēre	aud-īre
(*Root of present*)	am-	mon-	aud-
(*Root of perfect*)	amāv-	monŭ-	audīv-

52. Terminations of the third person singular, in the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect* and *Future perfect* of the active voice.

Perfect,	it,	to be added to the *root of the perfect*.
Pluperfect,	ĕrat,	
Future perfect,	ĕrit,	

53. Find the *roots of the perfect* for cant-āre, terr-ēre, doc-ēre, sepel-īre.

Exercise 11.

54. The boy had heard a voice. The slave will have shown the road. The lion has torn-in-pieces the ass. The slave has avoided pain. Caius had praised his slave. The fox had frightened the boy. The master has taught the boy. The Christian did not fear death. He had valued wisdom at-a-very-low price.

Juravĕrat. Agricŏla aravĕrit. Vulpes terruĕrit puerum. Servus speravit mortem. Puella peccavĕrat. Servus cantabit. Pater mortuum filium sepelivĕrat. Magnam poĕtæ sapientiam parvi æstimavit. Veram virtutem magni æstimavĕrat.

Lesson 12.

55. Vocabulary 11.

Bad,	mălus. Evil, malum, (*neut. adj.*)
Something,	aliquid, (*n.*)

[1] By a *root* is here meant that *part of a word which is found in all the cases* or *tenses* spoken of.

How much,	**quantus, quanta, quantum**	**(*quantity.*)**
Pleasure,	**voluptas, *G.* voluptātis**	**(*voluptuary.*)**
Lose,	**amittĕre.**	
Unwilling,	**invītus, (to be translated, '*unwillingly.*')**	
Figure,	**figūra.**	
To have,	**habēre.**	
Stability,	**stabilītas.**	
To condemn,	**damnāre.**	
Unlearned,	**indoctus.**	
Industry,	**industria.**	

56. Figūra nihil habet stabilitatis.
The figure nothing has of stability, (has no stability.)

Alīquid tempŏris { something of time. (*Lat.*) / (*some time.*) (*Eng.*)

Multum boni[k] { much of good. (*Lat.*) / (*much good.*) (*Eng.*)

Quantum voluptātis[l] { how much of pleasure. (*Lat.*) / (*how much pleasure.*) (*Eng.*)

57. (*Eng.*) He does it *unwillingly*, (adv.)
(*Lat.*) He *unwillingly* does it, (adj.)

Exercise 12. [Questions 1—5.]

Find, by 51, the *root of perfect* from hab-ēre, vit-āre, dilani-āre, laud-āre.

58. The boy will lose *some time*. *How much pleasure* does the unlearned man lose![m] The figure had *no stability*. He avoided *much evil*. The lion had torn-to-pieces the ass. The father praised his son. My father values industry very highly.[2]

Servus *viam* monstr-av-*ĕrat*. Puer mort*em* tim-u-*it*. Domīnus serv*um* su*um* excit-av-*ĕrat*. Alīquid tempŏr*is* invītus amitt*et*. Christiānus avaritiam damn*at*. Quantum hab*et* voluptāt*is* sapientia! Avaritia nihil hab*et* verœ voluptāt*is*. Quantum voluptāt*is* hab-u-*ĕrit!*

---

[k] ☞ *Boni, mali,* &c., (the genitives of *bonus, malus,*) are here used as substantives.

[l] ☞ *Neuter adjectives* are often followed by a *genitive* case.
These adjectives are generally such as relate to *quantity; indefinite numerals,* &c.

[m] Obs. After '*how much*' the present with '*does*' is used, and the nominative case stands between the auxiliary verb and the verb.

Lesson 13. [Questions 1—6.]

59. Vocabulary 12.

Natural-to-man,	humānus	(*human.*)
Nobody,	nēmo, *G.* nemĭn-is.	
To offend-against; wrong, / To break (a law, one's word, &c.)	violāre	(*violate*)
Disgraceful,	turpis, m. f.; turpe, n.	
Fidelity; faith; *one's* word,	fĭdes, fĭdēi.*	
To keep; observe,	servāre	(*pre-serve.*)
(One's) country,	patria, *G.* æ, *f.*	(*patriotism.*)
To break one's word,	fĭdem violāre.	
It is,	est.	
Citizen,	cīvis, *G.* cīvis.	
To command,	impĕrāre	(*imperative.*)
Easy,	făcĭlis, m. f.; facile, neut.	(*facility.*)

60. Humānum est errāre.
Natural-to-man it-is to err.[n]

Christiāni est nemĭnem violāre.
The part / The duty } *of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.*

61. To lie is[o] disgraceful. (*Lat.*)
It is disgraceful to lie. (*Eng.*)

62. After '*it is*,' such a substantive as *part*, *duty*, *business*, *mark*, is not to be translated into Latin.

In rendering into English, when a genitive follows *est*, (*erat*, *fuit*, &c.,) such a substantive as *mark*, *duty*, *business*, *part*, must be supplied.

It is the part / ——— duty / ——— business / —— a mark } of a wise man, &c. (*Eng.*)
It is of a wise man . . . . . (*Lat.*)

Exercise 13.

63. It is a great *thing* not to fear death. It is a little *thing* not to fear a fox. The slave had kept his word.

---

* See note on p. 25.

[n] ☞ An infinitive mood (with the words belonging to it) is often the *nominative* to the verb; and the adjective that agrees with it is then in the *neuter* gender.

[o] ☞ When an infinitive mood is the nominative case to the sentence, in English we put '*it*' before the verb '*is*.' This '*it*,' which represents, as it were, the coming sentence, must not be translated into Latin.

It is the slave's *business* to shut the gate of the city. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. It is natural to man to value money *at-a-high-price*. It is a mark of an unlearned man to value wisdom *at-a-low-price*.

Turpe est poētæ domum evertere. Humanum est peccare. *Patris* est filium suum sepelire. *Regis* est imperare. *Servi* est viam monstrare. Pater filium docuĕrat. Puella clamavĕrat. Mater filiam suam laudavĕrat. Caius cantavĕrit. Agricŏla juravit. Impii (62) est virtutem *parvi* æstimare. Boni est fidem servare. Impii est fidem violare.

Lesson 14.

64. For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns the accusative plural ends in *s*; for neuters in *ă*.

RULE. To get the *acc. plur.* from *acc. sing.*

(1) For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns, turn *um* of the 2d into *os*; in the other declensions, turn *m* into *s*.

(2) For neuters add *a* to the *root*.[q]

Hence the terminations of the *acc. plur.* are,

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
ās,	ōs,	ēs,	ūs,	ēs.

Obs. The vowel before *s* is long. *Acc. plur.* of all *neuters ends in* ă.

Exercise 14.

65. It is disgraceful to break (one's) word. It is (the duty) of a Christian to keep (his) word. It is (the part) of a Christian, not to offend-against the laws of his country. The good citizen will observe the laws of his

---

q Sometimes *ia* must be added; for which rules will be given below

country. The master has taught the boys. It is natural-to-man to avoid pain. Balbus will break his word. The fox had frightened the boys. He disregards the labors of his slave.

Pater meus fidem servavĕrat. Indocti est (62) sapientiam *parvi æstimāre*.[3] Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. CAIUS fidem suam non servāvit. Christiani est nemĭnem violāre. Neminem violavit.

Lesson 15.

66. The remaining cases of the singular.

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Dative	æ	ō	ī	uī	eī
Ablative	ā	ō	ĕ *sometimes* i.*	ū	ē

67. The *Dative* is to be rendered by TO or FOR.

The *Ablative* is to be rendered by WITH, BY, FROM.

But an Ablative of *time* must be rendered by AT or IN: an Ablative of *place*, by AT or FROM.†

68. VOCABULARY 13.

Hand,	mănus, ûs, *f.*	(*manual.*)
To labor, / To be in trouble,	lăbōrāre.	
To appease,	plăcāre	(*placable.*)
Mind,	anĭm-us, i	(magn-*animi*-ty.)
Gift,	dōnum	(*donative.*)

Exercise 15.

[The thing *with which* is put in the ablative.]

69. The boy will show the road *to* the husbandman. The girl will open the letter *with* her-own hand. The boy will hear voices. Death will not terrify Christians. The slave will shut the gates *for* the king. Death

---

* *e* is to be used, unless you are told to use *i*.

† *From* after a verb of *motion*.

frightens the impious. It is natural-to-man to fear death. He will appease the boy *with* a gift. He has appeased the boy's mind. He will have appeased the boy's mind *with* a gift.

Agricŏlæ est laborāre. Puer discet. Servus domini vocem timēbit. Christiāni est virtūtem laudāre. Caii animum dono placavĕrit. Iram meam dono placavĕrat. Puella cantābit. Puer ludēbat.

Lesson 16.

70. ☞ Adjectives ending in *is*, have Gen. *is*, and are therefore of the *third*. They are *musculine* and *feminine*. Their neuter form is *e*, Gen. *is*, &c.; and the ablative singular is *i*.*

71. VOCABULARY 14.

Rome,	Rōma.	
Carthage,	Carthāgo, Carthagĭn-is, f.	
The-space-of-two-years.	biennium.	
Winter,	hiems, hiĕm-is, f.	
To sleep,	dormīre	(*dor*-mouse.)
Cave,	antrum.	
One,	unus, una, unum[r]	(*unit.*)
To rest,	quiescĕre	(*quiescent.*)
To chastise,	castīgāre	(*castigation.*)
To remain,	mānēre.	
To live,	vīvĕre	(re-*vive.*)
Earth,	terra	(*terrestrial.*)
Faithful,	fidēlis	(*fidelity.*)

72.

	Romæ.	Tarenti.	Tibŭre.[s]	
	at Rome.	*at Tarentum.*	*at Tibur.*	
Caius	*annum*	*unum*[t]	Cortōnæ	vixit.
Caius	*year*	*one*	*at Cortona*	*lived.*
Hiĕme	ursus	in	antro	dormit.
In winter	*the bear*	*in*	*a cave*	*sleeps.*

---

* A table of the terminations of an adj. in '*is*' is given in the Accidence, p. 139.

r This word, with some others, has this peculiarity: *unus*, *una*, and *unum* all make their *Gen. unius*, and their *Dat. uni*, instead of the regular Genitives and Datives of the first and second declensions.

s ☞ If the name of a town *where* any thing is done, be of *the first* or *second* declension, and *singular* number, it is put in the *genitive*; if not, in the *ablat.*

t ☞ Time *when* is put in the *ablative*; time *how-long* in the *accusative.*

73. Obs. The preposition is not to be translated before *the name of a town*, or a noun of *time*.

(*a*) Before a noun of time consider, whether it tells you *when* the thing *was* (or, *is to be*) *done*; or *how long* t *lasted*, (or *is to last*.)

Exercise 16.

74. In-winter the earth rests. My father was living at-Rome. BALBUS is-remaining at-Carthage. It is the duty[7] of a good citizen to remain at-Rome. In winter the bear will remain in (its) cave. He will remain at-Rome for the-space-of-two-years. He has kept his word unwillingly. It is the duty[7] of a father to chastise his son. The slave is walking in the garden. He is remaining at-Tibur unwillingly, (57.) In-the-winter, he will play in the garden.

Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābit. Pater filium castigavĕrat. Puer in antro dormiēbat. Lex christiāna avaritiam damnavĕrat. Pater filium castigavĕrit. Biennium Romæ manēbit. Facĭle est pueri animum dono placare. Puella in horto ludēbat.

Lesson 17.

(*On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in p or b.*)

75. In these verbs the root of the *perfect* may generally be got from the root of the *present* by adding *s*.

☞ But *bs* must be written *ps*.

76. EXAMPLES: Root of pres. *rēp*; root of perf. *reps*.
Root of pres. *nūb*; root of perf. *nups*. (not *nubs*.)

77. VOCABULARY 15.

To write,	scrībĕre	(*scribe*.)
To marry, (of *a female*,)	nūbĕre	(*nuptials*)[a]

[a] This word properly means '*to veil*:' hence 'to put on a *bridal* veil;' 'to *marry*' It governs the *dative*, as meaning 'to veil *for* a person.'

To pluck; to card; to carp at,	carpĕre.
Wool,	lana.
Flower,	flos, flōr-is (*florist.*)
Grape,	uva.
Whole,	totus: *with G.* tottus; D. toti. See *unus*, Appendix, 8, 10.
Letter,	epistŏla (*epistolary.*)

a. Nubĕre '*to marry*' is followed by the *dative*, not by the *accusative*.

b. A case of *suus* must be construed { *his, her, its, their*; (or) *his own, her own, its own, their own*; according as the nominative is a '*he*,' a '*she*,' an '*it*,' or a '*they*.'

He wrote it } manu *sua* { with *his* own hand.
She wrote it } { with *her* own hand.

Exercise 17.

78. The boy was writing a letter. The girl wrote a letter. The slave had written a letter. (It) is easy (60, n) to write a letter. The girl will marry Caius. The girl was carding wool. It is the duty[v] of a Christian to observe the laws of his country. The girl had plucked a flower. The boy will pluck the grape. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter.*

Sapientis est virtūtem[v] magni æstimāre. Epistŏlam Romæ scripsit. Facĭle est lanam carpĕre. Quantum habet voluptātis industria! Puella epistŏlam suâ manu scripsit. Caius epistŏlam suâ manu scribēbat.

Lesson 18.

Terminations of the third plural.

79. The *third plural* of a verb may be got from the *third singular* by changing *t* into *nt*.

(*a*) But this rule does not hold good of '*it*,' which must be changed thus.

'*it*' must be changed { in the *fourth conj.* into *iunt*. / in the perfect into . . *ērunt*. / in '*erit*' into . . . . *int*. / in other cases into . . *unt*.†

---

* In what case is time *how-long* put? (See p. 34, note t.)

v From *virtus*.

† Thus, sepēl-*it*, sepĕl-*iunt*.
stet-*it*, stet-*ērunt*.
stet-*ērit*, stet-*ērint*.
reg-*it*, reg-*unt*.

Exercise 18.

80. Translate the following:

(1) Am*at*, am*ant*: mon*et*, mon*ent*: reg*it*, reg*unt*: aud*it*, aud*unt*: amav*it*, amav*ērunt*.

(2) Find the *third* person plural corresponding to each of the following forms:

Am*ābat*; mon*ēbit*; reg*et*; rex*ērit*; aud*iet*; plor*ābit*; rex*it*, (*perf.*;) clamav*ērit*, clam*abit*; scripsit, aud*ivit*.

(3) Turn into Latin:

They will command. They have walked in the garden. They have written a letter. They were praising the faithful slave. They had praised the slave's fidelity. They will have sung. They will fear the lion. They will have chastised the slave. They will pull down the avaricious man's house. They will value money at-a-low-price. Wisdom has much pleasure. They will wrong nobody. They have wronged nobody. It is the duty[7] of a Christian to avoid avarice. They will appease the girl's anger. They were writing letters.

Lesson 19.

81. Plural terminations of substantives and adjectives:

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Nom.	æ,	i,	ēs,	ūs,	ēs.
Gen.	ārum,	ōrum,	um, *or* ium,*	uum,	ērum.

82. Vocabulary 16.

To fall down,	de-cĭd-ĕre	(the *decid*uous cypress.)
Autumn,	auctumnus, G. i.	
The country,	rus,[w] G. rūris	(*rural* pleasures.)
To fly (out,)	e-vŏl-āre	(*vol*atile: e *out*, volāre *fly*.)
From; out of,	ex, governing the *ablative*.	
In,	in, governing the *abl.*	
City,	urbs, G. urbis	(*urb*anity.)[x]

Determine by the Table, given at page 24, the *genders* of *dolor*, *auctumnus*, *rūs*, *urbs*.

☞ '*In*,' when it means '*into*,' governs the accusative.

---

* *Um* is to be used when you are not told to put *ium*.

[w] *Patria* is the *country* of which we are citizens; *rus* is '*the country*,' as opposed to '*the town*.'

[x] Meaning '*city* politeness,' as opposed to '*rustic* coarseness.'

Exercise 19.

83. The husbandmen are building a wall. The boys will show the road. Christians will not fear death. The citizens will pull down Sulla's house. Wise (men) value true greatness of mind *very highly*.[2] The unlearned value wisdom at-a-low-price. My friends will not disregard my sorrow. The leaves fall down *in autumn*.[12] The slaves will avenge the death of their master. The slaves will show the gardens. They will appease the anger of the husbandmen with a gift.

Impii mortem timēbunt. *Christiāni est*[7] pecuniam *parvi æstimāre*.[8] Fidem suam *invīti*[5] serv-av-ērunt. Rūs[y] ex urbe evolābunt. *Invītus*[5] domi (168) manēbat. Puĕrum in urbe sepel-iv-ērunt. Patres filios su- docuĕrant. Puellæ clamavērunt. Puĕri vulpem non timēbunt.

Lesson 20.

On finding the nominative of the third declension *from any other case.*

84. The most common way of all is given in the following Rule:

(1) Find the *root*,[z] and add *s* to it.

a) For *cs*, *gs*, you must write *x*: and if a *t* sound[a] or *r* stand before *s*, throw it away.
b) If the letters before *s* are *nt*, sometimes *t* only is thrown away: sometimes both consonants.
c) Besides this a *short i* in the last syllable should be changed into *e*.

(2) Another way is to throw away the *last letter* of the root.

a) This applies principally to *n*, (sometimes to *r*, *l*.)
b) An *i* before *n* should be changed into *o*, as *consuetudĭn*-em (consuetud-) consuetūdo.

---

[y] *Into the country*, by a rule to be given presently.
[z] Sometimes the *root* is itself the *nominative*.
[a] That is, *t* or *d*.

(3) A third way is to add *is, es,* or (for *neuters*) *e* to the root.

(4) Sometimes '*ĕr*,' '*ŏr*,' as the last letters of a root, should be changed into '*ŭs*;' and '*it*' into '*ut*.'[b]

85. VOCABULARY 17.

	ROOT.	NOM.	
A flock,	grĕg	grex, m.	(*greg*-arious.)
A shrub,	frutĭc	frutex, f.	
A state,	cīvĭtāt	cīvĭtās, f.	
An elephant,	elephant	ēlĕphas, m.	
Custom,	consuetudin	consuetūdo, f.	
Honey,	mell	mel, n.	(*melli*-fluous.)
Side,	lătĕr	latus, n.	(*lateral.*)
Head,	căpĭt	caput, n.	(*capital.*)
Body,	corpŏr	corpus, n.	(*corporal.*)
Cloud,	nūb	nubes, f.	

Exercise 20.

86. The boys will not fear the elephant. The slave will show the shrub. Balbus had praised my custom. He feels a pain in his side, (*say*, of his side.) The boy will feel a pain in his head, (*say*, of his head.) The lion will not fear the elephant. The slave had shown the shrub in his master's garden. He will retain his father's custom. The state will observe its laws. The husbandman had shown his flocks. He will laugh-at the flock of unlearned men. My father feared the cloud.

Caius leges civitātis violavĕrit. Christiani est[7] nemĭnem violare. Servus mortui elephantis corpus puero monstrābat. Puella epistŏlam suâ manu scripsit. Facile est lanam carpĕre. Biennium Carthagĭne manēbunt. Domĭni servos fidēles vindicavĕrant. Dominōrum est[7] fidēles servos laudāre. Patris est filium suum docēre. Figūræ nihil[4] habent stabilitatis. Hieme ursi in antro dormiunt. Biennium Romæ manēbit. Chris-

---

[b] EXAMPLES.—From *ped-es* we get *ped-s*=*pes*, [by (1) *a*;] from *frŭtic-is*, *frutics*=*frutix*=*frutex*: *civĭtāt-em*, *civĭtat-s*, *civĭtās*: *animant-em*, *animant-s*, *animans*: *elĕphant-is*, *elĕphant-s*, *elĕphas*, [(1) *b*.] By (2) *longitudĭn-em*, *longitūdi*, *longitūdo*; *farris*, *farr*, *far*: *felle*, *fell*, *fel*. By (3) *nub-em*, *nub-es*; *ret-i*, *ret-e*. By (4) *latĕr-is*, *latŭs*; *corpŏr-is*, *corpŭs*; *capĭt-is*, *caput*.

tianus nemĭnem violabit. Fidēles servi dominum suum vindicabunt.

Lesson 21.

87. The *Imperative* may be got from the *infinitive* by throwing away *re*, (*amā, monē, regĕ, audī.*)

88. '*Not*' with *imperatives* is *nē*,
A '*non*' is hateful then to see.

Crabrōnes nē irrīta.
Hornets do-not irritate. (Do not irritate hornets.)

89. VOCABULARY 18.

It is,	est.	
Wasp,	vespa.	
To irritate,	irrītāre.	
Hornet,	crabr-o, ōnis.	
Never,	nunquam.	
Useful, profitable,	ūtĭl-is	(*utility.*)

Exercise 21.

[The '*do*' before '*not*' is only the *auxiliary* verb belonging to the following verb: thus, "do not shut" is the same as "shut not."]

90. Do not irritate wasps. He has *unwillingly* irritated a wasp. The boys will irritate the wasps. Do not pull-down the house. Do not chastise the slave. The boys will lose *some time.*[4] The figure will have *no stability.*[4] Do not break your word. Wise (men) will condemn avarice. The boys will hear a voice. Do not shut the gates of the city. Do not irritate your master. The boy will fear the hornet. The hornets will irritate the fox.

[Obs. The '*do*' of the *imperative* must be put before '*not*;' just as if '*nē*' were to be translated '*do not.*']

Patriæ tuæ leges nē viŏla. Veram anĭmi* magnitudĭnem laudābunt. *Christiāni est*[1] fidem suam servāre.

---

* Observe the place of the governed genitive, between the adjective and substantive

Turpe est, patriæ suæ leges violāre. Poētas nē irrīta. *Christiani est*[f] nemīnem irritare. Invītus saltavĕrat. Portas urbis *invitus* claudēbat. *Invitus* peccavit. Humanum est peccare. Ne pecca. Nunquam est utile peccare.

Lesson 22.

On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in a k sound, (in *c, g,* or *qu.*)

91. The common way is, to add *s* to the root of the *present;* remembering that,

☞ Any *k* sound with *s* =[e] *x*, [that is, for *cs*, *gs*, or *qus*, write *x*.]

Thus from *cing-ĕre, tĕg-ĕre, dīc-ĕre, cŏqu-ĕre,*[d] we get for the roots of the perfect,

(cing-s)	(teg-s)	(dīc-s)	(coqu-s)
cinx,	*tex,*	*dix,*	*cox.*

92. VOCABULARY 19.

Attack,	oppugnāre.	
Greatest,	summus; properly *highest*, but the general word for *greatest*, when *qualities* are spoken of.	
To surround,	cing-ĕre	(*cincture.*)
To cover,	tĕg-ĕre	(pro-*tect.*)
To say,	dīc-ĕre	(*diction.*)
To cook; bake; ripen,	cŏqu-ĕre	(de-*coction.*)
Fault,	culpa	(*culpable.*)
Lie,	mendācium	(*mendacious.*)
Cloak,	pallium	(to *palliate* an offence: *i. e.* to *cloak* it.)
Food,	cibus.	
The sun,	sol, sōl-is, *m.*	(the *solar* rays.)
To fill,	complēre	(*complement* of men.)
All,	omnis: cunctus, (the latter word means '*all taken together.*')	
To illuminate,	illustrāre	(*illustrate.*)
Light,	lux, lūc-is	(*lucid.*)
River,	flūmen, flumĭn-is. What *gender?* [See page 24, g.]	
Assumed-appearance; pretence,	simulatio, *G.* simulatiōnis	(dis-*simulation.*)
Whole,	totus, a, um: but *G. totīus, D. toti.* In other cases, regular. See Appendix, 10.	

---

[e] This mark means '*equals*,' or, "is the same as."

[d] Qu = *kw*; pronounce *cokwĕre.*

93. Sol cuncta suâ luce illustrat.
The sun all (things) *with his light illuminates.*

94. ☞ '*Thing*,' '*things*,' are often untranslated: the adjective must then be put in the *neuter*.

Exercise 22.

95. He surrounds his head with a garland. He had surrounded the city with a wall. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. The boy had said nothing. The girl had cooked the food. Do not cover (your) fault with a lie. The slave has said many (things.) The sun fills all (things) with its light. The assumed-appearance of folly covered great wisdom. It is the business[7] of the slave to cook the food for his master. It is never useful to lose time. How much[4] pleasure has he had?

Sol *cuncta* suâ luce illustravĕrat. Christiāni[7] non est, mendacio culpam tegĕre. Puĕri dixērunt. Flumen urbem cingit. *Totam hiĕmem*[12)*] ursus in antro dor miēbat. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio tegēbat. Sum mam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiæ texĕrat. Hanni bal Saguntum oppugnabat. Turpe est peccare. Bien nium Romæ manebunt. Carthagine *inviti* manēbant.

Lesson 23.

On finding the root of the perfect for verbs whose roo ends in a t sound, (*d* or *t*.)

96. Here too the root of the perfect is generally go from the root of the present by adding *s*.

The *t* sound must be thrown away before this *s*, and the preceding vowel, *if short*, made long.

Claud-o,	claud-s,	*claus*.
Divīd-o,	divid-s,	*divīs*.

These numerals, when followed by a curve, refer to the *Questions* after the Le ons.

97. The remaining cases of the plural.

In the plur. the *dative* and *ablative* are alike.

	1. 2.	3. 4.	5.
Dat. } Abl. }	īs,	ĭbŭs,	ēbŭs. (In the *fourth* it is sometimes ŭbus.)

98. VOCABULARY 20.

To divide,	divīd-ĕre.
Part,	pars, partis. Gender? (p. 24, g.)
Three,	tres, *neut.* tria, (declined regularly: gen. *ium*.)
A man,	vir,* G. viri, (declined like a noun of second.)
To accuse,	accūsāre.
Theft,	furtum (*furtive.*)
Bribery,	ambītus, G. ūs.
To acquit,	absolvĕre (*absolve; absolution.*)
Treachery,	proditio, G. ōnis.
To death,	may be translated by *capĭtis*, (*'of the head.'*)
Into,	in, *with the* accusative.
Because,	quia.
Always,	semper.

99.

Puer	eximiâ	pulchritudĭne
A boy	*of singular*	*beauty.*
Caium	proditiōnis[e]	accūsant.
Caius	*of treachery*	they accuse.

100. OBS. Where we *describe* a person or thing by a *substantive and adjective* governed by '*of*,' the Romans used either the *genitive* or the *ablative*.

101. (*Eng.*) To condemn a person *to death*.
(*Lat.*) To condemn a person *of the head*,[f] (*capĭtis.*)

Exercise 23.

102. The slave has shut the gates of the city. Balbus had divided all (the things) into three parts. He

---

* *Homo*, G. *hominis*, and *vir* are both '*man*:' but *homo* is '*man*' as opposed to *other* animals; that is, '*a human being*:' whereas '*vir*' is '*man*' as opposed to '*woman*.'

When '*men*' means '*human beings*,' '*men*' generally, (including *both sexes*,) it should be translated by *homines*.

When 'man' is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by '*homo*, because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.

When '*man*' is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by '*vir*,' because *man* is *superior* to *woman*.

[e] ☞ Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, and *condemning*, take a *genitive* of the *charge*.

As transitive verbs they, of course, take an accusative of the person accused.

[f] We may suppose that it was originally '*to condemn a person to the loss* of the head,' or rather '*to a punishment* of the head.'

will divide all (*neut. plur.*) into three parts with his (own) hand. Do *not* divide the food. Balbus, a man *of the greatest virtue*, has praised the fidelity of the slave. The sun was illuminating (all) things with his light. He will accuse Balbus of theft. They have written the letters with their own hands. The queen was writing a letter with her own hand. He had covered his face with a cloak. It is always disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romæ[11] vivit. Balbum ambītûs accusavērant. *Quantum cibi*[4] amittunt! Balbum proditiōnis absolvent. Balbum *capĭtis* damnābunt. Hiĕme[9, b] ursi in antris dormiunt. Triennium[9, c] Romæ manēbit. Caium ne accūsa. Invitus *Caium* accusavit. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditionis accusavĕrat. Portas urbis clausĕrat. Balbi est, omnia in tres partes divīdĕre. Facīle est saltare. Nunquam utīle est peccare, quia semper est turpe.

Lesson 24.

Root of the perfect with lengthened (and often changed) vowel.

103. Other verbs form the root of the perfect by *lengthening* the *vowel* of the present: as *ĕd*-ere, *ēd*.

104. If the vowel of the present is *ă*, the root of the perf. will have *ē*. Thus *căp*-ere, *cēp*.

105. Several of these verbs drop an *n* or *m* before the final mute.

Thus frang-ĕre,	frăg,	frēg.	(*break.*)
rump-ĕre,	rup,	rūp.	(*burst; break through.*)
vinc-ĕre,	vic,	vīc.	(conquer.)

106. Vocabulary 21.

Buy, Take, Receive,	ĕm-ĕre, r. ēm căp-ere, r. cēp.	(pre-*emption*.)
Arm,	brāchium.	

Treaty,	fœdĕr-, nom. fœd-ĭs, (neut.,) by 84, 4.	(con-*feder*-ate.)
Chain,	vinc̄ŭlum.	
Prison,	carcer-, (*nom.* career, 84.)	(in-*carcer*-ate.)
Gaul,	Gallus.	
Enemy	hostis, G. hostis	(*hostile.*)
From,	(after *receive, capere,*) ex *with abl.*	

Exercise 24.

107. Caius had broken his arm. The Gauls had broken the treaty. They had broken-through the treaty. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. Cæsar conquered the Gauls. It is not easy to conquer the Gauls. He had appeased Balbus with the greatest prudence. They will break-through their chains. They had broken-through the chains of their prison. It is easy to break (one's) arm. They are losing much[4] money. He was losing much pleasure. They will condemn Balbus to death. He had conquered his enemies. Balbus has broken his arm at Rome.

Nunquam utile est fœdus rumpĕre. Nunquam utīle est fidem fallĕre, quia semper est turpe. Facīle est puerorum anīmos donis placare. Turpe est fœdĕra negligĕre. Galli negligēbant fœdĕra. Ūtile est omnībus laborare. Nemo semper labōrat. Caius brachium suum Carthagĭne frēgĕrat. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis texit. Quantum[4] mellis ēmērunt! Quantum voluptatis ceperunt! Multum voluptatis ex meo dolōre cēpĕrant.

Lesson 25.

108. Vocabulary 22.

Color,	color, G. colōr-is. Gender?	
An estate,	fundus.	
Large,	grandis, grandis, grande.	
Immense; huge,	ingens, G. ingent-is.	
Conquered,	victus, a, um	(*victory, &c.,*
To dwell,	habĭtāre	(*habitation.*)
To reign,	regnāre.	
Sardis, *or* Sardes,	Sardes, (a *plural* noun,) G. Sardium, &c.	
Thebes,	Thēbæ, G. Thebārum: *plur.* noun.	
Victory,	victōria.	

Nightingale,	**luscīnia.**	
Much,	**multus.**	
To flourish,	**florēre, r.ᵍ floru.**	
Often,	**sæpe.**	
Peace,	**pax, pācis**	**(pacific.)**

109. Spem pretio non emo.
Hope for a price not do I buy.

110. ☞ After a verb of *buying*, '*for*' may be considered a *sign* of the ablative.

That is to say, '*for*' is to be untranslated; and the noun that expresses *the price*, put in the ablative.

Exercise 25.

[In what case is the price *for which* put?]

111. He has bought the estate *for* a large sum-of-money. *The conquered* often buy peace for an immense sum of money. He had dwelt *many years at Athens.*[11] Crœsus reigned *at Sardis.* He has bought a victory *with*[h] much blood. He will have dwelt *many years*[12] *at Rome.* The nightingale changes (her) color *in the autumn.*[12] *It* is impious, not to love (one's) parents. Caius had broken his arm. Cæsar has conquered the Gauls.

[When is the place *where* put in the *gen.*? when in the *abl.*?]

Thebis Pindărus floruit. *Multos annos* Romæ habitavĕrant. Impium est, leges patriæ violāre. *Invītus* legem violāvit. Invīti leges violavissent. Balbum capitis damnavērunt. Biennium Romæ habitabunt. Patriæ tuæ leges ne viŏla. Caium proditionis accusabunt.

Lesson 26.

112. Since, in the *third* conjugation, both the *present* and the *perfect* have their third person in '*it*,' it is well to learn how to distinguish a third person of the *perfect* from a third person of the *present*.

ᵍ Obs. R. means 'root of *present*;' and r. 'root of *perfect*.'
ʰ That is, '*for*' much blood.

113. *a*) If '*it*' has *s* or *x* before it, the tense is the *perfect*.
b) If '*it*' has *u* or *v* before it, and the word is of more than two syllables, the tense is very likely to be the perfect.[k]
c) If the first two consonants of the root are *the same*, the tense is the perfect.
(Thus '*te*tendit,' 'momordi,' is the perfect.)
d) If the root is of one syllable, and has a *long vowel*, the tense is *very often* the *perfect*.

114. Vocabulary 23.

Some verbs that form root of perfect by prefixing a syllable, which is called reduplication, that is *redoubling*.

Bite,	mord-ĕre, r. mŏmord	(*re-morse.*)
Hang, (neut.,)	pend-ĕre, r. pĕpend	(*sus-pense.*)
Shear, shave,	tond-ĕre, r. tŏtond	(*tonsure.*)
Shoulder,	humĕrus, G. i.	
Beard,	barba	(*barber.*)
Sheep,	ovis, G. ovis.	
Flay,	de-glūb-ĕre, (see 75.)	
Shepherd,	past-or, G. ōris	(*pastor.*)
Wolf,	lūpus, G. i.	
From,	ab, governing the ablative.	

Exercise 26.

115. The wolf had bitten the sheep. The shepherd will shear his sheep. A shepherd does not shear his sheep in the winter. The wolves have bitten my dog. Caius will shave (his) beard. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. The dog has bitten the wolf. They wrote the letter at Carthage. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. The girls will walk in the garden. The queen was walking through the city. They have surrounded the city with walls. They have *unwillingly* offended against the laws of their country.

Boni pastōris[7] est tondēre oves, non deglubĕre. Sagittæ ab humĕro pependērunt. Malus pastor deglupsit oves, non totondit. Pastōres agricŏlas risērunt. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērit. Boni canis non est,[7] oves mordēre. Tonde oves; ne deglūbe. Servus portas urbis clausērit. Puĕri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. Lusciniæ colōrem mutabunt. Auctumno lusciniæ colorem suum mutavĕrint.

---

[k] This is *certain*, in the case of *āv-it*, *īv-it*. But *arguit*, *congruit*, *imbuit*, *statŭit*, &c., are of the *present*.

Lesson 27.

116. Personal Pronouns.*

	N.	G.	D.	Ac.Ab.	N.A.	G.	D.Abl.
I,	ĕgo,	meī,	mĭhi,	mē,	nōs,	nostrum *or* nostri,	nōbīs,
Thou,	tū	tuī,	tĭbi,	tē,	vōs,	vestrum *or* vestri,	vōbīs.
Him, her, it, Them,[l]	(*none*)	suī,	sĭbi,	sē,	(*Plural the same as the singular.*)		

☞ *Myself; thyself; himself, herself, itself; themselves,* are also expressed (respectively) by these pronouns.

117. 'He gave *him* a book,' means 'he gave a book *to him.*'

'He is like *him,*' —— 'he is like *to him.*'

118. ☞ After verbs of *giving, paying, costing,* &c., put in '*to*' before one of the *accusatives,* and translate it by the *dative.*

119. ☞ Adjectives of *likeness* take the dative[m] after them.

This means, that what seems in English the *accusative* after '*like,*' must be translated into Latin by the *dative.*

120. Vocabulary 24.

	R. r. (r means *root of perfect.*)
To give,	dă-re, dĕd. This verb has ă in the last syll. but one.)
To sell,	vend-ĕre, vendĭd.
To stand; cost,	st-āre, stĕt (*station.*)
Prison,	carc-er, G. ĕris (*incarcerate.*)
Gold,	aurum.
Silver,	argentum.
Blood,	sanguis, sanguĭn-is, *mas.* (*sanguinary.*)
Roman,	Romānus.
Beast,	bellua, (of *large* beasts; *elephants, whales,* &c.)
Chain,	vinc̆ŭlum.

121. Isocrātes *orātor*[n] unam oratiōnem
Isocrates the orator one oration

vīginti talentis vendĭdit.
for twenty talents sold.

(The orator Isocrates sold one oration *for twenty talents.*)

---

* See Accidence, p. 144.

[l] *Him, her, it, them,* are not translated by *sui,* &c., unless they stand for the *same person* or *thing* that the *nominative* (or other *principal noun*) of the sentence stands for.

[m] But often the *genitive.* 'Similis *mei,*' means, he is like me in *character;* 'similis *mihi,*' that he is like me *in face.*

[n] When two nouns are spoken of the *same thing,* the second is put in the *same case* as the first.

The second is then said to be '*in apposition*' to the first.—Hence '*apposition*' is when the *second noun* is a *name,* or *title,* or *description* of the preceding one.

Exercise 27.

122. The Hippotămus,[o] a great beast, dwells in the Nile.[p] Caius, a wicked *man*, (98 note,) will sell his country for gold. He has sold his country for gold. *How much*[4] silver had he given his slave? Victory cost the Romans (117) much blood.[q] Do not sell your honor for gold. It is *the part*[7] of a Christian *to think little of*[3] gold and silver. Balbus had burst the chains of his prison. It is the part of a Christian to praise the good.

Improbōrum est,[7] patriam auro vendĕre. Anĭmus carcĕris sui vincŭla rumpēbat. Fidem suam auro vendidērunt. Turpe est, fidem suam auro vendĕre. *Quantum* tibi *argenti*[4] dedĕrat?* Pastor ovem tondēbat. Agricŏla labōrem finivĕrat.

Lesson 28.

Tenses of the verb 'esse,' *to be.*

		Sing.	*Plur.*
123.	Present,	est,	sunt.
	Imperfect,	ĕrăt.	
	Future,	ĕrĭt,	ĕrunt.

Root of perfect *fu;* and therefore the tenses with root of perfect formed regularly, fu*it*, fu*erat*, fu*ĕrit*, fu*isset*.

124. The verb '*to be*' takes a nominative (of either a *substantive* or an *adjective*) after it.

☞ An adjective *after* the verb agrees with the nominative *before* the verb.

---

[o] Hippopotămus. [p] Nilus.
[q] Remember that the *blood* was the *price* paid.
* Remember that in a *question*, the auxiliary verb stands before the nominative case

125. Vocabulary 25.

Happy,	felix,[r] G. felic-is beātus	(*felicity.*) (the *beatitudes*)
Contented,	contentus,[s] governs the *abl.*	
Worthy,	dignus,[s] governs *abl.*	(*dignity.*)
Unworthy,	indignus,[s] governs *abl.*	(*indignity*)
Endued,	prædītus.[s]	
Relying on,	frētus.[s]	
Strength,	vīres, G. virium, &c. Plural of *vis.*	
A little,	parvum, *neut. adj.* used as a substantive	
Free,	līber,[s] lībera, līberum	(*liberty.*)
Never,	nunquam.	

126. Terra est rotunda.
The earth is round.
(*Rotunda* nom. fem. to agree with *terra.*)
Plurīmæ stellæ soles sunt.
Very many stars suns are (are suns.)

Exercise 28.

127. No-one is always happy. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. Caius, a man (98) endued with the greatest virtue, praised my fidelity. Caius is not free from blame. Balbus, a man unworthy *of* life, does *no good*[4] (thing.) Balbus, relying *on* his strength, will burst the chains of his prison. It is unworthy of a Christian to praise the bad. The slaves are not free from blame. Christians are contented with a little. The boys have covered their faults with lies.

127.* (What does *luce* come from?—See 84, (1) a.)

Virtus parvo contenta est. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! Caius, homo vitâ indignus, patriam auro vendĭdit. Patris mei servus laude dignus est. Improborum est[7] malos laudare. Tarquinius Romæ regnavit. Arbor florebat. Caium boni omnes laudabant. Balbus multâ laude florebat.

---

[r] *Beātus* relates more to *true, inward* happiness than *felix*, which means *successful in one's undertakings*, &c.

[s] ☞ Dignus, indignus, prædītus, contentus, frētus, liber, &c., *govern* the ablative.

That is, the abl. follows them without a preposition: so that the English '*with*,' '*from*,' &c., must not be translated after them.

Lesson 29.

128. ☞ The compounds of *esse* (except *posse*) govern the dative.

129. VOCABULARY 26.

(Compounds of *esse*; governing the *dative*.)

	r.
To do good; to be serviceable,	prod-esse,[t] profu.
To be prejudicial,	ob-esse,[t] obfu.
To be engaged in,	inter-esse,[t] interfu.
Very many,	plurĭmi, æ, a, (plural.)
As many as possible,	quam[u] plurĭmi, æ, a.
The greatest possible, ——— *he can*, or *could*,	quam[u] maxĭmus, a, um.
To raise (forces,)	compārāre,
Forces,	copiæ, ārum, plur.
State,	civĭtas, G, tātis.
Battle,	prœlium.
Anger,	ira.
Human,	humānus.
Race,	gĕnŭs, G. genĕr-is. What *gender?* (*generis*
Becomes,	fit, followed by the nominative.

Exercise 29.

130. Balbus was engaged in the battle. *It is the part of a Christian*[7] to do-good to *as many as possible.* Cæsar raises the *greatest forces he can.* Anger has cost the human race much blood. Anger has often been prejudicial to states. Very-many men are unworthy of life. The Christian will do-good to *as many as possible.* Very-many cities were raising forces. Many states, relying on their strength, are raising forces. They condemned Caius, a man unworthy of life. The conquered will dwell at Sardes. Peace cost me a great sum-of-money. The son will avenge his father's blood.

Cæsar *quam maxĭmas* copias comparavĕrat. Caius, vir summo ingenio prædĭtus, Romæ habĭtat. Servus meus prœlio interfuit. Fides plurĭmis profuit. Nemo fit casu bonus. Christianorum est[7] avaritiam damnare. Caius multis prœliis interfuĕrat.

---

[t] These forms follow the conjugation of *esse* exactly: but *prodesse* drops its *d* before these tenses of *esse* that begin with a consonant. Thus *pro-sunt:* not *prod-sunt.*

[u] How *quam* gives the meaning of '*as possible*' to a superlative, is explained in the '*Differences of Idiom*,' number 9.

Lesson 30.

Subjunctive Verb.

131.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
PRESENT (R.[v])	ĕt,	ĕăt,	ăt,	ĭăt.
IMPERFECT (R.)	ārĕt,	ērĕt,	ĕrĕt,	īrĕt.*
Perfect (r.[v])	ĕrĭt.			
Pluperfect (r.)	issĕt.			

The third plural is formed regularly from all these forms by the insertion of an *n* before the *t*

132. The *subjunctive present* in a principal sentence is an *imperative*, or expresses a *wish*.

Hence, after *ut* (*that*) the subjunctive present is to be rendered, '*he, &c. may* —:' without *ut*, it must be '*let him* —, &c.,' or '*may he* —, &c.'

133. The *subjunctive present* used as an *imperative*, takes *nē* for '*not*,' (ne putet, *do not let him think*.)

Exercise 30.

134. *Write down in Latin:* That[w] he may shut. He would have shut. He would sleep. That he might irritate. That he may hear. That he may break. He may have broken. He would have burst. He would have divided.

Translate: Floreat. Ut florēret. Floruisset. Profuisset. Irrītet. Ut irrītet. Irritavisset. Divisisset. Ut cingĕret. Cingat. Scribat. Ut scribat. Scripsisset. Ut scribĕret. Plācet pueri animum. Ut filium suum sepeliret. Sepeliat filium. Iram meam placavissent. Servus nē claudat portas. Docet pueros, ut sapĕre discant.

Lesson 31.

135. ☞ The infinitive in English often expresses a *purpose:* but the infinitive in Latin *never* does.

---

[v] R. means *with root of present.*
r. ——— *root of perfect.*

* Obs. The 3d *sing.* of the *imperfect subjunctive* may be formed from the *infinitive* by adding *t*.

[w] '*Ut*' is '*that*.'

(*Eng.*) I am come *to see* you.
(*Lat.*) I am come *that* I may see you.

(*Eng.*) I came *to see* you.
(*Lat.*) I came *that* I *might see* you.

136. ☞ The English infin. expressing a *purpose* may be translated by '*ut*' with the subjunctive.

137. The *imperfect* subjunctive must be used, when the verb is of a *past* tense ;[x] the *present* follows the other tenses.

138. ☞ The 'perfect with *have*' (or 'perfect definite,' which denotes that something *has been done* in a *still present* period of time) is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.[y]
Obs. Neuter verbs of *motion* form their perfect definite *act.* with '*am* :' so that '*He is come*' = 'He *has come*,' and is followed by *pres. subjunctive*.[z]

139. Vocabulary 27.

	R.	r.	
To eat,	ĕd-ĕre,	ĕd (103)	(*edible.*)
To come,	vĕn-ire,	vĕn (103)	(*ad-vent.*)
To learn,	disc-ĕre,	dĭdĭc,* (113, *c.*)	
To read,	lĕg-ere, lĕg, (103.)		

140. (1) Vĕnit *ut* portas *claudat.*
He is coming that *the gates* he may shut.
(*He is coming* to shut *the gates.*)

(2) Vĕnit *ut* portas claudĕret.
He came that *the gates* he might shut
(*He came* to shut *the gates.*)

(3) Vĕnit *ut* portas claudat.
He is come that *the gates* he may shut.
(*He is come* to shut *the gates.*)

Exercise 31.

[What tense is 'he *was come*?' 138, z.]

141. He will come *to surround* the boy's head with a garland. He was come *to surround* the girl's head with a garland. He came *to irritate* the wasps. They

---

x That is, of the *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect.*
y It is just so in English :
I *write*, or *am writing*, } *that* I *may*, &c.
I *shall write*, }
I *have written*, }
I *was writing*, } *that* I *might*, &c.
I *wrote*, }
I *had written*, }
z So too '*was come*' is the pluperf.
* The syllable prefixed is called a *reduplication*.

were come *to pull-down* Sulla's house. He *was come* to give *me* an estate. They had come *to condemn* me *to death.*[8] Do not shut the gate. He was come *to raise the greatest forces he could.*[9] Let the girls sing. Let the boys learn[a] to read. The boy has learned to play.

[Render *ut* and the *subjunctive* by the *infinitive.*]

Veniat servus, *ut* portas urbis *claudat.* Vēnit,[b] ut *quam maxĭmas*[9] copias compăret. Lĕgit, ut discat. Edit, ut vivat. Edit, ut vivĕret. Non edunt, ut vivant; sed vivunt, ut edant. *Romæ* plurĭmi vivunt, ut edant. Veniat Caius, ut epistŏlam suâ manu scribat. Cantet puella. Ludant pueri. Vēnerat Caius, ut Balbi animum donis placaret. Quiescant servi. Nemo quiescat. Vēnit, ut me audiat. Venerunt, ut me audiant. Venerunt, ut te audirent. Edunt, ut vitam conservent.

Lesson 32.

142. After '*such*,' '*so*,' '*of such* a kind,' &c., '*that*' must be translated by '*ut*,' and the verb after '*that*' must be in the *subjunctive* in Latin, though in English it is in the *indicative.*

143. VOCABULARY 28.

So great,	tantus.	
Mountain,	mons, mont-is, *mas.*	
Highest,	summus	(*summit.*)
Top of, / Middle, *or* midst of,	summus, / medius, } *in agreement with* their subst.	
Snow,	nix, nīv-is. *Gender?*	
Alps,	Alpes, Alpium, &c.	
Cold,	frīg-ŭs, ŏris. *Gender?*	(*frigid.*)
Not-yet,	nondum.	
Fish,	piscis, *G.* pisc-is, *mas.*	(*piscatory.*)
Pavement,	pavīmentum.	
Wine,	vīnum	(*vinous* fermentation.)
Preserve,	conservare	(*conservative.*)
To swim,	nătāre.	
To melt,	lĭquesc-ĕre, licu	(*liquid.*)

---

[a] *Disco* is followed by the *infinitive*, (not by *ut* with the subjunctive.)

[b] Obs. When the *present* subjunctive follows a *perfect*, the perfect must be translated by '*has*,' or, if it is a verb of motion, by '*is*;' because the use of the present proves it to be the *perfect definite.* See 137.

144. In summis Alpĭbus *tantum est* frigus,
On the top of the Alps *so great* is the cold,
ut nix ibi nunquam *liquescat.*
that the snow there never *melts.*

145. (*Eng.*) On the *top* of the mountain.
(*Lat.*) On the mountain highest. (In *summo* monte.)
(*Eng.*) In the middle (*or* midst) of the waters.
(*Lat.*) In the *middle* waters. (In *mediis* aquis.)

Exercise 32.

146. *On the top of the mountain*[u] the snow never melts. *On the top of the Alps* the snows never melt. The cold is so-great, that the snow is not-yet melted.[c] The fish is swimming in *the middle of the water.* Boys swim *on the top of the waters.* The pavement is swimming with wine. Let the slave come.[d] He was eating, to preserve his life. He will swim, to preserve his life. May the snows melt! The boy is singing on the top of the oak. The boys will dance on the top of the mountain.

Obs. The *subjunctive* after *ut* must be rendered by the indicative, when a *tantus* stands in the former clause.

In *summis montĭbus* tantum erat frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescĕret. Vēnit, ut patriam auro vendat. Improbi homĭnes patriam auro vendidērunt. In summo monte tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nondum licuĕrit.[e] Tanta est pueri industria, ut multa discat. Nix est candida. Venit, ut patriæ suæ leges violaret. Avis in summâ arbŏre cantabat.

Lesson 33.

147. Subjunctive of *esse.*
Present, sit.—Imperfect, esset. (Fuĕrit, fuisset, regular from *fu.*)

---

c '*Is melted,*' like '*is come,*' is the *perf. active.*
d The *third person* of the *present* subjunctive is used as an *imperative.*
e What was said of the *present* and *imperfect* subjunctive, may be extended to the *perfect* and *pluperfect.*
☞ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the subjunctive are the regular attendants of the *past tenses*

148. The verb '*can*,' '*am able*,' is made up of an old adjective '*potis*, meaning '*able*,' and the verb '*to be*:' but the two words were run together into *one* with some change.

149. To get the third persons of '*to be able*' from '*to be*.'

☞ Place *pot* before the *third* persons of *to be*; throwing away the *f* from those that begin with that letter; and change *t* into *s* before another *s*, shortening *potess* into *poss*. We thus get, (from the forms in 123,) *potest, possunt: potĕrat: potĕrit, potĕrunt:* and *potu* (for *potfu*) for the root of the *perfect*.

The subjunctive will be *possit, posset*, &c. Infin. *posse*.

150. Some verbs whose root ends in a *k* sound, throw away the *k* sound before *s*:

sparg-ĕre, spars.
merg-ĕre, mers.

151. VOCABULARY 29.

Nest,	nĭdus.	
Bird,	ăvis, *G.* avis	(*aviary.*)
Seed,	sēmen, semĭnis. *Gender?*	(*disseminate.*)
Dangerous,	pericul-ōsus.*	
Danger,	periculum	(*peril.*)
Victim,	victĭma.	
Altar,	āra.	
Sprinkle,	adspergo, r. adspers.	
Priest,	sacerdo-s, ōtis R. r.	(*sacerdotal.*)
To plunge into, (*trans.*)	immerg-ĕre, immers	(*immerse.*)
Scatter,	sparg-ĕre, spars.	
To build, (of a *nest*,)	con-stru-ĕre, con-strux†	(*construct.*)

152. The particles *nĕ* and *num* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun, or adverb of *place*, *time*, or *manner*, one of these particles should be put in.

Nĕ should always *follow* and be *joined to* a word. If there is a '*not*' in the sentence, it should be joined to the '*non*,' (nonnĕ.)

153. Nonnĕ scribit? *Is not he writing?*
Scribitnĕ Caius? *Is Caius writing?*
Num scribit Caius? *Is Caius writing?* (No.)
Arare potest. *He can plough.*
Potestnĕ arare? *Can he plough?*

OBS. '*Num*' is used when the answer '*no*' is expected; so that '*num scribit Caius?*' means, 'Caius is not writing, is he?'

---

* Adjectives in *ōsus* mean *full of* what the substantive they are derived from denotes.

† This seems a very irregular perfect; probably the verb was *strus-ĕre* originally.

Exercise 33.

When the answer '*no*' is expected, it will be added thus: [No.]
☞ The '*to*' of the infin. is omitted after *can, may, might*, &c., and *see, hear, feel, bid, dare, make.*[s]

154. Does he live to eat? [No.] Does not he eat to live? The husbandman has scattered seeds. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. They *are come*[29] to condemn[28] you *to death*.[8] Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?[10] [No.] The boy's industry is so-great, that he can learn all things. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? Are you shearing the sheep?

[In rendering, omit the *nĕ* or *num*, but make the sentence a *question*.]
[In a *question*, the *auxiliary verb* must stand before the nominative case: and the form '*do—does*,' '*did*,' must be used for the *present* and *perfect* respectively. (The *perfect definite* must still be translated by *have, has*.)]

Caius se in flumen immersit. Galli manus in aquam immersĕrant. Periculōsum est, *hiĕme*[12] se in flumen immergĕre. Puer se in flumen immergat.[30] *Agricolārum est*[7] semĭna auctumno[9, b)] spargĕre. Nonnĕ in *summis Alpĭbus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? Avis *in summâ quercu* nidum construxĕrat. Scripsitnĕ Caius? Sacerdos victimarum sanguĭne aram adspersit. Num rex portas urbis suâ manu claudet? Nonnĕ boni est pastōris[7] tondĕre oves, non deglubere?

Lesson 34.

Root of supine.

155. There are two *su-pines* in Latin: one in *um*, and another in *u*.

156. ☞ The supine in *um* follows verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose:* it must be Englished by the *present infinitive active*, (amātum, *to love*.)

---

[s] Hence the verb that follows *can, could*, &c., is in the *infinitive* mood; because 'I can see," is the same as "I am able to see."

157. The supine in *u* follows some *adjectives*, and is Englished by the *present infinitive passive.*

But it may be Englished by the *infin. act.* when that gives better English.[h] Both supines are *really* active: *factum* is ('*for*) doing:' *factu*, 'in doing.'

These forms very seldom occur: but they are given in grammars and dictionaries, because two of the participles are formed from the *root of the supine.*[i]

158. The root of the supine (which will be marked *by ȩ.*) ends in *t ;* sometimes in *s.*

159. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the *root of supine* is regularly obtained by adding

1.	2.	4.	
āt,	*ĭt*,	*īt*,	to the roots of the present.
(amāt)	(monĭt)	(audīt.)	

In the *third*, *t* is added to the root: but sometimes *s*, (especially to the *t* sounds.)

160. Obs. *Any p* sound before *t* is *pt*, (or pt = *pt*, or *bt.*)
Any *k* sound ———— *ct*, (or ct = *ct*, *gt*, or *qut.*)
Hence *scrib*-tum, *reg*-tum, must be written *scriptum*, *rectum.* Remember that *d*, and sometimes *g*, will be thrown away before *s.* (See 96, 150.)

161. Vocabulary 30.

To forage, (supine,)	pabulātum.
To fetch water, (supine,)	aquātum.
To lie down,	cubĭtum, (sup. from *cubāre.*)
To go to bed; to go to roost,	cubĭtum īre.
To send,	mitt-ĕre, r. mīs, (*for* mit-s; ρ. miss) (re-*mit.*)
To go,	īre.[k]
To go a hunting,	venātum īre, (venātum, *sup.* to hunt.)
To go away,	ab-īre,[k] r. abi.
To return,	red-īre,[k] r. redi.
Hen,	gallīna.
Evening,	vesp-er, G. ĕris (*vespere.*)
Legion,	lĕgi-o, G. ōnis. *Gender?*
Fourth,	quartus.
Pleasant,	jūcundus.

162. Mittit legātos pacem *petītum.*
He sends ambassadors peace to sue-for.

---

[h] See 163.

[i] It would be far better to give the *root of the supine*, than a fictitious form.

[k] *Ire* is of the *fourth*, but with some irregularities: r. Iv: ρ. Ĭt.

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Pres.	it,	eunt.	eat.	The participle, which will be wanted presently, is *iens*, G. *euntis*, &c.
Imperf.	ībat.		īret.	
Fut.	ībit.			Gerunds, *eundi*, &c.

The compounds *ăb-īre*, *rĕd-īre*, are conjugated exactly in the same way, (prefixing *ab*, *red*, to these forms,) but they generally drop *v* from the root of the perf (*redi-ĕrit*, *redi-isset*, &c.; not *redivĕrit*, *redivisset.*)

163. (*Eng.*) It is hard *to say*.[1]
(*Lat.*) It is hard (*in*) *saying*, (difficĭle est *dictu*.)

Exercise 34.

164. The hens *go to roost* in the evening. The boy had gone a hunting. Cæsar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. Has not Cæsar sent the fourth legion *to fetch water?* Are not the boys gone[29] a hunting? Cæsar has not-yet returned to *Rome*.[m] Cæsar had returned from Geneva to Rome. Balbus will go-away in the evening.

[Form the supine in u from aud-īre: fac-ĕre, (159.)]

Nonnĕ cubĭtum eunt gallĭnæ vespĕri? Timĭda avis *in summâ quercu* nidum construēbat. Plato Tarentum vēnit. Servum Athēnas misĕrat. Caium Athēnas mittat.[30] Jucundum est audītu. Difficile est factu, (163.) Nonnĕ sacerdōtes aram sanguĭne adspersērunt? Sacerdōtis est, aras omnes victimarum sanguĭne adspergĕre. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram sanguine adspergat.

Lesson 35.

PARTICIPLES.

Active.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
165. Present (R.)	ans,	ens,	ens,	iens.
Perfect (none.)				
Future (ℊ.)	ūrus.			

Passive.

Perfect (ℊ.) us.
Future (or 'participle of *necessity*;' R.)

---

[1] Hence after *hard, pleasant*, &c., *the active infinitive* is to be translated by the *supine* in *u*.

[m] ☞ After a verb *of motion*, '*to*' is never a sign of the *dative*, but is to be translated by *ad*.
But '*ad*' is omitted before the names of *towns* and *small islands*.
When the place is a *town* or *small island*, the place *to which* is put in the accusative; the place *from which*, in the ablative.

1.	2.	3.	4.
andus,	endus,	endus,	iendus.

165.* The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*.
The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed, en, t, &c.*
The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*. A crime *to be abhorred*.)
The participle in *rus* must be translated by '*about to* (write;)' or, '*going to* (write.)'

166. Vocabulary 31.

R.	r.	ρ.	
frang,	frĕg,	fract	(for fragt.)
sparg,	spars,	spars	(for spargs.)
adsperg,	adspers,	adspers	(for adspergs.)
claud,	claus,	claus	(for clauds.)
immerg,	immers,	immers	(for immergs.)
rump,	rŭp,	rupt.	

Exercise[n] 35.

167. Loving. Surrounding. Being surrounded. Being broken. (A stick) to be broken. About to break. Dwelling. Living. To be dwelt in. About to dwell. Going to break. About to scatter. About to burst the chains of his prison. An altar to be surrounded with flowers. A boy to be loved. Going to disregard. Going to praise.

Immersūrus. Porta claudenda. Semĭna spargenda. Agricŏla sparsūrus semĭna. Violatūrus legem. Claudens portas. Porta clausa. Semĭna sparsa. Sacerdos aram adspersurus.

Lesson 36.

168. Vocabulary 32.

(Words that are construed like *proper names* of *towns*.)

On the ground,	hūmi.
At home,	dŏmi, fem.
At my house,	dŏmi meæ, (At his own house, *domi suæ*.)

---

[n] First find root of supine (1) by adding *t* to *cing*, (159, 160,) and to *frag*, (see 105, 159, and 160;) (2) by adding *s* to *merg*, *sparg*, *claud*, (see 159;) and (3) from the roots of *viol*-ēre, *habit*-ēre, (by 159.)

On service; in the field,	militiæ.
Home,	dŏmum, (after verbs of *motion*.)
From home,	dŏmo.
In the country,	rūri, *abl.* (or, rure.)
Into the country,	rūs, (*neut. acc.*)
From the country,	rūre.

Both,[o] (adv.)	et; properly *and*.
Neither,	neque, *or* nec, } *neque* is rather to be *preferred*
Nor,	neque, *or* nec, } before a vowel.
To sing,	căn-ĕre, (r. cĕcĭn; ρ. cant.)

169. (*Eng.*) Cæsar *having conquered* his enemies, &c.
(*Lat.*) Cæsar, *when* he *had conquered* his enemies, &c.
(or) Cæsar, his enemies being conquered, &c.

(*a*) Cæsar, *quum vicisset* hostes, &c.
(*b*) (or) Cæsar *victis hostibus*, &c.

170. A substantive and participle are said to be put *absolutely*, when they are not *governed* by the *verb*, or any other word in the sentence.

☞ In Latin, words *put absolutely* are in the *ablative*.

(This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

171. Obs. ☞ The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense.

Exercise 36.

172. Balbus *having crowned*[p] the boy's head with a garland, went away. The slave *having shut*[q] the gate of the city, is going *to bed*.[11] Cæsar having conquered his enemies, (169, *b*,) will return *to Rome*. The leaves are falling down *on the ground*. Cæsar is remaining at his-own-house. Balbus was with me[r] *both* at home and on-service. Balbus had lived *many years* in the country.

(What is *mecum* made up of?)

Balbus, *quum* manus in aquam *immersisset*, abiit.

---

[o] Thus, instead of '*both* Caius *and* Balbus,' the Romans said, '*and* Caius *and* Balbus,' (*et* Caius *et* Balbus.)

[p] Translate by '*when he had crowned*.'

[q] Translate by '*the gate of the city being shut*.'

[r] Obs. *Cum*, '*with*,' is written *after*, and *joined to*, the *ablatives* of the personal pronouns, (*mĕcum*, *tĕcum*, *nobiscum*, &c.: not *cum me*, nor *me cum*, separately.)

Folia nondum deciděrant. Puer *Romam* mittendus est. Balbus nec[a] domi nec militiæ mecum fuit. Caius rus ex urbe evolavĕrit. Caius nondum rure rediit. Et Cæsar et Balbus Romam rediĕrunt. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram floribus cingĕret. Sacerdos, quum aras sanguine adspersisset, abiit.

[Observe: In rendering *an ablative absolute*, the substantive must be placed first, *without a preposition*, and the participle (if the Latin participle is that of the *perf. pass.*) is to be that compounded with '*being*.'
But having so translated it, you may turn the *participle* into that of the *perf. act.* (with '*having*') *governing* the substantive, whenever this change improves your sentence without altering its meaning. Example: "*fracto* puĕri *brachio*," the *arm* of the boy *being broken*: this is the same in meaning with, "the boy having broken his arm." Either form of expression may be used.]

Fracto puĕri *brachio*, abit. Alexander, victo Darīo, rediit. Avis, constructo in *summâ quercu* nido, canit. *Violātis* patriæ *lēgibus*, vitâ[24] indignus est. *Fundo* in tres partes *divīso*, redit Tarentum. Sacerdos, adspersâ sanguĭne arâ, abiit. Caius, ruptis vincŭlis, evolavit. Scriptâ epistŏlâ, abiit.

Lesson 37.

Gerunds.

173. The *Gerunds* in *di* are formed from the root of the present, and end in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi.

(Hence they are always like the *gen.* of the *participle* in *dus*.)

174. The gerund is translated by the '*participial substantive*' in '*ing*.'

☞ When what is in *form* the participle in *ing*, *governs* or *is governed*, but has nothing to *agree with*, it is the *participial substantive*.

---

[a] In translating two *nec*'s or *neque*'s, it is often better to *borrow* a '*not*' from them for the verb, and then to render them by *either—or*, instead of *neither—nor*.
Thus, '*he was* with me *neither* yesterday *nor* the day before,' would become, '*he was not* with me *either* yesterday *or* the day before.'

175. The *gerund* is a *verbal substantive* of the neuter gender, but must borrow the infinitive mood for its *nominative;* it has no plural.

N.	(occīdĕre, *killing*.)	The Gerund governs a noun; in the *same case*, of course, as the verb it comes from.
G.	occidendi, *of killing*.	
D.	occidendo, *to* or *for killing*.	
Acc.	(occidere) . . . . . *killing*. / occidendum, *when governed by a preposition*, *killing*.	
Abl.	occidendo, *by killing*.	

176. VOCABULARY 33.

Frugality,	parsĭmōnia			(*parsimony*.)
Science,	scientia.			
Superfluous; unnecessary,	supervăcuus, (from *super*, above; *vacuus*, empty.)			
Expense,	sumptus, G. ūs			(*sumptuary* laws.)
Nature,	natūra.			
Desirous,	cupīdus			(*cupidity*.)
New,	nŏvus			(*novelty*.)
Art,	ars, G. artis.			
Skilful (in,)	perītus, (governs *gen.*)			
Horse,	ĕquus, ī			(*equerry*.)
Character,	mōres, G. morum, pl.			(*morals*.)
To see,	vĭd-ēre, vīd, vīs			(*visible*.)
		r.	p.	
To discover; show,	de-tĕg-ĕre,	tex,	tect	(de-*tect*.)
To play,	lūd-ĕre,	lūs,	lūs	(de-*lude*.)
To teach,	dŏc-ēre,	docu,	doct	(*doctor*.)
To tame; master,	dŏm-āre,	dŏmu,	domīt	(in-*dom*-itable.)

177. (*Eng.*) While they are playing.
(*Lat.*) *During playing*, (inter ludendum.)

Exercise 37.

178. Economy is the science of *avoiding* unnecessary expenses. Man is by nature desirous[t] of seeing and hearing new (things.) Balbus is skilful *in mastering* a horse. He is come *to master*[38] the horse. The character of boys discovers itself *while they are playing*. He learns by teaching. *How much pleasure*[4] (there) is in learning!

Nonnĕ potest docendo discĕre? Cupĭdi sunt docendi *Sapientis est*[7] supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Discat[30] puer supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Abeat *Romam*. Discat, ut docēre possit. *Quantum tempŏris*[4] ludendo amisērunt! Nemo mortem poterit vitare. Inviti vēnĕ-

---

[t] Adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, recollection*, &c., (or their *opposites*, govern the *genitive*

rant, ut Sullæ domum evertĕrent. Eversâ Sullæ domo, abiit. Num pueri ludendo discunt? Puer cupĭdus est discendi. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Discrĕpat a timendo confidĕre.

Lesson 38.

Participle in dus.

179. Instead of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with it.

180. Thus, (*Eng.*) The intention *of writing* a letter.
(*Lat.*) Consilium *scribendi* epistŏlam.
(or) Consilium *scribendæ*[u] epistŏlæ.

181. Thus then, '*epistŏla scribenda*' may be declined throughout.

Sing.
N. Epistŏla scribenda, *a letter to be written.*
G. epistŏlæ scribendæ, *of writing a letter.*
D. epistŏlæ scribendæ, *to* or *for writing a letter.*
Acc. (ad) epistŏlam scribendam, *to write a letter*, (or, *for writing a letter.*)
Abl. epistŏlâ scribendâ, *by writing a letter.*

Plur.
N. epistŏlæ scribendæ, *letters to be written.*
G. epistŏlārum scribendārum, *of writing letters.*
D. epistŏlis scribendis, *to* or *for writing letters.*
Acc. (ad) epistŏlas scribendas, *to write letters*, (or, *for writing letters.*)
Abl. epistŏlis scribendis, *by writing letters.*

182. Vocabulary 34.

[The forms following a verb are r. and p.]

Book,	lĭber, lĭbri	(*library.*)
Very fond,	studiōsus.	
Plato,	Plato, G. Platōnis.	
To retain,	re-tĭn-ēre, rĕtĭnu, retent (re, *back*; tenēre, *hold.*)	(*retentive.*)
Barbarous,	barbărus.	
Custom,	consuetūd-o, G. ĭnis. *Gender?*	
To sacrifice,[v]	im-mŏlare	(*immolate.*)
Fonder,	cupĭdi-or, G. ōris.	
To buy,	ĕm-ĕre, ēm, empt.	
To snatch; seize,[w]	arrīpĕre, arripu, arrept, (ad, *to*; rapere, *snatch.*)	

---

[u] The *real* meaning of 'consilium epistŏlæ scribendæ' is, '*the design of* (= about) *a letter* to be written.'

[v] Properly, 'to strew the sacred flour or cake (*mola* salsa) on the victim's head: from *in*, on, and *mola*.

[w] This verb, though of the third, follows the *fourth* in the *imperfect*, &c., as will be explained below. See note [x].

Opportunity,	occasi-o, G. ōnis. *Gender?*	
To practise,	exercēre.	
Desire,	cupidĭt-as, ātis	(*cupidity.*)
To rule,	rĕgĕre, rex, rect	(*di-rect.*)
War,	bellum.	
To carry on; wage,	gĕr-ĕre, gess, gest.	
Time,	temp-ŭs, ŏris. *Gender?*	(*temporal.*)

Exercise 38.

183. The boy is very-fond *of writing letters*. Demosthĕnes was very-fond *of hearing Plato*. *In the times* of Cicero the Gauls retained the barbarous custom *of sacrificing men*. Seize every opportunity *of practising virtue*. Do not lose the opportunities *of practising virtue*. Nature has given *us* a desire *of seeing the truth*. The Romans were fond *of waging war*. Timotheus was skilful[39] in governing a state.

[Obs. Any case of the *partic. in dus*, except the nominative, must be rendered by the same case of the *participial substantive;* and the substantive it agrees with, must stand as the accusative *after it*. Thus. "Balbus seized every opportunity *of practising* virtue."]

Nonnĕ fundum *ingenti pecuniâ*[21] ēmĕrat? Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendæ virtūtis* arripiēbat. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum*, quam *legendōrum*. Cæsar belli gerendi perītus fuit. Nonne mores puerorum se inter ludendum (177) detĕgunt?

Lesson 39.

184. Obs. After '*is*,' '*are*,' and the other parts of the verb '*to be*,' the form of the *infinitive passive* is used as a participle of the future passive, to signify *duty, necessity*, &c.

185. Hence, what is in form the *passive infinitive*, is to be translated by the *participle in dus*, when it follows '*is*,' '*are*,' &c.

186. Virtus colenda est.
Virtue to-be-cultivated *is*.
[Virtue *is to be cultivated.*]

☞ The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the

dative with the *part. in dus;* with other words it is generally governed in the ablative by *a* or *ab.*

187. Vocabulary 35.

By accident,	cāsu; *abl.* of casus	(*casual.*)
Some,	nonnulli. æ, a, (non, *not;* nullus, *none.*)	
To sharpen,	acuĕre, acu, acūt	(*acute.*)
Unprofitable,	inutĭlis, (in, *not;* utĭlis, *useful.*)	
A game,	lūsus, G. ūs.	
Inclined,	propensus	(*propensity.*)
To understand,	intellĭg ĕre, intellex, intellect	(*intelligence.*)
To do; act,	ăgĕre, ĕg, act.	
Born,	nātus.	
To undertake,	sus-cīpĕre,[x] suscēp, suscept, (sub, *under;* capĕre, *take.*)	
To impel,	impellĕre, impŭl, impuls	(*impulse.*)
	Not only — but also.	
	Non solum — verum etiam.	
To spend, (time, &c.,)	impendĕre, impend, impens, (followed by *dat.* of participle *in dus.*)	

188. *Ne* Balbus *quidem.*
Not *Balbus* even, (not even Balbus.)

Ne patrem *quidem* amat.
Not *his father* even *does he love!*

Obs. '*Not*' with '*even,*' (quidem,) in the sentence, must be translated by *nē;* and *quidem* must *follow* the word to which the *even* belongs; the nē being put *before* that word.

Exercise 39.

189. Every opportunity of practising virtue[14] is *to be seized.*[x] *Even* Caius did *not* seize every opportunity of practising virtue. The gate is to be shut *in the evening.*[12] Balbus *having flown*[35] to the country[37] from the town, bought an estate *for* an immense sum-of-money. The boys are fonder of playing than of learning. *How much time*[4] do they spend *in reading books?*[14] Let him buy the estate for a large sum-of-money.

[Obs. After *ad*, the *gerund* or *part. in dus* may be rendered by the *infinitive.*]

Nemo est casu bonus: discenda est virtus. Sunt nonnulli *acuendis* puerōrum *ingeniis* non inutĭles lusus. Non solum ad discendum propensi sunt, verum etiam ad docendum. Homo ad intelligendum et agendum natus

---

x Some verbs of the *third* have the terminations of the *fourth*, (in the parts hitherto given,) except in the *imperfect subjunctive*, the *infinitive*, and the *imperative*. Thus *arripere* has arripiebat, arripiet, arripiat, arripiens, arripiendus.

est. Multa nos ad suscipiendum discendi labōrem impellunt. Multa impellunt Caium, *ut* discendi labōrem *suscipiat.*[x] Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detexĕrant. Omnem dicendi* elegantiam augēbit legendis oratoribus et poētis.

Lesson 40.

Verbs followed by the dative.

190. Some verbs are followed by the *dative*, where we use no preposition; and should therefore be led by the English to put an *accusative*.

191. A *dative* put—remember pray—
After *envy*, *spare*, *obey*,
Persuade, *believe*, *command*; to these
Add *pardon*, *succor*, and *displease*,
With *vacāre* 'to have leisure,'
And *placēre* 'to give pleasure:'
With *nubēre*, (of the *female* said,)
The English of it is 'to *wed*:'
Servīre add, and add *studēre*,
Heal, *favor*, *hurt*, *resist*, and *indulgēre*.†

192. VOCABULARY 36.

Good for; useful,	utĭlis	(*utility.*)
Fit for,	idōneus; governs *dative*.	
To envy,	invīdēre, invīd, invīs, (in, *into*; vidēre, *to see.*)	
To spare,	parcĕre, pĕperc.	
To obey,	pārēre.	
To believe,	crēdĕre, credĭd, credĭt	(*credible.*)
To pardon,	ignoscĕre, ignōv, (in, *not*; noscĕre, to *know.*)	
To succor,	succurrĕre,[y] succurr, succurs, (sub, *under*; currĕre, *to run.*)	
	subvĕnīre,[y] subvēn, subvent, (sub, *under*; venire, *to come.*)	

[x] See note p. 66.

* *In* speaking.

† This mode of arranging the rules by rhymes, for the purpose of aiding the memory, though very common in England, is quite novel in this country. Such teachers as do not approve of this method, (among whom the editor confesses himself to be,) can easily put them in the usual form as contained in the Grammar. At the suggestion of those whose judgment is entitled to great weight, they have been left just as Mr. Arnold has given them in the English edition.—AM. ED.

[y] Of those, *succurrēre*, 'to *run* to support,' is stronger than *subvēnire*, 'to *come* to support.'

To please,	placēre.	
To displease,	displicēre	
To have leisure for,	vācāre	
To marry, (properly, '*to veil*,')	nubĕre, nupsi, nupt	(*nuptials.*)
To command,	impĕrāre.	
To persuade.	persuādēre, persuāsi, (per, *thoroughly*; suadēre, *advise.*)	

Exercise 40.

193. How do you translate *not only—but also?* (187.)

194. *It is the duty of* a Christian to envy nobody. Do not envy the good. It is pleasant to succor the miserable. Atticus pleased me. Nobody will believe the wicked. Death spares nobody. They had spared the gate of the city. Portia will marry Caius. Drusilla married Caius *in the autumn*. He spares himself in the winter. He does not spare even himself. He spares *not only* himself, *but also* his slave. You will never have persuaded me. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

195. Obs. *Est, sunt*, may be rendered '*must*,' '*ought*,' or '*should*,' when they have a participle in *dus* with them; the part. in *dus* being translated by the *infin. passive*.

Cæsar legendo libro vacābit. Christiāni est patriæ suæ legĭbus parēre. Ignosce mihi. Nemo tibi credet. Improbus patriæ legĭbus non parēbit. Num legĭbus parēbunt improbi, violātâ fide? Discant Christiāni animis suis imperāre. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

Lesson 41.

196. The most common terminations of the persons in the active voice are :—

Sing.			*Plur.*		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
m,	s,	t.	mus,	tis,	nt.

197. By changing *t* into these terminations, we may

get all the persons of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *indicative*, and of *all the subjunctive*.[s]

198. But observe the vowel before *mus, tis*, is long in these tenses, except in the *perf. subjunctive*, in which it is *common*.[a]

199. VOCABULARY 37.

[Verbs governing the *dative* continued.]	
To be the slave of,	servīre, servī, (*or* servīv,) servītum.
To devote one's self to; aim at,	stŭdēre.
To hurt, injure,	nŏcēre.
To resist,	resistĕre, restĭtī.
To favor,	fāvēre, fāvī, fautum.
To indulge; humor,	indulgēre, indulsī.

Exercise 41. [*See question* 28, of "Questions."]

200. I would have favored Caius. You would have resisted anger. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. We would have indulged the desire. I was hurting myself. You were hurting me. You were flaying the sheep, not shearing (them.) Come *to shut* the gates of the city. Was he come, *to shut* the gates of the city? You had hurt Caius. You had been-the-slave-of passion. Do not be-the-slave-of passion. You were come *to surround* the girl's head with a crown. He had displeased Caius. You were sparing the enemies.

[What is the *imperative* of *vĕnīre*? What tense is used as an *imperative*? (The subj. present.)]

Violābas legem. Barbăram consuetudĭnem immolandōrum homĭnum retinuissētis. Iræ *multos annos* serviĕras. Ne violētis fidem. Portas urbis ne claudātis. Vĕni, ut mihi succurras. Regendis anĭmi cupiditatibus studeāmus. Homo magna habet adjumenta ad obtinendam sapientiam. Tondendæ sunt oves, non deglubendæ. Nonnĕ claudendæ sunt urbis portæ? Exercenda est virtus.

---

[s] Refer to the table in the Accidence, p. 150.

[a] That is, *long* or *short*. The old grammarians made it short in the *perf.*, *long* in the *fut. perfect*.

Lesson 42.

201. '*Is*,' properly '*that*,' is used for *he, she, it,* plur. *they*,[b] when they do not mean the *same person* or *thing* that the nominative case means.

202. '*Is*' has neuter *id*.
The other cases are formed *as if* from '*eus*, *ea*, *eum*,' making the gen. *eius*, written *ējus*, and dat. *ei*.
But in the plural, the *nom. masc.* and the *dative* are generally *ii*, and *iis*, instead of *eis*.[c]

203. VOCABULARY 38.

Long,	diu. Longer, *diutius*.	
To sin,	peccāre.	
To recall,	revŏcāre.	
King,	rex, rēgis.	
Literature,	lĭtĕræ, (plur.)	
So,	tam.	
So great,	tantus.	
Multitude,	multĭtūd-o, G. ĭnis.	
To count,	nūmĕrāre.	
Star,	stella,	(con-*stella*-tion.)

204. Si diutius vixisset, nemĭnem habuisset parem.
If longer he had lived, *nobody* he would have had *equal*.
(*If he had lived longer, he would have had no equal.*)

205. OBS. ☞ After '*if*' the *pluperf. indicative* must be translated by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

Exercise 42.

206. If they had lived longer, they would have done that. If Caius had lived longer, he would have given *me*[22] an estate. If they had obeyed you, they would be

---

[b] *Is*, '*that* person' = *he*.
Ea, '*that* female' = *she*.
Id, '*that* thing' = *it*, &c.

[c] Hence the cases are,
Is, eă, id: *G.* ējus: *D.* ei: *Acc.* eum, eam, id: *Abl.* eo. eā, eo.
Plur. ii, eæ, eă: *G.* eōrum, eārum, eōrum: *D.* and *Abl.* iis, (*or* eis:) *Acc.* eos, eas, eă. See Accidence, p. 146.
Obs. When *his, her, its; theirs*, are to be translated by '*is*,' they are translated by the genitive.
When *his, her, its; theirs*, are translated by *suus, sua* must *agree* with its substantive.
Ejus libri, *his* books; *eōrum* libri, *their* books; *sui* libri, *his* or *their* books

alive.[d] *So-great* is the multitude of the stars, *that*[31] you cannot count them. I would have pardoned you, if you had done that. They were aiming *at recalling the kings.*[42]

☞ [When the pluperf. subjunctive has *si*, it must be translated by '*had*,' not by '*would have*.']

Peccavissent, si id fecissent. Pareat animus, non impĕret.[e] Nonnĕ Caius scribendæ epistŏlæ vācavit? Patriam auro, si potuisses, vendidisses. Nonnĕ mores puerōrum se *inter ludendum* detĕgunt? Malus pastor deglupsisset oves, non totondisset. Si oratōres et poētas legisset, auxisset elegantiam dicendi.

Lesson 43.

207. *Sing.* Mihi[f] scribendum est, *I must* or *should write.*
Tibi scribendum est, *you must* or *should write.*
Illi scribendum est, *he must* or *should write.*
Plur. Nobis scribendum est, *we must* or *should write.*
Vobis scribendum est, *you must* or *should write.*
Illis scribendum est, *they must* or *should write.*

208. (*Eng.*) I *must* (or *should*) write.
(*Lat.*) It is *to-be-written* by me.

209. ☞ After the part. in *dus*, the person *by whom* is put in the *dative*.

(*a*) If *we* or *you* means '*everybody*,' or '*people in general*,' the pronoun is left out.

(*b*) Hence '*edendum est*' is { '*we* should eat,' / or '*you* should eat.'

(*c*) The dative is also left out, whenever the persons meant are not likely *to be mistaken.*

Exercise 43.

210. Caius[g] must not sleep. (We) must remain *at Rome* the whole winter.[12] We must live well. We

---

d Translate as if it were '*they would live*.'

e The *auxiliary verb* is omitted with the second of *two verbs*. Not, '*let him come*, and *let him* take it;' but, 'let him come and *take* it.'

f Explanation. The real meaning of '*scribendum est mihi*' is, '*it is to-be-written by me*.'

g In doing the exercise, remember,

(1.) That the *English nominative* is to be put in the *dative*, if a *particular person* (or *persons*) is meant; but *left untranslated*, if what is said holds good of *people in general*.

(2.) The *participle* in *dus* is to be formed from the verb, and written down in the *neuter gender* with *est*.

must dwell *in the country*. We must remain *at home*. We must fly from the city (into) the country.[87] The wicked *think little of*[2] virtue. Does not the avaricious man *value* money *very highly*?[2] Will a Christian fear death? [No.]

Evolandum est ex urbe. Manendum est Romæ. Totam hiemem manendum est Carthagine. Quiescendum est, ut vitam conservēmus. Ambulandum est per urbem. Laborandum est, ut discas. Discrĕpat a ludendo laborare. Nonne laborandum est, ut discamus? Num semper ludendum est? Epistŏla suâ manu scribenda est. Crabrōnes non sunt irritandi. Crabrōnem ne irrītes. Irritasne crabrōnem?

Lesson 44.

211. The third persons of the *pres.* and *imperf. subj* of *esse* (*to be*) are *sit*, *esset*, from which the other persons may be formed by 196.

212. Pres.	sim,	sis,	sit,	sīmus,	sītis,	sint.
Imperf.	essem,	esses,	esset,	essēmus,	essētis,	essent.

213. From these forms those of *posse* may be got, as before explained: 149.

Present subj. possit. [(that) he *may be able*.]
Imperf. subj. posset. [(that) he *might be able*.]

214. Vocabulary 39.

Self, I myself, You yourself, Itself, &c.	ipse,[h] ipsa, ipsum, G. ipsīus, D. ipsi, &c.	
To fight,	pugnāre	(*pugnacious*.)
Rightly; well,	rectē; *adv.* from *rectus*, right.	
To hold one's tongue,	tacēre	(*tacit* consent.)
Even,	etiam; placed *before* the word it belongs to.	
Bad,	malus.	
Crop,	sĕgĕs, segĕt-is, f.	
To sow,	sĕrĕre, sēv, sāt.	

---

[h] '*Ipse*' is declined throughout *as if* it were *ipsus*, making Gen. ĭus. *Ipse, ipsa, ipsum.* G. *ipsius.* D. *ipsi.* Acc. *ipsum, ipsam, ipsum*, &c. It must be construed as '*I myself*,' when the verb is of the *first person*; '*you yourself*,' when the verb is of the second person.

But ☞ it is better sometimes to place the '*myself*,' '*yourself*,' after the verb and its *accusative*, &c. 'I was breaking the law *myself*.'

Exercise 44.

215. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. Is it *the business*[j] of a shepherd to scatter seeds? [No.] The boy must rest, that he may-be-able to play. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. Boys must hold-their-tongues. The girls must walk through the city. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price.

Imprŏbis[i] metuendum est. Discendum est,[k] ut possis docēre. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivĕre. Tacendum est. Etiam post malam segĕtem serendum est. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? Nonne fundum ingenti pecuniâ ēmĕras? Nonne Christianōrum est misĕris succurrĕre? Scriptâ epistŏlâ, legit.

Lesson 45.

216. If the verb governs *the dative*, (191,) '*we*' or *you*' should be untranslated:[l]

Credendum est Caio.
We *should believe Caius*. (Not, '*Caius* should believe.')

217. VOCABULARY 40.

Sea-water; salt water,	aqua marīna.	
To invent,	in-vēnīre,[m] vēn, vent	(*invention.*)
Lust,	lubīd-o, G. ĭnis. *Gender?*	
Old man,	sĕnex, G. sĕnis, G. plur. *senum*	(*senility.*)
Ignorant,	ignārus. (See 178, t.)	
To abstain (from,)	abstĭnēre	(*abstinence.*)*

(*a*) To read off such sentences *at sight*, take the *dative* as the nominative to '*should*' or '*must*;' and add the verb unaltered:
Omnibus, *all men must*, moriendum est, *die.*

(*b*) If *no dative* is expressed, put '*we*' or '*you*' for the nominative before '*must.*'

[k] If the next verb is of the *second person*, put *you* for the nom. of *must.*

[l] If it be necessary to express the *agent*, (the person *who is to do* the action,) it must be either expressed by the preposition *a*, (or *ab*,) or the form of the expression must be altered. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* expressed the agent.

[m] From in, *upon*; venīre, *to come.*

* Governs the *abl.* of the thing *from which.*

Exercise 45.

218. We should spare the conquered. We should injure nobody. We should resist anger. Should we not resist anger? We should envy nobody. We should obey the laws of our country. We should succor the miserable. We must not spare even Balbus We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. We must not believe even Cæsar himself.* We must injure neither the good nor the bad. Having written his letter, (169, *b*,) he will go a-hunting. He has flown into the country[37] to go[38] a-hunting. We must go to Rome. We must fly out of the country into the city.

Aqua marīna inutĭlis est bibendo. Nonne resisten dum est[n] iræ? Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. Artem scribendi Phœnīces[o] invēnērunt. Semper pugnandum est contra cupiditātes et lubīdīnem. Etiam senĭbus discendum est. Inutĭles sunt libri ignāro legendi. Num puĕri regendæ civitātis perīti esse possunt? Abstinendum est inhonestis voluptatibus. Nonne resistendum est animo? Num credendum est imprŏbis?

Lesson† 46.

219. If the Latin verb is a *transitive verb* governing the accusative, (8,) we must not *govern* this accusative

---

* Ne Cæsări quidem ipsi, which must *begin* the sentence.

n When there is only *one dative* to a verb which *governs the dative*, supply '*to* as the nominative to '*must*,' '*should*,' and put the dative (of course, without a preposition) after the verb.

o The Phœnicians.

† The *present* and *fut. perfect* have their first pers. sing. in *o*.
The *fut.* has its *first sing.* in *o* in the *first two* conjugations:

Present,	o,	ās,	āt,	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
	eo,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
	o,	īs,	it,	īmus,	ītis,	unt.
	io,	īs,	it,	īmus,	ītis,	iunt.
Future,	ābo,	ābis,	ābit,	ābĭmus,	ābĭtis,	ābunt.
	ēbo,	ēbis,	ēbit,	ēbĭmus,	ēbĭtis,	ēbunt.
	am,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
	iam,	iēs,	iēt,	iēmus,	iētis,	ient.
Future Perf. (r.)	ĕro,	ĕris,	ĕrit,	ĕrĭmus, *or* ĕrimus,	ĕrĭtis, *or* ĕritis,	ĕrint

by the neuter participle; but the *acc.* must be made the *nominative*, and the participle in *dus* put in agreement with it:

We must cultivate virtue { *Colenda* est *virtus.* / Not, *colendum* est *virtūtem.*

220. To determine whether you should put the *part.* in *dus* in the neut. ***governing*** the noun, or ***in agreement*** with the nominative of that noun, ask yourself two questions:

(1.) Can I turn the sentence into the form '***Virtus* is *to-be-loved*?'**[p]

(2.) If you ***can***, ask yourself whether the verb is one of those which govern the dative, (191.)

(If the verb governs the ***dat.***, the ***dative*** must be retained, and the ***participle in dus*** put in the ***neuter***. The ***dative***, that is, ***must not*** become the nominative to the verb.)[q]

221. ☞ '*Of*,' after '*rob*,' '*defraud*,' '*deprive*,' Is but a *sign* of *ablative*.[r]

222. VOCABULARY 41.

To rob,	spoliāre	(***spoliation.***)
To defraud,	fraudāre.	
To deprive,	privāre.	
To deceive,	decĭpĕre,[s] decēp, decept	(***deception.***)
To remove, (for the purpose of *settling elsewhere*,)	migrāre	(***emigrant.***)
Because,	quia.	
Eye,	ŏcŭlus, i	(***oculist.***)
Apollo,	Apoll-o, ĭnis, (son of Jupĭter and Latōna; the heathen god of archery, prophecy, and music.)	
Hunger,	fām-es, *G.* is	(***famished.***)
Temple,	templum.	
Grain,	grānum.	
One,	ūnus, *G.* unĭus, &c.	(***unit.***)
Poor,	paupĕr, *G.* paupĕris	(***pauper.***)
Judge,	jūdex, jūdĭcis	(***judicial.***)
Before, *preposition*,	ante, (*governing* acc.)	
Before, *conjunction*,*	antĕquam, priusquam.	
Before, *adverb*,	antea.	

---

p If you answer '*No*' to this question, you need not ask yourself the second, except for the purpose of determining ***what case*** is to be used after the verb.

q Thus. '***We must spare our enemies.***'

(1.) Can we say, '***our enemies are to-be-spared?***' ***Ans.*** Yes.

(2.) Does '***to spare***' govern the dative in Latin?' ***Ans.*** Yes.

We must therefore *not* say '***inimīci parcendi sunt,***' but (leaving to ***parcĕre*** the dative it requires) say, 'parcen***dum** est **inimīcis.***'

r That is, '***of***' is not to be translated, but to serve as a ***sign*** or ***hint*** that the following noun is to be in the ***ablative.***

s From ***de***, from; ***capĕre***, take: this verb is one of those which prefix an ***i*** to the termination, (that is, take the terminations of the fourth,) except in the ***present infinitive***, and the two tenses which we have shown how to get from the ***present infinitive***; that is, the ***imperf. subjunctive***, and the ***imperative***. See 187, x. In the ***pres. indic.*** they follow the ***fourth***, but have ***i*** short, (***io, is, it, ĭmus, ĭtis, iunt.***) See Accidence, p. 165.

* Or ***conjunctional adverb***; standing ***first*** in its sentence, and connecting it with another sentence.

Obs. In *antĕquam, priusquam,* the words are often separated; *ante—quam, prius—quam.*

Exercise 46.

[The *pres. subj.* is used as an *imperative.*]

223. We should favor the good. We should believe Caius, because he has never deceived us. We must surround the boy's head with a crown. We must shut the gate of the city *in the evening.* Do not defraud (*plur.*) me of my praise. Do not deprive me of my eyes. Having written his letter, (169, *a,*) he *went to bed.* Do not the wicked deprive virtue herself of her praise? You are depriving (*pl.*) me of my praise. Will you break the laws of your country? Virtue must be cultivated, that you may live well and happily (*Translate as if it were,* may-be-able to live.)

[When '*ante*' or '*prius*' is in one sentence, and the next begins with '*quam,*' take no notice of the word till you get to *quam,* and translate *ante-quam, prius-quam,* by '*before.*']

Non est *ante* edendum, *quam* fames impĕrat. Apollĭnis templum omni argento spoliāvit. Ne grano quidem uno paupĕres fraudētis. Ne me luce privētis. Ocŭlisnĕ me, judĭces, privabĭtis? Ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt paupĕres. Athēnis habitandum est, ut discāmus recte vivĕre. Romam migrandum est, ut discātis civitātem regere. Etiam post malam segĕtem serēmus. Leges patriæ violātis. Violātis patriæ legĭbus, (169,) meâ me laude spoliātis. Num meâ me laude spoliabĭtis? Dicendi elegantia legendis oratoribus et poētis augenda est.

Lesson 47.

224. Infinitive Mood.

		1.	2.	3.	4.	
Present, Imperf.	(R.)	ārĕ / ārī	ērĕ / ērī	ĕrĕ / ī	īrĕ / īrī	(*Active*) (*Passive*)
Perfect, Pluperf.	(r.)	issĕ . . . . . past partic. with *esse,* '*to be,*'				(*Active*) (*Passive.*

(*a*) The *future infinitive active* is made up, as in English, of '*to be*,' with the *future participle active*.

In the *passive*, the *future infinitive* is made up of the *supine* with *iri*.

(*b*) Thus from *amāre* the infinitives are *am-āre, am-au-isse; amatūrum esse, amātum esse,* and *amātum iri*.

225. ☞ The infinitives made up of *two words* are called *compound* infinitives.

☞ The *participles* of the compound infinitives* must *agree* with their substantives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*.

(*a*) Videt te esse beātum
He sees that *you are happy*.

(*b*) Sperat se victūrum esse.
He hopes that *he shall live*.

226. *Two* English sentences, joined by the conjunction '*that*,' are often made *one* Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the *nominative* into the *accusative*, and the verb into the *infinitive*.

227. To turn such a sentence into Latin,
(1.) take no notice of '*that*;'
(2.) translate the English *nominative* by the Latin *accusative*;
(3.) translate the English verb by the *infinitive* of the *same tense*.

Exercise 47.

228. He sees, that you are happy. If he had come, he would have seen that you are happy. He says, that you have surrounded the girl's head with a garland. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.[2] It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. It is certain, that the father will avenge the death of his son. It is certain, that Caius has removed *to Athens*,

* They are set down in the *acc. masc.*

that he may learn to live well. It is certain, that Ba. bus will be condemned *to death.*

Certum est, in summis Alpĭbus tantum esse frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat. Certum est, stellārum tantam esse multitudĭnem, ut numerāri non possint Certum est, Balbum patriam auro vendidisse. Certum est, avem in summâ quercu nidum constructūram esse. Certum est, Cæsărem belli gerendi perītum fuisse. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superavĕrit.

Lesson 48.

Forms of the passive. (Tenses from the root of the present.)

229. The third persons of the passive are formed from the third persons of the active by adding *ur.*

(*a*) But the vowel before the *t* is *long*, except from *it*, (of the *third*,) *ābit*, and *ēbit*.

230. ☞ The *Imperative pass.* is like the *infinitive active.*

Thus,	Indicative,				Passive.			
	1.	2.	3.	4.	1.	2.	3.	4.
Present,	at,	et,	*it*,	it,	ātur,	ētur,	*ītur*,	ītur.
Imperfect,	ābat,	ēbat,	ēbat,	iēbat,	ābātur,	ēbātur,	ēbātur,	iēbātur.
Future,	*ābit*,	*ēbit*,	et,	iet,	*ābitur*,	*ēbitur*,	ētur,	iētur.
Subjunct.								
Present,	et,	eat,	at,	iat,	ētur,	eātur,	ātur,	iātur.
Imperfect,	āret,	ēret,	ēret,	īret,	ārētur,	ērētur,	ērētur,	īrētur.
				Infinitive,	āri,	ēri,	i,	īri.
			Imperative, (like *Infin. act.*)		āre,	ēre,	ĕre,	īre.

The *third persons plural* are formed from the corresponding *third persons plural* of the *active*, by adding '*ur*,' without any further change.

☞ The third sing. of the *imperfect subjunct.* may also be got by adding *tur* to the *infin. act.* with its final *e* lengthened.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Inf. pres.,	āre,	ērĕ,	ĕrĕ,	īrĕ.
Imp. Subj.,	ārĕ-tur,	ērĕ-tur,	ĕrĕ-tur,	īrĕ-tur.

231. Vocabulary 42.

To beg for, / To make for,[u]	pĕtĕre,[u] petīv, petĭt	(*petition.*)
To pray; pray for,	ōrāre.	
Ambassador, / Lieutenant,[x]	legātus	(the Pope's *legate.*)
Ship,	nāv-is, is	(*navy.*)
To consult,	consŭlĕre, consŭlŭ, consult.	

232. Abit visūrus.
He goes away to see.

(*Eng.*) He goes *to see.*
(*Lat.* sometimes) He goes *about-to-see,*[v] (part. in *rus.*)

Exercise 48.

The English *infinitive* expressing the *purpose*, may often be translated by the *future participle.*

233. Ambassadors are sent *to beg* for peace.[18, b)] Ambassadors will be sent, to pray for peace.[18, b)] He goes away to consult[18, c)] Apollo. The law will be broken. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men?) It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked both at Rome and at Athens. Let your word be kept. We must remove to Rome, that our faith may be kept. Money must not be valued at a great price. Let the state be ruled by the wise. The Persians[w] make-for their ships.

[Obs. The participle in *rus* may often be translated by the *English infinitive.*]

Cæsar Romam rediit, copias *quam maxĭmas*[9] comparatūrus. Patrem suum consultūrus, abit. Mittantur legāti, pacem petītum. Virtus ab omnĭbus colātur.[30)] Omnis occasio exercendæ virtūtis arripiātur. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem exercendæ virtūtis a Christiāno arrīpi. Paupĕres ne grano quidem uno fraudentur. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legendis oratoribus et poetis. Abiit dormiturus.

---

[u] *Pĕtĕre* expresses the *moving towards* or *aiming at* some object; whether the *motion* is actual motion towards a *place*, or a *movement* of the mind towards that for wh...h it *sues.*

[x] By '*lieutenant*' is meant the *second in command:* a lieutenant-general.

[v] Or, '*intending* to see,' which is often the meaning of this participle.

[w] Persæ, *G.* Persārum

Lesson 49.

234. Relative Pronoun. (Qui, *who, which, that.*)

	Singular.				*Plural.*			
	N.	G.	D.	Acc. Abl.	N.	G.	D. Abl.	Acc.
Mas.	Qui,	cujus,	cui,	quem, quo,	qui,	quōrum,	quibŭs,	quos.
Fem.	Quæ,			quam, quâ,	quæ,	quārum,		quas.
Neut.	Quod,			quod, quo,	quæ,	quōrum,		quæ.

235. ☞ The *substantive* (or *pronoun*) that the relative *stands for*, is to be looked for in the *sentence before*.

(*a*) The relative must be put in the same *gender*, *number*, and *person*, as its *antecedent*.[x]

236. ☞ The *case* of the relative has *nothing to do* with the other sentence.

☞ The relative must be *governed*, as to *case*, by the verb (or some other *governing* word) of *its own sentence*.[y]

☞ *Is, ea, id*, is the regular antecedent pronoun to *qui*.

237. ☞ The verbs which govern *the dative* in the active, can only be used *impersonally*[z] in the *passive*.

Mihi creditur,[a]	*I am believed.*
Tibi creditur,	*Thou art believed.*
Illi creditur,	*He is believed.*
Nobis creditur,	*We are believed.*
Vobis creditur,	*You are believed.*
Illis creditur,	*They are believed.*

238. Vocabulary 43.

No,	nullus, G. nullius		(*null* and void.)
Animal,	animal,[b] G. animālis.	*Gender?*	
Heart,	cor, G. cordis, n.		(*cordial.*)

---

[x] The *ante-cedent* (that is, *going-before* noun) is the substantive or pronoun *for which* the relative stands.

[y] The use of the relative is, to prevent the same substantive from being expressed in each clause.

The apple which you gave me. (The apple, *which apple* you gave me.) The mountain on *whose* top, &c. (The mountain, on the top *of which mountain*.) The man *who* did this, &c. (The man, *which man* did this.)

[z] To be used *impersonally*, is to be used only in the *third person* singular, and without a nominative case.

[a] Hence,

(*Eng.*) *I* am pardoned, favored, persuaded, &c.
(*Lat.*) *It is pardoned, favored, persuaded* to me.

[b] Neuters, in *e, al, ar*, make their ablatives in *i*; nom. plur. *ia*; gen. *ium*.

Tree,	arbor, G. arbŏris, *f.*	(*arbor.*)
Fruit,	fructus, G. ûs	(*fructify.*)
To behold,	adspĭcĕre, adspex, adspect	(*aspect.*)

*Exercise** 49.

239. The good are envied. Have you not spared the conquered? He gave me the crown, with which he had surrounded the girl's head. Let anger be resisted, which has been prejudicial to many states. Caius, who sold his country for gold, should be condemned *to death*. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treachery. Caius, whose mother lives[c] in the country, has himself removed to Rome. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered.

[When a *pass.* verb is one that governs the *dative*, take this *dat.* as if it were the *nom.* to the verb.]

Nullum anĭmal, quod sanguĭnem habet, sine corde esse potest. Arbŏres serit agricŏla, quārum fructus ipse adspiciet nunquam. Pauperĭbus, qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. Parcātur victis. Pepercisti victis. Caio ignoscīte. Violavistis fidem. Iræ resistitur. Nihil facile persuadētur invitis.

Lesson 50.

240. '*He who*,' '*those who*,' are generally translated by '*qui*' only, instead of by '*is qui*,' '*ii qui*.'

241. A deponent verb is a verb that has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

242. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles.

---

* The *second person* plural of the imperative may be got by adding *te* to the second singular; but in the third, *ĕ* must be changed into *ĭ* before this addition is made.

1.	2.	3.	4.
āte,	ēte,	īte,	īte.

The terminations of the perfect are for all the conjugations:

ī,	isti,	it.	ĭmus,	istis,	ērunt.

c Dwells, habĭtat.

☞ The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs have not got.

[(1.) Loquens, *speaking:* (2.) locūtus, *having spoken:* (3.) locutūrus, *about to speak:* (4.) loquendus, *to be spoken.*]

243. Vocabulary 44.

To recollect,	remĭnisci.	
To remember,	recordāri.	
To enjoy,	frui.	
To use,	ūti, ūsus.	
To discharge,	fungi, functus.	
To get possession,	potīri, potītus, (*but* pōtĭtur.)	
To pity,	miserēri.	
To forget,	oblīvisci, oblītus.	
A benefit,	beneficium.	
An injury,	injūria.	
Duty,	officium.	
Arms,	arma, *G.* ōrum.	
Some time or other,	aliquando.	
Eternal,	sempiternus.	
Crime,	flagitium	(*flagitious.*)

244. After to '*pity*,' '*remember*,' '*forget*,' A genitive case is properly set.[d]

245. With '*use*,' '*discharge*,' '*possession get*,' and also with '*enjoy*,' An ablative correctly stands: remember this, my boy.

Exercise 50.

246. *He* who sins *unwillingly*, is free from blame. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. Let us use our arms and horses. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? Is the life, *that* we now enjoy, eternal? Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life.

Christianōrum est miserēri paupĕrum. Homo imprōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabĭtur. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. Vincāmus odium, paceque potiāmur. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. Beātus est, qui omnĭbus vitæ officiis fungītur. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratorĭbus et poētis auxĕrant.

---

[d] But '*remember*' and '*forget*' often govern the accusative.

Lesson 51.

247. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* for the *mas.* and *fem.*, *ius* for the *neuter*.

[Doctus, doct-*ior*; sapiens, *G.* sapient-is, sapient-*ior*; tener, tener *ior*;[e] pulcher, (pulchr,) pulchr-*ior*.[e]]

248. The superlative is formed by adding *issĭmus* (*a, um*) to the root.

(*a*) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rĭmus* (a, um) to the nominative.

(Pulcher, pulcherrĭmus.)

249. *Simĭlis*, (*like,*) *facĭlis*, (*easy,*) and a few more in *lis*, make the superlative in *lĭmus*.

(Simillĭmus, facillĭmus.)

250. The following are quite irregular:—

Bonus, (*good,*) melior, optĭmus.	magnus, (*great,*) major, maxĭmus
Malus, (*bad,*) pejor, pessĭmus.	parvus, (*little,*) minor, minĭmus.

251. VOCABULARY 45.

Air,	aër, *G.* aĕris, *m.*	
Light,	lĕvis	(*levity.*)
Heavy,	grăvis	(*gravity.*)
It is well known, / It is allowed,	constat.[f]	
It is better,	præstat, (præ, *before*: stat, *it stands.*)	
Sound,	sŏnus, *G.* i.	
Swift,	vēl-ox, *G.* ōcis	(*velocity.*)
Slow,	tardus	(*tardy.*)
Summer,	æst-as, *G.* ātis.	
Dog,	cănis.	
Wolf,	lŭpus, *G.* i.	
The moon,	lūna.	
Nearer,	prŏpior, (with *dat.*)	
Excellent,	præstan-s, *G.* tis.	
Strength,	rōbŭr, *G.* robŏr-is. *Gender?*	
Ignorance,	ignoratio.	
Knowledge,	scientia.	
To speak,	lŏqui, lŏcūtus	(*e-locution.*)
Simple,	simplex, *G.* simplĭc-is.	
Wealth,	ŏpes, *G.* opum; *plur.*	

---

[e] Remember that for adjectives in *er* the whole nominative is the root; the preceding *e* being often dropped.

[f] Con, *together*, stat, *it stands*: 'it stands together' as a *consistent* truth.

252. Eurōpa minor est quam Asia.
Europe less is than Asia.

Nihil est clementiâ divinius.
Nothing is than clemency *more godlike*.
(*Nothing is more godlike than clemency.*)

253. ☞ '*Than*,' after a comparative, is either translated by *quam*, or omitted, the following noun being put in the *ablative*.

(*a*) If '*quam*' is expressed, the following noun will, of course, be in the *same case* as that to which '*quam*' joins it:—thus, in the example above, *Asia* is the same case as *Europa*.

Exercise 51.

254. (*Quam* expressed.) Air is lighter than water. It is well known that light is swifter than sound.

(*Quam* omitted.) In the spring and summer the days are longer than the nights. Silver is lighter than gold. Is not silver lighter than gold? Is it not well known, that sound is slower than light? Is not a dog very-like a wolf?

Aurum gravius est argento. Luna terræ propior est, quam sol. Constat sonum luce tardiōrem esse. Virtus præstantior est robŏre. Ignoratio futurōrum malōrum utilior est, quam scientia. Majus est prodesse omnĭbus, quam opes magnas habēre. Certum est solem majōrem esse quam terram. Sæpe facēre præstat quam loqui. Simplex cibus puĕris utilissĭmus est.

Lesson 52.

255. VOCABULARY 46.

[Prepositions governing the accusative.]

Ad,	to.
Adversus,	against, towards. (*See* erga.)
Ante,	before.
Apud,	at: before a plural name of persons, *amongst*. **Apud me,** '*with me*,' that is, '*at my house*.'
Circa,	about, (of *time* and *place*.)
Circum,	about, (of *place* only.)

Cis, citra,	on this side of.
Contra,	against: over-against.
Erga,	towards, (not of *motion*; but after words expressing a kind *feeling*, a *duty*, &c.)
Extra,	without, (in the sense of *not within*,) out of; beyond.
Inter,	amongst, (inter se, 'to each other,'[g]) between.
Intra,	within.

To observe, (*duties*,)	conservāre (*conservative.*)
To move, (*transitive*,)	mŏvēre, mōv, mōt.
To move, (*intransitive*,)	mŏvēri, mōtus: properly, '*to be moved.*'
Saturn,	Sāturnus, father of Jupiter, by whom he was dethroned. He devoured his own children.
Jupiter,	Jūpĭter,[h] Gen. Jŏvis, (and then formed regularly from *Jov*,) the king of the heathen gods.
The moon,	lūna.
Dutiful-affection,	pĭĕtās, *G.* ātis.
The shine,	Rhēnus, i.

256. Maris superficies major est, quam *The sea's surface greater is than* (that[i]) terræ.
of the earth.

257. When the same noun would be expressed in both clauses, it is left out in that which follows *quam*, (*than.*)

(*a*) In English it is represented in the second clause by '*that*,' '*those.*' Hence,

(*b*) ☞ '*That*,' '*those*,' after '*than*,' are to be untranslated.

Exercise 52.

258. (Our) duties towards (our) parents are to be observed. Do many come to old age? We must fight against the evils of old age. *It is an allowed fact*, that the earth moves round the sun. Your benefits are greater than *those* of your brother. Is not simple food very good for boys? Let us be gentle towards the conquered. The star of Jupiter is nearer the earth than that of Saturn.

Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem. Nulla habēmus arma contra mortem. Patrium habet adversus bonos viros

[g] After contrarius, *contrary*, &c.
[h] Jupiter and Saturn are two of the planets.
[i] Here '*that*' stands for '*the surface.*'

animum. Luna circum terram movētur. Nulla est firma amicitia inter malos. Piĕtas erga patriam conservanda est. Jovis stella intra Saturnum est. Galli cis Rhenum habĭtant. Pisces extra aquam cito exspīrant. Intra muros habitābat. Inter se contraria* sunt beneficium et injuria.

Lesson 53.

259. '*May*' and '*might*' (when they stand in a ***principal*** sentence) are translated by *licet*, 'it is allowed.'

260. *May*, licet, (= *it is allowed.*)
Might, licuit, (= *it was allowed.*)

261.	Mihi ire licet,	*I may go.*
	Tibi ire licet,	*You may go.*
	Illi ire licet,	*He may go.*
	Nobis ire licet,	*We may go.*
	Vobis ire licet,	*You may go.*
	Illis ire licet,	*They may go.*
262.	Mihi ire licuit,	*I might* have gone
	Tibi ire licuit,	*You might* have gone.
	&c. &c.	

263. ☞ The *present* infinitive follows '*licuit*,' in spite of '*have*.'

264. (*Eng.*) I may go. (*Lat.*) *it is allowed me to go.*
(*Eng.*) I might *have gone.* (*Lat.*) *it was allowed me* (then) to go.

265. Vocabulary 47.

[Prepositions governing the accusative, continued.]

Juxta,	close to; by.
Ob,	on account of, (ob oculos, *before* one's eyes.)
Pĕnĕs,	in the power of.
Per,	through; by means of.
Pōnĕ,	behind.
Post,	after.
Præter,	besides, beyond.
Propter,	near; on account of.
Secundum,	along; according to.
Suprā,	above.
Trans,	across, beyond; on the other side of.
Ultrā,	beyond.
Usque,	*as far as*, (properly an *adverb*, used with prep. *ad.*)

Fear,	mĕtus, *G.* metûs.
Shore,	lĭtŭs, ŏr-is. *Gender?*

---

* When an adjective agrees with two nouns it is in the plural; here, as they are the names of *things*, it is in the *neuter* gender.

A camp,	castr-a, ōrum, *plur.*	
To place,	pōnĕre, pōsŭ, pōsĭt	*(position.)*
Journey; way,	iter, *G.* ĭtĭnĕr-is, *neut.*	*(itinerant.)*

266. He '*threatens me* with *death*,' should be In Latin, '*threatens death* to me.'
(Mihi mortem minātur.)

Exercise 53.

[☞ When the answer '*yes*' cannot possibly be expected, '*an*' should be used rather than '*num*,' (153,) for the *interrogative adverb*.]

267. A man may not be-the-slave of glory. A Christian may not be-the-slave of pleasure. May Christians be-the-slaves of pleasure? We must not be-the-slaves of anger. Might he not *have dwelt* at Rome? No one may break the laws of his country. The Germans dwell across the Rhine. We must remove across the Rhine, that we may learn to devote ourselves to literature.

Servi pārent propter metum; boni propter officium. Navigatio juxta litus sæpe est periculōsa. Cæsar juxta murum castra posuit. Supra nos cœlum conspicĭmus; infra nos terram. Longum iter est per præcepta; breve[k] et effĭcax per exempla. Secundum leges vivendum est. Condita Massilia est prope ostia Rhodăni amnis. Mors propter incertos casus quotidie immĭnet. Nonne licuit Athēnis habĭtare? Janus[l] bis post Numæ[m] regnum clausus fuit. Nonne mortem tibi minabātur? Imperium populōrum est penes magistratus.

Lesson 54.

(*On the translation of* ought.)

268. '*Ought*' is translated by the *impersonal* verb '*oportet*,' '*it behooves*.'

---

k Of two connected sentences one must borrow its *nominative case* and *verb* from the other. Thus the second will become, breve et effĭcax *est iter*, &c.

l *Janus* was a heathen god, represented with *two faces*, one looking each way; his temple at Rome was *shut* in time of peace.

m Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

269. Me ire oportet, *I ought to go.*
Te ire oportet, *You ought to go.*
&c.
Me ire oportuit, *I ought to* have gone.
Te ire oportuit, *You ought to* have gone.
&c.

270. Obs. When the *infin. perfect* follows '*ought*,' *ought* is to be translated by *oportuit*, and the *perfect infinitive* translated by the *present* infinitive.

271. So too after '*could*,' the *perfect infinitive* (which will be without '*to*') will be translated by the *present infinitive*.
[*Facĕre* potuit, *he could* have done (*it.*)]

272. Cārēre, *want* or *am without*,
And egeo, *require*
Or *need*, do both, without a doubt,
An ablative desire.
(*a*) But egeo *sometimes*, and indigeo *often*, takes the genitive.

273. Vocabulary 48.

[Prepositions governing the ablative.]

A, ab, abs,[n]	from; by, (before the *doer* of the action.)
Absquĕ,[o]	without.
Clam,	without the knowledge of.
Cōram,	before; in the presence of.
Dĕ,	concerning; about, (*of*, when it means *about*.)
E, ex,[p]	out of; from.
Præ,	before; in comparison with.
Prō,	for.
Sīnĕ,	without.
Tĕnus,	as far as, (which follows its noun, and in the *plural* may govern the genitive.)

To die,	mŏri, mortuus, (with terminations *of the fourth*, except in *present*, [where it has them in *first sing.* and *third plur.*] *infinitive*, *imperative*, and *imperf. subjunctive*.)

Exercise 54.

274. Ought we not to succor the miserable? Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible*? Ought not Balbus to have kept his word? Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? I have received many letters from you. The bird has flown away

---

[n] *A* before consonants: *ab* before vowels, and it *may* stand before *any* of the *consonants* in *hujus laris*. *Abs* only before the consonants in *quot*.
[o] *Absque* is uncommon.
[p] E before *consonants*; ex before *vowels* or *consonants*.

from my hands. He is gone-away *without* his father's *knowledge*.

275 [Obs. After *oportuit* the present infinitive is to be rendered by '*to have*,' &c. "He ought to have preserved fidelity," *fidem* servari oportuit.]

Dulce est pro patriâ mori. Coram populo loquētur. Argentum præ auro contemnĭtur. Cæcus de coloribus judicāre non potest. Etiam sine magistro vitia discuntur. Usitātæ res facĭle e memoriâ elabuntur. Vapōres a sole ex aquis excitantur. Alexander omnia Oceāno tenus vicit. Caius febri caret. Omnes[q] paupĕrum auxilio egēmus. Fidem servāri oportuit. Prudentiâ vestrâ patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. In illo prœlio equĭtes nostri audaciâ et virtute excelluerunt. Quando quiesces a laboribus tuis?

Lesson 55.

276. Vocabulary 49.

[Prepositions, governing acc. or abl.]

In, with *acc.*	into, to, towards, against, for.
In, with *abl.*	in, upon, among, in the case of.

[The prepositions *in* and *sub* govern the *acc.* in answer to *whither*, (that is, after verbs of *motion*;) and the *ablative* in answer to *where*, (that is, after verbs of *rest*.)]

Super, with *acc.*	above, over, beyond, (generally after verbs of motion,) besides.
Super, with *abl.*	upon;[r] *on* or *of* (a subject *inquired* or *written* about.)

Sub ĭdem tempus,	about the same time.
To heal,	mĕdēri, governing dative (by 191) (*medicine.*)
To seem,	vĭdēri, vīsus.
To desire,	cŭpĕre; cŭpīv, cŭpīt, (with the added *i.* 187, x.)
More,	plus, G. pluris.[s]

277.

English.	*Latin.*	
How much greater,	*By how much* greater;	*quanto* major.
So much greater,	*By so much* greater;	*tanto* major.
Much greater,	*By much* greater;	*multo* major.
Considerably greater,	*By some-deal* greater;	*aliquanto* major.

q When the verb is of the *first* or *second* person, and an adjective is expressed, put *we* or *you* before the adjective. Thus, *omnes*, we all, &c.

r This belongs to poetry.

s It has no other forms in the sing. In plural *plures, plura*, G. *plurium*, &c.

278. (*Eng.*) The more he teaches, the more he learns.
(*Lat.*) *By-how-much* more he teaches, *by so much* more he learns.
(or) *By-what* more he teaches, *by that* more he learns.

279. ☞ '*The*'—'*the*' before two comparatives must be translated by '*quanto*'—'*tanto*,' or by '*quo*'—'*eo*.'

280. Obs. The *tanto* or *eo* goes with that assertion which *follows* from the other.
If you have any doubt, turn it into a sentence with '*if*,' and let the '*if*' sentence have the *quanto* or *quo*.
(a) Thus in the example, (278,) his *learning* more will *follow*, or be the *consequence*, of his *teaching* more.
'*If*' he teaches much, *he will learn more* than he otherwise would.

Exercise 55.

281. How much greater is the sun than the earth? The earth is much greater than the moon. My estate is considerably bigger than yours. The days are considerably longer. In the summer the days are considerably longer than in the winter. Is not your garden considerably bigger than mine? Is not my garden much bigger than yours? Is my garden much bigger than yours? [No.]

Quo amarior potio, eo sæpe salubrior est. Quanto tempus est felicius, tanto brevius esse vidētur. Quo plura habent homĭnes, eo plura cupiunt. Nunquam licet peccāre. Juvĕni părandum est; seni utendum. Nē jures. Jurasnĕ?

Lesson 56.

282. Vocabulary 50.

[The comparative of an adverb is the *neuter* of the comparative adjective.]

Făcĭle,	easily, (from *facilis*, easy:) *facilius*, more easily.
Cĭto,	quickly, (from *citus*, quick:) *citius*, more quickly.
Bark,	cortex, cortĭcis, *m.*
To cover, surround,	ob-dūcĕre, dux, duct.
Safe,	tutus.
Virtuous, upright,	honestus. Virtuously, *honeste*.
Courageously,	fortĭter, (comparative, *fortius*.)

283. (*Eng.*) I ploughed it three times, *that* it might produce the *better* crop.
(*Lat.*) I ploughed it three times, *by which*[t] it might produce a *better* crop

284. (*a*) When '*that*' is in a sentence that has a comparative in it, it may be translated by *quo* with the subjunctive.

(*b*) '*That*' with comparatives and '*the*,' By '*quo*' may best translated be.

285. (*Eng.*) Some persons think.
(*Lat.*) There are who think, (sunt qui putent.)
(*Eng.*) Some persons thought.
(*Lat.*) There were who thought, (erant qui putārent.)

Exercise 56.

286. Some persons think that faith should not be kept against[u] enemies. It is difficult to heal the mind. Hold-your-tongues, *that* you may be the more easily able to learn. He spoke much, that he might seem wise. He spoke much, *that* he might seem *the* wiser. He lived virtuously, that he might die *the* more courageously. It is certain that Caius lived many years at Carthage. Do not spare me.

[When there is a comparative in the sentence, render *quo* by '*that*, and put '*the*' before the comparative.]

Trunci arbŏrum cortĭce obducuntur, *quo* sint a frigŏre et calōre tutiōres. An licet Christiānis gloriæ servīre? Omnĭbus ignoscendum est. Ne multa loquĕre. Mise rēre nostri. Natūrâ omnes propensi sumus ad discendum. An retinenda est barbăra consuetūdo immolandōrum homĭnum? Nonne mors quotidie ob ocŭlos ponenda est?

Lesson 57.

	English.	*Latin.*
287.	*I repent of my folly,*	It-repents me of my folly
	I am vexed at my folly,	It-vexes me of my folly.
	I am ashamed of my folly,	It-shames me of my folly.
	I pity the poor,	It-pities me of the poor.
	I am weary of life,	It-irks me of life.

[t] Arāvi, &c., *quo* posset *meliōres* fruges edĕre.
[u] Adversus.

(*a*) Me meæ stultitiæ pœnĭtet.[v]
(*b*) Me meæ stultitiæ pĭget.
(*c*) Me meæ stultitiæ pudet.
(*d*) Miserĕret me paupĕrum.
(*e*) Tædet me vitæ.

288 When '*ut*' the word for '*that*' would be,
'*That-not*' may *both* be done by nē;
Unless a '*so*' or '*such*' preceded,
For then a '*non*' will still be needed.

289 (*a*) Palpĕbræ molles sunt ne
The eye-lids soft are, that
premant ocŭlum.
they may not *press the eye.*

(*b*) Tanta est multitūdo, ut non possint
So great is the multitude, that they cannot
numerāri.
be numbered.

290. VOCABULARY 51.

Slothful,	ignāvus, (in, *not*; gnavus, *active.*)
Sloth,	ignavia.
Some-time-or-other,	aliquando.
Physician,	medĭcus.
Some,	alĭquis, (something, *aliquid.*)
Attentive,	studiōsus.
To order,	jubēre, jussi, jussum, (followed by *acc.* with *infin.*)
To learn by heart,	e-discĕre.
Athenian,	Athenĭensis. (*Ensis* is a common termination of names derived (from towns.)
Socrates,	Socrăt-es, G. is, (one of the greatest of heathen men. He taught the *immortality of the soul*, and was put to death by his countrymen the Athenians.)
To value more highly,	pluris facĕre.
To cause to be made,	*faciendum* curāre, (the partic. to agree with its noun.)

Exercise 57.

291. It is more pleasant to make a friend, than to have (one.) The slothful man will some-time-or-other repent of his sloth. Christians pity the poor. He will give the physician something, *that* he may be *the* more attentive. I order my son never to remember this injury. We give verses to boys to-be-learnt-by-heart. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. Have you not understood, that I do not need money? Anger

[v] These verbs are regularly conjugated: pœnitet, pœnitēbat, pœnituit, pœnituerat, pœnitēbit, &c.

has cost the state much blood. I *value you more-highly* every day.

292. Gallīnæ avesque relīquæ pennis fovent pullos, ne frigŏre lædantur. Eōrum miserēri oportet, qui propter fortūnam, non propter malitiam in miseriis sunt. Tui me misĕret: mei piget. Raro primi consilii Caium pœnĭtet. Sapientia semper eo contenta est, quod adest. Scipio dicēbat, malle[w] se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occīdĕre. Sic adhuc vixi, ut nemo unquam me ullīus injuriæ accusavĕrit. Pontem in Istro flumĭne faciendum curavi. *Inter ambulandum* multa mecum locūtus est.

Lesson 58.

293. *Et* followed by another *et; tum* or *quum* followed by *tum*, are *both—and.*

294. Non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also.*

295. Tam—quam, { *so—as: as—as.* / *as well—as.* / *both—and.*

296. Etiam, *even, also,* (etiam atque etiam, *again and again;*) quoque, *also, too,* (*follows* the word it belongs to.)

Exercise 58.

297. Amphibia et in aquâ et in terrâ vivunt. Et discet puer, et docebit. Etiam tu hinc abis? Rogo te, et etiam oro. Et Romæ vixi et Carthagine. Ut mihi succurras, etiam atque etiam te rogo, (296.) Lupus quum ovem tum canem momordĕrat. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. Horti parantur tum ad utilitatem, tum ad jucunditatem. Multæ herbæ quum jucun-

---

w That he had rather: infinitive of *mālo*, (which see, Accidence, p. 177.

dissimum tum saluberrimum cĭbum suppeditant. Tam canes quam lupi cæcos pariunt catŭlos. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est.

Lesson 59.

298. Aut, *or.*
aut—aut ; vel—vel, *either—or.*
299. sive—sive } *either—or.*
seu—seu } *whether—or.*
vel is sometimes '*even ;*' with superlatives, '*very,*' '*extremely,*' '*possible.*'

300. *Sive*[x] is used, when the speaker or writer leaves it undecided, which of two assertions or names is the right one ; and when a second name is a mere *alias* of the first.

Exercise 59.

301. Quicquid dicam aut erit, aut non. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites ! Quædam terræ partes incultæ sunt, quod aut frigŏre rigent, aut uruntur calōre. Viri nobiles, vel corrumpere mores civitatis, vel corrigere possunt. Quam sis morōsus, vel (299) ex hoc intelligi potest. Romanis sese* vel persuasuros (esse) existimabant, vel vi coacturos. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, pœnas persolvērunt. Nonnulli, sive felicitate quadam, sive bonitate naturæ, sive parentum disciplīnâ, rectam vitæ secuti sunt viam. Sine solis calōre nec animalia vivere, nec plantæ crescere possunt. Nec timidus esto, nec audax. Nimius somnus neque animo, neque corpŏri prodest. Vel (299) iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefĕro. Caii eo tempore vel maxima erat auctoritas.

---

x Sive is si-ve, '*or if.*' Thus, 'Caius *sive* Balbus,' is 'Caius, *or if* you like Balbus,' (for that is another name of his.)
* See Accidence, p. 144.

Lesson 60.

(Adversative conjunctions, or such as mark an *opposition.*)

302. At, sed, autem, verum, vero, *but.*

Tamen, attămen, Veruntămen,	*yet; but; but yet.*
Atqui,	*but* or *now*, (as used in reasoning.)

Exercise 60.

303. Non placet Marco Antonio consulatus meus; *at* placuit Publio Servilio. Fecit idem Themistŏcles; at Perĭcles idem non fecit. Si certum est[y] facere, facias; *verum* ne post conferas culpam in me. Non deterreor ab incepto, *sed* pudōre impedior. Aut hoc aut illud est: non *autem* hoc (est;) ergo (304) illud (est.) Absolūtus est Caius; mulctatus *tamen* pecuniâ. Videtis nihil esse morti tam simile, quam somnum: *atqui* dormientium animi maxime declarant divinitatem suam.

Lesson 61.

304.

Nam, namque, enim,	*for.*
Igitur, ideo,	*therefore.*
Ergo,	*therefore, then.*
Itaque,	*accordingly; and so; therefore.*
Quare,	*wherefore.*

Exercise 61.

305. In eâ re prudentiâ adjūtus est: *nam*, quum devicisset hostes, summâ æquitate res constituit. Hac pugnâ nihil nobilius: nulla *enim* unquam tam exigua manus, tantum exercitum devicit.

---

[y] Si certum est, (*if it is fixed,*) *if you are resolved.*

Magno[z] Atilio ea cunctatio stetit, *namque* filium intra paucos dies amisit. Illi *igitur* duodĕcim cum canibus venaticis exiērunt. Aristīdes æqualis fere fuit Themistŏcli: *itaque* cum eo de principatu contendit. Nemo *ergo* non miser (est?) Nihil labōras: *ideo* nihil habes. Intelligebant hæc Lacedæmonii: *quare* eos infirmissimos esse volebant.

Lesson 62.

306. ☞ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the past tenses of the *indicative.*

(*a*) But the '*perfect*,' when it answers to our *perfect with* '*have*,' is not considered a *past* tense.

307. '*Ut*' with the *subjunct.* { (1) '*in order that*;' '*that*;' *so that.*' (2) the *infinitive*, (expressing the *purpose.*) (3) '*as*,' with *infinitive.* (4) '*granting that*;' '*although.*' (5) '*that*' and carry '*not*,' (after to *fear.*) }

(*a*) (*Ut* with the *indicative* is '*as*,' '*when*,' '*since*,' '*after*,' '*how.*')

(*b*) When *ut* introduces a *purpose*, the subjunctive verb will be rendered by '*may*,' '*might.*' When it signifies a *consequence*, (which it regularly does after '*so*,' '*such*,') the subjunctive verb is rendered by the *indicative:* but the *imperfect* by the English perfect.

Exercise 62.

Obs. possim (*is, it*, &c.) = '*can*' or '*may.*'
possem (*es, et*, &c.) = '*could*' or '*might.*'

308. (1) Multi alios laudant, *ut* ab aliis *laudentur.* Stellarum *tanta* multitudo est, *ut* numerari *non possint.* In summis Alpibus[a] tantum est frigus, *ut* nix ibi nun-

---

[z] Stare magno, *to cost* a man *dear.* Magno agrees with *pretio* (price) understood.

[a] *On the top of the Alps. Summus, imus, medius, primus, extremus, reliquus*, &c., agreeing with nouns, are generally rendered by *substantives*, followed by a genitive case. Imus mons, *the bottom* or *foot of the mountain.* Reliqua Ægyptus, *the rest of Egypt.* Sapientia prima, *the beginning of wisdom.* In *extremo* tertio *libro*, *at the end of the* third *book.*

quam *liquescat.* Hominis corpus celsum et erectum est, ut cœlum intueri possit.

Ursi per hiemem tam gravi somno premuntur, *ut* nē vulneribus quidem excitentur. In Indiâ serpentes ad tantam magnitudinem adolescunt, *ut* integros hauriant cervos, taurosque.

(2) Vēnit (*he is come*) ut claudat, (*to shut,*) &c.

Enītar *ut vincam.* Magnopĕre te hortor, *ut* hos de philosophiâ libros studiōse *legas.* Capram monet, *ut* in pratum *descendat.* Ante senectutem curavi, *ut* bene vivĕrem. Formīca sitiens ad fontem descendit, *ut* bibĕret.

(3) No one is *so* good, *ut* nunquam *peccet,* (as *never* to sin.)

Quis *tam* demens est, *ut* suâ voluntate mœreat? Nulla anus *tam* delīra est, *ut* hæc *credat.*

(4) *Ut desint* vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas. *Ut* circumspiciamus omnia, quæ populo grata atque jucunda sunt, nihil tam populare quam concordiam reperiemus.

☞ For *ut* after *to fear,* see Lesson 66.

Lesson 63.

309. *Nē* with *subjunctive,*
- (1) { '*lest,*' / '*that,*' and carry '*not.*'
- (2) '*not,*' with the *infinitive.*
- (3) '*not,*' with *imperat.* or *subjunct.* used *imperatively.*
- (4) '*that*' after to *fear.*

Exercise 63.

(1) I did it, nē *that,* vidēret *he might* not *see,* &c.

310. (1) Palpĕbræ molles sunt, *ne premant* ocŭlum. Gallīnæ avesque relĭquæ pennis fovent pullos, ne frigŏre *lædantur.* Nix segĕtes opĕrit, *ne* frigŏre *absumantur.* Cave *ne* incognita pro cognitis *habeas.* Cave *ne* quid temere *dicas* aut *facias* contra potentes. Oculi palpĕ-

bris sunt muniti, *nē* quid incīdat. Alexander edixit, *ne* quis[b] ipsum, præter Apellem, pingĕret.

(2) *I advised him* ne *not*, iret *to go.*

Monuit capram, *ne* in pratum descenderet. Trebonio mandaverat, *ne* per vim Massiliam[c] expugnari *pateretur*. Monui puerum, *ne* fabis vesceretur.

(3) *Not* with imperatives is *nē*,
A '*non*' is hateful then to see

Crabrōnes *nē irrita*. *Ne* reprehende errores aliorum, sed emendes potius tuos. Diu *ne* morare in conclavibus modo dealbatis.[d] *Ne tentes*, quod effici non possit.

☞ For *ne* with *to fear*, see Lesson 66.

Lesson 64.

311. '**Quin,**' with *subj.*
(1) '*but,*' (as used after *negatives*)
(2) the *relative* with *not*.
(3) '*as not,*' with *infinitive*.
(4) '*that,*' after *doubt, deny,* in *negative* sentences.
(5) '*from*' or '*without,*' with the *participial substantive,* after *escape, prevent,* &c.

Exercise 64.

(1) a. '*But*' very nearly coincides with *quin*; though we *now* more commonly use some of the other forms here given.
(2) There is nobody, quin putet { *but* thinks. / *who* does *not* think.
(3) b. No one is *so* mad, quin (*as not*) putet, (*to think,*) &c.
(4) { I don't *deny* / I don't *doubt* } quin, *that,* (or, *but that,*) turpe sit, *it is disgraceful.*
(5) *She never saw him,* quin, *without,* ridēret, *laughing.*
She could not be restrained, quin, *from,* ridēret, *laughing.*

312. Nullum animalium genus adeo ferox est, *quin*[e] vehementer *amet* prolem suam. Nulla fere pars est pecōrum, *quin*[f] ad commŏda nostra facta sit. Vere sapiens nunquam dubitabit, *quin*[g] immortalis *sit* animus.

---

[b] When *ne* is construed *that, quis, quid,* (*any body, any thing,*) must be construed *nobody, nothing*.
[c] *Marseilles.*
[d] *That have been lately whitewashed.*
[e] *As not to love,* &c.
[f] *That is not made.*
[g] *That the mind is.*

Ex odoratu et adspectu pomorum dubitare non possŭmus, *quin* hominibus ea donata sint. Nemo est tam bonus ac provĭdus, *quin* interdum *peccet*. Caius prohiberi non potuit, *quin* (5) *erumpĕret*. Non dubito, *quin ascenderis* murum. Nemo erit tam stultus, *quin* (3) hæc *fateatur*. Non possum pro dignitate vivere, *quin* (5) alterūtram partem *offendĕrem*. Negari non potest, *quin* turpius *sit* fallĕre quam falli. Nihil in rerum naturâ invenītur, *quin* sapientissime institutum *sit*. Qui temere omnibus credit, effugĕre non potest,[h] *quin* sæpius fallatur. Infesta concio vix inhiberi potuit, *quin* protĭnus saxa in Polemōnem *jacĕret*. Timoleontem mater, post fratris necem, nunquam adspexit, *quin* eum fratricīdam impiumque *compellaret*.

Lesson 65.

313. After verbs of *hindering*, 'quomĭnus' with the subjunct. is more common than *ne*. It may generally be translated by '*from*,' the verb being turned into the *participial substantive*: but after '*refuse*,' by the *infinitive*.

Exercise 65.

(1) *Nothing deterred him*, quomĭnus faceret, (*from doing*,) &c.
(2) *I will not refuse*, quomĭnus faciam, (*to do*,) &c.

314. Nihil impĕdit, *quominus* id facere possīmus. Non deterret sapientem mors, *quomĭnus*[i] in omne tempus reipublicæ, [k]suisque *consulat*. Rebus terrēnis multa externa, *quominus perficiantur*, possunt obsistere. Quid obstat, *quomĭnus* Caius *sit* beatus? Epaminondas non

---

[h] *Cannot avoid being often deceived.*
[i] *Does not deter*, &c., *from forwarding the interests of the commonwealth, and of his own* (friends.) Consulere alicui = *to consult a man's welfare; to forward his interests.*
[k] Sui = a man's dependents, a man's friends.

recusavit, quomĭnus legis pœnam *subiret.* Non me *terrēbis quominus* illud *faciam. Prohibēre* Romanos, *quomĭnus* frumentum *sumĕrent,* non poterant. Non me *impedies, quomĭnus* ei pecuniam illam *numerem.*

(Note. Literally 'quo minus' = *by which the less*, or, *so that the less.* Caio nihil obstat, *quo minus sit beatus*, is literally, "Nothing stands in the way of Caius, *by which* he should be *the less* happy.")

Lesson 66.

315. After words of '*fearing*,' '*ne*' and '*ut*' appear to change meanings: ne = *that*, (or *lest*;) ut = *that—not.* (Also the *subjunct. present* must generally be rendered by the *future.*)

Vereor *ne*, I fear he *will*; or *lest he should, &c.*
Vereor *ut*, } I fear he *will not*; or *lest he should not.*
Vereor *ne-non*, }

Exercise 66.

316. Vereor, *ne* labores tuos *augeam.* Pavor ceperat milites, *ne* mortifĕrum *esset* vulnus Scipionis. Homo scelestus semper verētur, *ne* peccata sua *patefīant.* Improbi semper sunt in *metu, ne* pœnâ *afficiantur* aliquando. Vereor, *nē* brevi tempore fames in urbe *sit.* Verebamini, *nē non* id facerem. Vereor, *nē* consolatio *nulla* vera possit reperiri. Timeo, *nē non* impĕtrem. Metuebant, *nē* dolorem ferre *non* possent.

Timeo, *ut* labores tantos *sustineas.* Avarus semper veretur, *ut* satis habeat. Vereor, *ut* pax firma *sit.* Ignavus semper metuit, *ut sustineat* labores.

a. In English we often leave out the conjunction 'that' aft. a verb of *fearing*, as, "I fear he will," for "I fear *that* he will."

Metuo, ne artificium tuum tibi parum *prosit.*

Lesson 67.

ON INTERROGATIVES.

317. All interrogatives take the indicative, *when the question* is put *directly:* they then stand at the head of a principal sentence, and are followed, of course, by a note of interrogation.

a. Num, an, and *nĕ,* (which is always *appended* to another word,) are not rendered in direct sentences.

b. Num (in direct questions) expects the answer '*no.*' *An* expects the answer '*no,*' and expresses *impatience, indignation,* &c.[l] *Nonnĕ* expects the answer '*yes.*'

c. The force of '*an*' may generally be given by adding '*why*' or '*then*' to the question.

An credis? { *Why,* do you believe ....? / Do you believe, *then* ....?

Exercise 67.

318. *Quis* non paupertatem *extimescit?* · *Unde* lucem suam *habet* luna? *Quid* interest[m] inter hominem et bestiam? *Quid* feret crastĭnus dies? *Quare* vitia sua nemo confitetur? *Cur* te *excrucias?* *Quid* rides?

Ubi aut *qualis* est tua mens? *Potesnĕ* dicere?— *Num* sola maris aqua *est* salsa? *Visne* miser esse? *Estne* animus immortalis? *Nonne* poëtæ post mortem nobilitari *volunt?* *Num scimus,* quo se conferant aves peregrinantes? *An* tu esse me tristem *putas?* *An* quisquam *potest* sine perturbatione mentis irasci?

Obs. *Ne* is often appended to the other particles; *numnĕ, annĕ,* &c.

Lesson 68.

319. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when they ask *indirectly* or *doubtfully;* especially when another verb goes before the question.

---

[l] A question with *nĕ* may be such as to make us confidently expect '*yes*' or '*no*' for the answer. But the answer is then suggested by the *nature* of the question, not by the *form* of it.

[m] *What difference is there?* intersum, interesse.

(a) Such verbs are *ask, doubt, try, know, not know*; it is *uncertain, &c.*
(b) *Num, an, nĕ*, in a dependent sentence, are '*whether*;' and '*num*' does not imply that the answer '*no*' is expected.
(c) *An* is never used by Cicero in a single indirect question.

Exercise 68.

320. *Quis* enumeret[n] artium multitudinem? Nescio, *unde* sol ignem *habeat*. Dic mihi, *quem* sol nobis *adferat* usum. Nescīmus, *quid* serus vesper *advecturus sit*.[o] *Quid futurum sit*, nescīmus. *Quid* vere nobis *prosit*,[p] non semper intelligīmus. Olim quæstio erat, *num* terra rotunda *esset*. *Num* ægrotum interrogabis, *an* sanari *velit*? Cogita tecum, *an* gratiam *retulĕris*, quibus gratiam debes. Quæritur[q] unquam*ne fuerint* monocerōtes. Utrum[e] velis, elige. Non me terrebis, quomĭnus, *utrum* velim, elīgam. Quid dicam nescio.

Lesson 69.

321. In *double questions* either,

(1) the first is introduced by *num, utrum*, or the appended *nĕ*, and the second by *an*, (*or*:) or,
(2) the *first* question has *no interrogative adverb*; the *second*, *an* or the appended *nĕ*.

Exercise 69.

322. (1) [*Direct.*] *Utrum*[r] major est sol, *an* minor, quam terra? Casu*nĕ* mundus est effectus, *an* vi divinâ? *Num* sol mobilis est, *an* immobilis? Sumus*ne* mortales, *an* immortales? [*Indirect* or *dependent.*] Quæritur, unus*ne* sit mundus *an* plures? Nihil rĕfert,[s] *utrum sit* aureum poculum, *an* vitreum.

(2) [*Direct.*] Uter est infelicior, cæcus *an* surdus? *Utrum* est pretiosius, aurum *an* argentum? [*Indirect.*]

---

n *Who can reckon up?*
o *Will bring?*
p Quid vere prosit (prosum) nobis; *what is really beneficial to us.*
q It is sought = *it is a question*, or *a disputed point*: monocerotes, *unicorns.*
e Neut of *uter.*
r *Is the sun . . ?*
s *It makes no difference.*

Stellarum numerus par[t] *an* impar *sit*, incertum est. Hominibus prodesse[u] natura jubet: servi liberi*ne sint*, quid refert?[v] Dic mihi, æstate[w] *grandinet, an* hieme Multum interest,[x] valentes imbecilli*ne* simus.

a. *Necne* in the second question is '*or not.*'

Lesson 70.

323. (*Some* conjunctions *that always take the* subjunctive.)

Utinam, *would that.*
O si, (*O! if,*) *O! that, would that.*
licet, *although.*
quasi, tanquam, *as if.*
dum, modo, dummŏdo, *provided; if only.*
quamvis, *however-much, however.*

Exercise 70.

Note.—With most of these conjunctions, the *present* (subjunctive) must be rendered by a *past* tense.

324. *Utinam* pacis amor omnibus inspirari *possit! Utinam* ense nullus magistratus *egeat! O si* quisque virtutem *colat! O si* omnes *cogitent*, mediocritatem in omnibus rebus esse optimam! Animalibus brutis nulla futuri temporis cognitio est, *licet sit* aliqua præsentis et præteriti. Improbus ita vivit, *quasi nesciat*, rationem vitæ sibi esse reddendam. Nemo, *quamvis sit* locŭples, aliorum ope carēre potest. Nulla est regio, quæ non cultores suos, *dummŏdo* laborare *velint*, alat. Ita fac omnia, *tanquam spectet* aliquis. Si quis nimis obscure dicit, perinde fere est, *ac si taceat.* Utinam hoc verum sit. Sic agis, *quasi* me ames.

---

[t] *Even:* impar, *odd.*
[u] Prosum
[v] *What matters it,* or, *what does it signify whether,* &c.?
[w] *In the summer.*
[x] *It makes a great difference.*

a. When *provided only* is to be followed by *not, nē* is used.

Sit summa in jure dicendo severitas, *dummŏdo* ea *ne varietur* gratiâ.

ON PARTICIPLES.

Lesson 71.

325. Participles *assume* an assertion, which may be formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary or convenient to do so.

Thus, 'I went to Henry, *being ill*,' might be expressed (according to the meaning) by 'I went to Henry, *who was ill*;' 'I went to Henry, *because he was ill*;' 'I went to Henry, *though he was ill*,' &c.

326. Translate the participles in the following examples by *relative* sentences.

EXAMPLE, (1) *The boy* ridens, { *who laughs;* or *is laughing.* / *who was laughing.*

(2) *The boy* risurus, { *who is going to laugh,* / (or) *who will laugh.*

(3) *The boy* amatus, *who is* (or *was*) *loved.*

(4) *The boy* amandus, *who ought to be loved.*

327. If no substantive is expressed, supply a *man, men;* or *he, she, those,* &c.

(5) ridentis, of *him* who laughs; or, *of a man* who laughs.

(6) ridentium, of *those* who laugh; or, *of men* who laugh.

328. With a neuter plural participle, '*things*' is to be supplied; but for '*things which* or *that*,' it is generally better to use '*what*' only.

(7) præteritura, { *things that* will pass away. / *what* will pass away

Exercise 71.

329. Pii homines ad felicitatem perpetuo *duraturam* pervenient. Nemo, cunctam *intuens* terram, de divinâ providentiâ dubitabit. Hæ sunt divitiæ certæ, semper *permansuræ*. Sapiens bona semper *placitura* laudat. Omnes aliud[y] *agentes*, aliud *simulantes*[z] improbi sunt. PISISTRATUS HOMERI libros, *confusos* antea, disposuisse dicitur. Male *agentis* (5) animus nunquam est sine metu. Garrulus tacere nequit[a] sibi *commissa*, (7.) Adulator aut laudat *vituperanda*, aut vituperat *laudanda*.

Lesson 72.

330. Render the participles in the following Exercise by verbs with '*when*,' '*as*.'

(1) ridens, { *when he is* (or *was*) *laughing*. / *as he is* (or *was*) *laughing*.

331. In a sentence with *when*, we often omit the auxiliary verb: hence

(2) *ridens* may be construed '*when laughing*.'

332. If the participle stands alone, '*he*,' '*they*,' '*a man*,' '*one*,' '*men*,' &c., must be supplied as the nom. to the verb.

(3) ridenti, { when *he* is laughing. / when *one* is laughing.

(4) ridentibus, when *men* (or *they*) are laughing.

Exercise 72.

333. Leo *esuriens* rugit. XERXES a Græcis *victus* in Persiam refugit. *Esurienti* (3) gratior est cibus. *Su-*

---

y The first *aliud* must be construed '*one thing*:' the second, '*another*.'
z Put in a '*but*' before simulantes.
a Nequeo.

danti (3) frigida potio perniciosissima est. DIONYSIUS tyrannus, Syracūsis *expulsus*, Corinthi pueros docebat. *Aranti* QUINCTIO CINCINNATO nuntiatum est, eum Dictatōrem esse factum. Hæc poma *sedens* decerpsi. Leōnes *satiati* innoxii sunt. Ne mente quidem recte uti possŭmus, multo cibo et potione *implēti*. Alit lectio ingenium, et studio *fatīgatum* reficit. Elephantes nemini nocent, nisi *lacessīti*.

Lesson 73.

334. Render the following participles by *verbs* with '*if*.'

(1) ridens, { *if he*[a] *laughs.* / *if a man* (or *one*) *laughs.*

(2) amatus, { *if I am loved; if I were loved.* / *if I had been loved.*

Exercise 73.

335. Quis est qui, totum diem *jacŭlans*, non aliquando collineet ?[b] Equum *empturus*, cave nē decipiaris. Hostes, hanc *adepti* victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confīdent. *Victi* hostes in Persiam refugient. *Admonītus* (2) venissem. *Liberatus*, rus ex urbe evolabo. Româ *expulsus* Carthagine pueros docēbo.

Lesson 74.

336. Render the following participles by verbs with

---

[a] The nom. to be used will be, *I, we, you, they*, &c., according to the person of the verb.

[b] Pres. *subj.* render by *pres. indic.*

because, for, since; or by the *participial substantive* with *from* or *through.*

dubitans, { (1) *because I doubt.* (2) *for I doubt.* (3) *since I doubt.* (4) *from doubting.* (5) *through doubting.*

Exercise 74.

337. Nihil affirmo, *dubitans* plerumque, et mihi ipse[a] *diffidens.* Hostes hanc *adepti* (4) victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confidebant. Sine aquâ anātes degere non possunt, magnam victûs partem in aquâ *quærentes.* Respondent se perfidiam *veritos* revertisse. Stellæ nobis parvæ videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis *disjunctæ.* Cantus olorīnus recte fabulōsus habētur, nunquam *audītus.*

Lesson 75. [*See note p.* 106.]

338. Render the following participles by verbs with *though, although.*

(1) ridens, *though he laughs.*

amatus, { (2) *though he is loved.* (3) *though he was loved.* (4) *even though he should be loved.*

339. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though.* Hence we may sometimes construe

(5) ridens, *though laughing.*
(6) amatus, *though loved.*

---

[a] Render mihi *myself*, and take no further notice of ipse.

Exercise 75.

340. Homines non statim pœnis afficiuntur, quotidie *delinquentes*. Multa transīmus ante ocŭlos *posita*. Ocŭlus, se non *videns*, alia videt. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum *cupientes* tenēre nequeamus. Scripta tua jam diu *exspectans*,[d] flagitare non audeo. Quis hoc non intelligit, Verrem *absolūtum* (4) tamen ex manibus populi Romani eripi nullo modo posse? Omnia magnâ voce *dicens*, simulabat tantum se furĕre. Ad cœnam *vocatus*, nondum vēnit.

Lesson 76. [*Note p.* 106.]

341. Render the following past participles by *after*, with a verb or participial substantive.

(*Act.*) passus, { (1) *after he has suffered.* (2) *after he had suffered.* (3) *after suffering.*

(*Pass.*) amatus, { (4) *after he was* (or *has been*) *loved.* (5) *after he had been loved.* (6) *after having been loved.*

Exercise 76.

342. Josephus in Ægypto, multa mala *perpessus*, (3,) ad summos honōres evectus est. Israëlītæ, Ægypto *egressi*, quadraginta annos in Arabiâ sunt commorati. Pleræque scribuntur orationes *habitæ*[e] jam, non ut habeantur. Dionysius, a Syracusis *expulsus*,[f] Corinthi pueros docebat. Alexander Abdolonimum diu *contemplatus* interrogavit, quâ patientiâ inopiam tulisset. *Lauti*[g] cibum capiunt Germani.

---

[d] Use the perf. definite '*have been expecting.*'
[e] Habere orationem, to *deliver* a speech.
[f] Render first by (4;) then by (6.)
[g] Partic. from *lavare*, to *wash*.

Lesson 77.

343. Render the following participles by verbs, and place '*and*' before the verb that stands already in the Latin sentence.

The participle is *generally* to be rendered by the same tense as the other verb.

(1) Ridens *he laughs*, exclamat *and exclaims*.

(2) Ridens *he laughed*, exclamavit *and exclaimed*.

But sometimes by a different tense.

(3) *Correptum* lepŏrem, *he has seized* the hare, lacerat, and *is mangling* it.

Exercise 77.

344. Jussis divinis *obediens* virtuti *studet*. CRŒSUS, a Cyro *victus*, regno *spoliatus est*. Troja, equi lignei ope capta, incendio delēta est. Persæ mortuos cerâ *circumlĭtos*[h] condunt. Grues, quum loca calidiora *petentes* maria *transmittunt*, triangŭli efficiunt formam. Illud ipsum[i] non accidisset, si *quiescens* legibus *paruissem*. Cum legionibus *profectus*[k] celeriter *adero*. TITUS MANLIUS Gallum, in conspectu duorum exercituum *cæsum*, torque spoliavit. *Comprehensum* hominem Romam *ducēbant*, (3.) Mulier ALCIBIADEM suâ veste *contectum* cremavit.

Lesson 78.

345. *Non* before a participle may be rendered *without*; the participle being turned into the participial substantive.

non *without*, ridens *laughing*.

non *without*, { amatus *being loved*. / amatus *loving him*.

---

[h] From *circumlinere*. [i] Render *ipse* by *even*. [k] Proficisci.

Exercise 78.

346. *Non petens* regnum accepit. Romani Græcis *non rogati* ultro offĕrunt auxilium. Liberalitate utitur, se ipsum *non spolians*. Neminem in familiaritatem recipe *non cognĭtum*.[1] Multi homines vituperant libros *non intellectos*.[1] Benefĭcus est, qui non privatis commŏdis *permōtus*, alios adjŭvat.

347. Obs. Participles in the ablative absolute may be rendered in the same way: the substantive will be the nom. to the verb; or the acc. after it.[m]

Thus,	Tarquinio regnante,	*when* Tarquinius *was king*.
	te sedente,	*as* you were sitting.
	captâ Tyro,	*after* Tyre was taken.
	migraturis apibus,	*when* the bees are going to swarm.
	fele comprehensâ,	*if* the cat is caught.
	ademto pomo,	*because* his apple was taken away.
	radice succisâ,	*though* the root was cut.
	fasce *sublato*, redit,	he *takes up* the bundle AND returns.
	te *non salutato*,	*without* saluting you.

348. Participles may often be rendered by *substantives* of a kindred meaning. Thus:

For	*We may say,*
Ciconiæ redeuntes, The *returning* storks,	The *return* of the storks.
Januario *addito*, By January *added*,	By the *addition* of January.
Leges *violatæ*, The *violated* laws,	The *violation* of the laws.
Vere appropinquante, Spring *approaching*,	On the *approach* of spring.

---

[1] Use *act. partic.*

[m] It may sometimes be the accusative after the verb; because 'the bundle being taken *by him*,' = 'the bundle was taken up *by him*;' which may be turned into '*he* took up *the bundle*.'

QUESTIONS.

[Those on the *Syntax* have an asterisk before them.]

N. B. The pupil should learn the Terminations of Substantives, (p. 126,) and of the 3d persons of the Verb, (p. 150,) as soon as possible.

1. Give the accusative endings. (9.)
2. Repeat the terminations of the third persons. (32.)
3. Give the genitive endings. (40.)
*4. In what case is the *price* or *value* put sometimes? [*The Gen.* 47.]
5. What are the endings of nouns expressing *virtues*, *vices*, *dispositions*, &c.? (47. h.)
*6. By what case are some *neuter* adjectives followed? *What* adjectives are so used? (*Ans.* Indefinite numerals.)
What substantive is so used? (*Ans.* The indeclinable substantive '*nihil*,' 'nothing.' 56.)
*7. What often stands as the nominative case to the verb? (60, n.)
When an *infinitive mood* (or *sentence*) is the nominative case to the verb, where is it placed in *English*? (*Ans. After* the verb, being *represented* by the pronoun '*it*,' which is not to be translated. 60, n.)
In what *gender* is the adjective then put? (*Ans.* In the *neuter*.)
8. How is the *acc. plur.* got from the *acc. sing.*? What must '*um*' be turned into, to give the *acc. plur.* of the second? What is always the termination of the *acc. neut.* plural? (64.)
9. By what *prepositions* is the *dat.* rendered? [67. N. B. These prepositions are called *signs* of the *dative*.]
a) What are the signs of the *ablative*? (67.)
b) By what preposition is an *ablative* of time rendered? (*Ans.* By *in* or *at*.)
c) How is an *acc.* of time rendered? (*Ans.* By '*for*,' or without any *prepos.* 72.)
10. To what declension do adjectives in '*is*' belong? [*The third.*] Of what gender are they? [*m. and f.*] What is their *neuter* form? [*e.*] Is their ablative *e* or *i*? [*i.*][a]
*11. In what case do you put the name of a town *where* a thing was done? When is the town *where* put in the *abl.*? When in the *gen.*? (72, s.)
*12. In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *when*? [In the *abl.*]

The manner of declining the other adjectives of the *third* is explained at p. 139.

* In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *how long?* [In the *acc.*]
Is '*for*' a sign of the *dative*, when it stands before a noun of time? [*Ans.* No, of the *acc.*]

13. How may the *third plural* be got from the *third* singular? Into what must '*it*' of the perfect be changed? '*it*' of the fourth? '*it*' in '*erit?*' all other *it's?*
14. Give the terminations of the *nom.* and *gen.* plural.
*15. What case does *in* govern when it means '*into?*' [*Acc.*]
——— '*in?*' [*Abl.*]
——— *ex* govern? [*Abl.*]
*16. How must '*not*' with the imperative be translated?[b] [By *nē.*]
What word must stand before the *not* in English? [The '*do*' of the imperative.]
*17. How is the thing *with which* any thing is done translated? or, what case *answers* to '*with what?*' [*Abl.*]
18. When '*thing*' or '*things*' is left out, in what *gender* must the adjective be put? [*Neut.*]
*19. What cases follow verbs of *accusing, acquitting, condemning?* [Acc. of *person:* Gen. of the *charge.*]
*20. By what cases may '*of great valor*' be translated into Latin? [*Gen.* or *Abl.*]
*21. In what case does a noun of *price* stand, when it answers to '*for how much?*' [*In the Abl.*]
*22. (*a*) When must the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her, them, &c.*) be translated by *sui*, &c.? [*When the pron. represents the same person as the nom. to the verb.*] (*b*) What preposition is omitted after *give, cost,* the adj. *like,* &c.? [*To.*]
*23. When is one noun said to be *in apposition* to another? In what case is a substantive *in apposition* to another placed? [*In the same case as the subst. to which it stands in apposition.*]
*24. What case do *dignus, indignus,*[c] &c., govern? [*Abl.*]
*25. What case does the verb *to be* take after it? [*The same case as before it.*]
*26. What case do the compounds of *esse* govern? [*The dat.*] What exception is there? [*Possum.*]
*27. What does the *English infinitive* often express, but the Latin infinitive *never?* [*A purpose.*]
*28. How may the English infinitive expressing a *purpose* be translated? [By *ut* with the *subjunctive:* of which the *imperfect* follows the past tenses; the *present,* the other tenses.]
29. What tense is '*he is come?*' [*Perf.*] What tense is '*he was come?*' [*Plup.*] With what auxiliary do neuter verbs of motion form their *perfect definite?*
30. How is the *subjunctive present,* standing in a principal sentence, to be translated? [As an *imperative,* or to express a *wish.* Veniat = *let him come;* or, *may he come.*]
(*a*) How must the *perfect* be rendered, when it is followed by the subjunctive *present?* [*By the perf. definite.*]
*31. When is the English *indicative* after '*that*' to be translated by the *Latin subjunctive* governed by *ut?* [When *that* follows *so* or *such.*—It then introduces a *consequence.*]
*32. What tenses of the subjunctive are the *regular attendants* of the *past tenses* of the *indicative?* [The *imperf.* and *pluperf.*]
*33. When is '*to*' never a *sign* of the dative? [After verbs of *motion: come, send, fetch,* &c.] *How is the place *to which* translated? (By *Acc.*) *How is the place *from which* translated? (By the *Abl.*) When must *ad,* '*to,*' be expressed? (*Ans.* When the place is not the name of a *town* or *small island;* and when the motion is to a *person.*)
*34. How is the supine in *um* used? (*Ans.* After verbs of *motion.*) How is the sup. in *um* Englished? (*Ans.* By the *infin. act.*) How is the *sup.* in *u* used? (*Ans.* After some adjectives, such as *hard, disgraceful, pleasant, best,* &c.) How is the *sup.* in *u* Englished? (*Ans.* Regularly by the *infin.* passive: but often by the *infin. active.*)

---

[b] How may the *imperative* be got from the *infinitive?* [*By throwing away* re.]
[c] The ablative after *dignus, indignus,* must be Englished by '*of*:' after all of them consider what preposition we use in English, and *use* that, without thinking about the usual *signs* of the ablative.

*35 How is the want of the *perfect* participle† *active* supplied? (*Ans.* By *cum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf.* of the subjunctive; or by the *abl. absolute.*)

*36. What is the *ablative absolute*? *Is the substantive of the *abl. absol.* to be rendered by a *preposition*? [No.] *By what participle *governing* its noun may the ablative absolute often be rendered, when the participle is of the *perf. pass.*? [By the *partic.* with '*having.*']

*37. What substantives follow the rules for the proper names of towns? [*Ans. Domus* and *rus*: also the genitives *humi* and *militiæ*. See 33.]

38. Where is '*cum*' placed with the ablatives of personal pronouns? [*After them and joined to them*: mecum, &c.]

*39. What case do adjectives signifying *desire*, &c., govern? [*Gen.*]

*41. In what case is *the agent* or *person by whom* put? (*Ans.* In the ablative with *a* or *ab*: but after the part. in *dus*, in the dative.)

42. Mention some words, &c., after which the *gerund* or *part.* in *dus* follows in the *dat.* [Utilis, *profitable* or *good for*; inutilis, *unprofitable*; idoneus, *fit for*; tempus impendēre, *to spend time in* or *on*; vacāre, *to have leisure*; studēre, *aim at*; *devote one's self to.*]

*43. How is what is in *form* the *pass. infin.* to be translated after '*is*,' '*are*?' [*Ans.* By the part. in *dus.*]

*44. What verbs govern the dative? (191.) *How is the *pluperf. indic.* to be translated after '*if*?' [By *plup. subj.*]

45. In the infinitives made up of *two words*, is the participle to agree with its substantive or not? (*Ans.* To agree.) Is the word in *um* in the *fut. infin. pass.* a participle? What is it? [*Supine.*] Can it then agree with the substantive? [*No.*]

*46. Must you look for the *antecedent* to the relative in the relative sentence or not? [*Generally not.*] *Is the *case* of the relative determined by a word in its own, or in the preceding sentence?

47. Can the verbs that govern the *dative* be used in the *first* or *second* persons in the passive? In what person only can they be used in the passive? [*In the third sing.*]

48. How is the present infin. rendered after *licuit*? *oportuit*? [*Generally by the perf.*]

*49. What verbs govern the gen.? (244.)

*50. ——————— abl.? (221, 245.)

*51. What cases do *pœnitet*, *pudet*, &c., take after them? (*Ans.* An *accusative* of the *person*, *feeling*; a *gen.* of the *thing* or person about which the emotion is felt.)

*52 How is '*must*' translated? [*By the part in* dus *with the verb* esse.] When is the part. in *dus* to *agree* with the subst.?‡ [*When the verb governs the accusative.*] When the verb *does not* govern the *acc.*, in what case, &c., must the participle stand? [In the *nom. neut.*, and then *esse* will always stand in the *third singular.*]

Go through *prodesse*, (129, p. 51.)
——————— occīdēre, *killing*, (175, p. 63.)
——————— epistŏla scribenda, (181, p. 64.)
——————— scribendum est mihi, (207, p. 71.)
——————— mihi creditur, (237, p. 80.)
——————— mihi ire licet, (261, p. 86.)
——————— me ire oportet, (269, p. 88.)
Mention the participles of *loquor*, (242, p. 82.)§

---

† What English participle answers to the *partic.* in *ns*? [*Part.* in *ng.*] in *us*? [*Part.* in *d*, *t*, or *n.*] *rus*? [*Going to—*; or, *about to—.*] in *ndus*? [*Form of inf. pass.*]

‡ The subst., that is, which is governed by the verb that follows *must*. The nom. before *must* becomes the *dat.* after *esse*, but is often omitted.

§ The *fut. inf.* of a deponent verb is the *fut. in rus* with *esse.*

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

English.	Latin.
1. To think nothing of.	To reckon at nothing, (*nihili ducĕre* or *facĕre.*)
2. To value highly.[a]	To value at a high price, (*magni estimāre.*)
3. To think little of.[b] / To hold cheap.	To value at a little price, (*parvi estimāre.*)
4. *No* stability.	*Nothing* of stability, (*nihil stabilitātis.*)
Some time.	*Something* of time, (*aliquid temporis.*)
Much good.	*Much* of good, (*multum boni.*)
How much pleasure.	*How much* of pleasure, (*quantum voluptātis.*)
☞ Hence '*no*,' '*some*,' (when they denote *quantity*, not *number*,) '*much*,' '*how much*,' are to be translated by '*nihil*,' '*aliquid*,' '*multum*,' '*quantum*,' followed by the *gen.*	
5. He did it *unwillingly.*	He, *unwilling*, did it
6. *It* is disgraceful to lie.	To lie is disgraceful
7. It is the *part* / ——— *duty* / ——— *business* / ——— *mark* / ——— *character* } of a wise man.	It is *of a wise man.*
8. To condemn a man *to death.*	To condemn a man *of the head.*
9. As many as *possible.* / ——— *he* can or *could.*	As the most, (*quam plurimi.*)
The greatest *possible.* / ——— *he can* or *could.*	As the greatest, (*quam maximus.*)
	[That is, '*as many* as the *most*:' '*as great* as greatest,' &c.]
10. On the *top of* the mountain.	On the mountain *highest.*
In the *middle of* the water.	In the water *middle*, (in *summo* monte; in *mediâ* aquâ.)
11. Is going to bed.	Is going *to lie down*, (*cubitum*, sup.)
12. It is hard *to say.*	It is hard *in saying*, (difficile est *dictu*; supine.)
13. While they were (are, &c.) playing.	During playing, (*inter ludendum.*)

[a] To value *very highly*, (*maximi* estimāre.)
[b] The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the '*of*,' for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

English.	Latin.
14. The intention of writing a letter.	The intention of a letter *to-be-written*, (scribendæ epistŏlæ.)
15. We must cultivate virtue.	Virtue is *to-be-cultivated*, (*colenda est* virtus.)
16. Caius must write.	It is to-be-written by Caius, (*Caio scribendum est.*)
17. We must believe Caius.	It is to-be-believed to Caius, (*credendum est Caio.*)
18. The ways of expressing the *purpose* are,	
He comes to see the games.	(*a*) Venit ut ludos spectet. (*b*) Venit ludos spectātum, (*sup.*) (*c*) Venit ludos spectatūrus. (*d*) Venit ad ludos spectandos. To which add, (*e*) Venit causâ (*for the purpose*) ludōrum spectandōrum; and (*f*) Instead of *ut*, the relative may be used: He sent ambassadors, *qui* pacem *petĕrent*, (*to sue* for peace.)
19. (*a*) I may go.	Mihi ire licet, (*it is permitted to me* to go.)
(*b*) I might *have gone*.	Mihi *ire* licuit, (*it was permitted to me* to go.)
20. (*a*) I ought to go.	Me ire oportet.
(*b*) I ought to have gone.	Me ire oportuit.

PART II.

A SECOND LATIN BOOK

AND

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.

A

SECOND LATIN BOOK

AND

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.

BY

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.,

RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A.M.

TENTH EDITION.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON & CO., 200 BROADWAY.

PHILADELPHIA:

G. S. APPLETON, 164 CHESNUT-STREET.

M DCCC XLVIII.

Entered, according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1846,

BY D. APPLETON & COMPANY,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

PREFACE

TO THE FIRST ENGLISH EDITION.

THE following work is founded on Augustus Grotefend's *Lateinisches Elementarbuch*, from which the Latin portions are taken without alteration.

The work is a Practical Latin Grammar, with Reading Lessons and Exercises. It assumes that the pupil can decline and conjugate with accuracy; at which stage of his progress it is of great importance that he should be made acquainted with the principles on which derivative words are formed. For this purpose I have given a list of the principal terminations employed, and added to the earlier Exercises Vocabularies, in which the principles of *Word-building* are practically applied.

T. K. A.

[Consult Preface to Part I., or First Latin Book.]

J. A. S.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART II.

	Page
I. Sketch of Latin Accidence	125
Terminations of Substantives	126
General Rules of Gender	127
First Declension	128
Second do.	130
Third do.	132
Gender of the Third Declension	132
Fourth Declension	135
Fifth do.	136
Adjectives	137
The Numerals	142
Comparison of Adjectives	143
Pronouns	144
The Verb	147
Conjugations	149
Terminations of the Verb	150
The verb *sum*	154
First Conjugation	155
Second do.	159
Third do.	162
Fourth do.	165
List of Verbs	168
Deponent Verbs	174
Impersonals	176
Irregular Verbs	177
Adverbs	179
Prepositions	180
Principles of Word-building	181
Table of Genders	186

	Page
Brief Sketch of Latin Syntax	189
I. Subject and Predicate	189
II. Of the Cases	190
III. Use of the Tenses	198
IV. Of the Moods	199
Gerunds, Gerundive	202
Participles	203
Supines	204
II. Exercises	205
III. Reading Lessons	255
IV. Vocabularies on the Exercises	265
V. Questions on the Latin Accidence	284
VI. Questions on Latin Syntax, (including Answers, and the principal Rules in Latin from the Eton Grammar)	291
VII. Cautions	314
VIII. Distinction of Synonymes	315
Appendix I.—Verbs with Dative, &c	316
" II.—Greek Nouns, &c.	317
" III.—Conjunctions	318
Latin Index	321
English-Latin Index	344

EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS.

S.	refers to the	Rules of Syntax	291
C.	"	Cautions	314
Syn.	"	Synonymes distinguished	315

I. SKETCH OF LATIN ACCIDENCE.

1. THERE are in Latin nine parts of speech; viz.—

(*a*) NOUN, ADJECTIVE, PRONOUN, VERB, PARTICIPLE,—which are declined:

(*b*) ADVERB, PREPOSITION, INTERJECTION, and CONJUNCTION,—which are undeclined.

2. Latin nouns are declined by *Genders*, *Cases*, and *Numbers*.

3. There are *three* genders: *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

4. There are *six* cases: *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

5. There are *two* numbers: *Singular* and *Plural*.

6. There are *five* declensions, which are distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular.

7. The *first* declension makes the genitive ending in *æ* diphthong; the *second*, in *i*; the *third*, in *is*; the *fourth*, in *ûs*; the *fifth*, in *ëi*.*

* The two dots over the *e*, are a *separation-mark*, (diærĕsis,) meaning that the two vowels are to be pronounced separately; thus: *re-i*.

§ 8. TERMINATIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

	I.	II.		III.	IV.		V.
Sing.	*f.*	*m.*	*neut.*		*m.*	*neut.*	*f.*
Nom.	ă	ŭs, ĕr	um	*various**	ŭs	u	ēs
Gen.	æ	ī		ĭs	ūs	ūs	ēi
Dat.	æ	ō		ī	ui		ēi
Acc.	am	um	um	em (im)	um	u	em
Voc.	ă	ĕ, ĕr	um	*like nom.*	ŭs	ū	ēs
Abl.	ā	ō		ĕ (ī)	ū		ē
Plural.							
Nom.	æ	ī	ă	ēs	ūs	ua	ēs
Gen.	ārum	ōrum		um *or* ium	uum		ērum
Dat.	īs	īs		ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs (ūbŭs)		ēbŭs
Acc.	ās	ōs	ă	ēs	ūs	ua	ēs
Voc.	æ	ī	ă	ēs	ūs	ua	ēs
Abl.	īs	īs		ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs (ūbŭs)		ēbŭs

9. The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English:—

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	..... *a* or *the boy*	..... *boys*
Gen.	*of* ..... *a* or *the boy*	*of* ..... *the boys*
Dat.	*to* or *for* ..... *a* or *the boy*	*to* ..... *the boys*
Acc.	..... *a* or *the boy*	..... *the boys*
Voc.	*O* ..... *boy*	*O* ..... *boys*
Abl.	*with, from, in,* or *by*.. *a* or *the boy*	*with, from, in,* or *by*..... *the boys*

10. Obs. That in *neuter* nouns the *accusative* is like the *nominative*, and that in the plural the *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative* end in *ă*.

11. The vocative is always like the nominative, except in nouns in *us* of the second, which make V. *ĕ*. Proper names in *ius*, with *filius*, *genius*, contract *ie* into *i.*; as, Virgilius, Virgili, &c.

12. In the third, *vis*, with *sitis*, *tussis*, *amussis*, and a few more, have Acc. *im*, Abl. *i* only.

Febris, puppis, secūris, turris, &c., *prefer* im, ī.
Neuters in *e, al, ar*, have Abl. *i*, N. plur. *ia*, G. plur, *ium*.

13. Besides the neuters in *e, al, ar*, the following classes of words generally make G. plur. *ium:*

---

* In repeating the Table, let the pupil say, "Nom., various,—generally not containing the unaltered root." See 42.

(a) Nouns in *as*, *is*, *er*, not increasing in the Gen.
(b) Nouns in *s*, *x*, after a consonant, except words of more than one syllable in *ps*.
(c) Monosyllables.
(d) National names in *as*, *is*, that make their genitives in *ātis*, *ītis*, respectively.

EXCEPTIONS.

(e) *But* vates, prŏles, juvĕnis, senex, canis,
Take um; *with* pater, frater, mater, panis.

(*f*) Of *monosyllables*, the following, with a few more,[1] take um:

Dux, vox, grex, lex,
Pes, fur, prex, rex,
Mos, flos, fraus, laus.

14. The fourth declension is a *contracted* form of the third declension: G. *ŭīs*, ūs. Abl. *ŭĕ*, ū, &c. The dat. is often *u*, (for *ui*.)

15. The following words of the *fourth* have Abl. *ŭbus*:

Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus,
Et tribus, *et* partus; specus *adde*, verū*que*, pecū*que*.

16. In the fifth declension, *e* of G. and D. is *long*, if it follows a vowel; *short*, if it follows a consonant, (*faciēi*, *fidĕi*.)[2]

---

§ 17. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

18. Names of men and of male beings, and the names of rivers, winds, and months, are *masculine*.

19. Names of women and female beings; most of names of trees, towns, countries, and islands, are *feminine*.

20. Nouns which signify either male or female, are of the *common* gender. The following lines contain most of the Latin nouns of two genders:

---

[1] The following lines give a more complete list:—
ren, *fur*, and *lar*, with *as*, *dux*, *fraus*, and *dos*,
grus, *laus*, and *pes*, with *sus*, *crux*, *fax*, and *mos*;
Add *grex* with *bos* and *flos*; add *fux* and *frux*,
lex, *prex*, and *rex*, with *crus*, and *vox* and *nux*.

[2] Compare note, First Latin Book, p. 25

Antistes, vates, adolescens, auctor et *augur,*
Dux, judex, index, testis, cum *cive sacerdos,*
Municipi adde *parens, patruelis affinis* et *heres,*
Artifici, conjux atque *incola, miles* et *hostis,*
Pars, juvenis, martyr, comes, infans, obses et *hospes,*
Interpres, praesul, custos, vindex que *satelles.*

21. Names of animals which include both sexes but which admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene*. Such nouns commonly follow the gender of their terminations. But if the sex of the particular animal is to be stated, the word *mas* or *femina* is added; as, *anas mas, anas femina,* &c.

22. All indeclinable nouns; names of the letters of the alphabet, &c., are *neuter*.

23. The mode of determining the gender of nouns from their terminations, will be explained under each declension. See also "Table of Genders," 171.

---

§ 24. FIRST DECLENSION.

25. Nouns of the first declension end in *a, e, as,* and *es*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine, with the exception of a few names of *men,* and *designations of men;* as, *poëta,* a poet; *agricola,* a husbandman; &c. Those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

EXAMPLES.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
N.	Mus-ă	*a muse*	N. Mus-æ	*muses*
G.	Mus-æ	*of a muse*	G. Mus-ārum	*of muses*
D.	Mus-æ	*to a muse*	D. Mus-is	*to muses*
A.	Mus-am	*a muse*	A. Mus-ās	*muses*
V.	Mus-ă	*O muse*	V. Mus-æ	*O muses*
A.	Mus-ā	*with a muse*	A. Mus-is	*with muses*

26. In like manner decline—

terra	*earth, land.*	culpa	*a fault.*
ăqua	*water.*	cura	*care.*
aquila	*an eagle.*	fēmina	*a woman.*
arēna	*sand.*	farīna	*meal.*
barba	*the beard.*	flamma	*flame.*
catēna	*a chain.*	forma	*form, beauty.*
cēra	*wax.*	galea	*helmet.*
copia	*plenty.*	gratia	(1) *agreeableness, elegance,* (2) *favor,* (3) *thanks.*
corōna	*crown.*		

hasta ..... *spear.*	patria ..... *country.*
hora ..... *hour.*	pecunia ..... *money.*
insŭla ..... *island.*	pœna ..... *a punishment.*
ira ..... *anger.*	porta ..... *a gate.*
lacryma ..... *a tear.*	præda ..... *booty, plunder.*
lana ..... *wool.*	rīpa ..... *bank.*
libra ..... *a balance.*	rŏta ..... *a wheel.*
lingua ..... *tongue.*	săgitta ..... *arrow.*
litera, *a letter;* literæ, plur., *a letter,* (i. e. an *epistle,*) *literature.*	stella ..... *a star.*
	turba ..... *tumult, a crowd.*
	vacca ..... *a cow.*
lūna ..... *the moon.*	via ..... *way.*
mŏra ..... *delay.*	umbra ..... *shade.*
mensa ..... *a table.*	unda ..... *wave*

27. Nouns of this declension ending in *as*, *es*, &c., are of Greek origin.

EXAMPLES.

"A Turban."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Tiār-as	N. Tiār-æ
G. Tiār-æ	G. Tiār-ārum
D. Tiār-æ	D. Tiār-is
A. Tiār-am *or* an	A. Tiār-ās
V. Tiār-ā	V. Tiār-æ
A. Tiār-ā	A. Tiār-is

"A Comet."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Comēt-ēs	N. Comēt-æ
G. Comēt-æ	G. Comēt-ārum
D. Comēt-æ	D. Comēt-is
A. Comēt-ēn	A. Comēt-ās
V. Comēt-ē	V. Comēt-æ
A. Comēt-ē	A. Comēt-is

"Aloes."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Alo-ē	N. Alo-æ
G. Alo-ēs	G. Alo-ārum
D. Alo-æ	D. Alo-is
A. Alo-ēn	A. Alo-ās
V. Alo-ē	V. Alo-æ
A. Alo-ē	A. Alo-is

28. Some nouns of this declension have *abus* in the dat. and abl. plur., to distinguish them from masculine nouns in *us* of the second declension; as, Dea, Filia, Equa, Mula, and a few others.

29. The following words are plurals with a singular meaning:—

Divitiæ, riches; *tenĕbræ*, darkness; *literæ*, a letter, (in the sense of an epistle;) *nundĭnæ*, a market or fair; *nuptiæ*, a wedding.

30. Also, some names of towns:—

Athēnæ, Athens; *Syracūsæ*, Syracuse; *Thēbæ*, Thebes.

§ 31. SECOND DECLENSION.

32. Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *us*, *um*, *os*, *on*.

33. In nouns in *er* in this declension, the whole nominative is the *root;* but most of them throw away the *e:* as, Magister, *magistri*, &c., not *magisteri*.

Puer, boy. *gener*, son-in-law; *socer*, father-in-law; *Liber*, Bacchus; *liberi*, children; with *adulter*, and those in *fer*, *ger*, &c., retain the *e*.

34. Nouns in *us*, *er* of this declension are masculine; except,—

(1) Feminine:

alvus.....*belly.*	humus.....*ground.*
domus.....*house, home.*	vannus.....*winnowing fan,*

and a few others.

(2) Neuter:

virus, juice, poison. *pelagus*, sea. *vulgus*, [also masc.] common people.

35. Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; nouns in *os* masculine.

EXAMPLES.

"A Son-in-law."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Genĕr	N. Genĕr-i
G. Genĕr-i	G. Genĕr-ōrum
D. Genĕr-o	D. Genĕr-is
A. Genĕr-um	A. Genĕr-ōs
V. Genĕr	V. Genĕr-i
A. Genĕr-o	A. Genĕr-is

"A Field."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Agĕr	N. Agr-i
G. Agr-i	G. Agr-ōrum
D. Agr-o	D. Agr-is
A. Agr-um	A. Agr-ōs
V. Agĕr	V. Agr-i
A. Agr-o	A. Agr-is

"A Raven."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Corv-us	N. Corv-i
G. Corv-i	G. Corv-ōrum
D. Corv-o	D. Corv-is
A. Corv-um	A. Corv-ōs
V. Corv-e	V. Corv-i
A. Corv-o	A. Corv-is

"A Kingdom."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Regn-um	N. Regn-ă
G. Regn-i	G. Regn-ōrum
D. Regn-o	D. Regn-is
A. Regn-um	A. Regn-ă
V. Regn-um	V. Regn-ă
A. Regn-o	A. Regn is

36. In like manner decline,—

ăcervus.....*heap*	arbĭter.....*an umpire.*
agnus.....*lamb.*	asĭnus.....*an ass.*
ămicus.....*a friend.*	astrum.....*constellation.*
angŭlus.....*corner.*	ăvus.....*grandfather.*
animus.....*mind.*	bellum.....*war.*
annus.....*year.*	cancer.....*a crab.*

căper ..... *a goat.*	mendīcus ..... *a beggar.*
căpillus ..... *the hair of the human head; a hair.*	mŏdus ..... *a measure.*
cœlum ..... *heaven.*	morbus ..... *disease.*
[plur. cœli.]	mundus ..... *world.*
cumūlus ..... *heap.*	mūrus ..... *wall.*
Deus[1] ..... *God.*	nāsus ..... *nose.*
digĭtus ..... *finger, toe.*	nīdus ..... *a nest.*
dominus ..... *a master, a lord.*	nōdus ..... *knot.*
dŏmus[2] ..... *a house, home.*	nūmĕrus ..... *number.*
[partly of decl. 4.]	nummus ..... *coin, money.*
dōnum ..... *gift.*	nuntius ..... *a messenger; message, news.*
ĕquus ..... *a horse.*	ŏcŭlus ..... *eye.*
ferrum ..... *iron.*	plumbum ..... *lead.*
fĭlius ..... *a son.*	pŏpŭlus ..... *people.*
[voc. *fĭli.*][3]	prĕtium ..... *value, price.*
fŏcus ..... *hearth.*	rādius ..... *the spoke of a wheel; a ray.*
fŏlium ..... *leaf.*	rāmus ..... *branch.*
fūmus ..... *smoke.*	scopŭlus ..... *rock.*
gladius ..... *a sword.*	servus ..... *a slave.*
hāmus ..... *hook.*	socius ..... *an associate, partner; an ally.*
hortus ..... *a garden.*	somnus ..... *sleep.*
jŭgum ..... *yoke.*	taurus ..... *bull.*
lĕtum ..... *death.*	tēlum ..... *weapon.*
liber ..... *the inner bark of a tree; a book.**	terminus ..... *end.*
linum ..... *flax.*	ventus ..... *wind.*
locus ..... *place.*	verbum ..... *a word.*
[plur. *loci* and *loca.*]	vestĭgium ..... *footstep.*
lūdus ..... *play; a school.*	vir[4] ..... *a man.*
marītus ..... *a husband.*	

Obs. The above list does not contain the names of *females* and *female designations;* nor those of trees, of which many are feminine.

37. (*Plural words with sing. meaning:*)

castra ..... *a camp.*	fasti ..... *the calendar.*

And the towns *Gabii, Veii,* &c.

38. Greek nouns ending in *os* and *on* are thus declined:—

		"A Lyre."	
		Sing.	*Plur.*
N.	Dēl-os ..... *Delos*	N. Barbĭt-on	N. Barbĭt-ē
G.	Dēl-i ..... *of Delos*	G. Barbĭt-i	G. Barbĭt-ōn
D.	Dēl-o ..... *to Delos*	D. Barbĭt-o	D. Barbĭt-is
A.	Dēl-on ..... *Delos*	A. Barbĭt-on	A. Barbĭt-ē
V.	Dēl-e ..... *O Delos*	V. Barbĭt-on	V. Barbĭt-ē
A.	Dēl-o ..... *with Delos*	A. Barbĭt-o	A. Barbit-is

---

[1] Voc. sing. *Deus;* plur. nom. *Dii, Di,* or *Dei;* dat. abl. *Diis, Dis,* or *Deis*

[2] See 52, 53.

[3] So proper names in *ius;* as, *Virgĭli, Pompei,* from Virgilius, Pompeius. *Meus* has voc. masc. *mi.*

[4] The only noun in *ir;* it is declined like *gener.*

* So called, because the ancients used to write on this inner rind.

39. Greek proper names in *eus* (*ευς*) are usually declined like *corvus*, except in the vocat., which ends in *eu*. They are sometimes of the third declension.

---

§ 40. THIRD DECLENSION.

41. The number of final letters of this declension is twelve. Five are vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, and seven are consonants, *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

42. Tabular view of the terminations :—

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.	N. ēs. neut. ă *or* ia
G. Is	G. um *or* ium
D. I	D. Ibus
A. em (*neut.* like *nom.*)	A. like *nom.*
V. like *nom.*	V. like *nom.*
A. ĕ *or* I	A. Ibus

---

§ 43. GENDER OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.[1]

44. The following are the masculine terminations :

er, or, os, es, when the gen. increases ; and any termination in *o*, except *do*, *go*, *io*.

45. The following are the feminine terminations :

do, go, io, as, is, aus, x, es *not increasing in the genitive*, s *impure*.

46. The other terminations are neuter : that is,—

e, *a*, *i*, *c*, *l*,[2] *ner*, *ur*, *us*.

EXAMPLES.

"A Poem."		"A Speech." *masc.*	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
N. Poēmă	N. Poēmăt-ă	N. Sermo	N. Sermōn-ēs
G. Poēmăt-Is	G. Poēmăt-um	G. Sermōn-Is	G. Sermōn-um
D. Poēmăt-I	D. Poēmat-Ibus	D. Sermōn-I	D. Sermōn-Ibus
A. Poēmă	A. Poēmăt-ă	A. Sermōn-em	A. Sermōn-ēs
V. Poēmă	V. Poēmăt-ă	V. Sermo	V. Sermōn-ēs
A. Poēmăt-ĕ	A. Poēmat-Ibus	A. Sermōn-ĕ	A. Sermōn-Ibus

[1] See "Table of Genders," 171.
[2] These letters are contained in the word *cattle*.

"A Sea."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Măr-e	N. Măr-ĭă
G. Mar-ĭs	G. Mar-ĭum
D. Mar-ī	D. Mar-ĭbus
A. Mar-ĕ	A. Mar-ĭă
V. Mar-ĕ	V. Mar-ĭă
A. Mar-ī	A. Mar-ĭbus

"A Virgin."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Virgo	N. Virgĭn-ēs
G. Virgĭn-ĭs	G. Virgĭn-um
D. Virgĭn-ī	D. Virgĭn-ĭbus
A. Virgĭn-em	A. Virgĭn-ēs
V. Virg-o	V. Virgĭn-ēs
A. Virgĭn-ĕ	A. Virgĭn-ĭbus

"An Animal."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Anĭmal	N. Animāl-ĭă
G. Animāl-ĭs	G. Animāl-ĭum
D. Animāl-ī	D. Animāl-ĭbus
A. Anĭmal	A. Animāl-ĭă
V. Anĭmal	V. Animāl-ĭă
A. Animāl-ī	A. Animāl-ĭbus

"A Verse."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Carmen	N. Carmĭn-ă
G. Carmĭn-ĭs	G. Carmĭn-um
D. Carmĭn-ī	D. Carmĭn-ĭbus
A. Carmen	A. Carmĭn-ă
V. Carmen	V. Carmĭn-ă
A. Carmĭn-ĕ	A. Carmĭn-ĭbus

"Labor."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Lăbor	N. Labōr-ēs
G. Labōr-ĭs	G. Labor-um
D. Labōr-ī	D. Labor-ĭbus
A. Labōr-em	A. Labor-es
V. Labor	V. Labor-es
A. Labōr-ĕ	A. Labor-ĭbus

"A Rock."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Rup-ēs	N. Rup-es
G. Rup-ĭs	G. Rup-ĭum
D. Rup-ī	D. Rup-ĭbus
A. Rup-em	A. Rupes
V. Rup-ēs	V. Rupes
A. Rup-ĕ	A. Rup-ĭbus

"Art."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Ars	N. Art-ēs
G. Art-ĭs	G. Art-ĭum
D. Art-ī	D. Art-ĭbus
A. Art-em	A. Art-ēs
V. Ars	V. Art-ēs
A. Art-ĕ	A. Art-ĭbus

"A Soldier."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Mĭles	N. Milĭt-ēs
G. Milĭt-ĭs	G. Milĭt-um
D. Milĭt-ī	D. Milĭt-ĭbus
A. Milĭt-em	A. Milĭt-ēs
V. Mĭles	V. Milĭt-ēs
A. Milĭt-ĕ	A. Milĭt-ĭbus

"A Father."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Pater	N. Patr-ēs
G. Patr-ĭs	G. Patr-um
D. Patr-ī	D. Patr-ĭbus
A. Patr-em	A. Patr-ēs
V. Pater	V. Patr-ēs
A. Patr-ĕ	A. Patr-ĭbus

"A Woman."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Mulĭer	N. Mulĭĕr-ēs
G. Mulĭĕr-ĭs	G. Mulĭer-um
D. Mulĭĕr-ī	D. Mulĭĕr-ĭbus
A. Mulĭer-em	A. Mulĭer-ēs
V. Mulĭer	V. Mulĭer-ēs
A. Mulĭĕr-ĕ	A. Mulĭer-ĭbus

"A Work."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Ŏpus	N. Opĕr-ă
G. Opĕr-ĭs	G. Opĕr-um
D. Opĕr-ī	D. Opĕr-ĭbus
A. Ŏpus	A. Opĕr-ă
V. Ŏpus	V. Opĕr-ă
A. Opĕr-ĕ	A. Opĕr-ĭbus

"A Stone."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Lăpis	N. Lapĭd-ēs
G. Lapĭd-ĭs	G. Lapĭd-um
D. Lapĭd-ī	D. Lapĭd-ĭbus
A. Lapĭd-em	A. Lapĭd-ēs
V. Lapis	V. Lapĭd-ēs
A. Lapĭd-ĕ	A. Lapĭd-ĭbus

"A Tower."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Turr-is	N. Turr-ēs
G. Turr-is	G. Turr-um
D. Turr-ī	D. Turr-ibus
A. Turr-em *or* im	A. Turr-ēs
V. Turr-is	V. Turr-ēs
A. Turr-ē *or* ī	A. Turr-ibus

"A Journey."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Iter	N. Itĭnĕr-ă
G. Itĭnĕr-is	G. Itĭnĕr-um
D. Itĭnĕr-ī	D. Itĭnĕr-ibus
A. Iter	A. Itĭnĕr-ă
V. Iter	V. Itĭnĕr-ă
A. Itĭnĕr-ē	A. Itĭnĕr-ibus

"A Head."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Căput	N. Căpĭt-ă
G. Capĭt-is	G. Capĭt-um
D. Capĭt-ī	D. Capĭt-ibus
A. Caput	A. Capĭt-ă
V. Caput	V. Capĭt-ă
A. Capĭt-ē	A. Capĭt-ibus

"Night."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Nox	N. Noct-ēs
G. Noct-is	G. Noct-ium
D. Noct-ī	D. Noct-ibus
A. Noct-em	A. Noct-ēs
V. Nox	V. Noct-ēs
A. Noct-ē	A. Noct-ibus

"Thirst."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Sĭt-is	N. Sĭt-ēs
G. Sĭt-is	G. Sĭt-ium
D. Sĭt-ī	D. Sĭt-ibus
A. Sĭt-im	A. Sĭt ēs
V. Sĭtis	V. Sĭt-ēs
A. Sĭt-ī	A. Sĭt-ibus

"Snow."

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Nix	N. Nĭv-ēs
G. Nĭv-is	G. Niv-ium
D. Nĭv-ī	D. Niv-ibus
A. Nĭv-em	A. Nĭv-ēs
V. Nix	V. Niv-ēs
A. Nĭv-ē	A. Niv-ibus

47. In like manner decline,—

āĕr, aĕris[1] ..... *the lower air.*	fūnus, ĕris ..... *a funeral, death.*
æther, ĕris[1] ..... *the upper and purer air.*	frons, frontis ..... *forehead.*
arbor, ŏris, f. ..... *tree.*	grex, grĕgis, m. ..... *flock.*
āpis, (g. pl. *ium* and *um*) .... *a bee.*	jūdex, ĭcis ..... *a judge.*
āvis ..... *bird.*	hæres, hærēdis ..... *an heir.*
călor, ōris ..... *heat.*	hospēs, hospĭtis, c. . *a host, a guest.*
calx, calcis ..... *lime; the heel.*	ignis, m. ..... *fire.*
carbo, ōnis[2] ..... *coal.*	jŭvĕnis ..... *a young man.*
carcer, ĕris ..... *a prison.*	hostis, c. ..... *an enemy.*
cāro, carnis, f. ..... *flesh.*	index, indĭcis ..... *an informer, a sign.*
cĭnis, cinĕris, m. ..... *ashes.*	laus, laudis ..... *praise.*
cīvis, c. ..... *a citizen.*	lătus, ĕris ..... *side.*
cīvitas, ātis ..... *a state.*	legio, ōnis ... *a body of Roman soldiers;* 6000 *men and* 300 *horse.*
classis ..... *a class, a fleet.*	lex, lĕgis ..... *law.*
cor, cordis, n. ..... *heart.*	lis, lĭtis ..... *strife.*
corpus, corpŏris ..... *body.*	lūmen, ĭnis ..... *light.*
crīmen, ĭnis .... *a crime. a charge.*	lux, lūcis ..... *light.*
crux, crūcis ..... *a cross.*	māter, matris ..... *mother.*
custos, ōdis ..... *a keeper.*	frāter, fratris ..... *brother.*
dens, dentis, m. ..... *a tooth.*	păter, patris ..... *father.*
fæx, fæcis ..... *dregs.*	mens, mentis ..... *mind.*
dŏlor, ōris ..... *pain, sorrow.*	merx, mercis ..... *merchandise*
febris ..... *a fever.*	mons, montis, m. ..... *mountain.*
fīnis, m. f. ..... *end.*	mors, mortis ..... *death.*
flos, flōris ..... *a flower.*	mūnus, munĕris ..... *a gift.*
fons, fontis, m. ..... *fountain.*	nāvis ..... *a ship.*
fœdus, ĕris ..... *a treaty.*	nōmen, ĭnis ..... *name.*
frīgus, frigŏris ..... *cold.*	

[1] These words have mostly the Greek acc. in ă: *aĕrā, æthera.*
[2] Properly, *a dead, extinguished coal.*

ŏnus, onĕris ....*a burden.*	**rūs, rūris**.....*country.*
os, oris, n.....*mouth.*	salūs, salūtis, f.....*safety, health.*
os, ossis, n.....*bone.*	sanguis, sanguĭnis, m.....*blood.*
pastor, ōris .....*a shepherd.*	semen, ĭnis.....*seed.*
pax, pācis .....*peace.*	tempus, ŏris.....*time.*
pes, pĕdis.....*a foot.*	testis, c.....*a witness.*
pondus, ŏris.....*weight.*	tĭmor, ōris .....*fear.*
pons, pontis, m.....*bridge.*	urbs, urbis.....*city.*
pulvis, ĕris, m. .....*dust.*	uxor, ōris .....*a wife.*
quies, ētis, f.....*rest, quiet.*	venter, ventris .....*the belly.*
rādix, radĭcis.....*root.*	vesper, ĕris .....*the evening.*
requies, (gen. *ētis* and *ei*: acc. requiem) f.....*rest.*	vŏluntas, ātis....*will, inclination.* vŏluptas, ātis.....*pleasure.*

§ 48. FOURTH DECLENSION.

49 Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine, except these feminines :

Acus.....*a needle.*	Mānus .....*a hand.*
Idus (pl.) .....*the Ides.*	Portĭcus .....*a portico.*
Dŏmus.....*a house.*	Fĭcus .....*a fig.*
Tribus.....*a tribe.*	Pĕnus.....*a storehouse.*

50. This declension is really a contracted form of the third :

gen. gradŭĭs, *gradŭs* ; acc. gradŭem, *gradum* ; abl. gradŭe, *gradū*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

"Fruit."		"A Horn."	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
N. Fruct-us	N. Fruct-us	N. Corn-u	N. Corn-ūă
G. Fruct-ûs	G. Fruct-uum	G. Corn-ûs[1]	G. Corn-uum
D. Fruct-ui	D. Fruct-ĭbus	D. Corn-u	D. Corn-ĭbus
A. Fruct-um	A. Fruct-us	A. Corn-u	A. Corn-ūă
V. Fruct-us	V. Fruct-us	V. Corn-u	V. Corn-ūă
A. Fruct-u	A. Fruct-ĭbus	A. Corn-u	A. Corn-ĭbus

51. In like manner decline,—

cantus.....*a song.*	quercus.....*an oak.*
currus .....*a chariot.*	senātus .....*the senate.*
exercĭtus.....*an army.*	sensus.....*a sense, feeling.*
fluctus .....*a wave.*	sexus .....*a sex.*
gĕlu.....*ice.*	sĭnus..... .....*a bosom.*
gĕnu .....*the knee.*	sumptus .....*expense.*
lăcus.....*a lake.*	tŏnĭtru.....*thunder.*
luctus.....*grief.*	tumultus .....*an uproar.*
mānus .....*hand.*	venātus .....*hunting.*
mōtus .....*motion.*	vĕru.....*a spit.*
portus.....*a port.*	victus .....*food.*
passus .....*a pace.*	vultus .....*the countenance.*

[1] The genit. of nouns in u of the fourth declension, was in *ūs*. See note, "First Latin Book," p. 16.

52. Dŏmus, *a house*, is partly of the fourth, and partly of the second declension. It is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Dŏmus	N. Dom-us
G. Dom-ûs *or* ī	G. Dom-uum *or* ōrum
D. Dom-uī *or* ō	D. Dom-ĭbus
A. Dom-um	A. Dom-us *or* ōs
V. Domus	V. Dom-us
A. Dom-ō	A. Dom-ĭbus

53. Note. *Domûs* in the genit. signifies *of a house;* and domi, *at home* or *of home.*

---

§ 54. FIFTH DECLENSION.

55. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*. They are all feminine excepting *dies;* which is masculine or feminine in the singular; *masculine only* in the plural. Its compound *meridies* (noon) is masculine.

56. Rem. The *e* of the gen. is *long*, when it follows a *vowel; short*, when it follows a *consonant; rēi, fidēi, faciēi.**

EXAMPLES.

"A Thing."		"A Day."	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
N. Res	N. Rēs	N. Di-ēs	N. Di-ēs
G. Rē-ī	G. Rē-rum	G. Di-ēi	G. Di-ērum
D. Rē-ī	D. Rē-bus	D. Di-ēi	D. Di-ēbus
A. Rem	A. Rēs	A. Di-ēm	A. Di-ēs
V. Res	V. Rēs	V. Di-ēs	V. Di-ēs
A. Re	A. Rē-bus	A. Di-ē	A. Di-ēbus

57. In like manner decline,—

acies ..... *the edge or point of a thing; line of battle.*	sānies ..... *gore.*
facies ..... *the face.*	sĕries ..... *an order* or *row.*
fĭdes ..... *faith.*	spĕcies ..... *appearance, form.*
glacies ..... *ice.*	spes ..... *hope.*
pernĭcies ..... *destruction.*	temperies ..... *temperateness.*

* See note, "First Latin Book," p. 25.

§ 58. ADJECTIVES.

59. An adjective is a word added to a substantive, to qualify or limit its meaning.

60. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

61. Adjectives of *three* terminations are of the first and second declensions; adjectives of *one* or *two* terminations are of the third.

62. Adjectives of three terminations end in *us, a, um;* and *er, a, um.*

63. In the *masc.* and *neut.* these adjectives are declined like substantives of the *second declension;* in the *fem.* like substantives of the *first declension.*

64. A few make the gen. in *ius* and the dat. in *i* for all genders.

65. Terminations :—

	Sing.			*Plur.*			A few are declined thus:		
	2	1	2	2	1	2			
Nom.	us	a	um	i	æ	a	us	a	um
Gen.	i	æ	i	orum	arum	orum	ius		
Dat.	o	æ	o	is			i		
Acc.	um	am	um	os	as	a	um	am	um
Voc.	e	a	um	i	æ	a	e	a	um
Abl.	o	ā	o	is			o	ā	o

66. Adjectives of three terminations are thus declined :—

Bŏnus, "good."

	Sing.		
N.	Bŏn-us	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um
G.	Bŏn-i	bŏn-æ	bŏn-i
D.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-æ	bŏn-o
A.	Bon-um	bon-am	bon-um
V.	Bŏn-e	bon-a	bon-um
A.	Bon-o	bon-ā	bon-o
	Plur.		
N.	Bŏn-i	bŏn-æ	bŏn-ă
G.	Bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum
D.	Bon-is	bon-is	bon-is
A.	Bon-ōs	bon-ās	bŏn-ă
V.	Bon-i	bon-æ	bon-ă
A.	Bon-is	bon-is	bon-is

Tener, "tender."

	Sing.		
N.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tenĕr-um
G.	Tener-i	tener-æ	tener-i
D.	Tener-o	tener-æ	tener-o
A.	Tener-um	tener-am	tener-um
V.	Tener	tener-ă	tener-um
A.	Tener-o	tener-ā	tener-o
	Plur.		
N.	Tĕnĕr-i	tenĕr-æ	tĕnĕr-ă
G.	Tener-ōrum	tener-ārum	tener-ōrum
D.	Tener-is	tener-is	tener-is
A.	Tener-ōs	tener-ās	tener-ă
V.	Tener-i	tener-æ	tener-ă
A.	Tener-is	tener-is	tener-is

67. Most adjectives in *er* drop the *e* in declension:

Æger, "sick."

Sing.

N.	Æger	ægr-ă	ægr-um
G.	Ægr-ī	ægr-æ	ægr-ī
D.	Ægr-ō	ægr-æ	ægr-o
A.	Ægr-um	ægr-am	ægr-um
V.	Æger	ægr-ă	ægr-um
A.	Ægr-ō	ægr-ā	ægr-ō

Plur.

N.	Ægr-ī	ægr-æ	ægr-ă
G.	Ægr-ōrum	ægr-ārum	ægr-ōrum
D.	Ægr-is	ægr-is	ægr-is
A.	Ægr-ōs	ægr-ās	ægr-ă
V.	Ægr-ī	ægr-æ	ægr-ă
A.	Ægr-is	ægr-is	ægr-is

68. Six adjectives in *us* and three in *er* have their gen. sing. in *ius*, and dat. in *i*, in all the genders, viz.—Alius, a, ud; Nullus; Solus; Totus; Ullus; Unus; Alter, -ĕra, -ĕrum; Uter, ra, rum; Neuter, ra, rum.

Unus, "one."

Sing.

N.	Unus	ună	unum
G.	Unĭus[1]	unĭus	unĭus
D.	Unī	unī	unī
A.	Unum	unam	unum
V.	Unĕ	ună	unum
A.	Unō	unā	unō

Plur.

N.	Uni	unæ	ună
G.	Unorum	unarum	unorum
D.	Unis	unis	unis
A.	Unos	unas	ună
V.	Uni	unæ	ună
A.	Unis	unis	unis

69. Adjectives of *one* and *two terminations* are of the *third* declension.

70. Adjectives in *is* have neut. *e;* Abl. *i.* Neut. plur. *ia;* G. *ium.*

71. Comparatives in *or* have neut. *us;* Abl. *e* or *i.* Neut. plur. *a;* G. *um.*

---

[1] *Solius* appears to have ĭ, though commonly considered as *long.*

72. The other terminations have no peculiar form for the *neut. sing.*, and are generally called adjectives of *one termination*, though they have *two* in the *Nom.* and *Acc.*, (except in Nom. sing.)

73. They have Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*; G. *ium*.

For participles abl. *e* } is the more common.
For adjectives abl. *i* }

74. But

Pauper, superstes, cælebs, ales, hospes,
Have *e*, with compos, puber, index, sospes,

and a few more; these have also G. plur. *um*. *Vetus* (G. *veteris*) has neut. pl. *vetĕra*.

75. Hence the Terminations for adjectives of two and three terminations, are,—

	Two Terminations.				*Comparatives.*				*One Termination.*			
	S.		P.		S.		P.		S.		P.	
	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	(N.)	M.F.	N.
N. V.	*is*	*e*	*es*	*ia*	or	*ius*	*ores*	*ora*	—	—	*es*	*ia*
G.	*is*		*ium*		*oris*		*orum*		*is*		*ium*	
D.	*i*		*ibus*		*ori*		*oribus*		*i*		*ibus*	
Acc.	*em*	*e*	*es*	*ia*	*orem*	*us*	*ores*	*ora*	*em*	as *nom.*	*es*	*ia*
Abl.	*i*		*ibus*		*ore* (*ori*)		*oribus*		*e* or *i*		*ibus*	

Acer, "sharp."

	Sing.	
N. Acer *or* acris	acr-is	acr-e
G. Acr-is	acr-is	acr-is
D. Acr-i	acr-i	acr-i
A. Acr-em	acr-em	acr-e
V. Acer *or* acr-is	acr-is	acr-e
A. Acr-i	acr-i	acr-i
	Plur.	
N. Acr-ēs	acr-ēs	acr-ĭă
G. Acr-ium	acr-ium	acr-ium
D. Acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus
A. Acr-es	acr-es	acr-ĭă
V. Acr-es	acr-es	acr-ĭă
A. Acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus

Mītis, "mild."

Sing.

N.	Mīt-is	mīt-is	mīt-ē
G.	Mit-is	mit-is	mit-is
D.	Mit-i	mit-i	mit-i
A.	Mit em	mit-em	mit-e
V.	Mit-is	mit-is	mit-e
A.	Mit-i	mit-i	mit-i

Plur.

N.	Mīt-ēs	mīt-es	mīt-īă
G.	Mit-ium	mit-ium	mit-ium
D.	Mit-ĭbus	mit-ĭbus	mit-ĭbus
A.	Mit-es	mit-es	mit-īă
V.	Mit-es	mit-es	mit-īă
A.	Mit-ĭbus	mit-ĭbus	mit-ĭbus

Mītior, "milder."

Sing.

N.	Mīt-ior	mīt-ior	mīt-ius
G.	Mit-iōris	mit-iōris	mit-iōris
D.	Mit-iōri	mit-iōri	mit-iōri
A.	Mit-iōrem	mit-iōrem	mīt-ius
V.	Mit-ior	mit-ior	mit-ius
A.	Mit-iōre (ri)	mit-iōre (ri)	mit-iōre (ri)

Plur.

N.	Mīt-iōres	mit-iōres	mit-iōrĭă
G.	Mit-iōrum	mit-iōrum	mit-iōrum
D.	Mit-iōrĭbus	mit-iōrĭbus	mit-iōrĭbus
A.	Mit-iores	mit-iores	mit-iorĭă
V.	Mit-iores	mit-iores	mit-iorĭă
A.	Mit-ioribus	mit-ioribus	mit-ioribus

---

76. In like manner all comparatives, except *plus,* are declined.

Felix, "happy."

Sing.

N.	Fēl-ix	Fēl-ix	Fēl-ix
G.	Fel-icis	Fēl-icis	Fel-icis
D.	Fel-ici	Fel-ici	Fel-ici
A.	Fel-icem	Fel-icem	Fēl-ix
V.	Fel-ix	Fel-ix	Fel-ix
A.	Fel-ice *or* ci	Fel-ice *or* ci	Fel-ice *or* ci

Plur.

N.	Fēl-icēs	Fēl-icēs	Fel-icĭă
G.	Fel-icium	Fel-icium	Fel-icium
D.	Fel-icĭbus	Fel-icĭbus	Fel-icĭbus
A.	Fel-ices	Fel-ices	Fel-icĭă
V.	Fel-ices	Fel-ices	Fel-icĭă
A.	Fel-icĭbus	Fel-icĭbus	Fel-icĭbus

Prudens, "prudent."

Sing.

N.	Prud-ens	prud-ens	prud-ens
G.	Prud-entis	prud-entis	prud-entis
D.	Prud-enti	prud-enti	prud-enti
A.	Prud-entem	prud-entem	prud-ens
V.	Prud-ens	prud-ens	prud-ens
A.	Prud-ente *or* ti	prud-ente *or* ti	prud-ente *or* ti

Plur.

N.	Prud-entes	prud-entes	prud-entiă
G.	Prud-entium	prud-entium	prud-entium
D.	Prud-entĭbus	prud-entĭbus	prud-entĭbus
A.	Prud-entes	prud-entes	prud-entiă
V.	Prud-entes	prud-entes	prud-entiă
A.	Prud-entĭbus	prud-entĭbus	prud-entĭbus

77. In like manner decline,—

ăcerbus ..... *sour.*	făcilis ..... *easy.*
acūtus[1] ..... *sharp.*	festus ..... *festive, joyful.*
æmulus ..... *rivalling.*	fortis ..... *brave, strong.*
ămārus ..... *bitter.*	frīgidus ..... *cold.*
æquus ..... *even, equal, just.*	grăvis ..... *heavy, important, serious.*
ămœnus ..... *pleasant, delightful,* (to the sight.)	intĕger ..... *whole,* (hence *upright, honest.*)
altus ..... *high; deep.*	lātus ..... *broad.*
asper (*ĕra, ĕrum*) ..... *rough.*	longus ..... *long.*
bonus ..... *good.*	laxus ..... *loose.*
brĕvis ..... *short.*	magnus ..... *great.*
candĭdus ..... *bright, white.*	mātūrus ..... *ripe.*
cāvus ..... *hollow.*	mĭser (era, &c.) ..... *miserable.*
clārus ..... *clear, illustrious.*	mollis ..... *soft.*
clēmens ..... *mild, clement.*	prōbus ..... *honest, good.*
commŏdus ... *suitable, convenient;* (of persons) *agreeable, complaisant.*	plus[2] ..... *more.*
	plēnus ..... *full.*
crassus ..... *thick, coarse.*	par ..... *equal, like.*
crūdus ..... *raw, unripe.*	stĕrĭlis ..... *barren.*
curvus ..... *bent.*	sĕnex (g. senis) ..... *old,* (of persons.)
densus ..... *thick.*	senior ..... *older.*
difficilis ..... *difficult.*	sollicitus ..... *disturbed, unquiet, anxious.*
dignus ..... *worthy, deserving.*	vērus ..... *true.*
dubius ..... *doubtful.*	vĕtus, vetĕris ..... *old.*
dūrus ..... *hard.*	
ēbrius ..... *drunk, drunken.*	

---

alter[3] ..... *the other,* (*of two;*) *one more.*	neuter[3] ..... *neither of the two.*
solus[3] ..... *alone.*	totus[3] ..... *whole.*

78. There are some adjectives, such as, summus, (*highest,*) medius, (*middle,*) imus, (*lowest,*) reliquus, (*remaining,*) ultimus, extremus, (*last,*) &c., which are generally translated into English by substantives; as,

(*The top of the mountain.*)	(*The foot of the oak.*)	(*The rest of the work.*)
N. summus mons	ima quercus	reliquum opus
G. summi montis	imæ quercus	reliqui operis
D. summo monti	imæ quercui	reliquo operi

and so on

---

[1] Acuo, *to sharpen.*

[2] Sing. Nom. Acc. Neut. *plus;* gen. *pluris;* no other cases. Plur. *plures;* neut. *plura;* gen. *plurium;* dat. abl. *pluribus.*

[3] These make gen. *ius;* dat. *i.* See 68. So ullus, (*any;*) nullus, (*none;* [illegible], (*which of two,*) with its compounds; uterque, (*each;*) utervis, (*which of the two you please;*) gen. *utriusque, utriusvis,* &c.—In *unusquisque,* both words are declined; gen. *uniuscujusque.* Alius, neut. *aliud;* gen. alĭus; dat. alii, &c. Alter, gen. *alterius.*

79. *Duo* and *tres* are thus declined:

N.	Duo[1]	duæ	duo	N.	Tres	tres	tria
G.	Duōrum	duārum	duōrum	G.	Trium	trium	trium
D.	Duōbus	duābus	duōbus	D.	Tribus	tribus	tribus
A.	Duos *or* duo	duas	duo	A.	Tres	tres	tria
V.	Duo	duæ	duo	V.	Tres	tres	tria
A.	Duōbus	duābus	duōbus	A.	Tribus	tribus	tribus

§ 80. THE NUMERALS.

(1) Cardinals. (answering to *how many?* (the first three declinable.)	Ordinals. (marking the *place* any thing holds in a *series*.)	Distributives. (answering to *how many apiece.*)	Adverbs.
1. unus	prīmus	singŭli (*pl.*)	semel
2. duo	secundus	bīni	bis
3. tres	tertius	terni	ter
4. quatuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
5. quinque	quintus	quīni	quinquies
6. sex	sextus	sēni	sexies
7. septem	septīmus	septēni	septies
8. octo	octāvus	octōni	octies
9. novem	nōnus	novēni	novies
10. decem	dēcĭmus	dēni	decies
11. undĕcim	undecimus	undēni	undecies
12. duodĕcim	duodecimus	duodēni	duodecies
13. tredĕcim	*the two forms used*, (tertius decimus, &c.)	*the two forms used*, (terni deni, &c.)	tredecies
14. quatuordĕcim			quatuordecies
15. quindĕcim			quindecies[2]
16. sedĕcim			sedecies
17. septendĕcim			septiesdecies
18. duodeviginti	duodevicesimus		duodevicies
19. undeviginti	undevicesimus		undevicies
20. viginti	vicesĭmus / vigesĭmus	vicēni	vicies
100. centum	centesimus	centēni	centies
1000. mille	millesimus	millēni	millies
2000. bis mille / bina millia	bis millesimus	bis millēni	bis millies.

(2) Terminations of the multiples of *ten* and a *hundred*.

	Card.	Ord.	Distrib.	Adv.	
(*Tens*)	ginta	gesimus / cesimus	gēni / cēni	gies / cies	added to *tri, quadra, quinqua, sexta, septua, octo, nona.* The forms in *c* are used for 30 *only*.
(*Hundreds*)	genti / centi	gentesimus / centesimus	gēni / cēni	genties / centies	added to *du, tre, quadrin, quinquin, sex, septin, octin, non,* (for *adv.* also nonin.) The forms in *c* are for 2, 3, 6, (2 × 3 = 6.)

[1] So ambo, *both*.

[2] Various forms are used besides those set down; especially two uncombined forms are often used where *one compound form* is given. Thus in the adverbs, for quindecies, *quinque decies* and *quinquies decies* may be used: so sexies decies, &c.

Obs. (1) The terminations of so many *tens* and so many *hundreds* are alike in the distributive series. But ☞ the *hundreds* have a *consonant*, the *tens* a *vowel* before the termination, except for the multiples by three, in which observe that the *hundreds* have the *earlier* vowel, (tre for *hundreds*; tri for *tens*.) The forms in *genteni, centeni*, are also used for the *hundreds*.

Obs. (2.) The intermediate forms are made up of two or more of the forms given: unus *et* viginti, *or* viginti unus, (one *and* twenty, *or* twenty-one; as in English:) but the forms duode-, unde-, (*two-from, one-from,*) are mostly used for the *two before* every *ten* or *hundred*. Above 100 (in the *cardinal* numbers) the *larger precedes*, with *or* without *et*; but *et* is never used *twice*.

(Trecenti sexaginta sex; *or*, trecenti *et* sexaginta sex.)

Mille is an indeclinable *adj.*: but *millia* (thousands) is a *plural substantive*; millia, millium, millĭbus.

☞ With substantives used in the plural only, the *distributives* are used instead of the *cardinals*; binæ literæ, *two* letters. But *uni, æ, a*, is used, (not *singŭli*,) and *trini* is used for *three*, not *terni*.

---

§ 81. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

82. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* for the *masc.* and *fem.*, *ius* for the *neuter*; thus: Doctus, doct-*ior*; sapiens, G. sapient-is, sapient-*ior*; tener, tener-*ior*;[1] pulcher, (pulchr,) pulchr-*ior*.[1]

83. The superlative is formed by adding *issĭmus* (*a, um*) to the root.

(*a*) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rĭmus* (*a, um*) to the nominative; as, Pulcher, pulcherrĭmus.

84. Facilis *easy*, difficilis *difficult*, similis *like*, dissimilis *unlike*, gracilis *slender*, humilis *low*, make the superlative in *limus*; as, Simillĭmus, facillĭmus, &c.

85. The following are quite irregular:—

(1) Bonus, (*good,*) melior, optĭmus.
Malus, (*bad,*) pejor, pessĭmus.
Multus, (*much*, pl. *many,*) plurĭmus,
Multum, (*much,*) plus, plurĭmum.
Magnus, (*great,*) major, maxĭmus.
Parvus, (*little,*) minor, minĭmus.
Plus, (*neut.,*) G. pluris, are the only forms in sing.
Plures, *neut.*, plura: G. plurium, &c.

Plerique (-æque, -ăque) is used for "*most*" without a substantive.

---

[1] Remember that for adjectives in *er*, the whole nominative is the root, the preceding *e* being often dropped.

(2) *Defectives.*

	Comparative.	*Superlative.*
(citra, *on this side,*)	citerior, *nearer,*	citimus, *nearest.*[1]
(intus, *within,*)	interior, *inner,*	intimus, *inmost.*
(prope, *near,*)	propior, *nearer,*	proximus, *nearest.*
(ultra, *beyond,*)	ulterior, *further*	ultimus, *furthest off, last*
(ὠκύς, *swift,*)	ocior, *swifter,*	ocissimus, *swiftest.*
	prior, *former,*	primus, *first.*
[deter, (obsolete,)]	deterior, *worse,*[2]	deterrimus, *worst.*

(3) *Abundant.*

extĕrus,	exterior,	*extrēmus,*	seldom *extimus,* (*outermost, last.*)
infĕrus,	inferior,	*infimus,*	imus, (*lowest.*)
supĕrus,	superior,	*suprēmus,*	summus, (*highest.*)
posterus,	posterior,	*postrēmus,*	*postĭmus,* (but only in the sense of a *posthumous* child.)

Also *maturrĭmus* and *maturissĭmus.*
imbecillĭmus — *imbecillissĭmus.*

dives, (rich,) *divĭtior,* | *divĭtissĭmus.*
dĭtior, | *dĭtissĭmus.*

Cicero uses the longer forms. The shorter come from *dis*, G. *ditis :* of which the N. pl. *ditia* is *now* the only proper form for that case.

Jŭvĕnis, sĕnex, have comp. jūnior, sēnior. (*Senex*, old man ; G. *senis.* G. pl. um.)

---

§ 86. PRONOUNS.

87. A Pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

88. There are eighteen simple pronouns :—

Ego, *I.*	Hic, *this* or *he.*	Suus, *his, her, its,* &c.
Tu, *Thou.*	Is, *that* or *he.*	Cujus ? *whose ?*
Sui, *of himself,* &c.	Quis ? *who ?*	Noster, *our.*
Ille, *that* or *he.*	Qui, *who.*	Vester, *your.*
Ipse, *himself.*	Meus, *my.*	Nostras, *of our country.*
Iste, *that* or *he.*	Tuus, *thy.*	Cujas ? *of what country ?*

89. Three of these, *ego, tu,* and *sui,* are substantives ; the remaining fifteen, and all the compound pronouns, are adjectives.

---

[1] *Nearer* and *nearest* to the speaker, with reference to some *point* or *line* on *this side* of which it is situated. Ulterior, ultimus, mark remoteness on *the other side.*
[2] In the sense of *less good*

90. The sŭbstantive pronouns are thus declined:—

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. Ego,	*I.*	N. Nos,	*we.*
G. Mei,	*of me.*	G. Nostr-ûm *or* -i,	*of us.*
D. Mihi,	*to me.*	D. Nobis,	*to us.*
A. Me,	*me.*	A. Nos,	*us.*
V. ——		V. ——	
A. Me,	*from* or *by me.*	A. Nobis,	*from* or *by us.*

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. Tu,	*thou* or *you.*	N. Vos,	*ye* or *you.*
G. Tui,	*of thee* or *you.*	G. Vestr-ûm *or* -i,	*of you.*
D. Tibi,	*to thee* or *you.*	D. Vobis,	*to you.*
A. Te,	*thee* or *you.*	A. Vos,	*you.*
V. Tu,	*O thou* or *you.*	V. Vos,	*O ye* or *you.*
A. Te,	*with thee* or *you.*	A. Vobis,	*with you.*

91. *Sui*, of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined:—

Singular and *Plural.*

N. ——	
G. Sui, *of himself,*	
D. Sibi, *to himself,*	*herself, themselves,* &c.
A. Se, *himself,*	
V. ——	
A. Se, *by himself,*	

92. Adjective pronouns are divided into various classes; as *demonstrative, interrogative, relative, possessive, patrial,* &c.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Illĕ	ill-ă	ill-ud	Ill-i	ill-æ	ill-ă
G.	Ill-ĭus	illĭus	illĭus	Ill-ōrum	ill-ārum	ill-ōrum
D.	Ill-i	illi	illi	Ill-is	illis	illis
A.	Ill-um	ill-am	ill-ud	Ill-ōs	ill-ās	ill-ă
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
A.	Ill-o	ill-â	ill-o	Ill-is	illis	illis

93. *Iste* is declined like *ille*. *Ipse* makes *ipsum* in the nominative and accusative sing. neut.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N.	Hic	hæc	hoc	Hi	hæ	hæc
G.	Hujus	hujus	hujus	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	Huic	huic	huic	His	his	his
A.	Hunc	hanc	hoc	Hōs	hās	hæc
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
A.	Hoc	hâc	hoc	His	his	his

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
N.	Is	eī	id	N Ii	eæ	eă
G.	Ejus	ejus	ejus	G. Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	Ei	ei	ei	D. Iis *or* eis	iis *or* eis	iis *or* eis
A.	Eum	eam	id	A. Eōs	eās	eă
V.	——	——	——	V. ——	——	——
A.	Eo	eā	eo	A. Iis *or* eis	iis *or* eis	iis *or* eis

94. *Idem, eădem, ĭdem* (compounded of *is* and *dem*) is declined like *is* with *dem* added.

95. The interrogative *quis, quæ, quid,* is generally used as a *substantive.* The interrogative *qui, quæ, quod,* is generally used as an *adjective.* It is declined exactly like the relative.

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
N.	Quis	quæ	quid	N. Qui	quæ	quæ
G.	Cujus	cujus	cujus	G. Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	Cui	cui	cui	D. Quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus
A.	Quem	quam	quid	A. Quōs	quās	quæ
V.	——	——	——	V. ——	——	——
A.	Quō	quā	quō	A. Quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
N.	Qui	quæ	quod	N. Qui	quæ	quæ
G.	Cujus	cujus	cujus	G. Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	Cui	cui	cui	D. Quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus
A.	Quem	quam	quod	A. Quōs	quās	quæ
V.	——	——	——	V. ——	——	——
A.	Quō	quā	quō	A. Quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus

96. *Quis* is also "any," (indefin.;) the fem. sing. and neut. plur. are then sometimes *qua.*

97. The compounds of *qui, quis,* follow the declension of those pronouns. In the following list the appended syllables in italics are added unaltered to the case of *quis* or *qui.*

Qui-*dam* ..... *a certain one.*
Qui *is* / Qui *libet* ..... *any you please.*
Qu*is-quam* ..... *any; any single one,* (when it is *denied* that there are any.)
Aliquis..... *any; some,* (though not much or many: ali-quis, -qua, -quid *or* -quod. Neut. pl. -qua.)
Quis-*piam* ..... *some, somebody.*
Quis-*que* ..... *each.* (Unusquisque, *each one.*)

Quisquis	*whoever*, (used without a substantive: neut. *quicquid*.)
Qui-*cunque*	*whoever; whatever*, (used *with* a subst.)
Ecquis ?.....	(*does*) *any?* (fem. sing. generally, neut. plur. always *ecqua*. It expects the answer *none*.)
Uter	*which*, (of *two*:) uterque, *each*, (utraque, utrumque; G. -iusque.)
Alius, (a, ud,) ..	*another; other*. (The *first* of two *alii*'s is *some*.)
Alter.....	*the other*, (of *two*;) *another; one more*.
Talis.....	*such*; antecedent to *qualis*, (*as*.)
Tantus	*so great*; antecedent to *quantus*, (*as*.)
Tot	*so many*; antecedent to *quot*, (*as*.)

98. ☞ The compounds of *quis* have generally—
Neuter *quid* when used *without* } a *substantive*.
Neuter *quod* when used *with* }

99. ☞ The *quid* is generally written *quic* before *q*. Thus, quicquam, (quidquam,) "*any thing*;" quicquid, (quidquid,) "*whatever*."

100. *Meus, tuus, suus, cujus* are declined like *bonus*, (66); but *cujus* is defective: *meus* has vocative sing. masc. *mi*, rarely *meus*.

101. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *æger*, (67.)

102. *Nostras, nostratis; cujas*, cujatis, are of one termination, and declined like *felix*, (76.)

---

§ 103. THE VERB.

104. A verb expresses that which is affirmed of a person or thing; or, a verb is that part of speech which signifies *to be, to do*, or *to suffer*.

105. Verbs are either *active* or *passive*.

106. Active verbs express action, and necessarily imply an agent and an object acted upon; as, *amo te*, "I love thee:" *puer legit librum*, "the boy is reading a book."

107. Active verbs are either *transitive* or *intransitive*, which latter are also called *neuter*.

108. An active intransitive verb expresses an action which does not pass over to any object; as, *curro*, "I run;" *ambulo*, "I walk;" *āves vŏlant*, "birds fly."

109. Passive verbs represent the object as acted upon by the agent; thus, *liber legitur a puero*, "the book is read by the boy;" *tu amāris a me*, "thou art loved by me."

110. *Deponent* verbs are those which have laid aside their active form and passive signification; as, *sequor*, "I follow;" *morior*, "I die."

111. Besides the active and passive *voices*, a verb has *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

112. The moods are four: *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

113. The tenses are six: *Present*, *Imperfect*, *Future*, *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future-perfect*.

114. The numbers are two: *Singular* and *Plural*.

115. The persons are three: *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

116. Verbs have also *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*.

117. A participle is derived from a verb, and partakes of the nature of a verb and an adjective.

118. Active verbs have usually *four* participles; two in the active, a present and future—as, *amans*, "loving," *amatūrus*, "about to love;" and two in the passive, a perfect and future—as, *amātus*, "loved *or* having been loved," and *amandus*, "to be loved."

119. Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

120. Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

121. Gerunds are verbal nouns used only in the oblique cases and sing. number. They express the action or state of the verb.

122. Supines are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accus. and ablat. singular. The supine in *um* is commonly used in an *active*, the supine in *u* in a *passive* sense.

§ 123. CONJUGATIONS.

124. There are *four* conjugations of verbs in Latin, distinguished by the vowel preceding *re* of the present infinitive active.

The *first* conjugation has *ā* long before *re;* as, am-āre, nat-āre, &c.

The *second* conjugation has *ē* long before *re;* as, mŏn-ēre, doc-ēre, &c.

The *third* conjugation has *ĕ* short before *re;* as, rĕg-ĕre, lĕg-ĕre, &c.

The *fourth* conjugation has *ī* long before *re;* as, aud-īre, hinn-īre, &c.

INDICATIVE

(Active Voice.)

Present.

1.	ō,	ās,	āt,	āmŭs,	ātĭs,	ant.
2.	eō,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.
3.	ō,	ĭs,	ĭt,	ĭmŭs,	ĭtĭs,	unt.
4.	iō,	is,	it,	imŭs,	itĭs,	iunt.

Imperfect. (R.)

ābam,	ābās,	ābăt,	ābāmŭs,	ābātĭs,	ābant.
ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.
ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.
iēbam,	iēbās,	iēbăt,	iēbāmŭs	iēbātĭs,	iēbant.

Future. (R.)

ābō,	ābĭs,	ābĭt,	ābĭmŭs,	ābĭtĭs,	ābunt.
ēbō,	ēbĭs,	ēbĭt,	ēbĭmŭs,	ēbĭtĭs,	ēbunt.
am,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.
iam,	iēs,	iēt,	iēmŭs,	iētĭs,	ient.

Perfect.

ī,	istī,	it,	imŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt, *or* ērē.

Pluperfect. (r.)

ĕram,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,	ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.

Future-perfect. (r.)

ĕro,	ĕrĭs, *or* ĕrīs,	ĕrĭt,	ĕrĭmŭs, *or* ĕrīmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs, *or* ĕrītĭs,	ĕrint.

IMPERATIVE

2.		3.	2 pl.		3 pl.
ā,	āto,	āto,	ātĕ,	ātōtĕ,	anto.
ē,	ēto,	ēto,	ētĕ,	ētōtĕ,	ento.
ĕ,	ĭto,	ĭto,	ītĕ,	ītōtĕ,	unto.
ī,	īto	īto,	itĕ,	itōtĕ,	iunto.

Obs. R, r, ρ, stand respectively for "*root of present*," "*root of perfect*," "*root of supine*." In repeating the table, the pupil should always say *which root* the termination is to be added to. Thus: "*Pluperfect; root of perfect, it.*"

MOOD.

(PASSIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT.

ŏr,	ārĭs(e),	ātŭr,	āmŭr,	āmĭnĭ,	antŭr.
eŏr,	ērĭs(e),	ētŭr,	ēmŭr,	ēmĭnĭ,	entŭr.
ŏr,	ĕrĭs(e),	ĭtŭr,	ĭmŭr,	ĭmĭnĭ,	untŭr.
iŏr,	īrĭs(e),	ītŭr,	īmŭr,	īmĭnĭ,	iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT. (R.)

ābăr,	ābārĭs(e),	ābātŭr,	ābāmŭr,	ābāmĭnĭ,	ābantŭr
ēbăr,	ēbārĭs(e),	ēbātŭr,	ēbāmŭr,	ēbāmĭnĭ,	ēbantŭr.
ēbăr,	ēbārĭs(e),	ēbātŭr,	ēbāmŭr,	ēbāmĭnĭ,	ēbantŭr.
iēbăr,	iēbārĭs(e),	iēbātŭr,	iēbāmŭr,	iēbāmĭnĭ,	iēbantŭr.

FUTURE. (R.)

ābŏr,	ābĕrĭs(e),	ābĭtŭr,	ābĭmŭr,	ābĭmĭnĭ,	ābuntŭr.
ēbŏr,	ēbĕrĭs(e),	ēbĭtŭr,	ēbĭmŭr,	ēbĭmĭnĭ,	ēbuntŭr.
ăr,	ērĭs(e),	ētŭr,	ēmŭr,	ēmĭnĭ,	entŭr.
iăr,	iērĭs(e),	iētŭr,	iēmŭr,	iēmĭnĭ,	ientŭr.

PERFECT. (r.)

Made up of the *past partic.* with *sum*—(sometimes *fui.*)[1]

PLUPERFECT. (r.)

Made up of the *past partic.* and *eram*—(sometimes *fŭeram.*)[1]

FUTURE-PERFECT. (r.)

Made up of *past partic.* with *ero*—(sometimes *fŭero.*)[1]

MOOD. (R.)

2.		3.	2 pl.		3 pl.
ārĕ,	ātŏr,	ātŏr,	āmĭnĭ,	āmĭnŏr,	antŏr.
ērĕ,	ētŏr,	ētŏr,	ēmĭnĭ,	ēmĭnŏr,	entŏr.
ĕrĕ,	ĭtŏr,	ĭtŏr,	ĭmĭnĭ,	ĭmĭnŏr,	untŏr.
irĕ,	ītŏr,	ītŏr,	īmĭnĭ,	īmĭnŏr,	iuntŏr.

OBS. ☞ Passive adds *r* to the tenses that end in *o*; changes *m* into *r* in those that end in *m*. OBS. The (e) after 2d person sing. means that the termination is *re* or *ris*.

[1] Thus, amatus sum, monitus sum *or* fui, &c. The participle must be inflected to agree in gender and number with the subject; as, *puer amatus est; nos moniti sumus; hoc auditum est;* &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE

(Active Voice.)

Present. (R.)

1.	em,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.
2.	eam,	eās,	eāt,	eāmŭs,	eātĭs,	eant.
3.	am,	ās,	āt,	āmŭs,	ātĭs,	ant.
4.	iam,	iās,	iāt,	iāmŭs,	iātĭs,	iant.

Imperfect. (R.)

ārem,	ārēs,	ārĕt,	ārēmŭs,	ārētĭs,	ārent.
ērem,	ērēs,	ērĕt,	ērēmŭs,	ērētĭs,	ērent.
ĕrem,	ĕrēs,	ĕrĕt,	ĕrēmŭs,	ĕrētĭs,	ĕrent.
īrem,	īrēs,	īrĕt,	īrēmŭs,	īrētĭs,	īrent.

Perfect. (r.)

ĕrim,	ĕrĭs, *or* ĕrīs,	ĕrĭt,	ĕrīmŭs, *or* ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs, *or* ĕrītĭs,	ĕrint.

Pluperfect. (r.)

issem,	issēs,	issĕt,	issēmŭs,	issētĭs,	issent.

INFINITIVE

Present. Imperfect.	(R.)	1. ārĕ,	2. ērĕ,	3. ĕrĕ,	4. īrĕ,
Perfect. Pluperfect.	(r.)	isse.			
Future.	Part. of fut. (in *rus*) with *esse*				

PARTICIPLES, &c.

Gerunds. (R.)	andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi.
Supine, (root of its own.)	(after verbs of *motion*,) um. (after some adjectives,) u.			
Partic. Present. (R.)	ans,	ens,	ens,	iens.
Partic. Future. (ρ.)	ūrus.			

MOOD.

(PASSIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT. (R.)

ŏr,	ĕrĭs(e),	ĕtŭr,	ĕmŭr,	ĕmĭnĭ,	entŭr.
eăr,	eărĭs(e),	eătŭr,	eămŭr,	eămĭnĭ,	eantŭr.
ăr,	ărĭs(e),	ătŭr,	ămŭr,	ămĭnĭ,	antŭr.
iăr,	iărĭs(e),	iătŭr,	iămŭr,	iămĭnĭ,	iantŭr.

IMPERFECT. (R.)

ārĕr,	ārĕrĭs(e),	ārĕtŭr,	ārēmŭr,	ārēmĭnĭ,	ārentŭr.
ērĕr,	ērĕrĭs(e),	ērĕtŭr,	ērēmŭr,	ērēmĭnĭ,	ērentŭr.
ĕrĕr,	ĕrĕrĭs(e),	ĕrĕtŭr,	ĕrēmŭr,	ĕrēmĭnĭ,	ĕrentŭr.
ĭrĕr,	ĭrĕrĭs(e),	ĭrĕtŭr,	ĭrēmŭr,	ĭrēmĭnĭ,	ĭrentŭr.

PERFECT.

Past partic. with *sim*—(sometimes *fŭĕrim*.)

PLUPERFECT.

Past partic. with *essem*—(sometimes *fuissem*.)

MOOD.

PRESENT. IMPERFECT.	1	2.	3.	4.
	ārĭ,	ērĭ,	ĭ,	īrĭ.
PERFECT. PLUPERFECT.	Past partic. with *esse*—(sometimes *fuisse*.)			
FUTURE.	Supine (in *um*) with *iri*.			

PARTICIPLES.

PAST PARTIC. (*p.*) us.

PARTIC. FUTURE. (R.) (Implying *duty, necessity, &c.*)

1.	2.	3.	4.
andus,	endus,	endus,	iendus.

126. The auxiliary verb *sum* is thus conjugated:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic*	*Fut. Part.*
Sum	Esse	Fui	Futurus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *am.*

	Singular.		*Plural.*
1. Sum,	*I am,*	Sŭmus,	*We are,*
2. Es,	*Thou art* or *you are,*	Estis,	*Ye* or *you are,*
3. Est,	*He is;*	Sunt,	*They are.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

1. Eram,	*I was,*	Erāmus,	*We were,*
2. Eras,	*Thou wast* or *you were.*	Erātis,	*Ye* or *you were,*
3. Erat,	*He was;*	Erant,	*They were.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

1. Ero,	*I shall be,*	Erĭmus,	*We shall be,*
2. Eris,	*Thou wilt be,*	Erĭtis,	*Ye will be,*
3. Erit,	*He will be;*	Erunt,	*They will be.*

PERFECT. *have been* or *was.*

1. Fui,	*I have been,*	Fuĭmus,	*We have been,*
2. Fuisti,	*Thou hast been,*	Fuistis,	*Ye have been,*
3. Fuit,	*He has been;*	Fuērunt *or* -ēre,	*They have been*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

1. Fuĕram,	*I had been,*	Fuerāmus,	*We had been,*
2. Fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been,*	Fuerātis,	*Ye had been,*
3. Fuĕrat,	*He had been;*	Fuĕrant,	*They had been.*

FUTURE-PERFECT. *shall have.*

1. Fuĕro,	*I shall have been,*	Fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been,*
2. Fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been,*	Fuerĭtis,	*Ye will have been,*
3. Fuĕrit,	*He will have been;*	Fuĕrint,	*They will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *may* or *can.*

1. Sim,	*I may be,*	Sĭmus,	*We may be,*
2. Sis,	*Thou mayest be,*	Sĭtis,	*Ye may be,*
3. Sit,	*He may be;*	Sint,	*They may be.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

1. Essem,	*I might be,*	Essēmus,	*We might be,*
2. Esses,	*Thou mightest be,*	Essētis,	*Ye might be,*
3. Esset,	*He might be;*	Essent,	*They might be.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

1. Fuĕrim,	*I may have been,*	Fuerīmus,	*We may have been,*
2. Fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been,*	Fuerītis,	*Ye may have been,*
3. Fuĕrit,	*He may have been;*	Fuĕrint,	*They may have been.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

1. Fuissem,	*I might have been,*	Fuissēmus,	*We might have been,*
2. Fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been,*	Fuissētis,	*Ye might have been,*
3. Fuisset,	*He might have been;*	Fuissent,	*They might have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Es *or* esto,	*Be thou,*	Este *or* estōte,	*Be ye* or *be you,*
3. Esto,	*Let him be;*	Sunto,	*Let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Esse,	*To be.*
PERF.	Fuisse,	*To have been.*
FUT.	Esse futūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to be.*
	Fuisse futūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLE

FUTURE. Futūrus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

---

§ 127. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Supine.*	
Am-o	am-āre	amāv-i	amāt-um	*To love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *love, do love,* or *am loving.*

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Am-o,	*I love,*	Am-āmus,	*We love,*
Am-as,	*Thou lovest,*	Am-ātis,	*Ye* or *you love,*
Am-at,	*He loves;*	Am-ant,	*They love.*

IMPERFECT. *was*

Am-ābam,	*I was loving,*	Am-abāmus,	*We were loving,*
Am-ābas,	*Thou wast loving,*	Am-abātis,	*Ye* or *you were loving*
Am-ābat,	*He was loving;*	Am-ābant,	*They were loving.*

PERFECT. *have.*

Amāv-i,	*I have loved,*	Amav-ĭmus,	*We have loved,*
Amav-isti,	*Thou hast loved,*	Amav-istis,	*Ye* or *you have loved,*
Amāv-it,	*He has loved;*	Amav ērunt *or* -avēre,	*They have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Amav-ĕram,	*I had loved,*	Amav-erāmus,	*We had loved,*
Amav-ĕras,	*Thou hadst loved,*	Amav-erātis,	*Ye* or *you had loved,*
Amav-ĕrat,	*He had loved;*	Amav-ĕrant,	*They had loved.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

Am-abo,	*I shall love,*	Am-abĭmus,	*We shall love,*
Am-abis,	*Thou wilt love,*	Am-abĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will love,*
Am-abit,	*He will love;*	Am-abunt,	*They will love.*

FUTURE-PERFECT. *shall have.*

Amav-ĕro,	*I shall have loved,*	Amav-erĭmus,	*We shall have loved,*
Amav-ĕris,	*Thou wilt have loved,*	Amav-erĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have loved,*
Amav-ĕrit,	*He will have loved;*	Amav-ĕrint,	*They will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *may* or *can.*

Am-em,	*I may love,*	Am-ēmus,	*We may love,*
Am-es,	*Thou mayest love,*	Am-ētis,	*Ye* or *you may love,*
Am-et,	*He may love;*	Am-ent,	*They may love.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Am-ārem,	*I might love,*	Am-arēmus,	*We might love,*
Am-āres,	*Thou mightest love,*	Am-arētis,	*Ye* or *you might love,*
Am-āret,	*He might love;*	Am-ārent,	*They might love.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Amav-ĕrim,	*I may have loved,*	Amav-erĭmus,	*We may have loved,*
Amav-ĕris,	*Thou mayest have loved,*	Amav-erĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have loved,*
Amav-ĕrit,	*He may have loved;*	Amav-ĕrint,	*They may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

Amav-issem,	*I might have loved,*	Amav-issēmus,	*We might have loved,*
Amav-isses,	*Thou mightest have loved,*	Amav-issētis,	*Ye* or *you might have loved,*
Amav-isset,	*He might have loved;*	Amav-issent,	*They might have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Sing.	2. Am-a *or* am-āto,	*Love thou,* or *do thou love,*	
	3. Am-āto,	*Let him love;*	
Plur.	2. Am-āte *or* am-atōte,	*Love ye,* or *do ye love,*	
	3. Am-anto,	*Let them love.*	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Am-āre,	*To love.*
PERF.	Amav-isse,	*To have loved.*
FUT.	Esse amat-ūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to love.*
	Fuisse amat-ūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Am-ans,	*Loving.*
Fut.	Amat-ūrus, -a, -um,	*About to love.*

GERUNDS.

G.	Am-andi,	*Of loving.*
D.	Am-ando,	*To loving.*
A.	Am-andum	*Loving.*
V.	———	
A.	Am-ando,	*With loving.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Amāt-um,	*To love.*
Latter.	Amāt-u,	*To love,* or *to be loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Am-or,	am-āri,	amāt-us.	*To be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present. *am.*

Sing.	Am-or,	*I am loved,*
	Am-āris *or* āre,	*Thou art loved,*
	Am-ātur,	*He is loved;*
Plur.	Am-āmur,	*We are loved,*
	Am-amĭni,	*Ye* or *you are loved,*
	Am-antur,	*They are loved.*

Imperfect. *was.*

Sing.	Am-ābar,	*I was loved,*
	Am-abāris *or* -abāre,	*Thou wast loved,*
	Am-abātur,	*He was loved;*
Plur.	Am-abāmur,	*We were loved,*
	Am-abamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were loved,*
	Am-abantur,	*They were loved.*

Perfect. *have been, was,* or *am*

Sing.	Amāt-us sum *or* fui,	*I have been loved,*
	Amāt-us es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been loved,*
	Amāt-us est *or* fuit,	*He has been loved;*
Plur.	Amāt-i sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been loved,*
	Amāt-i estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been loved,*
	Amāt-i sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been loved,*
	Amāt-us eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been loved,*
	Amāt-us erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been loved;*
Plur.	Amāt-i erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been loved,*
	Amāt-i erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been loved,*
	Amāt-i erant *or* fuerant,	*They had been loved.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will be.*

Sing.	Am-ābor,	*I shall be loved,*
	Am-abĕris *or* -abēre,	*Thou wilt be loved,*
	Am-abĭtur,	*He will be loved;*
Plur.	Am-abĭmur,	*We shall be loved,*
	Am-abimĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be loved,*
	Am-abuntur,	*They will be loved.*

FUTURE-PERFECT. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us fuĕro,	*I shall have been loved,*
	Amāt-us fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been loved,*
	Amāt-us fuĕrit,	*He will have been loved;*
Plur.	Amāt-i fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been loved,*
	Amāt-i fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been loved,*
	Amāt-i fuĕrint,	*They will have been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *may* or *can be.*

Sing.	Am-er,	*I may be loved,*
	Am-ēris *or* -ēre,	*Thou mayest be loved,*
	Am-ētur,	*He may be loved;*
Plur.	Am-ēmur,	*We may be loved,*
	Am-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be loved,*
	Am-entur,	*They may be loved.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

Sing.	Am-ārer,	*I might be loved,*
	Am-arēris *or* -arēre,	*Thou mightest be loved,*
	Am-arētur,	*He might be loved;*
Plur.	Am-arēmur,	*We might be loved,*
	Am-aremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be loved,*
	Am-arentur,	*They might be loved.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been loved,*
	Amāt-us sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been loved,*
	Amāt-us sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been loved;*
Plur.	Amāt-i simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been loved,*
	Amāt-i sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been loved,*
	Amāt-i sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been loved,*
	Amāt-us esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been loved,*
	Amāt-us esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been loved;*
Plur.	Amāt-i essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been loved,*
	Amāt-i essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been loved,*
	Amāt-i essent *or* fuisseut,	*They might have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. 2.	Am-āre *or* am-ātor,	*Be thou loved,*
3.	Am-ātor,	*Let him be loved;*
Plur. 2.	Am-amĭni,	*Be ye loved,*
3.	Am-antor,	*Let them be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Am-āri,	*To be loved.*
PERF.	Esse *or* fuisse amāt-us, -a, -um,	*To have been loved.*
FUT.	Amāt-um iri,	*To be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Amāt-us, -a, -um,	*Loved.*
FUT.	Am-andus, -a, -um,	*To be loved.*

---

§ 128. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
Pres. Indic.	Mŏn-eo	*Pres. Indic.*	Mon-eor
Pres. Infin.	Mŏn-ēre	*Pres. Infin.*	Mon-ēri
Perf. Indic.	Monu-i	*Perf. Part.*	Monĭt-us
Supine.	Monĭt-um		

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

	I advise.	*I am advised.*
Sing.	Mŏn-eo	Mŏn-eor
	Mon-es	Mon-ēris *or* ēre
	Mon-et	Mon-etur
Plur.	Mon-ēmus	Mon-ēmur
	Mon-ētis	Mon-ēmĭni
	Mon-ent	Mon-entur

IMPERFECT.

	I was advising.	*I was advised.*
S.	Mŏn-ēbam	Mŏn-ēbar
	Mon-ēbas	Mon-ēbaris *or* -bāre
	Mon-ēbat	Mon-ēbātur
P.	Mon-ēbamus	Mon-ēbāmur
	Mon-ēbātis	Mon-ēbāmĭni
	Mon-ēbant	Mon-ēbantur

Future.

	I shall or *will advise*	*I shall* or *will be advised.*
S.	Mŏn-ăbŏ	Mŏn-ăbor
	Mon-ăbis	Mon-ăbĕris *or* bĕre
	Mon-ăbit	Mon-ăbĭtur
P.	Mon-ăbĭmus	Mon-ăbĭmur
	Mon-ăbĭtis	Mon-ăbĭmĭni
	Mon-ăbunt	Mon-ăbuntur

Perfect.

	I advised or *have advised*	*I was* or *have been advised.*
S.	Mŏnŭ-i	Monĭtus sum *or* fui
	Monu-isti	Monĭtus es *or* fuisti
	Monu-it	Monĭtus est *or* fuit
P.	Monu-ĭmus	Moniti sumus *or* fuimus
	Monu-istis	Moniti estis *or* fuistis
	Monu-ĕrunt *or* ĕre	Moniti sunt *or* fuĕrunt

Pluperfect.

	I had advised.	*I had been advised.*
S.	Monu-ĕram	Monĭtus ĕram *or* fuĕram
	Monu-ĕras	Monitus ĕras *or* fueras
	Monu-ĕrat	Monitus ĕrat *or* fuerat
P.	Monu-erāmus	Moniti erāmus *or* fuerāmus
	Monu-erātis	Moniti erātis *or* fuerātis
	Monu-erant	Moniti erant *or* fuerant

Future-perfect.

	I shall have advised.	*I shall have been advised.*
S.	Mŏnŭ-ĕro	Monĭtus ĕro *or* fuĕro
	Monu-ĕris	Monĭtus ĕris *or* fueris
	Monu-ĕrit	Monitus ĕrit *or* fuerit
P.	Monu-ĕrimus	Moniti ĕrimus *or* fuĕrimus
	Monu-ĕritis	Moniti ĕritis *or* fueritis
	Monu-ĕrint	Moniti erint *or* fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	I may or *can advise.*	*I may* or *can be advised*
S.	Mŏn-eam	Mŏn-ear
	Mŏn-eas	Mon-eāris *or* eāre
	Mon-eat	Mon-eātur
P.	Mon-eāmus	Mon-eāmur
	Mon-eātis	Mon-eāmĭni
	Mon-eant	Mon-eantur

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., advise.	*I might, could, &c., be advised.*
S. Mŏn-ērem	*S.* Mŏn-ērer
Mon-ēres	Mon-ērēris *or* ērēre
Mon-ēret	Mon-ērētur
P. Mon-ērēmus	*P.* Mon-ērēmur
Mon-ērētis	Mon-ērēmĭni
Mon-ērent	Mon-ērentur

PERFECT.

I may have advised.	*I may have been advised.*
S. Mŏnu-ĕrim	*S* Monĭtus sim *or* fŭĕrim
Monu-ĕris	Monĭtus sis *or* fŭĕris
Monu-ĕrit	Monĭtus sit *or* fuerit
P. Monu-ĕrimus	*P.* Moniti sīmus *or* fŭerimus
Monu-ĕritis	Moniti sītis *or* fueritis
Monu-ĕrint	Moniti sint *or* fuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., have advised	*I might, could, &c., have been advised.*
S. Mŏnu-issem	*S.* Monĭtus essem *or* fuissem
Monu-isses	Monĭtus esses *or* fuisses
Monu-isset	Monĭtus esset *or* fuisset
P. Monu-issēmus	*P.* Moniti essēmus *or* fuissēmus
Monu-issētis	Moniti essētis *or* fuissētis
Monu-issent	Moniti essent *or* fuissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Advise thou.	*Be thou advised.*
S. Mŏn-e *or* mŏn-ĕto	*S.* Mon-ēre *or* mon-ĕtor
Mon-ĕto	Mon-ĕtor
P. Mon-ēte *or* mon-ĕtōte	*P.* Mon-ēmĭni
Mon-ento	Mon-entor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Mŏn-ēre, *to advise.*	PRES. Mŏn-ēri, *to be advised.*
PERF. Monu-isse, *to have advised.*	PERF. Monĭtus esse *or* fuisse, *to have been advised.*
FUT. Monĭturus esse, *to be about to advise.*	FUT. Monĭtum īri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Mŏn-ens, *advising.*	PERF. Monĭt-us, *advised.*
FUT. Monĭt-ūrus, *about to advise.*	FUT. Mŏn endus, *to be advised.*

GERUNDS.

N. ———		
G. Mŏn-endi,	*Of advising.*	
D. Mon-endo,	*To advising.*	
A. Mon-endum,	*Advising.*	
V. ———		
A. Mon-endo.	*With advising.*	

SUPINES.

Former. Monĭt-um, *to advise.* | *Latter.* Monĭt-u, *to be advised.*

§ 129. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
Pres. Indic.	Rĕg-o	*Pres. Indic.*	Rĕg-or
Pres. Infin.	Rĕg-ĕre	*Pres. Infin.*	Rĕg-i
Perf. Indic.	Rex-i	*Perf. Part.*	Rect-us
Supine.	Rect-um		

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

	I rule.	*I am ruled.*
S.	Rĕg-o	Rĕg-or
	Reg-is	Reg-ĕris *or* -ĕre
	Reg-it	Reg-ĭtur
P.	Reg-ĭmus	Reg-ĭmur
	Reg-ĭtis	Reg-ĭmĭni
	Reg-unt	Reg-untŭr

IMPERFECT.

	I was ruling.	*I was ruled.*
S.	Rĕgē-bam	Rĕg-ēbar
	Regē-bas	Reg-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre
	Regē-bat	Reg-ebātur
P.	Regē-bāmus	Reg-ebāmur
	Regē-bātis	Reg-ebāmĭni
	Regē-bant	Reg-ebăntur

Future.

	I shall or *will rule.*	*I shall* or *will be ruled.*
S.	Rĕg-am	Rĕg-ar
	Reg-es	Reg-ĕris *or* -ĕre
	Reg-et	Reg-ĕtur
P.	Reg-ēmus	Reg-ēmur
	Reg-ētis	Reg-ēmĭni
	Reg-ent	Reg-entur

Perfect.

	I ruled or *have ruled.*	*I was* or *have been ruled.*
S.	Rex-i	Rect-us sum *or* fui
	Rex-isti	Rect-us es *or* fuisti
	Rex-it	Rect-us est *or* fuit
P.	Rex-ĭmus	Rect-i sumus *or* fuimus
	Rex-istis	Rect-i estis *or* fuistis
	Rex-ērunt *or* -ēre	Rect-i sunt, fuĕrunt *or* fuēre

Pluperfect.

	I had ruled.	*I had been ruled*
S.	Rex-ĕram	Rect-us ĕram *or* fueram
	Rex-ĕras	Rect-us eras *or* fuĕras
	Rex-ĕrat	Rect-us erat *or* fuerat
P.	Rex-erāmus	Rect-i erāmus *or* fuerāmus
	Rex-erātis	Rect-i erātis *or* fuerātis
	Rex-erant	Rect-i ĕrant *or* fuerant

Future-perfect.

	I shall have ruled.	*I shall have been ruled.*
S.	Rex-ĕro	Rect-us ĕro *or* fuĕro
	Rex-ĕris	Rect-us eris *or* fueris
	Rex-ĕrit	Rect-us erit *or* fuerit
P.	Rex-ĕrimus	Rect-i ĕrimus *or* fuerimus
	Rex-ĕritis	Rect-i eritis *or* fueritis
	Rex-ĕrint	Rect-i erunt *or* fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	I may or *can rule.*	*I may* or *can be ruled.*
S.	Rĕg-am	Rĕg-ar
	Reg-as	Reg-āris *or* reg-āre
	Reg-at	Reg-ātur
P.	Reg-āmus	Reg-āmur
	Reg-ātis	Reg-āmĭni
	Reg-ant	Reg-āntur

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., rule.	*I might, could, &c., be ruled.*
S. Reg-ĕrem	*S.* Rĕg-ĕrer
Reg-eres	Reg-ĕrĕris *or* reg-ĕrĕre
Reg-eret	Reg-ĕrĕtur
P. Reg-erēmus	*P.* Reg-erēmur
Reg-erētis	Reg-erēmĭni
Reg-erent	Reg-erēntur

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.	*I may have been ruled.*
S. Rex-ĕrim	*S.* Rect-us sim *or* fuĕrim
Rex-ĕris	Rect-us sis *or* fueris
Rex-ĕrit	Rect-us sit *or* fuerit
P. Rex-ĕrimus	*P.* Rect-i sīmus *or* fuerimus
Rex-ĕirtis	Rect-i sītis *or* fueritis
Rex-ĕrint	Rect-i sint *or* fuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., have ruled.	*I might, could, &c., have been ruled.*
S. Rex-issem	*S.* Rect-us essem *or* fuissem
Rex-isses	Rect-us esses *or* fuisses
Rex-isset	Rect-us esset *or* fuisset
P. Rex-issēmus	*P.* Rect-i essēmus *or* fuissēmus
Rex-issētis	Rect-i essētis *or* fuissētis
Rex-issent	Rect-i essent *or* fuissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rule thou.	*Be thou ruled.*
S. Rĕg-e *or* reg-ĭto	*S.* Reg-ĕre *or* reg-ĭtor
Reg-ĭto	Reg-ĭtor
P. Reg-ĭte *or* reg-ĭtōte	*P.* Reg-ĭmĭni
Reg-unto	Reg-untor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Rĕg-ĕre, *to rule.*	PRES. Rĕg-ī, *to be ruled.*
PERF. Rex-isse, *to have ruled.*	PERF. Rectus esse *or* fuisse, *to have been ruled.*
FUT. Rect-ūrus esse, *to be about to rule.*	FUT. Rectum īri, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Reg-ens, *ruling.*	PERF. Rectus, *ruled.*
FUT. Rect-ūrus, *about to rule.*	FUT. Reg-endus, *to be ruled*

GERUNDS.

N.	———	
G.	Rĕg-endi,	*Of ruling.*
D.	Reg-endo,	*To be ruling.*
A.	Reg-endum,	*Ruling.*
V.	———	
A.	Reg-endo,	*With ruling.*

SUPINES.

Former. Rect-um, *to rule.* | *Latter.* Rect-u, *to be ruled.*

130. Some verbs of the third conjugation end in *io*. They drop the *i* in the *imperative*, *infinitive*, and *imperfect subjunctive* of both voices:

		Imperat.	Infin.	Impf. Subj.
(*a*) *Active.*	suscipio,	susclpe,	suscipĕre,	suscipĕrem.
Passive.	suscipior,	suscipĕre,	susclpi,	suscipĕrer.

(*b*) In the present of both voices they retain the *i* in the third person plural, and drop it in the other persons:

Active.	suscipio,	susclpis,	it, &c.	3 plur. *suscipiunt.*
Passive.	suscipior,	suscipĕris,	Itur, &c.	3 plur. *suscipiuntur.*

§ 131. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
Pres. Indic.	Aud-Io	*Pres. Indic.*	Aud-Ior
Pres. Infin.	Aud-Ire	*Pres. Infin.*	Aud-Iri
Perf. Indic.	Audlv-i	*Perf. Part.*	Audlt-us
Supine.	Audlt-um		

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.

	I hear	*I am heard.*
S.	Aud-Io	Aud-Ior
	Aud-Is	Aud-Iris *or* Ire
	Aud-It,	Aud-Itur
P.	Aud-Imus	Aud-Imur
	Aud-Itis	Aud-Imini
	Aud-Iunt	Aud-Iuntur

Imperfect.

	I was hearing.	*I was heard.*
S.	Audiē-bam	Aud-iēbar
	Audiē-bas	Aud-iebāris *or* -iebāre
	Audiē-bat,	Aud-iebātur
P.	Audiē-bāmus	Aud-iebāmur
	Audiē-bātis	Aud-iēbāmĭni
	Audiē-bant	Aud-iēbantur

Future.

	I shall or *will hear.*	*I shall* or *will be heard.*
S.	Audi-am	Aud-iar
	Audi-es	Aud-iēris *or* iēre
	Audi-et	Aud-iētur
P.	Audi-ēmus	Aud-iēmur
	Audi-ētis	Aud-iēmĭni
	Audi-ent	Aud-ientur

Perfect.

	I heard or *have heard.*	*I have been* or *was heard.*
S.	Audīv-i	Audītus sum *or* fui
	Audīv-isti	Auditus es *or* fuisti
	Audīv-it	Auditus est *or* fuit
P.	Audīv-imus	Audīti sumus *or* fuĭmus
	Audīv-istis	Auditi estis *or* fuistis
	Audiv-ērunt *or* ēre	Auditi sunt *or* fuĕrunt *or* fuēre

Pluperfect.

	I had heard	*I had been heard.*
S.	Audīv-ĕram	Audītus ĕram *or* fuĕram
	Audiv-eras	Auditus eras *or* fueras
	Audiv-erat	Auditus erat *or* fuerat
P.	Audīv-erāmus	Auditi ĕrāmus *or* fuerāmus
	Audiv-erātis	Auditi ĕrātis *or* fuerātis
	Audiv-erant	Auditi ĕrant *or* fuerant

Future-perfect.

	I shall have heard	*I shall have been heard.*
S.	Audīv-ĕro	Audītus ĕro *or* fuĕro
	Audiv-ĕris	Auditus ĕris *or* fueris
	Audiv-ĕrit	Auditus erit *or* fuerit
P.	Audiv-ĕrimus	Auditi erimus *or* fuerimus
	Audiv-ĕritis	Auditi eritis *or* fueritis
	Audiv-ĕrint	Auditi ĕrunt *or* fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

	I may or *can hear.*	*I may* or *can be heard.*
S.	Audi-am	Aud-iar
	Audi-as	Aud-iāris *or* aud-iāre
	Audi-at	Aud-iatur
P.	Audi-āmus	Aud-iāmur
	Audi-atis	Aud-iamini
	Audi-ant	Aud-iantur

IMPERFECT.

	I might, could, &c., hear.	*I might, could, &c., be heard.*
S.	Aud-īrem	Aud-īrer
	Aud-īres	Aud-īrēris *or* aud-irēre
	Aud-īret	Aud-īrētur
P.	Aud-īrēmus	Aud-irēmur
	Aud-īrētis	Aud-irēmini
	Aud-īrent	Aud-īrentur

PERFECT.

	I may have heard.	*I may have been heard.*
S	Audīv-ĕrim	Audītus sim *or* fuerim
	Audīv-ĕris	Auditus sis *or* fueris
	Audīv-ĕrit	Auditus sit *or* fuerit
P.	Audīv-ĕrimus	Auditi simus *or* fuerimus
	Audīv-ĕritis	Auditi sitis *or* fueritis
	Audīv-ĕrint	Auditi sint *or* fuerint

PLUPERFECT.

	I might, could, &c., have heard.	*I might, could, &c., have been heard.*
S.	Audīv-issem	Audītus essem *or* fuissem
	Audīv-isses	Auditus esses *or* fuisses
	Audīv-isset	Auditus esset *or* fuisset
P.	Audīv-issēmus	Auditi essēmus *or* fuissēmus
	Audīv-issētis	Auditi essētis *or* fuissētis
	Audīv-issent	Auditi essent *or* fuissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Hear thou.	*Be thou heard.*
S.	Aud-ī *or* aud-īto	Aud-īre *or* aud-ītor
	Aud-īto	Aud-ītor
P.	Aud-īte *or* aud-ītōte	Aud-imīni
	Aud-iunto	Aud-iuntor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Aud-īre, *to hear.*	PRES. Aud-īri, *to be heard.*
PERF. Audīv-isse, *to have heard.*	PERF. Audīt-us esse *or* fuisse, *to have been heard.*
FUT. Audīt-urus esse, *to be about to hear.*	FUT. Audīt-um īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Aud-iens, *hearing.*	PERF. Audīt-us, *heard.*
FUT. Audīt-ūrus, *about to hear.*	FUT. Aud-iendus, *to be heard.*

GERUNDS.

N. ——
G. Aud-iendi
D. Aud-iendo
A. Aud-iendum
V. ——
A. Aud-iendo

SUPINES.

Former. Audīt-um, *to hear.* | *Latter.* Audīt-u, *to be heard.*

§ 132. LIST OF VERBS.

§ 133. FIRST CONJUGATION.

134. I. Am-o, amāv-i, amāt-um.

So ăro, *to plough;* crĕmo, *burn-down;* rōgo, *ask;* lĭgo, *bind;* păro, *procure;* jūro *swear;* no, *swim;* ōro, *pray;* pecco, *sin;* postŭlo, *demand;* gŭberno, *govern;* vĭto, *avoid.*

135. I. *With reduplication.*

Do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *give.* [Obs. the *short* a.]
Sto, stāre, stĕti, stătum, *stand.* Verbs compounded with *sto* and a dissyllable take *stĭti;* the rest *stiti.* Their future participles take *a:* constaturus, exstaturus.

136. II. -ui, -tum, (ītum.)[1]

Crĕpo, crepāre, crepui, crepĭtum, *make a noise. Just so,* concrepo, *but* increpo, discrepo, *have also* increpavi, discrepavi; increpo *both* increpatum *and* increpĭtum.
Cŭbo, cubare, cubui, (*seldom* cubavi,) cubĭtum, *lie down.*

[1] Observe that all these, except *pŏto*, have the first syll. *short.*

Dŏmo, domāre, domui, domĭtum, *tame.*
Plĭco, plicui, plicĭtum, *and* plicavi, plicatum, *fold.* (Duplicare, supplicare, *and other verbs derived from adjectives in* -plex, *are regular.*)
Sŏno, sonāre, sonui, sonĭtum, *sound.*
Tŏno, tonāre, tonui, tonĭtum, (*seldom* tonatum,) *thunder.*
Vĕto, vetare, vetui, vetĭtum, *forbid.*
Frĭco, fricare, fricui, fricātum *and* frictum, *rub.*
Jŭvo, juvare, jūvi, jutum, *help.*
Lăvo, lavare, lavavi, lavatum, *and* lavi, lautum *or* lotum, *wash.*
Sĕco, secare, secui, sectum, *cut. Part. Fut. Pass.* secaturus.
Mĭco, micare, micui, *move quickly* or *tremulously; glitter. The compounds take the regular supine in* atum.
Pōto, potare, potavi, potatum, (*generally* potum,) *drink. Its partic. perf. pass. is generally* potus.

---

§ 137. SECOND CONJUGATION.

138. The only verbs that take the regular ēvi, ētum, are leo (obsolete) with its compound deleo, (*blot out; destroy utterly;*) fleo, *weep;* neo, *spin;* pleo, (obsolete,) *fill,* with its compounds; and (from the obsolete oleo, *grow*) aboleo, *abolish;* adoleo, generally adolesco, *grow up;* obsoleo, generally obsolesco, *grow out of date.* Oleo, *smell,* has olui without supine.

I. -ui, -ĭtum.

Căleo, *am warm;* căreo, *am without, want;* dĕbeo, *owe;* dŏleo, *am pained, grieve,* hăbeo, *have;* jăceo, *lie low;* mĕreo, *deserve;* mŏneo, *warn;* nŏceo, *hurt;* pāreo, *obey;* plăceo, *please;* præbeo, *afford, supply;* tăceo, *hold my tongue;* terreo, *terrify;* văleo, *am well.*

II. -ui, -tum.

Dŏceo, docēre, docui, doctum, *teach.*
Misceo, miscēre, miscui, mistum *or* mixtum, *mix.*
Tĕneo, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *hold.*
Torreo, torrēre, torrui, tostum, *parch, roast.*

III. -ui, -sum.

Censeo, censēre, censui, censum, *value, am of opinion.* Recenseo *has also* recensĭtum.

IV. -ui, *without supine.*

Arceo, *ward off, keep off;* āreo, *am dry;* ĕgeo, *need;* flŏreo, *flower, flourish;* horreo, *shudder;* langueo, *am languid;* lăteo, *lie hid;* mădeo, *am wet;* mœreo, *mourn;* nĭteo, *shine;* ŏleo, *smell;* palleo, *am pale;* pāteo, *stand open;* rĭgeo, *am stiff;* rŭbeo, *am red;* sĭleo, *am silent;* sorbeo, *suck in* or *up,* (sorbui *and* sorpsi;) splendeo, *glitter:* stŭdeo, *pursue as a study;* stŭpeo, *am astounded:* tĭmeo, *fear;* torpeo, *am torpid;* tŭmeo, *swell,* (neut.;) vĭgeo, *am vigorous, flourish;* vĭreo, *am green.*

V. -si, -tum, (*and* -xi, -ctum.)

Indulgeo, indulgēre, indulsi, indultum, *indulge.*
Torqueo, torquēre, torsi, tortum, *twist.*
Augeo, augēre, auxi, auctum, *increase.*
Lūgeo, lugēre, luxi, luctum, *mourn.*

Without supine are

Algeo, algēre, alsi, *feel cold, am cold.*
Fulgeo, fulgēre, fulsi, *shine, glitter.*
Frigeo, frigere, frixi, *am cold.*
Lūceo, lucēre, luxi, *am bright, shine.*

VI. -si, -sum.

Ardeo, ardēre, arsi, arsum, *burn, am on fire.*
Hæreo, hærēre, hæsi, hæsum, *cling to, stick, hesitate.*
Jūbeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum, *bid, order.*
Māneo, manēre, mansi, mansum, *remain.*
Mulceo, mulcēre, *soothe, and* **mulgeo,** *milk,* **mulsi, mulsum.**
Rīdeo, ridēre, risi, risum, *laugh.*
Suadeo, suadēre, suasi, suasum, *advise, persuade.*

VII. -i, -sum.

Mordeo, mordēre, momordi, morsum, *bite.*
Pendeo, pendēre, pependi, pensum, *hang,* (intrans.)
Spondeo, spondēre, spopondi, sponsum, *promise solemnly.*
Tondeo, tondēre, totondi, tonsum, *shear, shave.*
Sĕdeo, sedēre, sēdi, sessum, *sit. Of the compounds,* **dissideo** *and* **præsideo** *have no supine.*
Vĭdeo, vidēre, vīdi, visum, *see.* (Videor, generally *seem.*)

VIII. -i, -tum.

Cāveo, cavēre, cāvi, cautum, *beware of, beware*
Fāveo, favēre, fāvi, fautum, *favor.*
Fŏveo, fŏvēre, fōvi, fōtum, *cherish.*
Mŏveo, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move.*
Vŏveo, vovēre, vōvi, vōtum, *vow.*

IX. -i, *without supine.*

Ferveo, fervēre, fervi *and* **ferbui,** *glow; am hot.*

X. *without perfect or supine.*

Albeo, *am white;* **ăveo,** *long;* **hĕbeo,** *am blunt;* **hūmeo,** *am moist;* **līveo,** *am livid;* **renīdeo,** *glitter;* **scăteo,** *gush out; abound.*

§ 139. THIRD CONJUGATION.

140. I. Roots with a *p* sound: *b* or *p*.

Carpo, carpĕre, carpsi, carptum, *pluck*. *Comp.* discerpo, *&c.*
Nūbo, nubĕre, nupsi, nuptum, *veil; marry*, (of the female.)
Rēpo, repĕre, repsi, reptum, *creep*.
Scalpo, scalpĕre, scalpsi, scalptum, *grave, cut*.
Scrībo, scribĕre, scripsi, scriptum, *write*.
Sculpo, sculpĕre, sculpsi, sculptum, *carve*.
Serpo, serpĕre, serpsi, serptum, *crawl*.
Căpio, capĕre, cēpi, captum, *take*. *Compounds*, -cipio, -cepi, -ceptum.
Rumpo, rumpĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *burst*.
Bĭbo, bibĕre, bĭbi, bibĭtum, *drink*.
Lambo, lambĕre, lambi, lambĭtum, *lick*.
Rapio, rapĕre, rapui, raptum, *snatch*.
Sapio, sapĕre, sapui, (*sup. doubtful;*) *taste*, (*intrans.;*) *am wise*. *Compounds* resipui, *&c.*
Strĕpo, strepĕre, strepui, strepĭtum, *make a noise; roar*.
Cŭpio, cupĕre, cupīvi, cupītum, *desire*.

141. II. Roots with a *t* sound: *d* or *t*.

Claudo, claudĕre, clausi, clausum, *shut*. *Comp.*, -clūdo, -clūsi, -clūsum.
Divĭdo, dividĕre, divīsi, divīsum, *divide*.
Lædo, lædĕre, læsi, læsum, *injure, hurt*. *Comp.*, -lĭdo, -lĭsi, -lĭsum.
Lūdo, ludĕre, lusi, lusum, *play*.
Trūdo, trudĕre, trusi, trusum, *thrust, push*.
Vādo, vadĕre, vasi, vasum, *go*. *Perf. and sup. only found in its compounds*.
Cēdo, cedĕre, cessi, cessum, *yield*.
Mitto, mittĕre, misi, missum, *send*.
Quătio, quatĕre, (quassi,) quassum, *shake*. *The perfect is only found in the compounds:* e. g. concussi.
Flecto, flectĕre, flexi, flexum, *bend*, } from simpler roots with
Necto, nectĕre, nexi *and* nexui, nexum, *knit, join together*, } a *k* sound, (*flec. nec.*)
Accendo, accendĕre, accendi, accensum, *light*. *So* incendo.
Edo, edĕre, ēdi, esum, *eat*.
Defendo, defendĕre, defendi, defensum, *ward off, defend*. *So* offendo.
Fundo, fundĕre, fūdi, fusum, *pour*.
Prehendo, prehendĕre, prehendi, prehensum, *take hold of*.
Scando, scandĕre, scandi, scansum, *climb*.
Verto, vertĕre, verti, versum, *turn*.
Cădo, cadĕre, cecĭdi, cāsum, *fall*. *The compounds take* i, *as* incĭdo, incĭdi, incāsum; *so* occĭdo *and* recĭdo. *The rest have no supine.*
Cædo, cædĕre, cecĭdi, cæsum, *cut, fell, hew*. *The compounds take* i, *as* accīdo, accīdi, accīsum.
Pendo, pendĕre, pependi, pensum, *hang*, (*trans.*)
Tendo, tendĕre, tetendi, tensum *and* tentum, *stretch*.
Fŏdio, fodĕre, fōdi, fossum, *dig*.
Pando, pandĕre, pandi, pansum *and* passum, *spread open*.
Scindo, scindĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *cut*.
Sīdo, sidĕre, sīdi, sessum, *settle down*.
Peto, petĕre, petīvi, petītum, *aim at, seek*.

142. III. Roots with a *k* sound: *c, g, qu, h*.

Cingo, cingĕre, cinxi, cinctum, *gird, surround*.
Cŏquo, coquĕre, coxi, coctum, *cook*.
Dico, dicĕre, dixi, dictum, *say, call*.
Dūco, ducĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead, think*.

Fĭgo, figĕre, fixi, fictum, *strike. Generally only the compounds,* affĭgo, *&c.*
Lăcio, (*obsolete,*) *entice, allure. Hence* allicio, allexi, (allicui,) allectum; **elicio,** elicui, elicitum; illicio, illexi, illectum; pellicio, pellicui, *and* pellexi, pellectum.
Rĕgo, regĕre, rexi, rectum, *direct, govern. Comp.,* -rigo.
Specio, (*obsolete.*) *behold, see. Hence* adspicio, conspicio, inspicio, perspicio, **-spexi,** -spectum, -spicere.
Tĕgo, tegĕre, texi, tectum, *cover.*
Tingo, tingĕre, tinxi, tinctum, *dip, dye.*
Trăho, trahĕre, traxi, tractum, *draw, drag.*
Ungo, ungĕre, unxi, unctum, *anoint.*
Vĕho, vehĕre, vexi, vectum, *carry,* (in a ship, carriage, *&c.,*)
Fingo, fingĕre, finxi, fictum, *fashion, feign.*
Jungo, jungĕre, junxi, junctum, *join.*
Pango, pangĕre, panxi *and* **pepigi, pactum,** *drive in, fasten—bargain*
Pingo, pingĕre, pinxi, pictum, *paint.*
Stringo, stringĕre, strinxi, strictum, *bind, compress, grasp tight.*
Ango, angĕre. anxi, *throttle, torment.*
Mergo, mergĕre, mersi, mersum, *dip* or *plunge into,* (*trans.*)
Spargo, spargĕre, sparsi, sparsum, *scatter. Comp.,* dispergo, *&c.*
Figo, figĕre, fixi, fixum, *fix.*
Ago, agĕre, ēgi, actum, *drive, do. Compound,* -igo, -egi, -actum: cōgo *has* coēgi, coactum.
Făcio, facĕre, fēci, factum, *do.* Fio *is used for its passive. The compounds with prepositions take* ficio, ficĕre, feci, fectum: pass. ficior. *The rest retain* facio: pass. fio.
Jăcio, jacĕre, jēci, jactum, *throw. Comp.,* adjicio, jeci, jectum, *&c.*
Lĕgo, legĕre, lēgi, lectum, *gather, choose, read. Some of the compounds retain* e, (allĕgo, perlĕgo, relĕgo;) *some take* i, (colligo, deligo, eligo.) Diligo, intelligo, negligo, *take perf.* -lexi.
Frango, frangĕre, frēgi, fractum, *break. Comp.,* -fringo.
Pungo, pungĕre, pupŭgi, punctum, *prick. The compounds have* punxi.
Tango, tangĕre, tetĭgi, tactum, *touch. The compounds* attingo, attigi, *&c.*
Vinco, vincĕre, vīci, victum, *conquer,*
Fŭgio, fugĕre, fūgi, fugĭtum, *fly from.*
Parco, parcĕre, pepercī *and* **parsi, parcitum** *and* **parsum,** *spare.*

143. IV. Roots with *l, m, n.*

Cŏlo, colĕre, colui, cultum, *cultivate.*
Consulo, consulĕre, consului, consultum, *consult.*
Alo, alĕre, alui, alitum *and* **altum,** *nourish.*
Fallo, fallĕre, fefelli, falsum, *deceive.*
Pello, pellĕre, pepŭli, pulsum, *drive away.*
(Cello, *move, drive on.*) Percello, percŭli, perculsum, *strike down.* Antecello *and* excello *have no supine:* excelsus *is an adj., and means* high.
Vello, vellĕre, velli *and* **vulsi, vulsum,** *pluck.*
Cŏmo, comĕre, compsi, comptum, *deck.*
Dēmo, demĕre, dempsi, demptum, *take away.*
Prŏmo, promĕre, prompsi, promptum, *draw forth.*
Sūmo, sumĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, *take.*
Prĕmo, premĕre, pressi, pressum, *press. Comp.,* opprĭmo.
Emo, emĕre, ēmi, emptum, *take, buy. Comp.,* adĭmo, redĭmo.
Frĕmo, fremĕre, fremui, fremitum, *murmur.*
Gĕmo, gemĕre, gemui, gemitum, *groan, sigh.*
Trĕmo, tremĕre, tremui, *tremble.*
Cano, canĕre, cecĭni, cantum, *sing. Comp.,* occĭno, accĭno, *&c.*
Temno, *generally* contemno, contempsi, contemptum, *despise.*
Gigno, gignĕre, gĕnui, genitum, *beget, bring forth.*
Pōno, ponĕre, pŏsui, positum, *place, put down.*
Cerno, cernĕre, crēvi, cretum, *see, perceive. The perfect and supine have not this meaning; the real meaning is to* separate.
Sino, sinĕre, sīvi, sītum, *suffer.* Desĭno, *leave off.*
Sperno, spernĕre, sprēvi, sprētum, *despise.*

Sterno, sternĕre, strāvi, strātum, *throw down, strew.*
Gĕro, gerĕre, gessi, gestum, *carry, bear.*
Uro, urĕre, ussi, ustum, *burn.*
Pārio, parĕre, pepĕri, partum, *bring forth.* *Part. Fut.* pariturus.
Curro, currĕre, cucurri, cursum, *run.*
Sĕro, serĕre, serui, sertum, *connect, join.*
Sĕro, serĕre, sēvi, sătum, *sow.*
Quæro, quærĕre, quæsīvi, quæsītum, *seek.* *Comp.*, acquiro, *&c.*
Tĕro, terĕre, trīvi, trītum, *rub*

144. V. Roots with *s*, *x*, (= *cs.*)

Texo, texĕre, texui, textum, *weave.*
Arcesso, arcessĕre, arcessīvi, arcessītum, *send for.*
Capesso, capessĕre, capessīvi, capessītum, *seize hold of, undertake.*
Lacesso, lacessĕre, lacessīvi, lacessītum, *provoke, harass.*
Viso, visĕre, visi, *visit.*

145. VI. Roots in *u* and *v*.

Acuo, acuĕre, acui, acūtum, *sharpen.*
Arguo, arguĕre, argui, argūtum, *prove, convict.*
Exuo, exuĕre, exui, exūtum, *put off.*
Imbuo, imbuĕre, imbui, imbūtum, *dip, imbue.*
Induo, induĕre, indui, indūtum, *put on.*
Minuo, minuĕre, minui, minūtum, *lessen.*
Ruo, ruĕre, rui, rūtum, *rush;* and (*trans.*) *hurl down.* *Fut. Part.* ruiturus.
Statuo, statuĕre, statui, statūtum, *establish, determine.*
Suo, suĕre, sui, sūtum, *sew.*
Tribuo, tribuĕre, tribui, tribūtum, *allot to.*
Solvo, solvĕre, solvi, solūtum, *loosen, pay.*
Volvo, volvĕre, volvi, volūtum, *roll.*
Struo, struĕre, struxi, structum, *pile up, build.*
Vivo, vivĕre, vixi, victum, *live.*
Fluo, fluĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow.*
(*Without supine.*)
Metuo, metuĕre, metui, *fear.*
Pluo, pluĕre, plui, *rain.*

146. VII. Roots with *sc* in the present. The perf. shows that these verbs are derived from pure roots. The only exceptions are *disco, dĭdĭci*, learn; *posco, pŏposci*, demand.

Cresco, crescĕre, crēvi, crētum, *increase,* (*intrans.*)
Nosco, noscĕre, nōvi, nōtum, *make myself acquainted with,* (novi = *I know.*) *In the compounds the fut. part. is* iturus, *except* ignosco, *pardon;* ignoturus.
Pasco, pascĕre, pāvi, pastum, *feed,* (*trans.*)
Quiesco, quiescĕre, quiēvi, quiētum, *rest.*
Suesco, suescĕre, suevi, suetum, *accustomed, to grow accustomed.*

To this class belong the Inchoatives which express the beginning *of an action or state. They either borrow the perfect and supine from their roots, or are without supine. Of the former kind are—*

Coalesco, coalescĕre, coalui, coalitum, (alo,) *grow together.*
Concupisco, concupiscĕre, concupivi, concupītum, (cupio,) *desire.*
Condolesco, condolescĕre, condolui, condolitum, (doleo,) *feel pain.*
Convalesco convalescĕre, convalui, convalitum, (valeo,) *get well*

Ardesco, exardescĕre, exarsi, exarsum, (arveo,) *take fire.*
(Olesco,) *hence* **adolesco, adolescĕre, adolevi, adultum,** *grow up.*
Revivisco, reviviscĕre, revixi, revictum, *come to life again.*

Of the other kind are—

Calesco, calescĕre, calui, *grow warm.*
Conticesco, conticescĕre, conticui, *hold my tongue.*
Contremisco, contremiscĕre, contremui, *tremble.*
Extimesco, extimescĕre, extimui, *dread.*
Horresco, horrescĕre, horrui, *shudder.*
Tepesco, tepescĕre, tepui, *grow warm.*
Ditesco, *grow rich,* **pinguesco,** *grow fat, and a few more, have neither perfect nor supine.*

---

§ 147. FOURTH CONJUGATION. NEUT. PASSIVES.

Sepelio, sepelīre, sepelivi, sepultum, *bury.*
Farcio, farcīre, farsi, fartum, *stuff.*
Fulcio, fulcīre, fulsi, fultum, *prop.*
Sarcio, sarcīre, sarsi, sartum, *patch, repair.*
Sēpio, sepīre, sepsi, septum, *hedge in.*
Sancio, sancīre, sanxi *and* **sancivi, sanctum,** *confirm, make binding.*
Vincio, vincīre, vinxi, vinctum, *bind.*
Amicio, amictre, amictum, *clothe.*
Sentio, sentīre, sensi, sensum, *feel, perceive by the senses.*
Comperio, comperīre, compĕri, compertum, *ascertain.*
Haurio, haurīre, hausi, haustum, *draw,* (*of liquids.*)
Reperio, reperīre, repĕri, repertum, *find.*
Vĕnio, venīre, vēni, ventum, *come.*
Aperio, aperīre, aperui, apertum, *open.*
Sălio, salīre, salui *and* **salli, saltum,** *spring, leap.* *The compounds have* **-silio, -silui.**
Cæcutio, *am blind,* **ferio,** *strike,* **prurio,** *itch, have no perf. and supine.*

148. Neuter-passives; or, neuters with a perfect that is *passive* in *form.*

Their past participle is the part. of *perfect active.* **Ausus,** *having dared.*

audeo	ausus	sum.....*to dare.*
gaudeo	gavīsus	sum.....*rejoice.*
soleo	solĭtus	sum.....*am wont.*

---

§ 149. DEPONENT VERBS.

150. Deponents of active signification have generally four participles; as, *sequens*, secutūrus, secūtus, *sequendus*, from *sequor*, "to follow." Those of a neuter signification have generally but three; as, *labens*, *lapsus*, *lapsurus*, from *lābor*, "to slip," or "glide."

151. Deponent verbs are conjugated regularly, like the passive voice of the fourth conjugation.

§ 152. FIRST CONJUGATION.

153. The first conjugation has a vast number of deponent verbs, of which all are *regular*.—The following are the most common :—

abominor ..... *regard as a bad omen; abhor, abominate.*
adversor ..... *oppose myself.*
adūlor (dat. or acc.) ..... *flatter.*
æmulor ..... *emulate, rival.*
alucinor ..... *play the fool; talk idly.*
arbitror ..... *think.*
aspernor ..... *despise.*
astipulor (dat.) .... *to join in an engagement; to consent, approve.*
āversor ..... *turn away from, dislike.*
auxilior (dat.) ..... *help.*
bacchor .... *revel* (as a Bacchanalian.)
calumnior ..... *calumniate.*
cavillor ..... *banter, cavil.*
causor ..... *allege as an excuse.*
cōmissor ..... *revel, feast.*
comitor ..... *accompany.*
commentor ... *to meditate upon, contrive.*
conciōnor ..... *harangue.*
cōnor ..... *endeavor.*
contemplor ..... *contemplate.*
criminor ..... *accuse.*
cunctor ..... *delay.*
dignor (abl.) ..... *deem worthy.*
dedignor / indignor ..... *disdain.*
dominor (dat. *in*[1]) ..... *rule.*
glorior (abl. *de*) ..... *boast.*
gratulor[2] ..... *to congratulate.*
hortor (acc. *ut*) ..... *exhort.*
imitor ..... *imitate.*
insidior (dat.) ..... *plot against.*
interpretor ..... *interpret.*
jōcor ..... *jest.*
lætor (abl. *de, in*) ..... *rejoice.*
mētor[3] ..... *measure.*
mīnor / minitor (dat. *pers.* / acc. *thing*) ..... *threaten.*
miror (acc. and infin. *quod*) ..... *wonder.*
moderor (dat. acc.) ..... *moderate, rule.*
mōror[4] ..... *delay* (*intrans.* and *trans.*)
opīnor ..... *think.*
pōpūlor / depopulor ..... *lay waste.*
prĕcor ..... *pray*
prœlior ..... *to fight; battle.*
recordor (gen., acc., or *de*) ..... *remember.*
sōlor / consolor ..... *console.*
suspicor ..... *suspect.*
testor ..... *bear witness; call to witness.*
testificor ..... *bear witness.*
veneror ..... *venerate.*
vēnor ..... *hunt.*
versor ..... *to be turned in* or *among; to dwell; to be employed about.*

§ 154. SECOND CONJUGATION.

fateor, fassus ..... *confess.*
liceor, licitus ..... *bid for any thing.*
medeor (no perf., dat.) ..... *heal.*
mereor, meritus (acc., de aliquo) *deserve.*
misereor, miseritus misertus (gen.) *pity.*
reor, ratus ..... *think.*
tueor, tuitus ..... *look at; protect.*
vereor, veritus ..... *be shy of; to fear.*

---

[1] The mention of a preposition or conjunction after a verb shows that it is followed by that preposition or conjunction.
[2] Dat. of *person*; the *thing* in acc. or with *de*.—*quod*.
[3] Castra metari; *to measure out the ground for a camp; to pitch a camp.*
[4] (Illud) nihil moror, (do not *detain* it, as a thing to be regarded or valued =) *do not care for.*

§ 155. THIRD CONJUGATION.

adipiscor, adeptus ..... *obtain.*
amplector, amplexus, } ..... *embrace.*
complector, complexus, }
divertor, diversus ..... *put up at an inn; lodge.*
expergiscor, experrectus ..... *awake.*
fruor, fruitus, fructus (abl.) ..... *enjoy.*
fungor, functus (abl.) ..... *discharge.*
gradior, gressus ..... *step, walk.*
invĕhor, invectus ..... *inveigh against.*
irascor, iratus (dat.) ..... *be angry.*
lăbor, lapsus ..... *to slip down; glide.*
morior, mortuus ..... *die.*
nanciscor, nactus ..... *get.*
nascor, natus ..... *am born.*
nĭtor, nisus *or* nixus (abl. *in* with acc.) ..... *rely on; strive*
obliviscor, oblītus (gen. acc.) ..... *to forget.*
paciscor, pactus ..... *bargain, (intrans.)*
pascor, pastus ..... *feed, (intrans.)*
pătior, passus ..... *suffer.*
proficiscor, profectus ..... *set out; to march.*
quĕror, questus ..... *complain.*
revertor, reversus ..... *return.*
sĕquor, secūtus ..... *follow.*
vescor, (without perf.) (abl.) ..... *feed on.*
ulciscor, ultus ..... *revenge; punish.*
ūtor, usus (abl.) ..... *use.*

§ 156. FOURTH CONJUGATION.[1]

adsentior, adsensus (dat.) ..... *assent to.*
blandior (dat.) ..... *fawn on; flatter.*
experior, expertus ..... *try.*
largior ..... *give money.*
mentior ..... *lie.*
mētior, mensus ..... *measure.*
mōlior ..... *plan.*
oppĕrior, oppertus (opperītus) ..... *wait for.*
ordior, orsus ..... *begin.*
ŏrior, ortus, orīri[2] ..... *arise.*
partior ..... *divide.*
pōtior[3] (gen or abl.) ..... *to get possession of.*
sortior ..... *to cast lots; obtain, (by lot.)*

---

§ 157 IMPERSONALS.

158. Impersonals that are never used *personally.*[4]

oportet, oportuit ..... *it behooves; one ought.*
libet, libuit ..... *it pleases.*
licet, licuit ..... *it is permitted; one may.*
*piget ..... *it grieves* (one.)
*pœnitet, pœnituit ..... *it repents*
*pudet, puduit ..... (one) *is ashamed*
*miseret ..... *one pities*
*tædet ..... *it irketh; one is tired of.*
rĕfert (gen.)[5] ..... *it concerns*

159. Impersonals that are also used personally in the third person sing. or plur.

tonat ..... *it thunders.*
pluit ..... *it rains.*
ningit ..... *it snows.*
grandinat ..... *it hails.*
fulminat ..... *it lightens*
rorat ..... *the dew falls.*
vesperascit ..... *it grows dusk.*
lucescit ..... *it grows light.*

---

[1] When the *partic.* is not set down, it is ītus.
[2] So orīrer, &c., but in the *present* it is of the third; orĕris, orītur.
[3] Potīri, potītus: but potĕris, potītur, &c., in *pres.* like the third; and so *potere* &c.
[4] Those that have an *asterisk* prefixed take acc. of person, gen. of the *thing*, (or *object* of the feeling.) It *repenteth* me of my folly.
[5] Abl. sing. fem. of a possessive pronoun.

160. Personal verbs that have also an *impersonal* use, in a particular meaning.

stat ..... *it is resolved.*	solet, assolet ..... *it usually happens*
constat ..... *it is agreed upon; it is well known.*	accĭdit ..... *it happens.*
præstat ..... *it is better.*	accēdit[1] ..... *it is added.*
restat ..... *it remains.*	excĭdit[2] ..... *it has escaped me.*
delectat ..... *it is delightful.*	conducit / confert } *it is serviceable, or conducive.*
juvat ..... *it is pleasant.*	contingit ..... *it happens; falls to the lot of.*
vacat ..... [*I, you,* &c.] *have leisure.*	sufficit ..... *it suffices.*
placet ..... [*I, you,* &c.] *resolve.*	interest[3] (gen.) .... *it concerns; is of importance to.*
attinet ..... *it relates to; concerns.*	crebescit ..... [*a report*] *spreads.*
appāret ..... *it appears.*	evĕnit ..... *it turns out.*
decet ..... *it is becoming.*	expĕdit ..... *it is expedient.*
dedĕcet ..... *it is unbecoming.*	fit ..... *it happens.*
liquet ..... *it is clear.*	convĕnit[4] ..... *it is suitable.*
patet ..... *it is plain.*	
latet ..... *it is concealed; unknown.*	

161. The compounds of *sum* are conjugated exactly in the same way as the verb itself. (See 126.)

absum,	*am absent.*	desum,	*am wanting.*
adsum,	*am present.*	præsum,	*am before;* or *at the head of.*
intersum,	*am amongst; am engaged in.*	prosum,	*profit; do good to.*
obsum,	*am in the way of; hinder.*		

(1.) ***Prosum*** inserts a "*d*" before those tenses of *sum* that begin with a vowel:

Not *pro-es, pro-eram:* but *prodes, proderam.*

(2.) ***Absum, præsum*** have present participle *absens, præsens:* but the latter only in the sense of "*present.*"

§ 162. IRREGULAR AND OTHER VERBS.

(1.) Possum, { I am able; I can. (*Possum, potĕs, potest; possŭmus, potestis, possunt.* Imp. *potĕram.* Fut. *potĕro.* Subj. pres. *possim.* Imp. *possem.* Root of perf. *potu.* See First Lat. Book, p. 56.)

(2.) { Vŏlo, am willing; wish.
Nōlo, am unwilling, (*for* non volo.)
Mālo, had rather, (*for* magis *or* mage volo.)

---

[1] *Accedit quod* or *ut* may generally be rendered by, *moreover; besides this.*
[2] Properly, *de memorid* excidit, it has *slipped my memory; I have forgotten.*
[3] Abl. sing. fem. of possessive pronouns.
[4] *Ut convenerat,* as had been agreed upon. In this sense a *nom.* is generally expressed.

Pres.	vŏlo,	vis,	vult,	volŭmus,	vultis,	volunt.
	nōlo,	non vis,	non vult,	nolŭmus,	non vultis,	nolunt.
	mālo,	mavis,	mavult,	malŭmus,	mavultis,	malunt.

Subj. Pres.	vēlim,	nōlim,	mālim.	(is, it: ĭmus, ĭtis, int.)
Subj. Imperf.	vellem,	nollem,	mallem.	
Infinitive.	velle,	nolle,	malle.	

The other tenses are all formed regularly. They have no gerunds, supines, or participles, (except *vŏlens, nōlens,*) nor imperative, except *nōli, nolīte, — nolīte.*

Nōli putāre, (be unwilling to think, =) *do not think.*

(3.) Fĕro, (tŭli, lātum,) bear. (Imperative, *fer — ferte.*)

This verb has *fers, fert, fertur,* for feris, ferit, feritur; and drops *e* whenever it would stand between two *r's*. Hence ferrem, ferre, &c., for ferĕrem, ferĕre.

(4.) Fio, become; am made *or* done: *partly used as pass. of* făcio.

It is conjugated regularly, except that it has fĭĕrem for *fīrem*, and an irregular infin. *fĭĕri*. It has no *perfect; factus sum, ĕram*, &c., being in use.

(5.) Edo, (ĕ,) eat.

This verb is conjugated regularly after the third; but has *also* some forms which are common to it and *sum*.

Present.	*edo*, &c.,	and also,	*ēs*,	*est*,	*— estis*,	——
Imperative.	*ede*, &c.,	and also,	*es*,	*esto*,	*— este*,	*estote.*
Subj. Imperf.	*edĕrem*,	and also,	*essem*,	*esses*, &c.		
Infinitive.	*edĕre*,	and	*esse*,			

N. B. These forms must be distinguished from those of *sum* by their transitive meaning. *ēs*, thou eatest; *es*, thou art.

(6.) Eo, (īvi,[1] ĭtum.) go. (Pres. *eo, is, it; ĭmus, ĭtis, eunt.* Imp. *ībam.* Fut. *ībo.* Imperat. *i.* Subj. pres. *eam.* Imp. *īrem.* Part. *iens, euntis*, &c. Ger. *eundi*, &c.)

(7.) Queo, am able; can. Nequeo, am unable; cannot. — These verbs are conjugated like *eo*, as far as they are in use: 3 plur. *queunt, nequeunt.* Subj. pres. *queam, nequeam*, &c.

(8.) Memĭni, I remember; with only the tenses derived from the *perfect*, which has the meaning of a *present*. Imper. *memento.*
Cœpi, I have begun, (*cœptus est* before pass. infin.)
Odi, I hate, (with meaning of *present*. See *memini.*)

(9.) Inquam, I say: *inquit*, says he: *inquiunt*, say they, &c.

---

[1] In the compounds of *eo*, the perf. is generally *ĭi*.

§ 163. ADVERBS.

164. ADVERBS OF PLACE[1] are fivefold, viz.:—

ADVERBS SIGNIFYING MOTION (OR REST.)

(1) *In a place.*

Ubi?	*Where?*
Hic,	*Here.*
Illic,	*There.*
Istic,	*There, where you are.*
Ibi,	*There.*
Intus,	*Within.*
Foris,	*Without.*
Ubique,	*Everywhere.*
Nusquam,	*Nowhere.*
Alicŭbi,	*Somewhere.*
Alĭbi,	*Elsewhere.*
Ubivis,	*Anywhere, (you please.)*
Ibidem,	*In the same place.*

(2) *To a place—(o, uc.)*

Quo?	*Whither?*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc,	*Thither.*
Istuc,	*Thither, to where you are*
Intro,	*To within.*
Foras,	*To without.*
Eo,	*To that place.*
Alio,	*To another place.*
Alĭquo,	*To some place.*
Eŏdem,	*To the same place.*

(3) *Towards a place.*

Quorsum?	*Whitherward?*
Versus,	*Towards.*
Sursum,	*Upwards.*
Deorsum,	*Downwards.*
Retrorsum,	*Backwards.*
Dextrorsum,	*To the right hand.*
Sinistrorsum,	*To the left hand.*

(4) *From a place—(ne, nds.)*

Unde?	*Whence?*
Hinc,	*Hence.*
Illic,	*Thence.*
Istinc,	*Thence, from where you are*
Inde,	*Thence.*
Alĭunde,	*From elsewhere.*
Alicunde,	*From some place.*
Sicunde,	*If from any place.*
Utrinque,	*On both sides.*
Superne,	*From above.*
Inferne,	*From below.*
Cœlĭtus,	*From heaven.*
Fundĭtus,	*From the ground.*

(5) *Through* or *by a place.*

Qua?	*Which way?*
Hac,	*This way.*
Illac,	*That way.*
Istac,	*That way, by you.*
Alia,	*Another way.*

165. ADVERBS OF TIME are threefold, viz.:—

SUCH AS SIGNIFY,—

(1) *Being in time, either*

1. *Present.*

Nunc,	*Now.*
Hodie	*To-day.*

2. *Past.*

Tunc, Tum,	*Then.*
Heri,	*Yesterday.*
Dudum, Pridem,	*Heretofore.*
Pridie,	*The day before.*
Nudiustertius,	*Three days ago.*
Nuper,	*Lately.*

3. *Future.*

(*Very near.*)

Jamjam,	*Presently.*
Mox,	*Immediately.*
Statim,	*By-and-by.*
Protĭnus,	*Instantly.*
Illico,	*Straightway.*

(*Remote.*)

Cras,	*To-morrow.*
Postridie,	*The day after.*
Perendie,	*Two days hence.*
Nondum,	*Not yet.*

[1] From Ruddiman.

4. *Indefinite.*

Quando ?	*When ?*
Aliquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum,	*Sometimes*
Semper,	*Always.*
Nunquam,	*Never.*
Interim, Interea,	*In the mean time.*
Quotidie,	*Daily.*

(2) *Continuance of Time.*

Quamdiu ?	*How long ?*
Diu,	*Long.*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu, Jamdūdum, Jampridem,	*Long ago.*

(3) *Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time.*

1. *Indefinite.*

Quoties ?	*How often.*
Sæpe,	*Often.*
Raro,	*Seldom.*
Toties,	*So often.*
Aliquoties,	*For several times.*
Vicissim,	*By turns*
Rursus,	*Again.*
Iterum,	*A second time.*
Subinde,	*Immediately after.*
Identidem,	*Several times.*

2. *Definite,* or *in Number.*

Semel,	*Once.*
Bis,	*Twice.*
Ter,	*Thrice.*
Quater,	*Four times.*

166. ADVERBS OF ORDER: as,—

Inde ..... *then.*	Denuo ..... *anew.*
Deinde ..... *thereafter.*	Denique ..... *finally*
Dehinc ..... *henceforth.*	Postrēmo ..... *lastly.*
Porro ..... *moreover.*	Primo, -um ..... *first.*
Deinceps ..... *successively.*	Secundo ..... *secondly*

&c. &c.

---

§ 167. PREPOSITIONS.

168. The prepositions governing the accusative are twenty-eight:—

Ante, apud, ad, adversus,
Circum, circā, citrā, cis,
Ergā, contra, inter, extrā,
Infrā, intrā, juxtā, ŏb,
Pēnes, pōne, post, *et* præter,
Prōpe, propter, per, sĕcundum,
Suprā, versus, ultra, trans.

169. Fourteen prepositions govern the ablative:—

Absque, a, ab, abs, *and* de,
Coram, clam, cum, ex, *and* e,
Tenus, sine, pro, *and* præ.

170. Four prepositions govern sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative:—

In, sub, super, subter.

§ 171. PRINCIPLES OF WORD-BUILDING.

DIVISION OF THE CONSONANTS.

	Mutes. SMOOTH.	MID.	ASP.		*Liquids.*	*Spirants.*	*Organ by which they are formed.*
p sounds,	p	b	(ph,)	f	m	v	*lip*, (labials.)
t sounds,	t	d	(th,)		n l r	s j h	*tongue*, (dentals.)
k sounds,	c	g	(ch,)	qu			*throat*, (gutturals.)

Double letters, { x is equivalent to cs. / z ——— ss *or* cs

(1) *Prefixes.*	(*Change of form.*)
2. Ab, *away from.*	{ *a*, (m,[1] v, and sometimes f; but *au* before *fero*, *fugio.*) / *ab*, (sc, t,) *as* (p.)
3. ad, *to*,	changes *d* into the initial consonant of the word, before *s* and all the mutes and liquids, (*c* before *qu*;) *ad*, however, may remain before all these.
4. amb, ambi-, *round; about; on both sides.*	
5. ante, *before.*	
6. circum, *around.*	
7. con, *with;* in some words *completely.*	co, (h and vowels;) com, (m, b, p;[2]) *assimilated* before *l*, *r*.
8. contra, *against.*	
9. de, *down; way;* in some words it adds the notion of *disagreeableness* or *deterioration.*	
10. Dis,[3] *asunder, in different directions; away from; un-.*	di, (d, g, l, m;) *assimilated* before *f.*
11. ex, *out of, thoroughly.*	e, (liquids and b, d, g, v,) ef, (f.)
12. in, *into, on, against;* with adjectives, *not.*	im, (b, p, m;) i, (gn;) *assimilated* before *l*, *r*.[4]
13. inter, *between, amongst.*	assimilated in *intelligo.*
14. intro, *within.*	
15. ob, *against;* sometimes *about.*[5]	*assimilated* before c, f, g, p; but may stand before *p.*
16. per, *through, thoroughly;* (*with adj.*) *very.* It sometimes adds a *bad* meaning to the word.	*assimilated* before *l.*
17. post, *after.*	
18. præ, *before;* (with adj.) very.	

[1] The letters in parentheses are those *before which* it undergoes the change.
[2] And sometimes vowels, as in *comedo.*
[3] The meaning of *dis* is generally separative; sometimes *deprivative*, (as in displicēre, dissuadēre.) Döderlein.
[4] "*In*" may, however, stand before *l*, *r*.
[5] In which meaning it is an abbreviation, perhaps from *amb*. D.

Prefixes.	*Suffixes*
19. praeter, *by.*	
20. pro, *forth, forwards.*	prod before vowel: pol, por, before l, r.
21. re, *back, again, away,* un-; (sometimes *very,* or *forth from within.*)	red before vowel.
22. retro, *backwards.*	
23. sē, *without, apart from.*	
24. sub, *under, away from beneath, from below upwards, somewhat.*	*assimilated* before c, f, g, m, p, r. (But before m, p, r, and n, it is better to retain the b.)
25. subter, *underneath, away from underneath.*	
26. super, *above.*	
27. trans, *across, through, over to the other side.*	trā, (d, j,) but trans preferred by Cæsar.
28. nē, *not.*	
29. vē, *not, ill.*	
30. bene, *well*	
31. male, *ill.*	
32. satis, *enough.*	

(2) *Suffixes*

(*a*) VERBS.

33. are, from *nouns:* to *make, produce, employ oneself about, procure, show oneself as:* -ire (from nouns) are also *trans.*
34. are, from root of supine: *to do,* strengthening the meaning of the primitive verb, (*intensives.*)
35. it-are, from *root of present or supine:* to do frequently, continually, (*frequentatives.*)
36. sc-ĕre, *to begin to*—(*inchoatives.*)
a, e, are the connecting vowels for the first and second conjugations; *i* for the third and fourth. Some are from nouns: their perfect is in *ui, ĕvi* and the connecting vowel being thrown away.
37. ŭr-ire, to *wish* or *want* to—(*desideratives.*)
38. ill-are, to *do in a little degree* or *trifling way.*
39. ēre, from nouns, generally *intransitive; to be* or *become.*
40. ari, from substantives; (same meaning as āre, 33.)

(*b*) SUBSTANTIVES.

41. or, from root of supine, *a man who does*—fem. *rix.*
42. or, from root of present, express the *action* or *state* of the verb.
43. lo,
44. us, of the *fourth,* action or *state* of the verb: *io* especially the *doing* of the action.
45. ūra,
46. Ido, (G. Idin for Idon,) } are also *abstract* substantives from verbs.
47. Igo, (G. Igin for Igon,) }
48. men, } *the thing done.*
49. mentum, } *the thing by which—is done: that which does.*
I is the connecting vowel of the third, but the termination is often added without a connecting vowel. In the *first* and *fourth,* the terminations are added to the *ā, ī.*
50. bŭlum,
51. ŭlum,
52. ēla,
53. ēna, } *that which is, that which is used for, that by which.*
also denote *that by which.*
54. crum,
55. strum, } a *place* or *thing prepared for.*
56. um, the action of a verb as a *thing:* then *the action itself.*
57. mōnia, the *habit* or *continued state of.*
58. o,
59. a, } express *the person who.*

From Nouns, (including Participles.)

60. tas, *Gen.* tātis: [generally has *i* for the connecting vowel from adjectives in *ius* are formed substantives in *ĭtas*, from adjectives in *stus*, substantives in *stas*.]
61. la, (from adj. of one termination[1])
62. ĭtia, (from adjectives in *us*)
63. tūdo, (connecting vowel *i*)
64. ēdo, (a rare termination)
65. tus, *Gen.* tūtis, (only in four words)

are terminations of abstract substantives, denoting a *property, disposition, state,* &c.

66. lus, la, lum, { diminutives;[2] connecting vowel generally *u*, which sometimes takes a *s* before it. Some have *ŏ* or *ĭ* as their connecting vowel. Others end in *illus, ellus*. Some in *leus*.
67. ium, denotes a *body* or *assemblage of*, or an *office abstractedly*.
68. ātus,
69. ītas, } answer to "*hood*," "*ship*," denoting either an *office* or a *body of men*.
70. ūra,
71. ētum, a place where *trees* grow together.
72. arium, a *receptacle*.
73. ĭle, a place where *animals are kept*.

Patronymics.

74. ĭdes, son or (male) descendant of.
75. ĭdes, is for e-ĭdes, from nouns in *eus*.
76. ădes,
77. iades, } are from words of the first decl. in *as* or *es*; ĭădes also from *ius*
78. is, fem. form of *ides*, Gen. ĭdis.
79. as, ———— *ades*, Gen. ădis.

(*c*) Adjectives (1) from Verbs.

80. bundus, has the strengthened meaning of the present participle used adjectively.
81. cundus, has in a few words the same meaning as *bundus*.
82. ĭdus, (chiefly from intransitive verbs,) denotes the quality of the root adjectively.
83. uus, has the same meaning as *idus*: from *transitive* verbs it generally has a *passive* meaning.
84. ĭlis, bĭlis, { *capable of being*; *fit to be*.
85. ax, having such a *habit, inclination*, &c.; generally of *faulty* ones.

(*d*) Adjectives signifying *of, belonging* or *related to*.

86. ius, mostly from substantives in *or*.
87. icus, *generally* from names of *places, countries*, and *persons*.
88. ĕus, from Greek names of persons.
89. ĭlis.
90. ālis, (āris after another *l*; and in *militaris*.)
91. ēlis.
92. inus, describing the *flesh of such an animal*.

---

[1] And sometimes from substantives, (custod-ia.)

[2] Observe, the diminutive ends in *ius, la*, or *lum*, according as the word from which it is formed is *masc., fem.*, or *neuter*.

93. īnus, (from *ia*, *ium*,)
94. ensis,
95. as, (Gen. ātis: from um,)
96. ānus, iānus,
97. æus, (from *a*, *æ*,)

} of such a town, &c., (*ānus*, *ensis*, from other *places* also, as *montānus*, *castrensis*.)

(*e*) Adjectives meaning *of such a substance* or *material*.

98. ĕnus.
99. īnus, (especially of *trees*, *plants*, &c.)

[When the root is not the name of a *material* or *substance*, *īnus* denotes *likeness* only.]

100. cuis, (used also as *ius*, a simple *genitive* meaning.)
101. ceus, (denotes *likeness* only, when the root is not the name of a *substance* or *material*.)

(*f*) Adjectives signifying *fulness*, *abundance*.

102. ōsus.
103. lentus, (often with connecting vowel *u*.)
104. īdus.

---

105. arius denotes of such an *occupation*; generally used as substantives. Sometimes *pertaining to*, (agrarius.)
106. ātus,
107. ītus, } (English "*ed*") provided, furnished with.
108. ūtus,
109. stus, *being in*; or *having* (such a property) *in oneself*.
110. stis, being in such a place.
111. ster,
112. stris, } dwelling in such a place.
113. tilis,
114. timus, } describe an object from the place where it lives.
115. īvus mostly denotes manner, circumstance, &c.
116. ernus marks *descent*, and relations of *time*.
117. urnus denotes *time*.

ADVERBS.

118. ē, from adjectives in *us*, *er*.
119. ĭ, from adjectives of the third.
120. ō, from some adjectives in *us*, *er*; and from *past participles*.
121. ter, (with connecting vowel *i*, except after *n*,) from adjectives of the *third* and participles in *ns*.

[A few are from adjectives in *us*, but there is generally an adverb in *e* too.]

122. (s)im,
123. (t)im, } from root of supine, denoting the *manner*; but also from substantives, generally with connecting vowel *a*.
124. ītus, (from substantives, adjectives, and prepositions,) denoting *whence*.

(*g*) Common terminations of compound words.

125. dĭcus, one who
126. lŏquus, ——— } *speaks*,
127. fĭcus, one who *does*,
128. vŏlus, one who *wishes*

} as adjectives.

	Corresponding subst. of *thing*.
129. dĭcus, one who *speaks*.	137. dicium.
130. ceps, (cipitis,) one who *takes*.	138. cipium.
131. fex, (fĭcis,) one who *does*.	139. fĭcium.
132. cen, (cinis,) one who *sings*.	140. cinium.
133. fer, } one who *bears*.	
134. ger, }	
135. gĕna,[1] one who is *born of*.	
136. cŏla, one who *dwells in*.	

[When the first half of the compound word is a noun, the connecting vowel is short *i*.]

To these may be added,—

141. spex, (spĭcis,) *one who looks at; examines*.
142. spicium, corresponding substantive of *thing*.

---

[1] So *gnus*, for *gen-us*, (gigno,) *of such a nature*.

§ 172. TABLE OF GENDERS.

Obs.—*Masc.* exceptions are in *capitals*; *fem.* in common type; *neut.* in *italics*.

Third Declension.

Masc. terminations.	*Fem. terminations.*	*Neut. terminations.*
er, or, os, es *increasing*, o, *when not* do, go, io.	do, go, io,[1] as, is, aus, x, es *not increasing*, s *impure*.	*c*, *a*, *t*, *e*, *l*, *n*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*.
Principal Exceptions.	**Principal Exceptions.**	**Principal Exceptions.**
er) *cadaver* *uber* *iter* *ver* *papaver* *verber* *tuber*.	*do*, *go*, *io*) ORDO, CARDO, LIGO MARGO (f)[3]	*l*) SAL SOL
or) arbor *æquor* *marmor* *cor*.	*is*) AMNIS LAPIS ANGUIS (f) MENSIS AXIS ORBIS CASSIS (is) PANIS COLLIS PISCIS CINIS POSTIS CRINIS PULVIS ENSIS SANGUIS FASCIS TORRIS FINIS (f) UNGUIS FOLLIS VECTIS FUNIS VERMIS IGNIS	*n*) LIEN REN SPLEN PECTEN
es) compes requies merces seges merges teges quies *as*.		*ur*) FUR FURFUR TURTUR VULTUR
os) cos dos *os* (ossis) *os* (oris) [2] *chaos* [2] *epos* [2] *melos*		*us*) pecus (ŭdis) incūs[5] senectūs juventūs servītūs palūs tellūs salūs virtūs LEPUS MUS grus (*m*) sus (*m*.)
o) caro [2] echo	*x*) CALIX CODEX CORTEX GREX POLLEX [2] THORAX VERTEX	
First Declension.	*es*, pari-syll. ACĪNACES	**Fourth Declension.**
Fem. except names of *men*.	*s impure*) MONS, PONS, FONS DENS QUADRANS RUDENS [2] HYDROPS	(us.)
Second Declension.	*as*) AS ELEPHAS *vas* (*vasis*) *fas* *nefas*.	*Masc.*—except
(us, er.[4])		acus idus (pl.) manus porticus tribus
Masc.—except		**Fifth Declension.**
alvus domus humus vannus *pelagus* *virus* *vulgus* (also *m*.)		*Fem.*—except DIES (also *f*. in *sing*.) MERIDIES.

[1] Words in *io*. that are not *abstract* nouns, are *masc*., e. g. PAPILIO, PUGIO, SCIPIO, SEPTENTRIO, STELLIO, UNIO, (pearl,) with the numeral nouns TERNIO, QUATERNIO, &c.

[2] Properly Greek words.

[3] Those with (f), (m), are sometimes fem. and masc. respectively.

[4] *Greek nouns in* ŏdus, (exŏdus, methŏdus, &c.,) *with* dialectus, diphthongus, &c., *are* fem.

[5] Hence *us* with *long* u is a fem. termination.

173. These rules depend on the terminations; but some words have a particular gender from their *meaning*.

A. The names of *male persons*, and *winds*, are masculine.

B. The names of *female persons*, *countries*, and *islands*, *towns*, *plants*, and *trees*, are fem.

(*a*) But of *towns*, these are *masc.*:

(1) Some in *o*, (CROTO, HIPPO, NARBO, SULMO, FRUSĪNO;) and
(2) All plurals in *i*: VEII, DELPHI

These are neuter:

(1) All in *um*, or plur. *a*:
(2) Those in *e* or *ur* of the third: *Præneste*, *Tĭbur*

(*b*) Of *trees* and *plants*,

(1) Those in *er* (and many in *us*) of the second are *masc.*:
(2) Those in *er*, *ur* of the third are *neut.*: *acer*, *siler*, *robur*, &c.

C. Several are *common*: *comes*, *conjux*, *custos*, *dux*, *hospes*, *juvenis*, *parens princeps*, *sacerdos*, &c.

BRIEF SKETCH OF LATIN SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTORY.

1. SYNTAX treats of propositions or sentences, and of their relations and arrangement.

2. A proposition consists of a *subject* and *predicate*.

3. Sentences are either simple or compound.

(*a*) A simple sentence contains one proposition.

(*b*) A compound sentence contains two or more propositions.

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

4. In every sentence, the *subject* is that of which something is affirmed or declared.

5. The *predicate* is that which is affirmed or declared of the subject; thus:—

Equus currit, *the horse runs*.

(*a*) Here "horse" is the *subject*; "runs" the *predicate*.

(*b*) The proposition relates to the *horse*. It is affirmed or predicated of the horse that he *runs*: and the sentence is *simple*, because containing one simple proposition.

(c) The following are examples for practice:—

Puer discit. Vita brevis est.
Caius, ruptis vinculis, evolavit.
Crœsus, a Cyro victus, regno spoliatus est.
Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, cum ditissimus esse potest.
Errare est humanum.
Plurimæ stellæ soles sunt.

II. OF THE CASES.

RULE I.—A verb agrees with its nominative (i. e., its *subject* nomin.) in number and person; thus:—

Plurimæ stellæ soles sunt;
Equus currit; equi currunt;
Nos legimus; Tu scribis;
Homines sunt modesti.

Obs. 1. The nominatives *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, are seldom expressed. They are used when *emphasis* is required.

2. A *collective* noun (i. e., a noun singular, denoting number or multitude) has sometimes a plural verb; as, *turba ruunt; pars pugnant, pars fugiunt.*

3. So *utergue* and *quisque* often take a plural verb.

4. Where two or more nomin. cases singular come together, the verb is generally put in the plural; as, *Antonius et Octavianus vicērunt Brutum et Cassium.*

5. But if the nomin. denote things without life, a verb singular is often used; as, *Mens enim, et ratio et consilium in senibus est.*

6. With *et—et*, *quum—tum*, the verb is generally put in the singular number.

7. When the nomin. are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.*

8. An infinitive mood (with the words belonging to it) is often the *nominative* to the verb; the adjective that agrees with it is then in the *neuter gender*; as, *humanum est errare. Turpe est mentiri. Turpe est poetæ domum evertere.*

RULE II.—Where two nouns are spoken of the *same thing*, the second is put in the *same case* as the first; as,—*Isocrates orator. Nos consules. Roma urbs. Urbs Athenæ.*

Obs. 1. The second noun is then said to be *in apposition* to the first, i. e., it is a *name*, *title*, or *description* of the preceding one.

2. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius*, tribuni *plebis.*

RULE III.—Verbs of *becoming*, *being*, *seeming*, And passive verbs of *making*, *calling*, *deeming*, take a substantive or adjective after them in the nominative; as,—*ille vocatur Robertus. Philippus habetur gracilis.*

Obs. The verb "*to be*," takes a nomin. (of either a *substant.* or *adject.*) after it; as, *terra est rotunda. Hortensius fuit orator.*

RULE IV.—Adjectives, adjective pronouns and participles, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Obs. 1. When an adject. belongs to more than one substant. or pronoun, it should agree with the *more worthy* gender,* and be in the plural; as, *pater mihi et mater* mortui *sunt.*

2. When the substantives are things that *have not life*, the adject. is generally put in the *neuter;* as, *regna, imperia, nobilitates, honōres, divitiæ in casu* sita *sunt.*

RULE V.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent† in *gender*, *number*, and *person;* as,—*puer* qui *legit. Literæ* quas *dedi. Animal* quod *currit.*

Obs. 1. The *case* of the relative has nothing to do with the other sentence; but must be governed by the verb (or some other *governing* word) of its own sentence; as, *arbores serit agricola,* quarum *fructus ipse adspiciet nunquam. Ego* quem *tu vocas. Ille de* quo *tu dicis.*

2. When the *relat.* agrees with some case of a *subst.* expressed in its own, but not in the principal clause, some *case* of that subst. must be supplied in the principal clause; as, *quas misisti literas accepi;* for *accepi literas quas misisti.*

3. Sometimes the infin. mood stands as the *antecedent* to a *relat.* Sometimes a sentence or part of a sentence stands for the antecedent. In this case the adj. or relat. is put in the *neut. gender. Id quod* or *quæ* res are often found instead of the relat. only.

4. When the antecedent has a *superlative* with it, the adjective is generally put in the relative clause; as, *primus fecit;* "he was the first person who did it."

RULE VI.—One substantive *depending* upon another is put in the *genitive case;*‡ as,—*amor gloriæ. Ciceronis orationes. Pater patriæ. Lex naturæ.*

---

* The masculine is said to be more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine than the neuter.

† That is, *going before* noun, i. e., the noun or pronoun *for which* the relative stands.

‡ The Genit. is *subjective* when it denotes that which does something, or to which something belongs, e. g., *hominum facta, liber pueri,* &c.: it is *objective,* when

Obs. 1. The Romans often used a *dependent genitive* where *we* use *prepositions—in, for, with,* &c.; as, *gratia beneficii; suarum rerum fiducia; Pyrrhi regis* bellum, &c.

2. Where *we* use a *substant.* with an *adject.* agreeing with it, an *adjective* in the *neuter* is often used in Latin, with a *genitive* governed by it; as, *quantum voluptatis; aliquid temporis; multum boni; quid novi?* &c.

RULE VII.—A partitive adjective governs a noun in the genitive.

Obs. 1. A partitive adjective is one that expresses *some* individuals considered as *parts* of a larger number or body; such as *which, every, each, both, some,* &c., with *ordinal* numerals, *comparatives,* and *superlatives.*

2. The partitive adject. generally agrees in gender with the governed genit., because that expresses the *thing meant;* as, *alter consulum; Græcorum oratorum præstantissimus.*

RULE VIII.—A substantive *having an adjective agreeing with it,* and *describing* a former substantive, stands in the *genitive* or *ablative;* as,—*vir excellentis ingenii; vir summo ingenio; ingentis magnitudinis serpens; classis septuaginta navium.*

RULE IX.—*Opus est* (there is need) is followed by an *ablative of what is needed.* The *person who needs* must be put in the *dative;* as,—*acuto homine nobis opus est; quid opus est verbis?* But the *thing needed* is often the *nominative* to the verb *sum,* or the *accusative* before *esse;* as,—*quarundam rerum nobis* exempla *permulta* opus sunt.

RULE X.—Adjectives which signify *desire, knowledge, recollection, fear, participation,* and their *opposites;* together with *verbals* in *ax,* and many of those that express *fulness* or *emptiness,* govern the *genitive;* as, *avidus novitatis; insidiarum plenus; magnæ urbis capax; audax ingenii;* &c.

Obs. 1. To this class belong many participles *used adjectively;* as, *veritatis amans; officii negligens;* &c.

---

it denotes that which is the object of the feeling or action spoken of, e. g., *amor virtutis, tædium laboris, desiderium otii,* &c. The *objective* genitive *usually* follows the noun on which it depends. (Zumpt.)

RULE XI.—Such a substant. as *property, duty, part, mark,* &c., is often omitted in Latin after *to be;* so that *to be* is followed by a *genit.* governed by this subst. or an *adject.* in the *neuter* gender agreeing with it; as,—*est boni oratoris; judicis est; dementiæ est; meum est; cujusvis hominis est errare.*

Obs. Such a noun as *officium, munus, indicium,* &c., must be understood.

RULE XII.—Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting,* &c., take a *genit.* of the charge; as,—*proditionis accusāre.*

Obs. 1. But if the *charge* be expressed by a *neut. pron.* it stands in the accus.; as, *si id me accusas.*

2. Instead of the *genit.* the *ablat.* with *de* is very common; as, *de pecuniis repetundis damnari.*

3. The *punishment* to which a person is condemned, stands generally in the *ablat.;* sometimes in the *genit.*, and often in the *accus.* with *ad;* as, *capitis* (or *capite*) damnari; *ad bestias condemnare.*

RULE XIII.—*Satago, misereor,* and *miseresco,* govern the *genit.;* verbs of *reminding, remembering,* and *forgetting,* the *gen.* or *acc.;* as,—*misereri omnium, meminisse beneficia, dissensionum oblivisci.*

RULE XIV.—With *interest* and *rēfert* the person *to whom* it is of importance, is put in the *genit.;* as,—*interest omnium recta facere.*

Obs. 1. But instead of personal pron., the possessives are used in the *ablat. fem.;* as, *quid nostrâ refert.*

2. The degree of importance is expressed by the *genit.* of *price,* or by an *adverb;* as, *magni interest quos quisque audiat quotidie.*

3. The *thing that is of importance* is expressed by an *infinitive clause,* or a *neut. pron.;* or a clause introduced by an *interrogative,* or by a *conjunction;* as, *illud med magni interest,* te ut *videam.*

RULE XV.—These impersonals, *pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret,* take an *accusat.* of the *person feeling,* a *genit.* of what *causes* the feeling; as,—*ignavum pœnitebit aliquando ignaviæ; tædet me vitæ; tui me miseret;* &c.

RULE XVI.—Adjectives which signify *advantage*, likeness, *agreeableness*, *usefulness*, *fitness*, facility, &c., (with their *opposites*,) govern the *dative*.

Obs. 1. Several of these take also a *genit.*

2. Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, accommodatus, idoneus, may also be followed by *ad* with the *accus.* of the *object*, or *purpose*, *for which*.

3. *Similis* takes the *genit.* to express like a person in character.

RULE XVII.—The dative follows verbs that signify *advantage* or *disadvantage*; verbs of *comparing*, of *giving* and *restoring*; of *promising* and *paying*; of *commanding* and *telling*; of *trusting* and *intrusting*; of *complying with* and *opposing*; of *threatening* and *being angry*; &c.

Obs. 1. All verbs may be followed by a dat. of the thing or person *to*, *for*, or *against* which any thing is done.

2. Many of these govern the *accus.* of the *immediate*, or *dat.* of the *remoter* object.

3. Verbs of *comparing* are also followed by the prepositions *cum*, *inter*, and *ad*.

4. Of verbs of *advantage* and *disadvantage*, *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, and *offendo*, govern the *accus.*

5. Of verbs of *commanding*, *rego* and *guberno* govern the *accus.* only, and *tempero* and *moderor* the *acc.* or *dat.*

RULE XVIII.—*Sum* with its compounds, except *possum*, governs the *dative*.

RULE XIX.—Verbs compounded with the adverbs *bene*, *satis*, *male*, generally govern the dative.

RULE XX.—*Most* of verbs compounded with *ad*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *præ*, *sub*, *con*, govern the dat.

RULE XXI.—*Many* verbs compounded with *ab*, *ante*, *de*, *e*, *post*, *pro*, *re*, *super*, govern the dat.

Obs. Some of these verbs governing the dat. are *transitive*, and govern the *accus.* only; some the *dat.* and *accus.*; and very many are followed by the *prepositions* they are compounded with.

RULE XXII.—*Dono*, *circumdo*, and several other verbs, take either the *dat.* of the *person* and an *accus.*

of the *thing*, or an *accus.* of the *person* and an *ablat.* of the *thing;* as,—*mihi coronam*, or *me coronâ donat; urbem muro*, or *murum urbi circumdat.*

RULE XXIII.—*Esse, donare, mittere, proficisci*, &c., with *dare* and *vertere*, (to impute,) govern *two datives.*

RULE XXIV.—*Sum* with a *dat.* of a person often expresses the English "*have*;" as,—*sunt mihi libri; est mihi vacca;* &c.

Obs. In *est mihi nomen* the name is either in the *nămin.* or *dat.*, or (less commonly) the *genit.* The construction with the *dat.* is the most common.

RULE XXV.—The accus. denoting the immediate object of an action, follows all transitive verbs, whether active or deponent, to express the person or thing affected by the action implied in such verbs; as,—*pater amat* (or *tuētur*) filium.

Obs. 1. The transit. or intransit. nature of a verb depends entirely upon its meaning, and can be learned only by practice in the use of a dictionary.

2. Many intrans. verbs become transit. when compounded with a preposition governing the accus.; as, Pythagoras Persarum magos adiit.

3. Neuter verbs take a substant. of kindred meaning or origin in the accus.; and verbs of *tasting* or *smelling of* take the thing in the accus.; as, *somniare somnium; ceram olēre.*

4. Other neuters are used transitively to express a *transitive notion* combined with their own proper notion; as, *sitire honores; idem gloriatur; multa peccat.*

RULE XXVI.—Verbs of *asking, teaching, clothing*, and *concealing*, may have *two accus.*, one of the *person* and another of the *thing;* as,—*quis musicam docuit Epaminondam? nihil nos cēlat.*

Obs. Very frequently (and with some verbs *always*) either the *person* or the *thing* is governed by a *preposition;* such verbs are, *peto, postulo, quæro*, &c.

RULE XXVII.—Transitive verbs that take *two nominatives* in the passive, take *two accus.* in the active; as,—*Mesopotamiam fertilem efficit Euphrates.*

Obs 1. One accus. is then in a sort of apposition to the other.

2. Such verbs are verbs of *calling, appointing* to an office, *considering*, &c., together with *facio, efficio, reddo*, &c.

3. *Facio* and *efficio* often take *ut* instead of the second accus.; as, *fac ut sciam*, &c.

RULE XXVIII.—A noun of *time*, in answer to the question *when?* is put in the *ablat.;* in answer to *how long?* in the *accus.;* as,—*auctumno,* (in the autumn;) *solis occasu. Ager multos annos quievit.*

Obs. 1. The time *in* or *within which* is expressed by *inter, intra,* or by the *ablat.*

2. The time *how long before? how long after?* is expressed by the *ablat.*

3. A *point* or *space* of *future* time *for* which any arrangement is now made, is expressed by *in* with the *accus.;* as, *me invitavit* in posterum diem.

4. The *exact* time at which a thing is to be done, is expressed by *ad* with the *accus.;* as, *solvêre ad Græcas calendas.*

5. *Abhinc* (ago) of *past time,* is joined to the *accus.* or *ablat.;* as, *abhinc annos* (or *annis*) *quatuor.*

6. Natus (born) takes the *accus.* of time, and expresses *at such an age, so many years old;* as, *tres annos natus.*

RULE XXIX.—The town *at which* a thing is done, if a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declens., is put in the *genit.;* if not, in the *ablat.;* as,—*vixi Romæ, Tarenti, Athenis, Gabiis, Tibŭre,* &c.

RULE XXX.—In answer to *whither?* the place is put in the *accus.;* in answer to *whence?* in the *ablat.;* as, —*legati* Athenas *missi sunt; fugit* Tarquinios Corintho.

Obs. 1. These rules apply only to the names of *towns* and *small islands.* Before other words *prepositions* are used; and before *these* when the name has an *adjective.*

2. *Urbs, oppidum, locus,* in apposition to the name of a town in the *genit.,* stands in the *ablat.*

RULE XXXI.—*Local space* is expressed by the *accus.,* sometimes by the *ablat.;* as,—*tridui* viam *processit;* bidui *abest,* (*iter* understood.)

RULE XXXII.—*Domus* and *rus,* like names of towns, are used with verbs of motion without prepositions; as, —*domum revertitur; manet domi; vivit rure* or *ruri; abiit rus;* &c.

Obs. *Humi, belli,* and *militiæ,* are used in the *genit.,* with verbs of motion and rest; as, *humi jacêre: domi et militiæ,* "at home and abroad."

RULE XXXIII.—The ablat. is used to express the

thing *with which*, and often the manner *how*, and the cause *why*; as,—*Cornibus tauri se tutantur.*

RULE XXXIV.—The *price* for which a thing is *bought, sold, valued*, or *done*, is put in the *ablat.*; as,—viginti talentis *unam orationem Isocrates vendidit.*

Obs. 1. *Magno, permagno, parvo, minimo, plurimo, nimio, vili*, stand in the *ablat.*, to express the *price, pretio* being understood.

2. *Tanti, quanti*, (and their compounds,) *pluris* and *minoris*, always stand in the *genit*

3. The substantives *flocci, nauci, nihili, pili*, &c., stand in the *genit.*, after verbs of *valuing*.

RULE XXXV.—Verbs of *abounding, filling, loading*, &c., and their opposites, such as verbs of *wanting, depriving of, emptying of*, govern the *ablat.*

Obs. Egeo and *indigeo* (especially the latter) govern the *genit.* also.

RULE XXXVI.—Some verbs of *freeing from, removing from, differing from, being at a distance from*, &c., are sometimes followed by the *ablat.*; as,—*leva me hoc onere*, &c.

Obs. But in prose they are generally followed by a *preposition.*

RULE XXXVII.—*Fungor, fruor, utor*, (with their compounds,) *potior, vescor, dignor, glorior*, take the *ablat.*, as does also *supersedeo.*

Obs. But *potior* takes the *genit.* when it means "to obtain sovereign power over."

RULE XXXVIII.—The *manner* or *cause*, and any word that restricts the meaning of another to a particular *part* of a thing spoken of, is put in the *ablat.*; as—*claudus fuit altero pede; scribo calamo*; &c.

RULE XXXIX.—Verbs that govern the *dative* in the active, are used *impersonally* in the passive; as, *gloriæ tuæ invidetur*, "your glory is envied;" *mihi creditur*, "I am beloved;" &c.

Obs. 1. The agent after a passive verb (when *a* or *ab* is not used) is sometimes put in the *dative*, and after the participle, in *dus.*

2. *Vapulo, vineo, fio*, having a *passive meaning*, have also a *passive construction*; as, *ab hoste* vĕnire; *a me fieri*; &c.

RULE XL.—Verbs that govern *two accus.* in the active, sometimes govern *one accus.* (that of the *object*) in the passive; as, *rogatus sententiam*, "being asked his opinion;" *longam indutus vestem*, "clothed in a long garment."

RULE XLI.—Passive verbs and participles are sometimes followed by an accus. of the *part particularly referred to;* as, *oblītus faciam; incensus animum; adversum fēmur ictus;* &c.

Obs. 1. In some particular constructions, the part referred to is put in the *genit.* or *ablat.*

2. In many general expressions, the passive voice is used *impersonally* where the active might be used in Latin, and *is* used in English; as, *ambulatum est* = we have walked. But the *personal* construction is far the more common.

III. USE OF THE TENSES.

1. There are in the active two tenses for each of the three divisions of time, past, present, and future; one expressing a complete, the other an incomplete action.

2. The passive has the same tenses with the same meaning, but they express the times and states of a condition of suffering.

3. The tenses of the present and past time, present and perfect, imperfect and pluperfect, have also a subjunctive mood; *scribam* and *scripserim; scriberem* and *scripsissem.* But neither the active nor the passive voice has a subjunctive of the future.

RULE XLII.—The *present* often has the force of the *perfect;* as, *jam pridem cupio*, "I have long been desiring;" *dudum a te literas exspectabam*, "I had long been expecting letters from thee."

RULE XLIII.—In animated narrative, the *past* is often described by the *present;* as, *subito* edicunt *consules, ut ad suum vestitum senatores* redirent, "the consuls

suddenly published an edict, that the senators should return to their usual dress."

RULE XLIV.—A *present* tense after *relatives*, or *where, if, as long as*, &c., is generally expressed by the *future;* as, *quum Tullius rure* redierit, mittam *eum ad te*, "when Tullius returns from the country, I will send him to you."

RULE XLV.—The *perf. subjunctive* (as well as the *present*) is used as an *imperative;* as, *quod dubitas, ne feceris*, "what you have doubts about, do not do."

RULE XLVI.—The *future* is sometimes used for the imperative; as, *si quid acciderit novi*, facies *ut sciam*, "if any thing new happens, you will let me know (= let me know.)"

RULE XLVII.—The complete rule respecting the succession of tenses, is this: The tenses of the present and future, i. e., the present, perfect, (in its proper sense,) and the two futures, are followed by the tenses of the present, i. e., by the present and perfect subjunctive; and the tenses of the past, i. e., the imperfect, pluperfect, and historical perfect, are followed by the tenses of the past, i. e., by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. (Z.)

IV. OF THE MOODS.

1. THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XLVIII.—The indicative is used in every proposition which declares a fact; as, *ambulat, scribis, credo*, &c.

Obs. 1. *Oportet, necesse est, convenit, potest; par, æquum, debeo*, &c., are put in the indicative of past time, to express that something should have been done, which in fact has not been done; as, *hoc facere debebas* "thou shouldst *have* done this."

2. With the participles in *rus* and *dus*, the indicative of *sum* in past time is more commonly used than the subjunctive; as, *hæc via tibi ingrediendæ erat*, "this path should have been taken by thee."

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE XLIX.—The subjunctive is used when a proposition is stated as possible or desirable, or as contingent and dependent.

Obs. 1. The present and perfect subjunctive are used of a case supposed, or a supposition granted; as, *Dixerit Epicurus*, "grant that Epicurus has said."

2. The pres. and perf. subjunc. are used to *soften an assertion* or *statement*; as, *hoc sine ulla dubitatione confirmaverim*, "this I would assert without any hesitation."

3. The pres. and perf. subjunc. are used with questions which imply *a doubt* respecting the *probability* or *propriety* of an action; as, *quis hoc facere ausit?* "who would dare to do this?"

4. The pres. and perf. subjunc. are also used as a softened imperative, to express *a precept*, *a wish*, *a request*, or with *ne*, *a prohibition*; as, *emas quod necesse est*, "buy what is necessary;" *ne credas*, *ne crediderís*, "believe not."

5 The conjunctions *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quominus*, which express a purpose, object, or result, govern a subjunctive; as, *edimus ut vivamus, non vivimus ut edamus; nil tam difficile est quin possit investigari*; &c.

6. All interrogative words take a subjunc. when they are dependent upon some other verb or proposition; as, *quis sit? nescio quis sit. Dubium est utrum horum verum sit*, "it is doubtful which of these two things is true."

7. Comparatives with *quam qui* in all its cases, require the subjunc.

8. Indefinite general expressions, with the relative, such as *est*, *sunt*, *reperiuntur*, *tempus fuit*, &c., when they do not refer to individuals, require the subjunc.; as, *sunt qui putent*; inventi sunt multi, *qui parati essent*, &c.

9. The imperf. and pluperf. subj. are used in a narrative after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as, *quemcumque lictor prehendisset*, tribunus mitti jubebat, "whomsoever the lictor had seized, the tribune ordered to be let go."

Oratio obliqua.

RULE L.—Oblique narration is when the speech of another is reported in the third person. The proposition which was in the indicative, is then put in the infinitive mood, and clauses connected by relatives and particles, are put in the subjunctive; as, *Cicero dicebat* tria esse omnino genera quæ in disceptationem cadere possint; quid fiat, factum, futurumve sit,—"Cicero used to say, that there were only three kinds

of questions that could fall into controversy; what was doing, what had been done, and what would happen."

RULE LI.—(1.) *Si, nisi, etsi, tametsi,* &c., require the subjunctive when the verb is in the imperfect or pluperfect. If doubt is expressed, they take the present subjunctive; otherwise the indicative.

(2.) *Quamvis, licet* and ut ("although") take a subjunctive.

(3.) *Tanquam, quasi, ac si* ("just as if") and *dummodo,* ("provided only") take a subjunctive.

(4.) *Quod, quia, quoniam, quandoquidem,* take a subjunctive when they express *the sentiment or language of another,* and not of the writer; as, *Socrates accusatus est,* quod corrumperet juventutem, "Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he corrupted youth."

(5.) *Antequam* and *priusquam* take commonly the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive; also, the present and perfect subjunctive.

(6.) *Dum, donec,* and *quoad,* signifying "until," have the subjunctive, if they refer to an object to be attained; as, *expecta dum veniam,* "wait till I come."

(7.) *Quum,* when it signifies "since" and "although," takes the subjunctive.

(8.) *Quum,* "when," requires the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, if the events described depend on each other; so that in English the participle may be used; as, *Alexander,* quum interemisset *Clitum, vix manus a se abstinuit,* "Alexander, having killed Clitus, hardly kept his hands from himself."

3. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. The shorter form of the imperative (*scribe*, &c.) expresses a command, an exhortation, and a wish. The longer form (*scribito*, &c.) is used only for command, and chiefly in the wording of laws.

2. With the imperative, *not* must be rendered by *ne*, and *nor* by *neve*.

4. INFINITIVE MOOD.

RULE LII.—A verb which is the subject of another verb, must be in the infinitive mood, and is considered as of the neuter gender.

RULE LIII.—A verb which is the object of another verb, must be in the infinitive; as, *volo hoc dicere*, "I wish to say this."

RULE LIV.—The infinitive mood takes before it not the nominative, but the accusative.

RULE LV.—Many sentences that in English are joined to a verb by the conjunction "*that*," are expressed in Latin by the accusative and infinitive.

RULE LVI.—The accusative with the infinitive follows verbs (*sentiendi et declarandi*) of *feeling*, *knowing*, *wishing*, *hearing*, *believing*, *thinking*, &c.; and such expressions as it is *certain*, *manifest*, *true*, &c.

RULE LVII.—The infinitive is often used in narrative for the present and imperfect indicative. This is called the *historical infinitive*.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVE.

Gerunds are *verbal substantives*, with the power of *governing* what belongs to the other parts of the verb.

The Gerundive, or *participle in dus*, is nearly allied

to the gerund. Its meaning is *passive*, denoting *necessity*, fitness, or something intended; what *must*, *should*, or *is to be done*.

RULE LVIII.—When the verb does not govern the *accusative*, the participle in *dus* is not used in agreement with its substantive; as, *parcendum est inimicis*, "we must spare our enemies."

PARTICIPLES.

The participle expresses the action of the verb, and governs the same cases. It agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

RULE LIX.—The participle of the *future in rus* often expresses the *purpose* with which a person acts; as, *Alexander ad Jovem Hammonem pergit* consulturus *de origine suâ*.

RULE LX.—The *participle in dus* often expresses the *end* or *purpose* for which a thing is done; as, *Rex Harpago Cyrum* occidendum *tradidit*,—"the king gave Cyrus to Harpagus, to-be-put-to death."

Obs. 1. This is especially the case after *curare* (to *cause* a thing to be done) and verbs of *giving*, *receiving*, *lending*, *undertaking*; as, *faciendum curare*, "to have a thing made."

☞ No Latin verb (except the *deponents* and *neuter-passives*) has a participle of the *perfect active*.

Obs. 2. Hence this partic. is expressed by the (passive) *past partic.* put absolutely, or by *quum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf. subjunc.*; as, *relicto fratre*, or *quum reliquisset fratrem*.

RULE LXI.—When a participle does not refer to a noun already governed or governing in the sentence, it is *put in the ablative* in agreement with its own *noun*.

Obs. 1. This construction is called the *ablat. absolute*.

2. When the partic. of an ablat. absol. is "*being*," it is omitted in Latin, and *two substantives* or a *substant.* and an *adject.* are put together in the *ablat.*; as, *Cicerone consule*; *Caio invito*; *me duce*; &c.

SUPINES.

RULE LXII.—The supine in *um* (active) follows verbs of *motion*, to express the object; as, *cubitum ire; Philippus, quum spectatum ludos iret, juxta theatrum occisus est.*

RULE LXIII.—The supine in *u* (virtually, though not really *passive*) follows a few adjectives; as, *honestus, turpis, jucundus, facilis*, &c., and the substantives *fas, nefas, opus.*

II. EXERCISES.

Exercise 1.

In the first six exercises, the object of which is to try the pupil's readiness and accuracy in forming and translating the tenses of the Latin Verb, the meaning of the verbs used is to be learned from the corresponding English Exercise. Wherever the conjugation is not told at once by the termination, it is marked by an added numeral.

☞ **In the notes, S. refers to the Questions on Latin Syntax at the end of the volume: C. to the Cautions: Syn. to the Synonymes.**

Sentences to which * is prefixed are not to be translated literally.

a. Araturus est. b. Juraverant. c. Migremus, (1.) d. Silētis, (2.) e. Nocuisses, (2.) f. Manendi, (2.) g. Quærent, (3.) h. Metuant, (3.) i. Venīmus. k. Serviant, (4.) l. Sitītis, (4.) m. Tonabat. n. Ego vituperabo. o. Tu laudaveris. p. Rideat. q. Nos cadĭmus. r. Vos stetissetis.[1] s. Illi dormiebant, (4.) t. Pater doceat. u. Filius discet, (3.) v. Puella canat, (3.) w. Patres dilĭgunt. x. Filii gaudent, (2.) y. Puellæ saltaverunt.

a. We should have ploughed. b. Let him swear. c. They had removed. d. I will be silent. e. They will hurt. f. Ye will remain. g. Seek. h. Let him fear. i. They are come. k. They would-have-been-slaves. l. He is thirsty. m. It thunders. n. They were blaming. o. We must praise virtue.[2] p. They will laugh. q. Ye were falling. r. They were standing. s. He will sleep. t. The fathers will teach. u. Let the sons learn. v. The girls were singing. w. Let the fathers love. x. The son will rejoice. y. Let the girls dance.

[1] *From* stare. [2] Virtus, *g.* virtutis. S. 163.

Exercise 2.

a. Ludendum est,[1] (3.) b. Cantabitis. c. Stupuissent, (2) d. Vivant, (3.) e. Nos postulabimus. f. Detis, (1.) g. Accipiant, (3.) h. Jubebo. i. Parendum est, (2.) k. Nē recūsa. l. Mater nutrit. m. Accipitres[3] rapiebant, (3.) n. Lupus ululaverat. o. Equi hinniebant, (4.) p. Asini rudunt. q. Aquila volat, (1.) r. Ranæ natavissent. s. Nos patres senescīmus. t. Filii adolescebant. u. Illi pueri garriebant, (4.) v. Arbŏres crescunt.

a. Ye are playing. b. Let us sing. c. They are astounded. d. They will live. e. They would have demanded. f. Of giving. g. Ye were receiving. h. He will order. i. He will obey. k. He will have refused. l. The earth will nourish. m. Let the hawk snatch. n. The wolf will howl. o. The horses will neigh. p. The ass was braying. q. The eagles will have flown. r. A frog was swimming. s. My father was growing-old. t. Ye are growing-up. u. The boys chatter. v. The tree was growing.

[1] S. 164. [2] Stupēre, to be astounded. [3] Nom. Accipiter.

Exercise 3.

a. Clamabas. b. Certabimus. c. Respondebis. d. Fulgebit. e. Plaudebat, (3.) f. Pingant, (3.) g. Obedient, (4.) h. Jacient, (3.) i. Aqua fluebat, (3.) k. Arēna urebat, (3.) l. Aquilæ rapient, (3.) m. Aves volabunt. n. Amīci veniebant, (4.) o. Famuli serviebant, (4.) p. Agricŏlæ araturi sunt. q. Cantandum est. r. Vos nautæ navigabitis. s. Illi viri ridebant, (2.) t. Non est garriendum, (4.) u. Lupi ululabant.

a. Ye were crying-out. b. (We) should not contend.[1] c. They answer. d. The moon was shining. e. Let the boys clap, (= applaud.) f. The boys will paint. g. Let a good boy obey. h. Let them throw. i. The waters will flow. k. The fire will burn, (*trans.*) l. Ye eagles are snatching. m. Let the birds fly. n. My friend will

come. o. The domestics will perform-their-service. p. The husbandman would have ploughed. q. The poet will have sung. r. The sailor will sail. s. Do not laugh. t. Boys will chatter. u. Of howling.

[1] S. 164.

Exercise 4.

a. Feminæ nebant. b. Viri pugnabitis. c. Speravisset. d. Tu metuebas. e. Ille fidebat. f. Puer ille ridebit. g. Puellæ plorabunt. h. Aurum illud micat, (1.) i. Pueri peccaverant. k. Vos puellæ ludētis. l. Patres jubebunt. m. Filiæ pareant. n. Hoc argentum splendebit. o. Discipuli non discebant. p. Illæ matres nutrient. q. Illa metalla fulgebant. r. Hi omnes current. s. Hæ aves cantillabant. t. Hæc membra dolebant.

a. The woman will spin. b. Do not fight. c. Ye were hoping. d. (We) must not fear. e. We must be-confident. f. Let the boy laugh. g. Those boys cried. h. Let that gold shine. i. Let not the boy do wrong. k. For the sake (*causâ*) of playing. l. Let the fathers order. m. To obey. n. This silver was shining. o. Let the pupils learn. p. That mother was nourishing. q. That metal was shining. r. These boys will run. s. This bird was trilling. t. This limb is-in-pain.

Exercise 5.

a. Hic liber delectabit. b. Gloria illa durabit. c. Hæc stella occĭdet. d. Bellum illud nocebit. e. Nos magistri erudiemus, (4.) f. Vos ministri venietis, (4.) g. Hi fabri cudent, (3.) h. Ager meus virebit. i. Sententia mea valebit. k. Auxilium meum juvabit. l. Tu tiro disces. m. Leo sæviet, (4.) n. Pavo ille superbiet, (4.) o. Ego præceptor vetabo. p. Vos oratores dicetis. q. Hic custos custodiet, (4.) r. Forma tua placebit. s. Animus tuus gaudebit. t. Brachium tuum vincet.

a. These books will delight. b. Thy glory will last.

c. Will not[1] these stars set? d. That war had hurt. e. Your teacher will teach. f. My servant was coming. g. Let that smith forge. h. Will not[1] my fields grow-green? i. My opinions will prevail. k. My auxiliaries will help. l. These beginners will learn. m. The lion was raging. n. These peacocks will be-proud. o. Has not[1] the teacher forbidden? p. That orator had spoken. q. These guards will guard. r. You will please by your beauty. s. My mind was rejoicing. t. He shall be conquered by my arm.

[1] Nonnē: *to be the first word.*

Exercise 6.

a. Rex imperabit. b. Regina regnabit. c. Hæ leges non semper valebunt. d. Duces nostri fortiter pugnabunt. e. Non semper vivemus. f. Mox rosæ florebunt. g. Vos sorores vigilabitis. h. Nos fratres dormiemus. i. Uxor tua narrabit. k. Tu marītus auscultabis. l. Miles sitiet et esuriet, (4.) m. Pedites nostri fugient, (3.) n. Equites vestri manebunt. o. Hic mons frigebit. p. Vallis illa tepebit. q. Dentes mei dolebunt. r. Tu homō sæpe peccabis. s. Hi ordĭnes cadent.

a. The kings will command. b. The queen was reigning. c. This law will not always be-in-force. d. Our general fought bravely. e. Will[1] you live forever? [No.] f. Your roses are-in-flower. g. My sister was-awake. h. My brother was-sleeping. i. Our wives had related. k. My husband was listening. l. The soldiers are-thirsty and hungry. m. The foot-soldier was-flying. n. Let the horse-soldier remain. o. These mountains are-cold. p. The valleys will be-warm. q. My teeth ache.[2] r. The man had often sinned. s. This row[3] was falling.

[1] Num: S. 46. [2] Dolēre, *to be in pain.*
[3] What is the nom. from which ordin-es comes?

Exercise 7.

Mater laudabat filiam. Agricŏla arat agrum. Soror fratrem diligit. Accipies hodie nuntium. Piscis natat

per aquam. Puella nebat fila. Columba metuit accipitrem. Nauta navigabat per undas. Aves per aërem volabant. Hic homo postulabit pecuniam. Nos præceptores erudiemus pueros. Vos discipuli discetis pensa vestra. Faber cudit metallum. Vulpes timet leones. Ægyptii canem et felem colebant ut deos. Equites volabant in hostes. Silvæ decŏrant montes. Equi currunt per silvas et agros. Cervus descendit in vallem.

[See S. 16. Learn Adverbs of past time, p. 179.]

It is certain that[1] my father will write the letter. We have received letters to-day. It is manifest that he is a moneyed man, (*say*, that the man is moneyed.) It is plain that[1] the sailors are steering the vessel to our bank. The father and mother educate their children. Who will relate a tale to us? The Greeks and Romans worshipped[2] many gods. The husbandmen are going to plough[3] the field. The mountains are adorned with woods. The daughter was lately praised by her mother. The letter was written by me three-days-ago. Then I was writing: now I am relating a tale to my children. It is certain that[1] the letter was written yesterday. The descent into the valley is easy. Is not[4] the descent into the wood easy? The sailor directed (us) to steer[5] the ship hither. The fox is going to descend into the valley.

[1] S. 16. [2] *Imperfect*, because a *habit* is expressed. [3] C. 37.
[4] Nonnĕ. [5] That (*ut*) we should steer, (*imperf. subj.*)

Exercise 8. (*See* S. 44.)

Horti nostri multos flores habent. Tu bonam historiam narrabis. Heri per urbem ambulabamus. Boni mores puerum decŏrant. Pater tuus te vituperabit, meque laudabit. Sæpe stulti homines se fallunt. Quis nos vocabit? Quid cogitas aut quid times? Quid vos offendet? Tune illum audies? Egone hunc agrum emam, aut domum illam?[1] Hanc tu habebis pecuniam. Hos bonos pueros amamus, malos illos fugiemus. Has terras possidemus illas expugnabimus.

The trees blossom in the spring. The trees are-coming-into-blossom. The father is going-to-blame his son. Who will tell us this tale? Let us fly-from bad habits. This hope deceived me. The buyer of this little-garden will be deceived. What houses and what fields does he possess? The ill-humored old-man is blaming his slave. May fortune favor[3] my undertakings. It is certain that[3] my expectation has deceived me. What war are the kings going-to-begin? The Romans will have begun a great task. Will you not[4] relate to us the taking of that city? What do you see? Whom are you going to send? I will irrigate my little-garden with fountains.

[1] Observe that this is not a double question; the meaning is not *which of the two* shall I buy? but, shall I buy *either*?
[2] Appendix I. [3] S. 16. [4] Nonnē.

Exercise 9.

Galli Romam expugnaverunt, (-ēre,[1]) Romani Corinthum. Migravimus per terras et urbes. Multam postulavisti (postulasti) pecuniam. Quos agros aravistis (arastis)? Hos an illos? Milites juraverunt sacramentum. Laborem nostrum finivimus. Præceptores pueros erudiverunt. Vos canes tecta nostra custodivistis. Bellum sæviit per Germaniam. Dormivistine, an vigilasti? Dormivi. Equus hinnivit, rudivit (3) asinus. Quid cupiisti? Equites montem petiverunt, pedites hostem lacessivēre.

[1] The meaning of (-ēre) is, that *expugnavēre* is another form of that person and tense.

Have you praised or[1] blamed this man? I have neither praised nor blamed (him.) What nations[2] conquered Italy? They were laying-waste the fields of the Gauls. The city being taken, they are laying-waste the fields. When[3] did you finish your labor? Yesterday. It is certain that[4] the husbandman has finished his labors. It is true[4] that the fields have been laid waste by[5] the Gauls. Have[6] you obeyed? What have you sought for? The Tarentines called Pyrrhus into Italy. The general has acted-proudly against the enemy, (*pl.*) We have sung this song to-day on (*say* with) the lyre. The wolf was tearing the sheep

-to-pieces.[7] We ought[8] to encounter death itself for (*pro* abl.) our country.

[1] S. 52. [2] Populus. [3] P. 172, 4. [4] S. 16. [5] S. 5. [6] S. 44. [7] The hyphens so placed mean that *tear-to-pieces* is to be translated by one verb. [8] S. 61.

Exercise 10.

Pluperfect. (☞ *v* is often dropped from perf., and *v* or *ve* from pluperf.)

Tune nomen meum nuncupaveras (-aras)? Poëta carmĭna sua recitaverat. Hi juvenes magnam spem excitaverant. Corpŏra nostra curaveramus. Tempus illud exspectaveratis. Hic nuntius adventum tuum nuntiaverat. Equitatus Romanus Gallos lacessiverat. Hic adspectus sensus nostros turbaverat. Per dies noctesque dormiveratis. Milites per agros sævierant. Quid tu cupiveras? Ego aurum quæsieram. Nos res nostras repetiveramus.

Who has mentioned our names? I will ask who[1] has mentioned our names. Have you[2] taken-care-of the body? I will ask, whether[3] the boy has strengthened (*curare*) his body with food. The body must be taken-care-of.[4] Those times had disturbed our affairs. Who had cured those boys? I will ask, who[1] cured those boys? Your labors must be ended.[4] I had ended my labors yesterday. Have not the horses neighed?[5] Are not those asses braying? That- ass *-of-yours*[6] is braying. The enemy (*plur.*) have not watched the post. I had heard those songs. The motions are impeded. We had impeded your motions. *Though a great hope had been raised,[7] (*partic.* S. 168,) we are deceived. I had not-yet sent the slave. I will ask who[1] sent the slave.

[1] S. 49. [2] S. 44. [3] S. 46. [4] S. 163. [5] S. 45. [6] Iote. [7] Say: '*a great hope having been raised.*'

Exercise 11.

[The *fut. perf.* is to be rendered by the English *present* or *perfect*, when the verb of the principal sentence is in the *future*. See S. 205, 206.]

Medicus morbum hodie, sanaverit (-arit). Ego nunquam factum tuum probavero (-aro). Faciam, quod imperaveris

(-aris). Quando in urbem vestram migraverimus, lætas dies agemus. Respondebimus ad id, quod interrogaveritis. Quando hunc librum finieris? Cras. Magnam gloriam acquisiveritis, si libros vestros bene educaveritis. Is qui corpus suum bene vestierit, frigus non sentiet. Res nostras servabimus, si tecta nostra bene munierimus. Ii pueri, qui lectiones suas finierint, præmia accipient.

Will you not[1] reply to what[2] I ask (you)? If I ask[3] you something, will you not[1] answer? I will wait, till[4] you come. Let him who has received[5] a prize, learn well. If you learn[6] well, you shall receive a prize. *When our body is well clothed,[7] we shall not feel the cold. The town must be fortified.[8] Let us spend happy days. We must ask the boys.[8] I will come, when I have taken[9] care of my body. *When our houses are well protected,[7] (*partic.*,) we must not fear.[10] Has your father forbidden[11] (it)? [No.] We must rub the body.[8] Anger must be tamed.[8] Do not[12] drink much[13] wine.

[1] S. 45. [2] *Say;* to those things which (ad ea quæ) I *shall-have-asked* you. [3] Say; *shall have asked.* [4] S. 249. [5] *Shall have received.* [6] *Shall have learned.* [7] S. 168. [8] S. 163. [9] Say; *shall have-taken-care-of.* [10] S. 164. [11] S. 46. [12] S. 37. [13] S. 73.

Exercise 12.

[Fut. perf. is often translated by English present or perfect.]

Diligentia tua laborem patris valde adjūvit. Miseria matris valde moverat animum filiæ. Si Cornelii frater te viderit, statim curret ad te. Quando remedium morbi reperero! Ad primam horam diei naves usque ad introĭtum magni portûs pervenerunt. Id nos comperīmus et vos vidistis. Hostes obsederant portas urbis nostræ, quum tu advenisti. Milites gladios jam acuerunt. Si tu hanc pecuniam solveris, accipies aliam; nihil adhuc solvisti. Arcem urbis fortiter defendīmus. Num aquam gelidam bibisti? Minime; sed vinum bibi. Tu autem, quid edisti? Si patriæ hostem fortiter vicerimus, bene fecerimus.

I have not-yet[1] seen my father and mother. Why are[2] the soldiers of our army come? Have[3] you already sharp-

oned this knife? I will ask whether[4] he has sharpened that knife. That- knife -of-yours[5] must be sharpened. I have sharpened the knives myself.[5] Cicero, that[6] great orator, defended many accused-persons. Scipio conquered Hannibal at[7] Zama, and put-an-end-to the second Punic war. You shall receive two- oboli -a-piece.[8] Those who learn[9] well shall receive an- obolus -a-piece.[8] The boys, having received[10] two- oboli -a-piece,[8] will rejoice. We had scarcely reached the town, when the enemy laid-siege to it. After the Prætor had mounted[11] the tribunal, the judges acquitted the accused-person. Where did you find this book? I will ask him where[12] he found[13] that book. I will ask, whether he has lighted[14] the torch.

[1] Nondum. [2] What tense is *I am come?* C. 12. [3] S. 44. [4] S. 46.
[5] Iote. [6] S. 189. [7] S. 159. [8] C. 39. [9] S. 205. [10] S. 176.
[11] S. 251. [12] S. 49. [13] Syn. 1. [14] Syn. 2.

Exercise 13.

[What case does *credo* govern? App. I.]

Quis tibi hunc librum, hanc pennam, hoc atramentum dedit? Imperator exercitui suo magna auxilia addiderat. Ciceronem, quum in forum descendit, magna populi multitudo circumdĕdit. Sacerdos apud aram stetit, et victimam cecīdit Bene fecerit is, qui amico auxilium præstiterit. Pastor fugavit lupum, qui ovem unam momorderat. Facere debes, quod spopondisti. Quid vobis istæ responderunt mulieres? Num cecīdit aliquis? Sol post montes illos in mare occīdit. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occīdit. Cur incertæ spei credidisti? Frater sorori crediderat, soror fratri. Si bene didiceris linguam Latinam, multa alia disces facilius. Sæpe, rosam qui tetigit, sensit aculeos. Multi philosŏphi verum non attigerunt.

The body must[1] be well clothed, *that*[2] we may *not* feel the cold. Has any-one[3] afforded you assistance? *When the sun sets[4] (*partic.*), our labors must be ended.[1] *Having touched the rose,[5] I felt its thorn. When will the sun set to-day? Has not[6] the priest slain the victim? The priest, having slain[6] the victim, sprinkled the altar with its blood. My brother[7] is not believed. We must not believe[8] Man-

lius's brothers. We have given roses and fruit to the boy and the girl. Who has performed that service for us? After[9] he had performed that service for us, he went-away. I will ask who[10] performed me that service. The wolf, which the shepherds drove-away, had bitten two or three sheep. Who has cut-down this tree? I asked who[10] cut-down that tree. Those trees must be cut down.[1] You will be safe nowhere. You will never be safe. I will give you twelve verses to be learned-by-heart.[11] How many verses am I to learn-by-heart?[12] It is uncertain, how-many[10] there were (*of them.*) No wise man[13] trusts uncertain fortune. The arrow did not hit its mark. How many sheep have been killed by the wolf? I will ask how-many[10] sheep the wolf has bitten. I will wait till[14] you answer me. After[9] the wolf had bitten three sheep, he was driven-away by the shepherds. How many arrows have you?

[1] S. 163. [2] S. 18. [3] Num quis; *or* an quisquam. [4] S. 168.
[5] S. 176. [6] S. 45. [7] S. 134, 135. [8] S. 166. [9] S. 251.
[10] S. 49. [11] S. 172. [12] *Are to-be-learned-by-heart by me.*
[13] Nemo sapiens. Verbs of trusting govern the *dat.* [14] S. 249.

Exercise 14.

[*Mihi, tibi, sibi,* may sometimes be rendered '*my*,' '*your*,' '*his*,' or '*his own*.']

Hanc epistolam meâ manu scripsi. Num glupsisti poma, quæ in horto carpsimus? Hic puer pecuniam sumpsit a patre, eamque inter pauperes distribuit. Pauci milites in acie remanserant. Quid dixisti? Quis vobis futurum prædixit? Cæsar milites in aciem eduxerat. Hic homo me torvo vultu adspexit. Imperator victus ipse sibi pectus gladio transfixit. Athenienses Socratis damnati pedem ferro vinxerunt. Romani provincias suas duro imperio rexerunt. Nauta quidam Britannicus nuper in oceăno insulam detexit. Nuntius ille valde auxerat formidinem. Veteres poëtæ tempora sibi lauru cinxerunt. Poëtæ quidam pulchras finxerunt imagines. Apelles pinxit Alexandrum. Telum hostis aurem strinxit militis, qui ipse gladium non strinxerat.

I had written the letter with my own hand, (S. 177). It is certain that[1] the letter was written with his own hand.

It remains that[1] we should write letters with our own[2] hands Have you plucked a leaf from (*ex*) this tree? How-much money[4] have you spent on (*in*) your work? If[5] you do this, you will spend considerably[6] more[4] money. No-one would have foretold us[7] this calamity. We had remained in the city. Who has led you this road (*abl.*) into the city? We have fastened the picture to the wall with a nail. Cæsar had surrounded the town with a wall and foss. The horse-soldiers have drawn their swords. The horse-soldiers, having drawn[8] their swords, flew on (*in*) the enemy. The safety of the Roman people is at stake.[9] I will ask who[10] painted the picture. I will ask who found-out that-fraud -of-yours.

1 S. 16. 2 S. 17. 3 S. 177. 4 S. 73. 5 S. 214. 6 S. 202.
7 C. 13. 8 S. 176. 9 To be at stake, *agi. infin. pass.* 10 S. 49

Exercise 15.

[Of what two verbs is *fulsi* the perfect? (p. 170, V. p. 174.)]

Rex portas urbis clausit hostibus invadentibus. (*Dat.*) Totum cœlum in quatuor regiones divisimus: Orientem, Occidentem, Meridiem, Septentriones. Quando risistis in luctu amicorum? Multi populi senserunt virtutem Romanorum. Senatus Carthaginiensium legatos misit ad Romanos de captivis. Filia blandimentis et precibus patris animum flexit. Consiliis vestris fulsistis rempublicam. Nova lux civitati affulserit, ubi princeps ex terris hostium in urbem redierit. Sacerdos victimarum sanguine aram adspersit. Sagitta hæsit in clipeo. Illis diebus, ubi omnium rerum inopia oppidanos oppresserat, lutulentam aquam ex stagnis hauserunt, idque imperator jusserat. Aqua recessit ex agris. Procellæ concusserunt quercuum cacumina. Hannibal quum bellum in Italiâ gessit, multa tecta combussit. Consul copiarum ex pugnâ reliquias in unum locum contraxit, et classe trans mare in Italiam vexit. Quo loco vixisti?

Christian faith has opened heaven to many mortals. The commander-in-chief has divided his army into three parts. He was slain by the Gauls. There is no doubt, that[1] he is going to join battle[2] with the Romans. We

must[3] join battle with the Germans. The weight of its fruit (*pl.*) has bent-down the boughs of the tree. We have derived new hope from our changed circumstances. The besieged have propped-up their tottering walls with added works. Cicero crushed the Catilinarian conspiracy, which had shaken the whole city. * When a change of circumstances has taken-place,[4] (*partic.*,)[5] our plans should be changed.[2] * Of how great importance is it to me[6] that[7] the plans of the enemy *should*[8] be changed. * Of how great importance is it to the citizens,[6] to strengthen their tottering walls with works! The war waged by Hannibal drew after it a change of affairs in Italy. The remains of the forces must[3] be carried[9] in-ships (*abl.*) to Italy. I have often laughed-at the vanity of men. What[10] a multitude of men has flowed-together into the city!

[1] S. 19. [2] *To join battle with*, prœlium committere (mīs, miss) cum. [3] S. 163. [4] *Has been made.* [5] S. 168. [6] Quanti mea interest. S. 91. [7] S. 16. [8] C. 3. [9] Syn. 3. [10] C. 21.

Exercise 16.

[Perf. in ui.—See Syntax, Rules 13, 14.]

Num fores crepuerunt? Multi pauperes nunquam in molli cubili cubuerunt. Eques equum ferocem calcāri domuit et freno. Pedem dolentem manu fricui. Hominum illustrium lacunaria ebŏre micuerunt et auro. In sacris Cybĕlæ tympăna sonuerunt et cornua. Jupiter tonuit. Hoc vetui, illud jussi. Romani pueros exercuerunt acri militiâ. Sapientes poëtæ admiscuerunt utile dulci. Sæpe te monui, sed tu non audivisti. Cur non tacueras? Non diu Græci incultos mores majorum suorum retinuerunt. Pyrrhus Romanos terruit elephantis in aciem productis. Ver maria aperuit navigantibus. Cæsar togâ caput operuit, et ictibus mucronum se præbuit.

The flame has crackled on the hearth. We have laindown on (*in*) the soft grass. There was no-one, *but*[1] laydown on the soft grass. We have rubbed our tables with oil. On that night,[2] no star shone (in) the whole heaven. Ought[3] not[4] our desires to be restrained? Hills and valleys resounded with the cries of the combatants. Has it

thundered? What have you forbidden? We have rubbed our bodies with oil. We have exercised our bodies in (*abl.*) childish games. Fate has often mixed joy with sorrow. There is need of[5] a gentle reproof. I will present you with a book. Pity[6] the poor. *You will repent of your folly.[7] *It is of very great importance to you,[8] *that*[9] the city *should*[10] be fortified. An eagle flying on-high had terrified the timid doves. Will[11] a dove terrify an eagle? [No.] Some deserters have discovered the plans of the enemy, (*pl.*) · It is certain that[9] the plans of the enemy have been discovered by a certain deserter. I have[12] six doves. How-many doves have[12] you? It cannot be doubted, that[13] he pities the poor. There was need[5] of a much[14] gentler reproof.

[1] S. 32. [2] S. 143. [3] S. 164. [4] S. 45. [5] S. 79.
[6] S. 88. [7] S. 94. [8] S. 91. [9] S. 16. [10] C. 3.
[11] S. 46. [12] S. 114. [13] S. 19. [14] S. 202.

Exercise 17.

Græci et Romani veteres multos coluerunt deos. Socrates in carcere de immortalitate animi disseruit. In illo prœlio equites nostri audaciâ et virtute excelluerunt. Prudentiâ vestrâ patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. Romani gentibus fere omnibus tributa imposuerunt. Ex pugnâ Cannensi Pœni annŭlis aureis occisorum equitum Romanorum modios aliquot compleverunt. Eodem anno L. Mummius Corinthum, P. Scipio Carthaginem delevit (deleverunt.) Pater flevit de morte filii. Filia sub tiliâ nevit subtilia fila. Quid decrevistis? Decrevimus habitare in provinciâ. Has arbŏres meâ manu sevi. Quum mihi solatium misisti, flere jam desieram. Cur sprevisti munera a patre tibi promissa? Leo uno impĕtu prostravit tigridem. Hanc viam jumenta triverunt et homines.

Has not[1] my prudence snatched our country from (*e*) the hands of a tyrant? The boy is going-to-cultivate (C. 37) his[2] little-garden. He has spoken much (*multum*) about the nature of things. Who has distinguished-himself above[3] the rest in this contest? This disease has carried-off many men. I will inquire of the physician how-many[4] are dead

The state has erected a monument to the soldiers, who were slain in the battle. The wild cry of the soldiers filled the minds of the citizens with fear. May[5] I cultivate my field? Age has destroyed many monuments of ancient art. What hinders (us) *from[6] cultivating our garden? It remains, that[7] we should fly into the city. The girl has spun coarse threads. If the senate decrees,[8] the consuls will leave their provinces. I feel that[9] roses have[10] their[11] thorns. See that[12] you do not feel the thorns of the roses. Provided[13] that you do not feel the thorns, pluck your roses. Would-that[14] I had a little garden. My little-garden is considerably[15] bigger than my sister's. The[16] more beautiful a rose, the more thorns it has. Why did you not cease to laugh, when I begged you?

1 S. 45. 2 C. 1. 3 Pre. 4 S. 49. 5 S. 57. 6 S. 43.
7 S. 17. 8 *Shall have decreed.* 9 S. 16. 10 S. 114. 11 C. 1.
12 Vide nē, (*subj.*) 13 S. 241.* 14 S. 242. 15 S. 202. 16 S. 203.

Exercise 18.

Luna crescit et decrescit. Quando quiesces a laboribus tuis? Pueri pascebant oves in saltibus, quum lupus ex silvâ prorumpens terruit gregem, et matris ab ubĕre agnum rapuit. Ut quisque in juventute adsueverit, ita aget, quum ad senectutem pervenerit. Adulta vitia non facile evanescunt. Hanc legem quia non probabam, abolevi. Nosti (novisti) hunc hominem? Ignoscam fortasse, quum causam delicti cognovero. Sæpe concupiscimus id, quod nocebit. Quum tempus anni incaluit, terra flores et herbas edit. Magnum bellum exarsit inter Cæsarem et Pompejum, quorum uterque consulatum appetebat.

When the storms of war have cooled-down, the arts of peace revive. The shepherd feeds his flocks upon the hills: the husbandman tills his fields, and fears not invading-foes: the inhabitants-of-towns go about[1] their usual employments, and live secure[2] with opened gates. How-greatly shall we rejoice, when the concord of nations again restores[3] peace! But a long peace often corrupts the morals of a state. As-long-as[4] the Romans waged wars

with the neighboring cities and nations, they retained the manners of their forefathers: but after[5] they had subdued the world, they gave themselves up to luxury and wickedness.—*When arms are at rest,[6] the arts of peace begin to flourish. *It is of great importance to the state,[7] that[8] the anger of its citizens *should*[9] cool.—*It is of great importance to our state,[7] that[8] the manners of our forefathers should be preserved.[9] Who is there, who can deny,[10] that the manners of our forefathers should be preserved?[11] *When the harmony of its citizens is restored,[6] the state will begin to flourish. Did the queen write the letter with her own (S. 177) hand? The boy has lost his book. I have lost his book.

[1] *To go about a business*, operam dare negotio. [2] *To live secure*, securus agere, (vitam *understood*.) [3] *Shall have restored*. [4] (Quamdiu) quam diu. [5] S. 251. [6] S. 168. [7] S. 91. [8] S. 16. [9] C. 3. [10] S. 234. [11] S. 164.

Exercise 19.

Multi scriptorum Romanorum, quorum scripta exstant, magnam laudem meruerunt et rerum ac sententiarum copiâ et verborum elegantiâ. Inter illos excellit M. (Marcus) Tullius Cicero, cujus epistŏlas et orationes ceteræsque libros in scholis legimus. Huic omnes concedunt palmam eloquentiæ. Et vere orationes ejus delectant miro ingenii acumine, quo reorum innocentiam defendit, aut utilitatem legis alicujus demonstrat. In epistŏlis ad familiares scribit de rebus domesticis et publĭcis, modo ridens et jocabundus, modo in gravitatem ac severitatem compositus. Tres libros composuit de oratore, in quibus de arte oratoriâ dissĕrit. Perfecti oratoris imaginem in alio libro proposuit. In eis (iis) libris, quos de officiis scripsit, Marcum filium ad vitam honestam instituit.—T. (Titus) Livius non unius ævi aut belli aut hominis historiam descripsit, sed universam rerum Romanarum historiam ab origine gentis ad sua usque tempora deduxit. At illius non omnia scripta exstant.—C. (Caius) Julius Cæsar octo libris bellum Gallicum, tribus civīle narravit; et Gallico quidem totīus Galliæ civitates Romanorum imperio subjecit, civīli Pom-

peium devicit: utriusque belli rebus gestis nomen ejus inclaruit.

Distinguished poets lived in[1] the age of-Augustus. We have the writings of Virgilius,[2] Horatius, Ovidius,[3] and others. Asinius Pollio had invited Virgilius to the city, where he became-acquainted with[3] Mæcēnas[4] and Augustus. Virgilius recommended Horatius to Mæcēnas. So the one[5] flourished by the friendship of the other: one obliged the other. A long life did not fall-to-the-lot of either:[6] but posterity has bestowed- equal honors -upon them both.[7] Who would snatch[8] the palm from either this or that, or bestow- greater praise -upon any[9] Roman poet? Ovidius finished his life in exile on the Black Sea, because he had offended Augustus by his verses. He is distinguished for[3] the fertility of his genius and the beauty of his verses; but many of (*ex*) his writings displease[10] a modest and pure mind.—Who is there who can deny,[11] *that* great poets lived in the age of Augustus?—The poets who flourished in the age of Augustus, were much[12] more distinguished than (those) who lived afterwards.

[1] In what case does the *time-when* stand? [2] Proper names are given in their Latin forms. [3] C. 36. Is the prepos. used in English to be used after the Latin word, &c.? [4] Gen. ātis. [5] *The one—the other*, must each be translated by the proper case of *alter*. [6] Do *not-either*, by *neuter*, (neither.) [7] Uterque, *each* to be used, of course, in the *sing*. [8] S. 213. [9] p. 146. [10] Appendix I. [11] S. 234. [12] S. 202.

Exercise 20.

[Learn the declension of aloë, Anchises, Ænēas, poēma. Appendix II.—What is the Voc. of proper names in *ius*?—What is the Voc. mas. of *meus*?]

O benigne Deus, quam multa tibi debemus beneficia! Quod vivimus, quod valemus, quod ex agris fruges nobis proveniunt, quod lumine suo sol omnia collustrat et fovet, quod pluviam nubes in arva demittunt, quis hæc omnia regit et temperat, nisi Deus? Cui rerum natura paret, nisi Deo? Ergo, mi fili, Deum semper cole, eique pio animo habebis gratiam.

Quid fecisti, mi Carole?—Epitŏmen feci orationis ejus, quam heri legimus.—Num jam legisti Ovidii poëmata?—

Non legi.—Æneas, Venĕris et Anchisæ filius, patrem ex incendio Trojæ portavit humeris. Succus aloës amarus confirmat stomachum. Ulysses a Philoctēte (-â) sagittas postŭlabat, quas ab Hercule ille acceperat. Marce Tulli quantas calamitates reipublicæ vidisti!

Why are you crying, my[1] little brother? Who has *done you any wrong?—Who freed ancient Germany from the dominion of the Romans? Arminius: who conquered and destroyed Quintilius Varus in the Teutoburgian[2] wood. This man, one of Augustus's lieutenant-generals,[3] had treated the Germans proudly and unjustly. O Quintilius[4] Varus, how you deceived yourself! Those whom you despised,[5] destroyed your army and yourself.——If you answer[6] well to these questions, you shall receive praise. —Xerxes, king of the Persians, invaded Greece with an immense army: but the Greeks defeated this army by sea and land, at[7] the island of[8] Salamis, and at Platææ in Bœotia. Who found[9] this jewel? I have found a much[10] more beautiful jewel. Who can deny[11] that[12] the lieutenant-general has treated us unjustly?

[1] What is the voc. mas. of *meus?* (p. 147.) [2] Teutoburgensis. [3] A lieutenant-general of Augustus. [4] What is the voc. of a proper name in *ius?* [5] See Syn. 5. [6] *Shall have answered.* [7] S. 159. [8] S. 66.* [9] Syn. 1. [10] S. 202. [11] S. 213. [12] S. 19.

Exercise 21.

[Look at *ut*, *nē*, *quominus*, *quia*, in Appendix III.]

Cupio, ut factum meum probes. Docemus pueros, ut sapĕre discant, et bonis moribus animum imbuant. Edimus, ut vivamus, hoc est, ut vitam conservemus: at vos vivitis, ut edatis et bibatis. Cavebimus, ne superstitionem vestram augeamus, quæ prohibet, quominus ad veram rerum cognitionem perveniatis. Non dubitatis, quin parentibus tuis multum debeas, quo intelligas, quo jure illi a te obedientiam et pietatem postŭlent. Nescīmus, quæ mala nobis futuro tempore immineant. Dicas nobis, utrum præstet inimico ignoscere, an amicum etiam ultro lædere. Quum nemo sciat, quid quisque cogitet, caveamus, ne

temĕre cuiquam credamus. Amemus patriam, pareamus magistratibus, consulamus bonis, nutriamus pauperes! Quid faciam? Ne doleam, quum tanta me premat calamitas? Hoc dii bene vertant! Utinam nemo te impediat, quominus ad me venias! Quis credat illud, quod prorsus incredibile est? Metuo, ne vos hoc faciatis, aut illud non faciatis.

We wish that[1] you should always obey[2] your parents, and love your brothers and sisters. It often happens that[3] men commit atrocious crimes for-the-sake[4] of a small gain. The tiger is so cruel, that,[5] though[6] impelled by no hunger, it tears-to-pieces men and beasts. You will take care, *that*[7] you may *not* lead a miserable life through your own fault. Do you fear, that[8] we *shall betray* your secrets? I do not fear, that[8] you will not perform what you have promised. We learn the old languages, that[9] we may practise our judgment, and cultivate our minds. Who doubts that[10] *we ought to love even our enemies?[11] I will not prevent you from[12] calling-upon me every day. You shall tell me, how much[13] I owe you. I don't-know whether[14] he is awake or sleeping. We will ask ourselves first, what is-pleasing to the gods; then, what to-men. What shall we say, that we may prove our innocence? Take your arms, and fight for your country. May every one keep a pure conscience. It remains that[9] each man should keep his conscience pure. I have[15] a purĕ conscience. Balbus is no[16] wiser than (*quam*) Caius. My name is Marcus.[17]

[1] See S. 16, *note*. [2] App. I. [3] S. 17. [4] Causâ. [5] S. 17. [6] Etiam, *even*.
[7] *That—not*, nē, subj. [8] S. 22. [9] S. 17. [10] S. 19. [11] S. 163.
[12] S. 43. [13] S. 49. [14] S. 51. [15] S. 114. [16] Nihilo. S. 202.
[17] S. 113.

Exercise 22.

Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superaverit. Nemo dubitat, quin Romani omnes populos fortitudine præstiterint. Scisne, quando Scipio Africanus Carthaginem deleverit (delērit)? Videbimus, quid de consilio nostro censueritis. Quum iterum te con-

venero, dices mihi, quid legeris aut scripseris. Incertum est, quo tempore Dido Carthaginem condiderit. Quum neminem offenderimus, non timemus, ne quis nobis succenseat. Quum officia vestra feceritis, nemo vos vituperabit. Metuo, ne verum non dixeris, quum ceteri omnes contradicant. Narrabo vobis, quid audiverim, (audierim,) quidve viderim, ut omnes intelligatis, quanta vobis calamitas acciderit. Non omnes pueri sunt tam stulti, ut nihil curent, quid in moribus et literis profecerint, aut quomŏdo parentibus suis et præceptoribus placuerint.

These pupils are so industrious, that[1] they have never neglected to learn- their lines -by-heart. Who can doubt[2] that[3] the Greeks excelled the Romans in their intellectual-cultivation? We don't know, at what time Homer lived.[4] It is doubtful, whether[5] Clodius waylaid Milo, or the one[6] met the other on the road by chance: but it is not doubtful, that[3] a slave of Milo's killed Clodius. When you have read[7] our letter, you will know. I fear that[8] your father will not approve-of our plan. You will tell us (= tell us) your meaning, that[1] we may know, why[5] you have changed your plan. What am I to believe?[2] What am I not to believe? All (*pl.*) is so wonderful, that[1] I have not-yet ceased to doubt. *It was of very great importance to Caius,[9] that no-one should betray his plans.

[1] S. 17. [2] S. 213. [3] S. 19. [4] S. 49. [5] S. 51. Clodiusnŭ.
[6] Alter: followed by *alter* for *the other*. [7] *Shall have read*. [8] S. 22.
[9] S. 91. that no-one: *ne quis* with subj.

Exercise 23.

L. (Lucius) Sulla post victoriam, quam a Marianis partibus reportaverat, ita sæviebat, ut ingentem numerum civium trucidaret, et bona eorum venderet. Timebat enim, ne, si adversarii sui viverent, perpetuum sibi periculum imminēret. Vetuerat Pompeius, ne quis absens consulatum peteret. Eâ lege prohibebat, quominus Cæsar, quum in Galliâ bellum gereret et provinciam administraret, eam dignitatem obtineret. At Cæsar, non dubitans, quin magna

pars populi sibi faveret, et fretus legionibus suis, armis petere constituit, quod inimicorum invidia ei negabat.—Ideo te monui, ut intelligeres, quantopere saluti tuæ consulerem. Nisi tantopere vos amaremus, profecto non tantâ curâ ingenia vestra excoleremus. Si viveret Cicero, multum de moribus nostris rideret. Hunc librum vobis non darem, nisi scirem, quantum ex eo fructum pueri perciperent. Utinam omnes hunc librum legeretis, et præcepta ejus animis imprimeretis! (S. 242.)

While the Greeks were besieging Troy, a plague raged in the army with-such-violence,[1] that[2] it carried-off daily a great number of men and beasts. Wherefore[3] they consulted the oracle, by what offerings-of-atonement they should appease the wrath of the god. The priest answered, that (*ut*) Agamemnon, the leader of the Greeks, should restore *to Chryses, a priest of Apollo, his daughter who-had-been-violently-carried-off.[4] When Agamemnon refused (*imperf. subj.*) to do *this*,[5] Achilles, the son of Peleus and Thetis, pressed him *to comply-with[6] the will of the god, and deliver the Greeks from destruction. By this,[7] he so excited the anger of Agamemnon, that he took- Briseis -away from him by force. *The consequence was,[8] that Achilles for-a-long-time did not go-to-battle with the other Greeks, but kept his troops idle in their camp.——Would[9] that you always spoke the truth! Shall we not receive ten- oboli -a-piece? (C. 39.) *What is your name?[10] This (*ea*) only[11] is true virtue.

[1] Adeo. [2] S. 17. [3] Quamobrem, (*or* quam ob rem.)
[4] Say, *should restore his daughter violently-snatched-away from Chryses*, (dat.) &c.
[5] Translate 'this' by *quod*, and place it before the quum. Quod quum *instad of* quum &c. [6] *That he should comply* [7] Eâ re.
[8] *This brought-it-to-pass:* id effecit, ut, &c. [9] S. 242. *To speak the truth*, verum dicere [10] S. 113. [11] *Say:* at length, *demum*.

Exercise 24.

Philippus, Macedŏnum rex, quum diu consilia sua occultavisset, Græcos adeo decepit, ut, nihil ab eo timentes, summam ei potestatem concederent. Quod[1] quum fecissent, amissam libertatem armis recuperare sero decreverunt.

Vicit eos Philippus in pugnâ ad Chæronēam anno trecentesimo tricesimo octavo ante Christum natum.—Metuebamus, ne in periculum incidissetis, quam nihil audissemus, (audivissemus,) nec ubi, nec quando classem appulissetis. Si tertium diem exspectavisses, magnum periculum vitasses (vitavisses.) Non dubitabam, quin gratum tibi fecissem, quod[2] hunc tibi librum donassem. Nisi tu me rogasses, ut totam tibi darem pecuniam, partem ejus dedissem alii. Cæsar quum ex Galliâ veniens Rubicōnem trajecisset, Pompeius cum senatu aufūgit Brundusium. Utinam me heri convenisses, profecto hodie aliter egisses!

[1] A relative at the head of a principal sentence may be rendered by '*this*,' '*that*.'
[2] (That I had given =) *in* giving.

Miltiades would not have conquered the Persians in the battle of-Marathon,[1] *if*[2] he had *not* chosen a very-confined ground (*locus*) in-order-that[3] the enemy might not attack him at-once in front[4] and on his flanks. When[5] he had gained the victory, his grateful country placed a likeness of him in the portico, which they called Pœcĭle.—If[6] you had tamed your lusts, you would have avoided the hatred of many persons. You feared that[7] we should offend our friends: but we knew what (*qualis*) feelings they had[8] towards us. I did not know *what to do;[9] and I should have done very wrong, *if*[2] you had *not* warned me at the-right-time.[10] Had[11] you but defended me at-the-right-time,[10] what (*quantus*) dangers should I have escaped! When[5] Cæsar in[12] the forty-ninth year *before the birth of Christ[13] had driven Pompey out of Italy, he returned to[14] Rome and named himself[15] Dictator.

[1] Translate by adj. *Marathonius*. [2] *If not*, nisi, (*unless*) with *subj*. [3] Nē, (in order that—not) [4] In front, *a fronte*: on his flanks, *a latere*, (latus *side*.)
[5] S. 241. [6] S. 216. [7] S. 22. [8] S. 49. [9] *What I should do*.
[10] In tempore. [11] That is, *if* you had but, &c., *si modo* with subj.
[12] How is *time-when* to be expressed? S. 143. [13] *Before Christ born*
[14] How is the place *to-which* expressed? S. 155. [15] S. 178

Exercise 25.

[How are the *compar*. and *superl*. formed? p. 143.]

In rebus gravioribus cautiorem adhibeamus prudentiam sed nec in levioribus temere unquam agamus. Quum

animam ages, tunc intelliges, quæ res vitam vere beatam effecerint, quæque, quamvis ad tempus animum voluptate afficerent, tamen mœrorem ac pœnitentiam reliquerint. Ut bonis artibus ingenium excolatis, non cupimus vehementius, quam ut animos vestros moribus bonis adornetis. Catilina quum videret, quantâ[1] irâ et odio Ciceronis oratio animos senatorum implevisset, in summum furorem concitatus reliquit curiam. Nemo dubitat, quin Catilina eo tempore rempublicam perdidisset, nisi Cicero consul maximâ prudentiâ publicæ saluti consuluisset. Optimus et emendatissimus est is, qui ceteris ita ignoscit, tanquam ipse quotidie peccet;[2] ita peccatis abstinet, tanquam nemini ignoscat. Minus illum timeas, qui vitia, quæ habet, ostendit, quam illum, qui extrinsĕcus est bonus, et malus intus. Sæpe difficile est judicare, ex duobus utrum meliorem ducamus; multo difficilius, ex pluribus quis præstet ceteris.

[1] *Quantus* may often be rendered '*what.*' [2] Sinned.

Don't[1] you see how[2] the trees are blossoming, how the meadows are growing-green; how *the whole of nature[3] has put-on, as-it-were,[4] a new dress? These things present a more beautiful appearance than the most beautiful buildings of the city, or the most valuable treasures of kings and princes. Would-that[5] all men recognised the beauty and order of the world,' with what (*qualis*) wisdom and goodness God has created and governs all things. Why[6] should not I' forgive[7] you,' when you have so-often forgiven me? We shall very easily move the softest tempers to do[8] what we desire:[9] but they do not often (*say*, easily) remain in the same mind. If[10] you had written me a longer letter, you would have given me a still (*etiam*) greater pleasure: though-indeed[11] the longest letters are not always the best; nor the shortest the worst. We did not-doubt-in-the-least[12] that[13] you would have received our letter: but we feared that[14] it might not satisfy[7] you.

[1] S. 45. [2] Ut, *subj.* [3] Universa rerum natura. [4] Quasi, *as-it-were*, = quam si.] [5] S. 242. [6] Why—not, *quidni*, with subj. [7] Appendix I. [8] *Ut*, with subj. [9] Subj. [10] S. 216. [11] Quanquam; *tndh.* [12] *Not in the least*, ne minimum quidem. [13] S. 19. [14] S. 22.

Exercise 26.

O magne Alexander, domuisti tot gentes; age, effrenatam iracundiam doma! Augustus quum nuntium accepisset de clade Varianâ, exclamavit: Quintĭli Vare, redde mihi legiones meas. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium, et vide, ne levitate animi in perniciem ruas! Vos divites, adjuvate miseros, vestīte nudos, satiate famelĭcos: pro his Deus nobis retribuet gratiam. Credīte mihi, perficiemus negotium, si vires omnes intenderimus. Respondete ad interrogationes nostras. Nimium ne crede colori! Ne contemnite deos! Fac, quod tuum est facere! Dic, quid sentias! Educ, centurio, copias, et aciem instrue!

Rouse up the powers of your mind, when they *happen to be-asleep.[1] Honor your parents, and obey[2] their will. Come into my house, and tell me[3] what[4] you have learned. Take-care not[5] to make a more-powerful person your enemy. *Be sure to get well[6] as soon as possible.[7] Pardon those who have offended you: and take care to make friends of enemies by kindness and good-conduct. Take-care not[5] to betray confidence. Guard the gates, lest (*nē*) your enemies should suddenly attack the city.

[1] When by-chance (*forte*) they sleep. [2] Append. I. [3] C. 13. [4] S. 49.
[5] Nē. [6] Fac ut convalescas. [7] Quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

Exercise 27.

[☞The second forms of the imperative [*to, tote, nto*] are used in *laws, rules*, and other formal expressions of *duty* or *permission*.]

Cœlestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. Impius ne audeto placare donis iram deorum. Ubi nos laverimus, si placebit, lavato. Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelīto, neve urīto. Virgines Vestales in urbe custodiunto ignem foci publici sempiternum. Pueros ne laudatote nimium: nam omne nimium nocet. Pueri bonos libros legunto quotidie, sed malis abstinento. Fratres et sorores se invĭcem amanto, et parentibus obediunto. Memoriam exercetote, et addiscitote quotidie aliquid. Quum hostem profligaveritis, ne sævitote in jacentem.

Love thy neighbor as[1] thyself. Honor thy parents, and obey[2] their will. Let the young-man lend an ear to the counsel of the wise, and open his heart to their teaching. Betray not[3] confidence: stand by thy promises. Let not the citizen betray his country; but when (*ubi*) dangers threaten, let him defend it with arms. Ye pupils, vie *with one-another[4] in virtue. Ye princes, ward-off dangers from the citizens, and protect the cultivation of the arts. Let the husbandman till the fields, that the fruits thereof may support the inhabitants of the land. Let not[5] conquerors behave-proudly, when they have conquered[6] a town or country. Let the soldiers take one portion of the booty, the general another.

[1] Æque ac. [2] App. I. [3] S. 37. [4] Inter vos, *between yourselves*. [5] Subj.

Exercise 28.

Ager aratur et occatur, ut fruges inde meliores proveniant. Primo tempore veris sparguntur semina frugum, quæ æstate maturescunt, et auctumno metuntur, ut per hiemem nutrimenta cultoribus præbeant. Finitur labor agricŏlæ mense Novembri aut Decembri, quum rerum natura quiescere videtur, et agri frigŏre rigent.—Erudiuntur pueri literis et artibus, et exercentur laboribus, ut ingenio validi et corpore robusti evadant. Multi adolescentes ita decipiuntur voluptatum illecebris, ut labores omnes fugiant. Tempora mutantur, et nos mutamur in illis. Maximâ movemur misericordiâ, quum homines rebus maxime necessariis carēre vidimus. Ad res pravas sæpe libidine trahimur, sæpius inconsiderantiâ; nonnunquam etiam circumvenimur artibus malorum hominum, a quibus impellimur et cogimur. Tu non ab aliis impellĕris aut cogĕris, sed tua te impellit libido; ergo vituperaris et coërcēris. Nec ab ullo impediris, quominus recte agas. Vos laudamini, pueri, qui bene didicistis; vos, autem, pigri, punimini. Quotidie monemini, ut officia vestra expleatis; at semper ab aliis diligentiâ et virtute vincimini. Curritur, (S. 141,) saltatur, luditur, sed scholæ segnius frequentantur.

Certain kinds-of-corn are sown in the month[1] of September or October: then the seed is covered through the winter, till[2] it shoots-up* (as) the beams of the sun grow-warm, (*abl. abs.*.) and ripens its fruit in the summer. *We often sing,[3] and dance,[3] and play,[3] when in the next hour a great misfortune befalls[4] us. Great treasures are often found[5] in the sea, which swallows-up ships and men. The greatest difficulties are often overcome,[6] if the best means are employed at-the-right-time. Even (*vel*) the most violent sorrow is lessened by time and forgetfulness. You are beloved by your friends, honored by your fellow-citizens, feared by the enemies of your country. We were instructed by our teachers and educated by our parents, that[7] we might become better and wiser men. You are watched over, my son, that[8] bad men may not corrupt your mind. We are often prevented by anger from[9] acting right. See that[10] you be not hurried away by passion. You appear to me not to be- well -aware what[11] (*quantus*) advantages these sciences, in which you are instructed, offer. Answer to what (*ad ea quæ*) you are asked, that we may know what[11] each of you has learned. Nothing is to be despised.

1 How is *time-when* translated?—Mense Septembri, aut Octobri. 2 S. 249.
3 S. 141. 4 Syn. 4. 5 Syn. 1. 6 S. 214. 7 S. 21 8 S. 18 9 S. 43.
10 Vide nē, &c. subj. 11 S. 49.

Exercise 29.

Saguntum jam summâ vi oppugnabatur ab Hannibale, quum Romani nihildum de bello incepto audiverant. Ego, qui paullo ante acerbissimis pedum doloribus cruciabar, nunc quasi revixisse mihi videor. Quantâ tu misericordiâ commovebaris (-e,) quum me tantis malis oppressum videres! Miserrimi esse videbamini, quum fortunas omnes amisissetis, quas nunc recepistis! Quum Neapŏlim venissemus, ibique scholas frequentaremus, quotidie conveniebamur ab amicis nostris. Agri ad Tiberim jacentes antiquis temporibus colebantur a populis Latinis, quos Romani vicerunt. Apud Græcos et Romanos veteres festis diebus Diis Deabusque sacra instituebantur. A foro Romano

conspiciebatur Capitolium et signum Jovis, qui custos urbis appellabatur. Equi Romanorum terrebantur subito adspectu et odore elephantorum, quos Pyrrhus in acie constituerat; sed reperiebantur eo tempore remedia, quibus efficiebant Romani, ut elephanti plus suis, quam hostibus nocerent.

I was requested by your brother to relate[1] my journey to him, (*sibi:*) but I was prevented by much business from[2] obliging him. We were asked how-much[3] property our parents had left to their sons and daughters; but *we were not permitted[4] to answer. How-often were you reminded not to betray[1] the secrets of others? You were expected through the whole day; for nobody had heard, what[5] a misfortune had befallen[6] you. You were compelled by nobody to come to Constantinople; in which city[7] great dangers threatened your life. The standards of the enemy were seen at-a-distance; and still more (troops) were said to be marching-up from the Ararĭs,[8] when Cæsar drew-up- his army -in-order-of-battle. Our friends were prevailed-upon (*imperf.*) to come *as soon as possible[9] into the city. The ropes, by which the vessels were fastened to the bank, did not withstand the violence of the storm: and the ships were blown-off into the deep sea.

[1] S. 41. [2] S. 43. [3] S. 49. [4] S. 58. [5] C. 21. [6] Syn. 4
[7] Quâ in urbe. [8] Araris, a river in Gaul; the Saône. [9] Quam celerrime

---

Exercise 30. [See S. 205.]

Donabor clipeo et hastâ, si bene pro patriâ pugnavero. Sæpe admonebĕris, ut iram discas compescere; sæpius etiam, ut aliorum iram ne excītes. Quum ver redierit, prata et agri pulcherrimis floribus ornabuntur. Memoria clarorum virorum nullâ unquam oblivione delebitur aut obscurabitur. Quo[1] magis vitam honestam et integram egerimus, eo magis Deo probabimur. Non videbimur omni culpâ vacare, nisi etiam suspicionem flagitii summo studio vitaverimus. Tu, discipule, laudabĕre, si sapienter vitam institueris; at vos vituperabimini, qui segnius officiis vestris satisfecistis. Precibus tuis non commovebor, ut

tibi ignoscam; nec temĕre adducar, ut pœnam tibi remittam. Ab imbecilliore vincēris, quem contempseris. Non audiēris, nisi sapiens consilium dederis; nam stulta consilia negligentur aut rejicientur. A bonis omnibus diligemur, si bonis moribus excellemus. O poetæ præclari, Virgĭli atque Horati, semper in scholis legemini, quamdiu adolescentes literis erudientur! Quando hic labor difficillimus finietur!

1 S. 203.

This town will be conquered in a short time. You will be despised by the lowest men, if you give- yourself -up[1] to the vilest lusts. The very lightest tasks will hardly be accomplished, if[2] you do not accustom[1] yourself to persevere in labor. We shall be deserted both by friends and relations, if[3] we put- every thing -after money. You will be laughed-at by all sensible people, if you indulge-in-[4] vanity. I' shall be greatly assisted by your means:[5] but you' will receive advantage[6] from your labor, and be rewarded with great praise. You will be taught by your masters, what road[7] you should[8] take. If you will continue in this path, you will be loved by your friends, and valued by your fellow-citizens. Whither shall I be led? When shall I reach the end of my journey? *It will not so much as be asked,[9] what[7] we have thought, but what we have done. We shall be attacked by our opponents; but our plans will not be overthrown. The gates of the city shall be carefully watched: guards shall be stationed on the walls: the enemy (*plur.*) shall be kept-off or driven-back. *It is of great importance to me[10] that you should (C. 3) understand this.

1 Fut. perf. 2 *If not*, nisi. 3 S. 214. 4 App. I. 5 Opera, (*sing.*) 6 Fructum capere (ex.) 7 S. 49. 8 S. 166. *Take*, of a *road*, is insistĕre, which governs the dat. 9 Ne rogabitur quidem: 'it will not even be asked.' 10 S. 91.

Exercise 31.

Hæc narratio adeo est fabulosa, ut a nemine credatur. Non sum tam imprūdens ut verbis speciosis decipiar. Vic-

tus es, miles : rogato victorem, ut vita tibi condonetur. Spe fallaci, mulĭeres, deceptæ estis ; cavete, ne iterum decipiamini. Quam multa a veteribus scriptoribus nobis tradita sunt, quæ adeo sunt fabulis contexta, ut a nemine sano pro veris habeantur ! Utinam quam primum hoc metu liberer, quo sic crucior, ut pæne delirare videar. Difficillimum est efficere, ut simul omnibus probemur. Ab amicis sic deserti sumus, ut ab inimicis prorsus opprimamur. Discedito ab improbis, ne pravitate eorum inficiaris, (-e.) Magistratus sapienter administranto rempublicam, cives autem parento legibus ; ita utrisque optime consultum erit, ut nec publica salus turbetur, nec privati singulorum injustitiâ vexentur. Bonæ leges sanciantur a principibus, quibus summum imperium ideo creditum est, ut bene consulatur reipublicæ, (S. 135.)

All men are so formed by nature, that[1] the powers of body and mind are strengthened by exercise. Who is so stupid as not[2] to perceive, with how-much (*quantus*) wisdom and goodness the world is governed ![3] We have asked, whether[4] you were loved or shunned by your schoolfellows. You are *too sensible to be excited[5] to anger by the invectives of the senseless. You are *too unfeeling to be moved[6] by our tears. We are *too-sorely afflicted by these misfortunes to be soon restored[7] to our former state. I am so loaded with business, that[1] I am almost oppressed (by it.) Be content with your lot, that you may be reckoned among the wise. You should[8] be more industrious, that the powers of your mind may be better exercised. What am I to do ?[9] shall I ask,[10] or[11] let-myself-be-asked (*say*, or be asked ?)

[1] S. 17. [2] Ut (*or* qui) non intelligat. [3] S. 49. [4] S. 51. [5] 'More-sensible than that (*quam ut*) you should be excited,' (*subj.*)—Remember that *should* is a doubtful sign, and that whether the *imperf.* or *pres. subj.* should be used, depends on the tense of the preceding verb. [6] 'More unfeeling than that you should be moved.' [7] 'More sorely afflicted than that we should, &c.' [8] S. 61. [9] S. 213. [10] Rogemne. [11] Anne.

Exercise 32.

Minus curare solemus, quod adest, quam quod futurum est, quia, quod adest, oculis videmus, sed nescimus, quid

futurum sit. Metuo, ne in hoc negotio falsâ spe decepti sitis, quoniam nihil vobis succedere videtur. Ubi victoria amissa est, nihil refert, quot in prœlio cæsi aut in fugâ capti sint. Ad virtutem nihil interest, quo loco aut quibus parentibus nati simus. Hodie nemo in domo est, a quo non sim interrogatus, quomodo e tanto periculo servatus sim, quique homines auxilium mihi præstiterint. Non ita generati a naturâ sumus, ut ad ludum et jocum facti esse videamur; sed ad severitatem potius, et ad quædam studia graviora et majora. Nam ita est a Deo institutum, ut vita hominis non hoc terrestri curriculo terminetur, sed ut animæ etiam post mortem corporis vita futura sit. Simul ac anima a corpore sejuncta fuerit, illud quidem torpebit, sed hæc in æternum vigebit.

Let us see how-many[1] warriors are left in the city; and how the guards are placed on the walls, and before the gates. Since[2] the town is well fortified both by nature and art,[3] and defended by a strong force, it will not easily be taken. Since[2] we are surrounded on-all-sides by enemies, it will be difficult to find a means-of-escape. You will not be reproached *for having been invited to dinner by no prince;[4] but you will be justly reproached, if[5] you court the favor of the great, that you may be invited. As soon as[6] this letter is read, (*fut. perf.*,) you will perceive whom[7] you have had for[8] friends, and whom for[8] enemies, and from what (*quantus*) danger (App. I.) you have been snatched. We shall at all times be contented with our lot, if we accustom ourselves (*fut. perf.*) to look- not -at those who are placed in a higher rank, but (at) those, to whom fortune has denied still more (than to us): for no one is so miserable, that[9] many do not appear to be more miserable still.

[1] S. 49. [2] Quum with *subj.* [3] *Et opere*, abl. of *opus*.
[4] 'That (*quod*) you have been invited.' [5] S. 214. [6] S. 251. [7] S. 49.
[8] Omit *for*, and put *friends* and *enemies* in apposition to *whom*. [9] S. 17.

Exercise 33.

Romæ aliquamdiu penes reges summum imperium fuit Quorum postremus, Tarquinius Superbus, quum a Bruto

et Tarquinio Collatino expulsus esset, consules creati sunt bini in annos singulos. Id factum est anno ducentesimo decimo ab urbe conditâ. Sed paullo post, quum a patriciis crudelius sæviretur in plebem, eaque perpetuis bellis occupata ære alieno premeretur, denique seditio mota est. Plebs in montem sacrum secessit anno ducentesimo sexagesimo, nec prius in urbem rediit, quam a patriciis promissa essent, quæ postulabat. Postulabat autem, ut æs alienum omne in tabulis deleretur, utque tribuni crearentur, qui contra superbiam patriciorum causam plebis agerent, legesque iniquas vetarent. Quæ quum concessa essent, aliquamdiu quidem plebs suâ conditione contenta esse videbatur, sed mox altiora petebat, ut in omni genere jura patriciorum et plebeiorum æquarentur, nec jam ordinum discrimen esset.

Canuleius, a tribune of the people, brought-forward a bill,[1] that mixed marriages of the patricians and the plebeians should be permitted.[2] This law was carried in the 310th year *from the building of the city.[3] At the same time (some) new tribunes brought forward a bill, that one[4] of the consuls should be chosen from the plebeians. This proposal excited the anger of the patricians to-such-a-degree,[5] that[6] it was resolved to elect, instead of consuls, military tribunes[7] with[8] consular power. Thus it happened,[9] that for many years together[10] no consuls were elected at Rome. But when (*quum*) in the year 378, that proposal[11] was renewed (*plup. subj.*) by Caius Licinius Stolo and Lucius Sextius Lateranus, (two) tribunes of the people, the patricians were at-last compelled to share the consulate with plebeians. But that the pain of this lost privilege might be in-some-measure[12] lessened, the patricians sought-for new honors for themselves. Accordingly in the same year two new magistrates were created, from which the plebeians should be excluded, (*subj.*,) the prætorship, and the dignity of Curule Ædile. Nevertheless,[13] sixty years afterwards[14] all the rights were made common to the patricians and the plebeians.

[1] Rogationem promulgare.
[2] Concēdĕre, (cess, cess.)
[3] From (*ab*) the city built.
[4] Alter, (one of *two*.)
[5] Adeo.
[6] S. 17
[7] Tribunes of the soldiers.
[8] S. 78.
[9] Ita factum est, (ut,) S. 17.
[10] Through many years.
[11] Rogatio.
[12] Aliquâ ex parte.
[13] Nihilo secius.
[14] S. 146, 147.

Exercise 34.

[Read Rules of Syntax 215, 216.]

Nisi vehementissimis pedum doloribus cruciarer, jam pridem ad te cucurrissem, ut viderem quid ageres. Pervenerat enim ad aures meas, quantâ calamitate afflictus esses; et metuebam, ne dolore et mœrore plane conficereris. Sed crede mihi nulla tanta est calamitas, ut non ab aliquâ parte cum commodo quodam conjuncta sit. Sic tu quoque, antequam illâ calamitate premereris, paullo superbior eras et confidentior; nunc mitior factus multorum hominum tibi conciliabis animos, quos antea offenderas. Hinc illud discito: Si semper bonis cumularemur, nec unquam de inconstantiâ fortunæ admoneremur, profecto eâ re impediremur, quominus sæpius de verâ animi salute cogitaremus. O stulti homines, quam multis malis liberaremini, si in omnibus rebus sapienter vitam institueretis, et mature de vicissitudinibus fortunæ cogitaretis!

If you had been[1] with me to-day, you would have been pleased with a very agreeable sight. You would be praised[1] by all good men, if you always did your duty. If[2] we were not so-often reminded of our faults, we should either never become[3] better, or arrive at virtue very late.[4] I did not doubt, that[5] I should at-least[6] be listened-to by my friends; even-if[7] my enemies should despise[8] my advice. If you were not[2] so carefully watched over by your parents and teachers, you would have thoughtlessly fallen into various dangers. I carefully guarded-myself *against being enticed[9] to bad things by light-minded persons: if I had not done this,[10] *I should have been often punished for my thoughtlessness.[11] The King had commanded, that (*ut*) you should be kept in custody, till you were freed from your debts. How miserable would you be, if you were despised by all the good!

1 S. 216. 2 *If-not*, nisi. 3 Evadere. 4 Sero. 5 S. 19
6 Saltem 7 Etsi. 8 Subj. See Syn. 5.
9 'Lest (nē) I should be enticed;' *imperf. subj.* 10 Quod nisi fecissem.
11 'I should have given (= suffered) the punishment (*pl.*) of my thoughtlessness.'

Exercise 35.

Exorare, mi pater! ignosce temeritati filii! compesce iram!—O stulti homines, docemini tandem aliquando quam miseros vos libidinum dominatio faciat!—Romæ lex erat his verbis scripta: Nemo in urbe sepelitor, neve urĭtor. Solon hanc legem sanxerat: Qui in bello occubuerint, publice sepeliuntor. Hanc ego vobis legem dico: Si quid utile in rempublicam acturi estis, difficultatibus ne deterreminor. Audi, mi fili, ab improbis ne corrumpitor, neve flagitiis eorum contaminator!

What am I to do?[1] shall I beat,[2] or be beaten?—Be beaten.—Shall we entreat,[3] or be entreated? Let him who returns[4] to his obedience, be exempted from punishment: let him who continues in his crime be punished. Let the guilty be kept in custody; the innocent be dismissed. Let not yourselves be withheld from[5] doing good, even-when[6] men threaten you with evil.[7] Let the torch be lighted.[8] Let pleasures be despised.[9] If[10] he were of a brave mind,[11] he would despise[9] those dangers.

[1] S. 213. [2] Feriam: anne feriar. [3] Fut. perf. [4] S. 43.
[5] Etiamsi [6] 'Threaten evil to you.' [7] Syn. 2. [8] Syn. 5.
[9] S. 216. [10] S. 78.

Exercise 36.

Phocion magnus Græcorum imperator fuit eo tempore, quo Philippus, Macedŏnum rex, totam Græciam suo imperio subjicere conatus est. Qui quamquam non adūlabatur populo, quod ceteri faciebant, tamen sæpius ad imperium vocatus est, quam alius quisquam. Pueros semper hortamur, ut bonos mores imitentur, malos fugiant et aversentur. Adversabimur illis, qui mala reipublicæ minentur; boni bonis semper auxiliabuntur. Sulla, qui Marium in bello Jugurthīno comitatus fuerat, postea acerbissimus ejus adversarius exstitit. In magno timore eram, ne inimici vobis insidiarentur; quod quum factum non sit, gratulor. Magnos homines qui æmulatus fuerit, non inter pessimos numerabitur. Quid gloriemini alienâ virtute, quum propriam laudem meru-

eritis, quam cives omnes admirantur? Sæpe recordare, quid Deo, quid parentibus, quid patriæ debeas, ut omni tempore gratum animum ostendas. Consolamini miseros; hortamini pavidos; auxiliamini laborantibus! In rebus sacris nemo jocator. Jure reprehensi ne indignantor.

Do you mean the same as[1] the rest? If[2] you had not despised my advice, you would not now need consolation.[3] Demosthenes, the most celebrated orator of the Greeks, exhorted the Athenians to support[4] their allies in (good) time, against Philip, the king of the Macedonians: but they[1] hesitated, and *let their enemy escape[5] out-of (*e*) their hands. You will be surprised, in how short a time we have completed[6] so great a work. I am in great fear that[7] wicked men are plotting against us. Take care *not to imitate[8] those who take-pride in[9] empty things. Don't wonder that[10] I have not returned from the city before-this;[11] many affairs have detained me. Pray the gods to give[4] you a prosperous return. Do not rejoice, *when it goes ill with others.[12] Men should remember[13] a kindness received.

[1] That is, 'the same *which*,' (quod,) &c. [2] *If-not*, nisi with subj. [3] App. I. [4] 'That (ut) they should support.' See S. 41. [5] 'Sent-their enemy-forth' (hostem e manibus emittere; nīsi, missum.) [6] S. 49. [7] S. 22. [8] Nē with subj. [9] C. 36. [10] Quod. S. 20. [11] *Earlier*, comparat. of *Mature*. [12] *It goes ill with me*: in rebus adversis versor. [13] Meminerint, used as an imperative. See App. I.

Exercise 37.

Deus tuetur et moderatur res omnium hominum, et universum mundum gubernat. Quid verebamini, ne nobis ingrati venissetis, quibus nemo unquam venit exoptatior? Miserere pauperum, ut olim Deus misereatur tui. Nemo libenter fatetur, quod fateri nisi cum dedecŏre aliquo sui non potest. Qui multa pollicitus est, caveat, ne promissorum obliviscatur. Binæ a Deo hominibus datæ sunt aures, ora autem singula, ut plus audirent quam loquerentur. Romæ qui consulatu functi erant, dicebantur consulares; qui prætură, prætorii; ædiles qui fuerant, ædilitii; quæstores, quæstorii. Quique justo prœlio cum hoste congressi [erant et] quinque millia hostium interfecerant, honorem triumphi adi-

piscebantur. Sequĕre me: in bellum proficiscimur. Sequar, et pro patriâ pugnabo: sequentur omnes, qui caritate patriam amplectuntur. Ergo proficiscamur, et, si ita Deo placuerit, pro patriâ moriamur. Quid enim juvat vitâ frui, nisi eâ cum laude et gloriâ fruamur?

Romulus, the first king of the Romans, employed a trick to procure[1] wives for the citizens of his new state. He carried off the Sabine girls whom he had invited with (their) parents to (some) games *which he had instituted.[2] Hence arose the first war. For the Sabines, to revenge[1] the rape of their daughters, seized their arms and fell upon the Romans. At last, when they had fought for a long time, and the Sabines had already made themselves masters of the city, they made a treaty, that they should share the city and government. After that the Romans were called Quirites from Cures, the chief town[3] of the Sabines, whose king Titus Tatius was named joint king with Romulus. After Romulus followed Numa Pompilius, less distinguished in arms than by the arts of peace. To him succeeded in order Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, the elder Tarquinius, Servius Tullius, Tarquinius the Proud. We often forget[4] the benefits for which we are indebted[5] to our parents from our earliest childhood.[6] Get acquainted with your faults, that they may be corrected. Pity[4] those who are miserable for no fault of theirs.[7]

[1] *Ut* with subj. S. 39. [2] 'Instituted by him,' (a *se*.) [3] *Urbs*. [4] S. 89
[5] *Which we owe*. [6] A primâ pueritiâ. [7] Nullâ suâ culpâ.

Exercise 38.

Fugiamus ejus amicitiam, qui sine causâ amicis irascitur, et levioribus eorum delictis ignoscere non didicit. Ut corporis, sic animi morbis possŭmus mederi, si salubria remedia adhibemus. Animi morbi sunt iracundia, intemperantia, ignavia: ex his fere mala nascuntur omnia, quibus res humanæ turbari solent. Homines virtute metīmur, non fortunâ: nec decet virum servire malis aut blandiri improbis, quod potentiâ aut divitiis vel nocere vel prodesse possint. Spe commodi ne mentiminor, neve pravis consiliis adsen-

tiuninor. Socrates quum capite damnatus causam diceret, tantum aberat, ut[1] blandiretur judicibus, ut ultro eos incusaret, quod innocentem damnassent.[2] Ita ausus est etiam magis eos irritare, nec ullo modo ab eo impetrari potuit, ut pœnæ remissionem precaretur. Tali modo supplicium quidem effugere non potuit, sed ita mortuus est, ut sapientem decuit, et præclarum exemplum reliquit posteris. Tu vero sic vive, sic morĕre!

[1] Tantum aberat ut = *was so far from:* the subj. to be rendered by the participial substantive. [2] *For having condemned,* &c.

In misfortune we are sometimes deserted by those, whom we trusted[1] above all others.[2] Do not[3] measure the fidelity of friends by words. The fidelity of friends should be measured[4] by deeds. How often do bad men hypocritically-pretend friendship, and flatter with words! As-soon-as he had gained[5] what he desired, he forgot[6] his promises. We justly proclaim him happy, who has gained the friendship of a good man.[7] Embrace your friend with sincere affection. The Scythians live on the milk[8] and flesh of their herds: other nations hunt wild beasts, to eat[9] their flesh, and clothe themselves with their skins. Time heals[6] all wounds. I fear you are flattering[10] my friend.

[1] Confidere (*perf.* confisus sum) governs dat. or abl. [2] Præ ceteris. [3] S. 37. [4] *Is to be measured.* S. 163. [5] S. 251. [6] App. I. [7] Express *vir.* [8] Omit the prepos. and put the noun in the abl. [9] *Ut* with subj. See App. I. [10] S. 22, and App I.

Exercise 39. [*Learn* App. I.]

Titus Cæsar dicere solebat, neminem tristem a Principe discedere debere. Mathematici docent, terram nostram circa solem trecentis sexaginta quinque diebus cursum suum conficere. Sæpe videmus, homines vel propter leviora delicta in gravissimas calamitates incidere. A poëtis accepimus, antiquissimis temporibus homines in summâ innocentiâ et morum integritate vitam degisse. Græci quum sentirent, se ceteros populos cultu et artibus superare, peregrinos omnes barbăros appellabant. Constat, Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Co-

rinthum, delevisse. Credimus, Deum hunc mundum creavisse, creatumque conservare et regere. Scis me jam dudum de te nihil audivisse, nec literas a te accepisse. Non turpe est parum scire, sed in inscitiâ suâ culpâ permanēre. Non est æquum, minori parēre majorem. Omnibus bonis expĕdit, quemque reipublicæ leges observare, et parēre magistratibus.

Livius relates that[1] Hannibal crossed the Alps with his[2] army. When[3] Pompejus learned that[1] Cæsar had crossed the Rubicon, he with the senate left the city. Then Cæsar proclaimed, that[1] he[2] was not waging war with the state, but with the oppressors of liberty. We read in (*apud*) Cornelius Nepos[4] that[1] Themistocles[5] conquered and dispersed the fleet of the Persians at[6] the island of Salamis.[7] We have heard that[1] Socrates drank the poison with the greatest composure:[8] for he believed that the souls of men live after death. Leonidas with a small band for[9] three days prevented the vast army of the Persians from crossing[10] (the mountains.) You will displease[11] all good men. Have you not[12] pleased all good men?

[1] S. 16. [2] C. I. [3] Quum with pluperf. subj. [4] Nepos, G. Nepōtis. [5] Themistŏcles, G. Themistŏclis. [6] S. 159. [7] 'The island Salamis.'—Salamis, G. Salamīnis, Acc. Salamina *or* -em. App. II. [8] Æquissimo animo, (*that is*, with the most even mind.) [9] Per. [10] To prevent from crossing, *transĭtu prohibēre*. [11] App. I. [12] S. 45.

Exercise 40. [See S. 205, 206.]

Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. Desinite tandem aliquando esse timidi, ut agere possitis. Dicitur Hannibal octoginta millia peditum et viginti equitum et triginta septem elephantos in Italiam duxisse. Creditur Tacitus, qui mores Germanorum terræque situm accuratissime descripsit, non audita tantum narrare, sed etiam quæ ipse viderit. Indorum scuta dicuntur auro et ebŏre fulsisse. Omnium animalium terrestrium elephantus videtur maximus esse, maritimorum balæna. Avis quædam, quæ dicitur platalea, scribitur conchis se explere solere. Dicimini segnius scholas frequentare. Non videmur vincere posse, nisi summis viribus hostem adoriamur. In hac re non videbaris verum

attigisse, sed errore quodam deceptus esse. Dicuntur dolores omnes tempore leniri. Terentii fabulæ propter elegantiam sermonis putabantur a C. Lælio scribi. Cæsar legiones jussit sub colle subsistere, donec equitatus illas subsequutus esset, ut simul omnes hostem adorirentur. In bello sæpe crudeles imperatores captivos trucidari jusserunt. Faciam, quod jussus sum facere.

He is said to have laughed. Let him who has received a prize, learn well. If you learn well, you shall receive a prize. I will give you a prize, when you have learned well. Is not philosophy the mistress of life? I' was reading Homer, you' Plato. She is said to have scolded the boy. Let us lie-down in the soft grass. It is certain that the boy laughed. (He) who has received a prize, will rejoice. Having received a prize, they will rejoice. When you have tamed your spirit, you shall receive a prize. When you have read-through Homer, you shall receive a prize.

EXERCISE 41. [*Learn* dolēre, S. 161.]

Cæsar ad oppugnandum urbem milites e castris eduxerat. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Præceptores inter docendum nonnunquam omittunt puerorum intellectui se accommodare. Socrates interrogando elicere solebat eorum opiniones, quibuscum disserebat. Diu circumsedendo Syracusas Romani cœlo aquisque adsuerant (adsueverant). Virtutes hominum in agendo cernimus. Multi homines audiendo magis sunt idonei, quam dicendo. Ars dicendi plurimum valet in foro et in judiciis. Verba declarandi et sentiendi Accusativum cum Infinitivo postulant. Bellandi studio ferocissimæ gentes in perniciem ruerunt. Pigerrimi discipulorum sunt ii, qui discendi minime sunt studiosi. Sæpe vobis nobiscum certandi copiam fecimus.

You are come here to[1] learn, not to play. Yesterday *while we were walking,[2] we had a most agreeable conversation with you.[2] By reading the writings of Cicero,

you will, without doubt, acquire the power of writing and speaking Latin.[4] By running, by suffering hunger[5] and thirst, our bodies grow-accustomed to endure the greatest hardships. In disputing it becomes (us) always to observe moderation; and to conquer ambition by our desire of discovering the truth. Your wish to contend[6] with me[3] has ruined you. Wisdom is to be considered the art of living. I have not time[7] for answering.[8] By bearing injuries you will deserve greater praise than by revenging (them.)

[1] S. 161. [2] Inter ambulandum. [3] C. 6. [4] Latine, adv
[5] To suffer hunger, *esurire*; to suffer thirst, *sitire*. [6] *Say*, 'of contending.'
[7] Translate by *est*. S. 114. [8] *Say*, 'of answering.'

EXERCISE 42. [*Learn* scribenda epistola, S. 162, 165.]

Natura animum hominis sensibus ornavit ad res percipiendas idoneis. Hannibal quum Capuam venisset, visendâ urbe magnam diei partem consumpsit. Multi in amicis parandis adhibent curam, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt. Sunt nonnulli acuendis puerorum ingeniis non inutiles lusus. Creando Pontifici Maximo consules comitia habuere. Ab oppugnandâ Neapŏli Hannibalem firmitas et altitudo mœnium absterruit. De contemnendâ morte multi egregie præcipiunt, qui ipsi nihil magis timent, quam mortem. Natura cupiditatem ingenuit homini veri videndi. Augendarum divitiarum stultissimi homines plerumque sunt cupidissimi. In suscipiendis negotiis difficilioribus magis anxii sumus, quam in agendis et perficiendis. Ad vim vi repellendam, licet etiam hominem interficere.

Romulus chose a site near the river Tiber for building[1] the city of Rome.[2] Water is better[3] than wine for quenching thirst. For defending the walls of their cities, the ancients used machines, with which they shot stones and arrows against the besiegers. In curing coughs physicians used the tussilāgo, which received[4] its name from-that-circumstance.[5] The steersman, sitting at the stern, endeavours,[6] by steering[7] his ship, to avoid the rocks and dangers

of the sea. Let no one lead- you -away from (*a*) cultivating virtue. Man has great instruments for (*ad*) obtaining wisdom.

1 S. 162. dux, duct. 2 'The city Rome.' 3 *Use* utilis, *not* bonus. 4 Ducĕre, 5 Inde (*thence.*) 6 Studēre. 7 Regere, *to govern.*

Exercise 43.

Galli gallinacei cum sole eunt cubitum. Themistŏcles quum ab Atheniensibus expulsus patriam reliquisset, Argos habitatum concessit. Quum Xerxes ingenti exercitu, Græciæ immineret, Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. Vejentes pacem petitum oratores Romam miserunt. Saguntini quum intelligerent oppidum suum ab Hannibăle expugnatum iri, se suaque omnia cremaverunt.

In consilio capiendo considerare debemus, honestumne factu sit, an turpe. Palpebræ sunt tegmenta oculorum mollissimæ tactu, ne læderent aciem. Difficillima sunt creditu, quæ a vetustissimis omnium gentium scriptoribus commemorantur. In magnis rebus gerendis nonnulla dictu quam factu faciliora sunt.

The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to ask,[1] whether[2] Hannibal was besieging Saguntum by the orders of the people or senate, or of his own will.[3] A great number of persons are come into the city to see[1] the games. Divitiacus, a distinguished German, came to Rome to ask[1] for help. Augustus gave his daughter Julia in marriage,[4] first to Marcellus, the son of Octavia his sister; then, after his death, to Marcus Agrippa. I don't believe that your conduct will be approved-of by all. What is so delightful to hear[5] as a speech ornamented with wise thoughts and powerful words! What (*quod*) is the easiest to do,[6] that' is not always the best. You will repent of your folly too-late. It is of no importance to me, that[6] these things should be concealed from[7] my father.

1 Sup. in um. See note on S. 40. 2 S. 46. Translate *orders* by sing. jussune populi aut Senatûs, Hannibal, &c. 3 Suo arbitrio.
4 *To give in marriage*, nuptum dare. 5 Sup. in u.
6 Acc. with *present* infin. 7 S. 139.

Exercise 44. [See S. 168.]

In viâ publicâ ludentes pueros deprehendimus. Cæsar fugientes hostes in angustias compŭlit. Peloponnesus est pæninsula, angustis Isthmi faucibus continenti adhærens.— Senectus est operosa et semper agens aliquid. Jugurtha jussis vestris obediens erit. Alcibiades erat temporibus callidissime inserviens. Catonem vidi in bibliothēcâ sedentem. Timoleon quum lumina oculorum amisisset, eam calamitatem tantâ animi fortitudine tolerabat, ut nemo eum querentem audieret. Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen tenentem in templo Ephesiæ Dianæ. Hippias, Pisistrati filius, in Marathoniâ pugnâ cecĭdit, arma contra patriam ferens. Cicero de Socratis morte lacrimare solebat Platonem legens. Mendaci homini, ne verum quidem dicenti, credere solemus. Ut oculus, sic animus, se non videns, alia cernit.

Blossoming trees and meadows growing-green delight us more by their appearance, than the glittering palaces of the rich and distinguished. May[1] no calamity disturb your good-fortune. I heard Socrates say[2] that hunger was the seasoning of food. Plato in the Phædon makes Socrates dispute[3] about the immortality of the soul. Phidias the sculptor represented Jupiter (as) sitting on a throne,[4] and holding thunderbolts in his left-hand, a sceptre in his right. I will readily believe *those who speak[5] the truth. *Those-who-speak[5] the truth are readily believed.[6] I believe that many unfortunate (persons) gain more when-they-are-silent[5] than when-they-beg.[5]

[1] Utinam. S. 241.* [2] 'Saying.' [3] 'Disputing.' [4] In solio
[5] Present partic [6] S. 135.

Exercise 45.

Civem bellum gesturum contra patriam non civem, sed hostem judicamus patriæ. Cæsar adversus hostem copias ducturus, præmisit equites, qui vias omnes explorarent. Lecturus sum aliquid, quod et delectabit animum, et scien-

tiam meam valde augebit. Quid jam facturi estis, quum tot vobis difficultates obstent? Cicero fugiturus erat ex Italiâ, quum emissi ab Antonio eum oppresserunt et interfecerunt. Nescio, quando uxor mea in urbem reditura sit, quum ruris amœnitas animum ejus tantis voluptatibus devinxerit. Ignorabamus, num consilium nostrum probaturi essetis, quod vobis incommodum futurum esset. Themistocles a civibus suis patriâ expulsus, confŭgit ad Xerxem, cui promisit, se cum eo adversus Græcos pugnaturum esse. Verisimile est Persas apud Salaminem insulam victuros fuisse,[1] si unum diem exspectavissent. Cæsar Calpurniam, L. Pisonis filiam, successuri sibi in consulatu, in matrimonium duxit. Catilina urbem reliquit, mox cum pluribus rediturus.

[1] S. 224.

I was going to write to you, when it was announced, that[1] you were just arrived. As we were going-to-sail from Ostia to Naples, there arose suddenly a storm, which compelled us to remain in the harbor, and wait-for better weather. I don't know when[2] my brother will come;[3] but this[4] I know, that[1] he has already set-out from the town (where-he-resides.[5]) We hear that[1] you have been residing at Corinth for-some-time, and are now about-to-return to Athens. In summer many persons leave the town, to dwell[6] in the country:[7] but when (*ubi*) the weather[8] ceases (*perf.*) to be warm, return again from the country to the city. I met your brother just-as[9] he was going-on-board the ship, in which he has sailed to (*in*) America.

[1] S. 16. [2] S. 49. [3] Part. in rus with sim. [4] Illud. [5] *Say* 'from *his* town.' [6] *Ut* with subj. [7] S. after 160. [8] Tempus anni. [9] Just as, *quum maxime.*

Exercise 46.

Valerius Maximus Fabium Rullianum, quinque consulatibus cum magnâ laude functum, hominem dicit propter virtutem et merita admirabilem. Aliquando noctu Romæ nuntiatum est, Sabinorum exercitum populaturum ad Aniēnem fluvium pervenisse; ibi jam expilatas villas in-

cendi. Statim cum equestribus copiis A. Postumius missus est: quem consul Servilius cum delectâ peditum manu sequitur. Equites plures palatos circumvēnit, neque peditibus legio Sabina resistere ausa est. Tum itinere tum nocturnâ populatione fessi, ciboque et vino impleti, plurimi hostium vix tantum virium habebant, quantum ad fugam opus erat.—Alcibiădes propter crimen sacrorum violatorum ab inimicis urbe pulsus, patriæ maxima damna intŭlit. Deinde vero, Persarum opem pollicitus, de exsilio revocatus est, Lacedæmoniosque pluribus prœliis vicit.—Cœnato jam et obdormiscenti mihi literæ tuæ traditæ sunt, in quibus a te scripta me ita commoverunt, ut somnum adimerent.

You have done this *without being compelled by anybody.[1] Being hindered *from[2] acting rightly, I shall do nothing. Being presented with a shield and spear, he will fight well for (*pro*) his country. Being moved by your prayers, I will pardon[3] your son. Being conquered by a weaker person, you will be despised. It is disgraceful to be conquered by a weaker person. (Though) despised by others, I shall be praised by you. This very difficult labor being finished, let us rest. Pity[3] a man (*homo*) oppressed with such[4] evils. *I repent of my folly.[5] *Are you not[6] ashamed[5] of your fickleness? Having been a little-while-ago[7] tormented with pain, I now, as-it-were,[8] come to-life-again.[9] War being undertaken, let us fight bravely for our country.[10] We should fight bravely for our country. Being conquered by a very weak[11] man, you are despised.

[1] Say, *compelled by nobody*:—omitting '*without*.' [2] S. 43. [3] App. I. [4] C. 10. [5] S. 94. [6] S. 45. [7] Paullo ante. [8] Quasi. [9] See page 174. [10] S. 164. [11] See page 144.

Exercise 47.

Hortandi sunt pueri, ut studiis suis diligentiam ad hibeant. In vitâ humanâ pleraque labore et studio paranda sunt. Nisi scribenda mihi hodie epistola esset, optato tuo satisfacerem, ac venirem, quo me vocas. Non audiendi

sunt ii, qui arbitrantur, irascendum inimicis esse. Cuique homini vitanda est ostentationis suspicio. Occultæ inimicitiæ magis timendæ sunt, quam apertæ. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Nemo unquam sapiens proditori credendum esse putavit. Semper ita vivamus, ut rationem reddendam nobis arbitremur. Nemo scit, quando sibi moriendum sit. Nobis iter facientibus per Helvetiam Alpes superandæ erant, quæ sempiternâ nive et glacie tectæ esse dicuntur.

In practising any[1] art, many rules are to be observed. Those must be considered brave and magnanimous persons, who are always engaged[2] in preventing[3] injuries. Men should early learn the art[4] of using time; and never must an opportunity be lost of doing any good.[5] If[6] we wished to read all (*pl.*) that has been written by learned men, we should never make an end of reading. We should live,[7] as-if[8] all men saw our actions. When we set-out,[9] we did not know what[10] hills we *had*[11] to climb-over, and how-many rivers to cross. The upper shoots of a tree must often be broken-off for the purpose[12] of checking its luxuriant-growth.

[1] S. 192. [2] *Studere*, followed by *dat.* [3] Propulsare. [4] 'The art—is to be learned.' [5] Boni aliquid. Here the *gerund* must be used. [6] S. 215. [7] S. 164. [8] S. 241.* [9] S. 241. [10] S. 49. and C. 21. [11] C. 27. [12] Causâ. See note on S. 40.

Exercise 48.

Per annos centum et quindĕcim inter Romanos et Carthaginienses aut bellum fuit, aut belli apparatus, aut incerta pax; et Roma, jam superato orbe terrarum, se tutam fore non putabat, si nomen Carthaginiensium usquam exstaret. Captâ Carthagine, ille terrarum tractus in provinciæ formam redactus est, et Africa propria dicta. Eodem anno captâ et excisâ Corintho, propter legatos Romanorum violatos, tota Græcia in ditionem populi Romani venit, et Achaia dicta est. Mox rege Attălo mortuo, testamenti jure Asiæ minoris pars major Romanis obtigit.—Manlio Torquato Caio Atilio consulibus, de Sardis triumphatum est; et

omnibus locis pace factâ, Romani bellum non habebant, quod inde ab urbe conditâ semel tantum factum erat, regnante Numâ Pompilio.—Maximus, de quo accepimus, terræ motus regnante Romæ Tiberio accidit, magno urbium numero eodem die corruente.—Magna spes patriæ scholæ sunt; his florentibus etiam respublica viget; his ægrotantibus morbus perfacile etiam patriam invādit.—Orīturo sole navem solvimus, oriente jam procul terra conspicitur.

*When Alexander, king of Macedonia, was dead,[1] his generals divided among themselves[2] the conquered countries. *When Hannibal had conquered the Romans[3] at (*ad*) Trebia, at the Ticinus, at the Trasimene lake, the Roman state seemed to be not far removed[4] from destruction. *After Syracuse was conquered by Marcus Marcellus,[1] the Greek arts and sciences removed to Rome. *In the reign of Tullus Hostilius,[5] in the ninety-first year from the building of the city,[6] Demaratus, a Corinthian, (who had been) banished from his country, came to Tarquinii, a town of Etruria. The son of this man was L. Tarquinius Priscus, who, *after the death of Ancus[7] Marcius,[1] was chosen king of the Romans. *When passion sways,[1] the voice of reason is often unheard. Mithridates waged war with the Romans for forty-nine successive years, *with many variations of fortune [8]

[1] Abl. absol. [2] Inter sese. [3] Abl. absol. [4] Haud procul abesse.
[5] 'Tullus Hostilius reigning,' *abl. absol.* [6] 'From the city built.'
[7] Ancus. [8] 'Fortune often varying,' *abl. absol.*

Exercise 49.

Famâ divulgatâ, Numam Pompilium Sabinum virtute et sapientiâ eminēre, hunc populus Romanus, quamquam peregrīnum, præteritis civibus regem creavit. Magi Persarum fuerunt, quibus auctoribus Xerxes Græciæ templa inflammari jussit. Patrato quisque scelere conscientiæ morsibus conficitur; scelus enim et accumbentem exagitat, et dormientis obversatur animo, et evigilanti denuo insurgit. Cæsar narrat, invitis iis, a quibus Pharus occupata sit, naves portum Alexandrīæ intrare non posse. Vivo Hannibāle Romani

sese ab insidiis tutos non esse arbitrabantur. Duce P. Cornelio Scipione Romani in Africam trajecerunt, ubi, pugnâ ad Zamam commissâ, pax petentibus Carthaginiensibus data est. C. Cæsar, vir summæ in re militari prudentiæ, milites suos hortatus, ne fugientes hostes incautius persequerentur, legiones sub colle subsistere jubet, dum ipse equites in terga hostium circumduxisset: quod ubi factum esse cognovissent, instructâ acie in collem eniterentur. Sævi bellatores, victoriâ reportatâ, urbes diripiunt, et agros devastant, ac ne inermi quidem parcentes trucīdant homines.

*When the sea is calm,[1] anybody[2] can steer a ship. *By the advice of Cato,[3] the ambassadors of the Athenians were banished from Rome, because by their incredible eloquence[4] they persuaded the people to receive falsehood for truth.[5] *When spring returns,[6] your little-garden will be adorned with the most beautiful flowers. Do not boast, *when you have conquered a weaker person.[6] *When the victory is lost,[6] it *makes-no-difference[7] how-many have been killed. Being born for (*ad*) greater things, depart from the wicked, lest you should be corrupted by their character.[8] By the advice of my uncle, I have run to you. Cannot anybody[2] be a pilot, *when the sea is calm?[1] We must think about the true welfare[9] of the soul.

[1] 'The sea (being) calm,' (tranquillus,) *abl. abs.* [2] S. 192. [3] Catone auctore.
[4] Ars dicendi. [5] Falsa pro veris accipere. [6] Abl. abs. [7] S. 91.
[8] Mores, *pl.* [9] Sal-us, ūtis.

Exercise 50. [See S. 94.]

Is labor utilis est, qui auctori laudem fert, aliis utilitatem. Quid fers manu, mi fili? Pecuniam et vasa refero, quæ fur e domo nostrâ nuper abstulerat. Hunc ego dolorem æquo animo ferrem, nisi gravior[1] esset, quam ut ferri omnino possit. Fer opem miseris, et vide, ne te sero lati auxilii pœniteat. Factum est æquitate Aristīdis, ut summum imperium a Lacedæmoniis transferretur ad Athenienses. Miseret me tui, quod tanta tibi injuria illata est,

quantam inferre cuiquam nisi audacissimus homo non potuit. Sed tamen majorem laudem merebere, æquo animo ferendo injuriam, quam ulciscendo. Tollite et auferte hæc subsellia: ablata in porticu collocate. Cæsari militum ordines circumequitanti nuntius affertur, hostem adesse et horribili sublato clamore castris appropinquare. Nihil igitur differendum impetum ratus, instructâ acie signa in hostem tulit.

[1] Gravior quam ut possit, &c., *too heavy to be*, &c.

Labors must be borne. What (*pl.*) cannot be avoided, must be borne with resignation.[1] When will you be ashamed[2] of your folly? By whom have you been prevented from[3] fulfilling your duties? You have need[4] of a brave mind. *It is of great importance to all[5] *to make a right use of time.[6] By whom (*pl.*) were they prevented from[3] discharging the duties of justice? An opportunity being offered, let us do-good to our friends. Shall[7] you deserve greater praise by bearing an injury, or by revenging (it)? O Alexander, having subdued so many nations, learn to subdue your own[8] passion. The naked must be clothed:[9] the hungry satisfied. You must answer[10] to (*ad*) our questions. The army must be drawn-out-in-battle-array.

[1] 'With even mind.' [2] S. 94. [3] S. 43. [4] S. 79. [5] S. 91.
[6] 'To use time rightly.' [7] S. 51, 52. [8] S. 177. [9] S. 163. [10] S. 164.

Exercise 51. [See p. 177.]

Si vis beatus esse, impera libidini, quæ te dies noctesque exagitat, nec unquam patitur tranquillum esse animum. Quum ceteris omnibus ignoveris, mihi uni ignoscere non vis? M. Porcius Cato, quum nollet in civitate vivere, quæ unius imperio parēret, mortem sibi Utĭcæ, (in) oppido Africæ, conscivit: a quo facto Uticensis est appellatus. C. Julius Cæsar dixit, malle sese in minimâ quaque civitate primum esse, quam Romæ secundum. In legibus ferendis hac formŭlâ uti solebant magistratus: *Velitis, jubeatis Quirites?* Sic P. Sulpicius consul rogationem promulgavit: *Vellent juberent Quirites, Philippo regi Macedonibusque,*

qui sub regno ejus essent, ob injurias illatas sociis populi Romani bellum indīci ?—Cicero senex vidit perficere Cæsarem, quod decem et septem annis ante Catilina voluerat, sed vigilantiâ Ciceronis consulis præpĕdītus non potuerat. Non debet legi, qui non vult intelligi. Dic, utrum malis ruri vivere, an in urbe. Malo ruri.—Noli foris quærere, quæ tibi domi parata sunt. Si tales estis, quales vultis videri, bene est: sed sunt, qui malint videri boni, quam esse.

Had- you -rather[1] live in-the-country,[2] or in the city? He is such as[3] he wishes to appear. Lust must be subdued, which will harass you day and night. If you (*pl.*) wish to be happy, your lusts must be subdued. War being proclaimed, we have need[4] of a brave general. If you wish to be such as[3] you seem, it is well. The boys must be admonished to be[5] such as[3] they wish (*subj.*) to appear. No one wishes to be despised by those, whom he-himself loves. Never forget[6] what you owe to your country. Had- you -rather[1] lead a long and inglorious life, or end a glorious life by an early death? Achilles preferred dying[7] in the Trojan war by an early death, to growing-old at-home in an inactive life. I would (*vellem*) you had come[8] to me as a friend: in thee alone had I placed all my hope.

[1] S. 51, 52. [2] See examples under S. 160. [3] Qualis. [4] S. 79.
[5] *Ut* with subj. [6] *Say*, 'be unwilling (noli) ever to forget.'
[7] *To prefer*, malle. *Say*, 'to die—than to-grow-old.'
[8] Subj. governed by *ut* omitted.

Exercise 52.

Gallīnæ cum sole cubĭtum ire dicuntur: at homo, dum recte valet, ante noctem cubitum non ibit. I præ, ego sequar. Ex pugnâ Cannensi admŏdum pauci Romani domum redierunt. Præteribam forte domum tuam, quum magnam hominum frequentiam ex eâ vidi exeuntem. Quærenti mihi quid esset, quod[1] tanta frequentia exiret, respondit aliquis, esse apud te principem aliquem, quem visuri isti venissent. Ineunte vere hirundines redeunt, auctumno in terras calidiores abituræ. Cupio, ut tu et

soror tua quam brevissimo tempore ad nos redeatis: jam enim tertius est annus, ex quo profecti estis. Silvæ, montes, maria transeunda sunt in terras longe remotas proficiscentibus. Cæsar ad tutanda castra fossam fecit decem pedes altam totidemque latam, quam equo aut pedibus superare nequirent hostes. In quacunque re priusquam agas quidquam, vires explōra, ut cognoscas, quid queas, quidve nequeas. Avari perpetua cura exest animum, ne bona sibi eripiantur.

[1] *Quid esset, quod* may be rendered, '*why it was that*;' or '*why*' only.

Is not your little-brother gone[1] to bed? We must follow. We must obey the laws. Must we not obey the laws? We must revile nobody. Flatter nobody. It is-well-known, that *at the beginning of autumn[2] the swallows go-away to (*in*) warmer countries. How-many men did you see coming-out of (*ex*) my house? I will ask, how many men he saw coming-out. Will not the swallows return *at the beginning[3] of spring? Having ascertained your strength,[4] you will learn what[5] you can (*queo*) do. I desire that (*ut*) you should take-away[6] from me[7] my care *in as short a time as possible.[8]

[1] Is gone. See C. 12. [2] *Say*, 'autumn coming-in,' (abl. abs.) [3] *Say*, 'spring coming-in.' [4] Plural. See S. 176. [5] S. 49. [6] Syn. 6. [7] Dat. [8] Quam brevissimo tempore.

Exercise 53. [See *fio*, p. 178.]

Sæpe qui ex pauperibus repente divites fiunt, divitiis uti nesciunt: ita fit, ut brevi tempore, consumptis opibus, in graviorem etiam egestatem relabantur. Contigit Ciceroni, ut eodem anno consul fieret, quo magno periculo patriam liberare, sibique æternam gloriam parare posset. Cicero ait, non posse jucunde vivi,[1] nisi honeste vivatur. Tullus Hostilius, qui Numam Pompilium in imperio sequutus est, ut Livius ait, ferocior etiam Romulo fuit. Cæsarem ajunt morti Pompeii illacrȳmasse, quum abscissum illius caput in patīnâ victori offerretur. Aristippus percontanti, quæ potissimum adolescentibus essent discenda; *Quæ viris*, inquit, *usui futura sunt*. Socrates interrogatus, quinam homines tranquille viverent; *Qui*, inquit, *nullius turpitudinis sibi*

conscii sunt. Pisistrătus, quum convīva bene potus ei maledixisset, irritantibus amicis ad pœnam de convivâ sumendam: *Non magis*, inquit, *illi succenseo, quam si quis obligatis oculis in me incurrisset.*

[1] 'That it cannot be lived pleasantly' = '*that there is no living pleasantly.*' *Nisi vivatur* may be translated '*unless one lives*;' or, '*without living.*'

He is said to have become rich. Having become rich, do not[1] forget those, who did-good to you (when) a poor man. Do not[1] be angry against[2] those who have deserved well of (*de*) you. It has happened[3] to me to free[4] you from[5] great danger. Nothing shall hinder me from[6] doing this. You (*pl.*) would have conquered,[7] if you had waited one day. It is certain that[8] you would have conquered,[9] if you had waited one day. I will wait till[10] you have fulfilled your duty. We have walked[11] enough. Having won[12] for myself eternal glory, I will willingly die. Do not[1] prefer glory to honor.

[1] Be unwilling (to forget—to be angry, &c.:) *noli.* [2] C. 36. [3] Syn. 4. [4] S. 17. [5] S. 128. [6] S. 43. [7] S. 216 [8] S. 16. [9] S. 224. [10] S. 249. [11] S. 141. [12] Parare.

Exercise 54. [See *memini*, &c., p. 178.]

Demōnax interrogatus, quando cœpisset philosophari; *Tum*, inquit, *cum cognoscere me ipsum cœpi.* Phocion innōcens capitis damnatus, rogante quodam ex amicis, numquid filio suo Phoco mandari vellet: *Maxime*, inquit; *jubeo enim eum hujus in patrem injuriæ nunquam meminisse.* Samiorum legatis, longâ oratione usis, responderunt Spartani: *Prima sumus obliti, postrema non intellexīmus,*[1] *quia prima non meminimus.* C. Cæsar Caligula tantâ crudelitate fuit, ut merito Imperatorum Romanorum omnium crudelissimus habeatur. Is quum probe sciret, quanto odio[1] civibus esset, dicere solebat: *Oderint, dum metuant.* Hannibal Romanos sic oderat, ut in gratiam cum illis redire nullo modo posset. Memento etiam ignotis prodesse. Immanis naturæ est,[2] odisse eos, quibus vitam debeas. Quidam scriptores tradiderunt, Saguntum oppidum captum ab Hannibāle esse octavo mense, postquam cœptum est oppugnari.

[1] S. 111. [2] S. 85.

Remember that you[1] are a man: and that all men must die.[2] I hate you so[3] that[4] I cannot be reconciled to you. Remember to pardon all men. Do not[5] hate anybody.[6] In what month did Saguntum begin to be besieged? In what year was Saguntum taken? Do you know in what[7] year Saguntum was taken? *It is of great importance to you[8] to remember that you are a man. Do not[5] make[9] a long speech. Remember to do good to as-many-as-possible.[10]

1 S. 16. 2 S. 164. 3 *Sic.* Let it begin the sentence. 4 S. 17. 5 Noli.
6 Quisquam. See S. 191. 7 S. 49. 8 S. 91. 9 Utor.
10 Quam plurimi.

III. READING LESSONS,

CONSISTING OF

FABLES AND ANECDOTES, &c.

1.

Boves.

PASCEBANTUR una tres boves robusti in maximâ concordiâ. Itaque facile ab omni ferarum incursione tuti erant, ut ne leones quidem aggrĕdi eos auderent. Orto autem inter eos dissidio et solutâ amicitiâ, singuli validioribus bestiis prædæ fuerunt.—Hæc fabula docet, quantum prosit concordia.

2.

Vulpes et Uva.

Vulpes, extremâ fame coacta, uvam appetebat ex altâ vite dependentem. Quam quum, summis viribus saliens, attingere non posset, tandem discedens ait: Nondum matura est, nolo acerbam sumere.—Hoc illi exemplum sumant, qui, quæ facere non possunt, verbis elĕvant.

3.

Cervus ad fontem.

Cervus quum vehementer sitiret, ad fontem accessit, suâque in aquis imagine conspectâ, cornuum magnitudinem et varietatem laudabat, crura vero gracilia et exilia vituperabat. Hæc cogitanti supervĕnit leo. Quo viso, cervus aufŭgit, et leoni longe præcurrit. Et quamdiu in nudâ planitie erat, nullum ei ab hoste imminebat periculum; ubi

vero ad nemus venit opacum, inter virgulta cornibus adhæsit. Ita quum celeritate pedum uti non posset, captus est a leone et misere laniatus. Tum moriturus : *O me desipientem*, inquit. *cui ea displicerent, quæ me servarunt, placerent autem, quæ me perdiderunt !*

4.

Vulpes et Corvus.

Corvus quum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbŏre quadam consedit. Quo conspecto vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit, eumque callidis verbis adorĭtur. O corve, inquit, quam pulchra es avis, quam speciosa ! Te decuit esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regiis virtutibus antecederes, si vocem haberes. His corvus laudibus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur, clamorem edidit, sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit : quam vulpes statim rapuit, atque irrīdens dixit· *Heus, corve ! nihil tibi deest præter mentem.*

5.

Senex et Mors.

Senex quidam ligna in silvâ cecīderat, et, fasce in humeros sublato, domum redire cœpit. Quum autem fatigatus esset et onĕre et itinere, deposuit ligna, et secum considĕrans miserias senectutis et inopiæ, clarâ voce invocavit mortem, ut se ab omnibus malis liberaret. Mox adfuit mors, quid velit interrŏgans. Tunc senex perterritus : *Nihil volo*, inquit, *nisi ut hunc fascem lignorum humĕris meis impōnas.*

6.

Mures et Felis.

Multi mures in cavo pariĕte commorantes, contemplabantur diu felem, quæ capite demisso et tristi vultu placide recumbebat. Tunc unus ex iis : *Hoc animal*, inquit, *admŏdum benignum et mite videtur. Quid, si allŏquar, et familiaritatem cum illo contrăham ?* Hæc quum dixisset et propius accessisset, a fele captus et dilaceratus est. Tunc ceteri hoc videntes secum dicebant *Non est profecto vultui temĕre credendum.*

7.

Auceps et Serpens.

Auceps ibat venatum, et mox vidit in altissimâ arbore palumbem; appropĕrat eum capturus, sed inter eundum premit forte pede altero viperam in herbâ latentem, quæ illum mordet. *Me miserum*, inquit, *dum alteri insidior, ipse dispereo.*

8.

Canis et Lupus.

Cani perpingui lupus occurrit macie confectus. Quum se salutassent, lupus: Quomodo fit, inquit, ut tam pinguis sis, tamque niteas? Ego, multo fortior, fame pereo. Canis respondet: Idem tibi erit, si domino officium præstabis, quod ego præsto, ut servem limen, dominumque noctu a furibus tuear. Tum lupus: Ego vero, inquit, paratus sum; nunc enim patior frigŏra et imbres, in silvis oberrans.— Veni ergo mecum. Dum procedunt, lupus collum canis detrītum adspicit. Quid hoc est? inquit; num jugum fers? Imo, inquit canis, quia acer sum, me interdiu allĭgant; noctu vero vagor, ubi lubet. Num est tibi, inquit lupus, licentia abeundi, quo velis?—Non semper.—*Vale*, respondit ille, *liber esse malo, quam servitutem ferre.*

9.

Rusticus et Filii.

Rustĭcus vicīnus morti, quum relinquere filiis suis divitias non posset, animos eorum excitare voluit ad diligentem agriculturam, assiduitatemque in opere faciendo. Igitur eos ad se vocat et sic alloquitur: Mei filii, quo statu res meæ sint, videtis. Vobis autem, quidquid potui, in vitâ meâ collegi, idque totum in vineâ nostrâ quærere poteritis. Hæc quum dixisset, moritur senex. At filii opinantes, patrem in vineâ thesaurum abscondidisse, arreptis ligonibus universum vineæ solum effodiunt. Et thesaurum quidem nullum invenere, terrâ tamen fodiendo percultâ, vites posthac uberrimos fructus tulerunt.

10.

Equus et Asinus.

Agitabat quidam equum et asinum onustos sarcinis. Asinus defatigatus rogavit equum, ut, si se vivum servare vellet, aliquâ parte oneris se levaret: repudiavit equus preces illius. Paullo igitur post fatigatione et labore consumptus asinus in viâ corruit, et efflavit animam. Tum agitator omnes sarcinas, quas asinus portaverat, atque insuper etiam pellem asino detractam in equum imposuit. Ibi ille deplōrans fortunam suam: Me miserum, inquit, qui parvulum onus in me suscipere gravatus fuerim, quum nunc cogar tantum ferre, accedente etiam pelle comitis mei, cujus preces tam superbe contempseram.

11.

Duo Amici.

Duo amici faciunt iter. Occurrit in itinere ursus, quo conspecto unus illīco arbōrem conscendit, et pericula evītat; alter vero, quum meminisset, illam bestiam cadavera non attingere, humi sese prostravit, simulans, se mortuum esse. Accedit ursus, contrectat jacentem, et os suum ad illius os auresque admōvet. Homine autem spiritum continente, ursus, ratus cadaver esse, discedit. Quum postea socius quæreret, quidnam ei ursus dixisset in aurem, respondit: Monuit, ne amicum esse mihi persuaderem, cujus fidem adverso tempore non fuissem expertus.

12.

Dictum memorabile Socratis.

Quum ex Socrate esset quæsitum, nonne beatum putaret Archelāum, Perdiccæ filium, regem Macedŏnum, qui tum fortunatissimus habebatur? Haud scio, inquit, nunquam enim cum eo colloquutus sum. Ain' tu?[1] an aliter id scire non potes?—Nullo modo.—Tu igitur ne de Persarum quidem rege magno dicere potes, beatusne sit?—An ego possum, inquit, quum ignōrem, quam doctus sit, et num bonus

[1] Ain' tu *for* aisne tu?

vir?—Quid? tu in eo sitam esse vitam beatam putas?—Ita prorsus existimo: *bonos beatos, improbos miseros esse.*—Miser[1] ergo Archelaus?—Certe, si injustus.[1]

13.

Egregie dicta.

Drusus quum ædificaret domum, promitteretque ei architectus, ita se eam ædificaturum,[2] ut nemo in eam despicere posset: *Tu vero*, inquit, *si quid in te artis est, ita compone domum, ut, quidquid agam, ab omnibus perspici possit.*—Plato cuidam narranti, esse quosdam, qui ipsum maledictis insectentur: *At ego*, inquit, *sic vivam, ut nemo istis fidem habeat.*—Epictetus interrogatus, quis esset dives? *Cui*, inquit, *satis est, quod habet.*—Socrates, in pompâ quum magna vis auri argentique ferretur: *Quam multa non desidero!* inquit.—Antoninus Pius hanc celebratam Scipionis sententiam sæpe in ore habebat, *malle se unum civem servare, quam mille hostes interficere.*

14.

Acute dicta.

Agis, rex Lacedæmoniorum, audiens, quosdam horrere hostium multitudinem, ait: *non percontandum esse, quot sint hostes, sed ubi sint.* Idem interrogatus, quot milites haberet? *quot sufficiunt*, inquit, *ad fugandos hostes.*—Quum quidam Lacedæmonios hortaretur, ut bellum Macedonibus inferrent, commemoraretque victorias, quas de Persis reportassent, Eudamidas dixit: *hoc facere, idem esset, ac*[3] *si quis, devictis mille ovibus, cum quinquaginta lupis pugnaret.*—Aristippum philosophum rogavit quidam, ut filium suum erudiret. Quum vero ille pro mercede petiisset quingentas drachmas, pater, deterritus pretio, quod avaro et rudi homini nimium videbatur: *Tanti*, inquit, *emere mancipium possum.* Tum philosophus: *Eme*, inquit, *et habebis duo.*

15.

Libĕre dicta.

Apelles, pictor sui temporis clarissimus, Alexandrum

[1] Sc. est. [2] Sc. esse. [3] As.

pinxerat vehentem equo. Quam imaginem quum rex minus laudaret, quam meruerat artifex, equus Alexandri interea adductus picto equo sic adhinniit, quasi verus esset equus. Tum Apelles: *O rex*, inquit, *equus tuus pingendi peritior, quam tu, videtur esse.*—Alexander olim quum piratam comprehensum interrogaret, quo jure maria infestaret, ille: *Eodem*, inquit, *quo tu orbem terrarum. Sed quia id ego parvo navigio facio, latro vocor; tu, quia magnâ classe et exercitu, imperator.*—Quum in regali solio sederet Crœsus, pretiosissimâ veste indutus, Solonem interrogavit, an quid unquam pulchrius vidisset? *Gallos*, inquit ille, *et phasianos et pavones: naturali enim nec imitabili colore et pulchritudine fulgent.*

16.

Damon et Pythias.

Damon et Pythias, Pythagorēi, tam fidēlem inter se amicitiam junxerunt, ut mori parati essent alter pro altero. Quum eorum alteri Dionysius tyrannus diem necis destinavisset, et is, qui morti addictus esset, paucos sibi dies ad res suas ordinandas postulavisset; vas factus est alter, ut, si ille non revertisset, moriendum esset ipsi. Omnes igitur, et imprimis Dionysius, novæ atque ancipitis rei exĭtum speculabantur. Appropinquante deinde definitâ die, nec illo redeunte, unusquisque stultitiæ tam temerarium sponsorem condemnabat. At vero quum alter ad diem se recepisset, admiratus eorum fidem tyrannus supplicio liberavit eum, qui morte erat plectendus, ac petivit, ut se ad amicitiam tertium adscriberent.

17.

Augustus.

Græcus quidam Augusto, e Palatio descendenti, honorificum aliquod epigramma porrigere solebat, spe præmii. Id quum sæpe frustra fecisset, Augustus eum deterriturus breve epigramma suâ manu exaratum Græculo advenienti obviam misit. Ille, dum legeret, laudabat, et tum voce, tum vultu gestuque mirabatur. Deinde ad sellam accessit, quâ Cæ-

sar ferebatur, paucosque ex crumēnâ denarios protraxit, quos Cæsari daret, dixitque, se plus daturum fuisse, si plus habuisset. Omnes risere; Cæsar autem dispensatorem vocari, et Græco satis magnam pecuniæ summam numerari jussit.

18.

Cyrus minor, rex Persarum.

Quum Lysander Lacedæmonius ad Cyrum minorem, regem Asiæ, Sardes venisset, hic erga Lysandrum in omni re comis atque humanus fuit, atque hortum ei aliquando diligenter consĭtum ostendit. Quum admiraretur Lysander et proceritatem arbŏrum, et ordines, et humum subactam atque puram, et suavitatem odorum, qui efflabantur ex floribus: tum dixit, mirari se non modo diligentiam sed etiam sollertiam ejus, a quo ista dimensa et descripta essent. Cui Cyrus respondit: Atqui ego ista omnia dimensus sum, mei sunt ordines, mea descriptio; multæ etiam istarum arborum meâ manu satæ sunt. Tum Lysander intuens ejus purpŭram et ornatum corpŏris, dixit: Recte vero te, Cyre, beatum ferunt, quoniam virtutem tuam fortuna sequuta est.

19.

Catonis pueri constantia.

Marcus Cato puer in domo avunculi sui, Drusi, tribuni plebis, educebatur. Quum apud eum socii de civitate impetrandâ convenissent, et Quintus Poppedius, Marsorum princeps, eum rogaret, ut socios apud avunculum adjuvaret, constanti vultu respondit, non facturum[1] se. Iterum deinde et sæpius rogatus, in proposito perstitit. Tunc Poppedius puero in altissimam ædium partem sublato minatus est, se eum inde dejecturum,[1] nisi precibus obtemperaret. Sed Cato ne hac quidem re ab incepto depelli potuit. Ita Poppedio vox illa expressa est: Gratulemur nobis, socii, hunc esse tam parvum: quo senatore ne sperare quidem civitatem liceret. Sic ea constantia, quam postea per totam vitam ostendit, jam in puero Catone apparuit.

[1] Se. esse.

20.

Lysimachi fortitudo.

Lysimachus inter duces Alexandri illustri genere, sed longe magis virtute quam genere clarus erat. Quum Alexander Callisthenem philosophum miserandum in modum omnibus membris truncasset, et insuper cum cane in caveâ clausum circumferret, Lysimachus, qui eum audire atque ex ejus ore præcepta virtutis et sapientiæ percipere solitus erat, venenum ei dedit, in remedium calamitatum. Quod adeo ægre tulit Alexander, ut Lysimachum leoni objici juberet. Sed quum leo impetum fecisset in eum, Lysimachus manum amiculo involutam in os leonis immersit, arreptâque linguâ feram exanimavit. Quod quum nuntiatum regi esset, admiratio iræ successit, carioremque habuit propter tantam constantiam.

21.

Animus generosus Fabricii.

Pyrrhi bello maximum exemplum est justitiæ in hostem a Romanis constitutum. Quum enim rex Pyrrhus populo Romano bellum ultro intulisset, quumque de imperio certamen esset cum rege generoso ac potente; perfŭga ab eo venit in castra Fabricii, eique est pollicitus, si præmium sibi proposuisset, se, ut clam venisset, sic clam in Pyrrhi castra rediturum, et eum veneno necaturum. Hunc Fabricius reducendum curavit ad Pyrrhum; idque factum ejus a senatu laudatum est.

22.

Piso Orator et Servus.

Marcus Piso, orator Romanus, servis præceperat, ut tantum ad interrogata responderent, nec quidquam præterea dicerent. Evēnit, ut Clodium, qui tunc magistratum gerebat, ad cœnam invitari juberet. Hora cœnæ instabat; aderant ceteri convivæ omnes, solus Clodius exspectabatur. Piso servum, qui solebat convivas vocare, aliquoties emisit, ut videret, an veniret. Quum denique jam desperaretur

ejus adventus, Piso servo: Dic, inquit, num forte non invitavisti Clodium? Invitavi, respondit ille.—Cur ergo non venit?—Quia venturum se negavit. Tum Piso: Cur id non statim dixisti? Respondit servus: Quia de eo non sum a te interrogatus.

23.

Demosthenes.

Demosthenes causam orans quum judices parum attentos videret: Paullisper, inquit, aures mihi præbete; rem vobis novam et jucundam narrabo. Quum aures arrexissent: Juvenis, inquit, quispiam asinum conduxerat, quo Athenis Megaram profecturus uteretur. In itinere quum sol ureret, neque esset umbracŭlum, deposuit clitellas, et sub asino consedit, ut ejus umbrâ tegeretur. Id vero agāso vetabat, clamans, asinum locatum esse, non umbram asini. Alter quum e diverso contenderet, tandem in jus ambulant. Hæc loquutus Demosthenes, ubi homines diligenter auscultantes vidit, abiit. Tum revocatus a judicibus, rogatusque ut reliquam fabulam enarraret: Quid? inquit, de asini umbrâ libet audire? causam hominis de vitâ periclitantis non audietis?

24.

Scipio Nasīca.

Scipio Nasica quum ad poëtam Ennium venisset, eique, ab ostio quærenti Ennium, ancilla dixisset, domi non esse: Nasica sensit, illam domini jussu dixisse, et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus quum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius, et quum a januâ quæreret, exclamat Nasica, se domi non esse. Tum Ennius: Quid, inquit, ego non cognosco vocem tuam? Hic Nasica: Homo es impŭdens; ego quum quærerem, ancillæ tuæ credidi, te domi non esse; tu mihi non credis ipsi.

25.

Hannibal exsul.

Hannibal exsul ad Antiochum, Syriæ regem, venît. Rex illi in campo ingentes ostendit copias, quas bellum cum

Romanis gesturus comparaverat; exercitum auro et argento fulgentem, equitatum frenis, ephippiis, phalēris splendentem, elephantos denique cum turribus. Tum contemplatione tanti et tam ornati exercitûs gloriabundus Hannibalem adspicit, et: Putasne, inquit, satis esse Romanis hæc omnia? Intelligebat numerum exercitus, quærens, num sufficeret bello Romano. At Hannibal elūdens ignaviam militum pretiose armatorum: Satis plane, inquit, esse credo Romanis hæc omnia, etiamsi avarissimi sint.—Rex de numero quæsierat, respondit Hannibal de prædâ.

26.

Epaminondas.

Epaminondas, dux Thebanorum, quum vicisset Lacedæmonios apud Mantinēam, simulque ipse gravi vulnere exanimari se videret, ut primum dispexit, quæsivit, salvusne esset clipeus? Quum salvum esse flentes sui respondissent: rogavit, essentne fusi hostes? Quumque id quoque, ut cupiebat, audivisset, evelli jussit eam, quâ erat transfixus, hastam. Ita multo sanguine profuso, in lætitiâ et victoriâ est mortuus.

27.

Socrates et Xenophon.

Xenophontem in angiportu obviam habuit Socrates. Quumque videret adolescentem vultu specioso admŏdum et verecundo, porrecto bacŭlo vetuit, ne præteriret. Ut constitit, interrogavit eum Socrates, ubinam venderentur, quæ essent necessaria variis usibus civium? Ad quæ quum expedite respondisset Xenophon, percontatus est, ubinam boni ac probi homines fierent? Id vero nescire se, quum respondisset adolescens: Sequere igitur me, inquit Socrates, et disce. Ex eo tempore Xenophon cœpit esse Socratis auditor, et bonus probusque factus est.

IV. VOCABULARIES

ON

THE EXERCISES.

Numerals refer to Principles of Word-building, p. 181.

Vocabulary to Exercise 7.

Word-building.]—A field-tiller, *from* ager, *root* agr-, *field, and* colo, *till* (agr-i-cŏl-a, G. æ, *husbandman*). To choose-apart, *from* lego, *choose* (dilĭgo, lex, lect, *to love* with preference). To take-to, *from* capio, capĕre (ac-cipio, ac-cipĕre, cēp, cept: *receive*). *Form a stronger verb from* nare *to swim* (nătare, *from root of supine*, 34). To take-before, *from* capere (præ-cĭpĕre, cēp, cept: *to direct* or *instruct* a person to do something).[1] A precept (præceptum). A preceptor *or* teacher (præceptor, 41). To make an ornament, *from* dĕcŏr, *root of* decus, *ornament* (dĕcŏrare, *adorn*). To climb-down, *from* scandere (descendere, scend, scens, *descend*). Descent (descens-us. Of what declens.? 44). Abounding in money, *from* pecunia, *money* (pecuniosus, *moneyed*, 102).

Hodie (= hoc die,) *to-day*. Pensum, *task* (properly *that which is weighed out;* from pendĕre, to weigh).

Vocabulary to 8.

Word-building.]—*From* hortus, *garden, form* little-garden (hort-ŭlus, 66). *From* flōr-, *root of* flos, *flower, form* to flow-

[1] Perhaps because he who gives directions must have *first taken*, that is, *understood* them, himself. Capere, *to take*, is often used in the sense of *understanding*, of *taking in* the whole of a notion:—'Quod mentes eorum *capere* possent.' Liv. ix. 9.

er (flor-ēre, *blossom, flourish*, 39). *Form* to begin to blossom *or* flourish (florescere, *come into flower*, 36). *Form* abounding in *mores; that is*, in peculiar manners *or* humors (mōr-ōsus, 102, *morose, peevish, ill-humored*). *From* emĕre, to buy, *form* buying *or* purchase (emptio, 43)—buyer (emptor). *Form* to-take-into *from* capere (incipere, cēp, cept: *to take in hand, to begin*). A thing begun, an undertaking (inceptum). To fight-out, *from* pugnare, *to fight* (ex-pugnare: *to take a city, to win-by-arms*). The taking *of a city* (expugnatio).

Vocabulary to 9.

Word-building.]—I. *From* tegere, *cover, form* that which is covered (tectum: *roof, house*). To make an end: to finish, *from* fin- (fīnire). To act as a guard, *from* custōd, *root of* custos, *keeper, guard* (custodire, *to guard*).

Sacramentum,[1] the *military-oath* by which a soldier bound himself.

II. *From* superbus, proud, *form* to be proud; to act-proudly (superbire). *Form a strengthened verb from* cant, *supine root of* canere, *to sing*, (cantare, *to sing*). An inhabitant of Tarentum; a Tarentine (Tarentīnus). *From* vastus, *waste, form* to make waste; to lay waste (vastare)

Vocabulary to 10.

Word-building.]—I. *Form an intensive from* cĭt, *supine root of* ciēre (cĭtare, *to set in violent motion*, 34). To set in motion again; call forth again (recĭtare; *recite*, to call forth, as it were, a dead writing to new activity or life). To call-forth-into activity (ex-citare,[2] *excite, awake*). *Form a trans. verb from* cura, *care* (curare, 33, *take-care-of*). *Form an intensive from* spect, *supine root of* spicere, *to look* (spectare, *look*, 34). To look-out, (exspectare, *expect, wait for*). To come-to, approach (advenire). Approach (adventus, 44). A *trans. verb from* nuntius, *news* (nuntiare, *to announce*). *A subst. from supine root of* equitare, *to ride* (equitatus, *riding, cavalry*).

[1] Sacer, *devoted to the gods*, whether as *sacred*, or as *accursed:* hence sacrare, *to make sacred*, or *to make accursed:* sacramentum, *that which makes a man accursed*, if he violates it.

[2] Spem excitare is *to raise* a hope.

Nuncupare (*probably from* nomine capere) *is used* of solemnly and formally pronouncing a man's name, for instance in naming a man one's heir, &c.

VOCABULARY TO 11.

Word-building.]—I. To make sound, *from* sanus (sanare, *to cure*). Reading; perusal, *from* lect, *supine root of* legere (lectio, 43). *From* quærere, *seek, form* to seek-to (ac-quirere, quisiv, quisĭt: *seek to myself, gain, earn,* &c.).

[Voc. on some Verbs that form their perf. in *i*.]

To help-to (ad-jŭvare, *to assist*). To move-to (admŏvēre). To see-into (in-vĭdēre, *envy*). To come to (advĕnire). To come-upon (in-venire; *to find, invent:* of things *not sought*). To drink-out; drink-up (ebĭbĕre, 11). To eat-up (com-ĕdĕre, 7). To do-thoroughly (per-fĭcĕre, fēc, fect, *perform, complete,* 16). To give *or* put to (ad-dĕre, addidi, additum, *add*). To give *or* put round (circum-dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *surround*). To stand-before (præ-stăre, præ-stĭti, præstātum, *to be better, excel,—perform.*—præstare se, *show* or *prove* oneself). To promise-back (re-spondēre, re-spondi, sponsum: generally *to answer*). To learn thoroughly (ediscere, *learn by heart*). To touch-to (attingere, tĭgi, tactum, *reach*).

☞ OBS. Oc-cĭdo, occĭdi, oc-cāsum, *fall, perish—set* = (ob-cădo).
Oc-cīdo, oc-cīdi, oc-cīsum, *slay* = (ob-cædo).

VOCABULARY TO 12.

Word-building.]—I. *Abstract subst. from* diligens (dili gentia, 61). *Adv. from sup. root of* stare (stat-im, 123, *im mediately:* that is, *while you are standing where you are*[1]) Act-of-going-within; passage into; entrance (intro-ĭtus 44). To come-thoroughly (per-vĕnire, *arrive at*). To sit against (ob-sīdēre, sēd, sess, *besiege*). To-hither, hither-to (ad-huc). Bravely, courageously, *from* fortis (fortiter, 121).

[1] So the Germans use *stehenden Fusses* (on standing foot) for *immediately*.

[Go through the degrees of comparison of fortiter (fortius, fortissime).]

II. Exercise *from* exercit, *sup. root of* exercēre (exercitus, *that which is exercised; army*). To climb-to, *from* scandere (ad-scendere: scend, scens). Ascent (ad-scensus, 44). One who says-law (jū-dex *for* jus-dex, 129). Judgment (ju-dicium, 137). To set-loose-from: free-from (ab-solvere; solv, solūt: *acquit*). Acquittal (ab-solūt-io, 43). To do-completely (con-ficere, fēc, fect: *put-an-end-to; accomplish*).

Vocabulary to 13.

Word-building.]—I. *Abst. subst. from* multus (mult-i-tūdo, 63). Commander, *from* imperare (imperator, *commander-in-chief*).[1] One who feeds, *from* past, *sup. root of* pascere (pastor). To cause flight, *from* fūga (fugare, *put-to-flight; rout*). A little needle, *from* acus (aculeus: *thorn*, 66). Un-certain (in-certus).

Ater, *black:* atrare, *to make black:* atramentum, *that which makes black;* or, *is made black; ink.*

[Vocabulary on Verbs forming their perfect in *si.*]

To write-down (de-scrībere: *copy, describe*). To pluck-from (de-cerpere, cerps, cerpt: *pluck, gather*). To take-completely (con-sūmere, *consume, waste*). To wait-behind (re-mānēre). To fore-tell (præ-dīcere). To lead out (e-dūcere). To look-to (ad-spĭcere, spex, spect: *behold*). To fix-through (trans-fīgere, *transfix*). To rule- or direct-out (e-rĭgere, rex, rect: *erect*). To un-cover; discover (de-tĕgere). To shut-back; unshut (re-cludere, clūs, clus: *open*). To sprinkle-to (ad-spergere, spers, spers: *sprinkle*). To yield-back (re-cēdere, *retire, withdraw*). To press-against (op-prĭmere, press, press: *oppress; fall-upon* an enemy unexpectedly with a *crushing* force). To burn-completely (com-būr-ĕre,[2] 7). To shake-thoroughly, *from* quatio (con-cŭtĕre, concutio, cuss, cuss, *to shake*).

[1] Given as a title to a *victorious* Roman general.
[2] The *b* belongs to the original root, as appears from our *burn*.

Vocabulary to 14.

Word-building.]—I. To bestow in different directions, *from* tribuĕre (dis-tribuere). An Athenian, *from* Athēnæ (Athēniensis, 94).

Pro-vinc-ia, *province*—a country gained by *onward conquest:* pro, vincere.

II. To go-out (exire, ex-eo). A good-deed, benefit (beneficium, 139). To bind-down (de-vincire, *oblige: bind* a man by services rendered him). That which is dug out; trench, *from* foss, *sup. root of* fodere (foss-a).[1] Act *or* state of knowing; thing known, *from* nōt, *sup. root of* noscere (nōtio, *notion*).

Vocabulary to 15.

Word-building.]—I. To go against *or* into (in-vādĕre). Carthaginian, *from Carthago* (Carthaginiensis, 94). One who is in the state of having been taken (capt-īvus, 115, *captive*). Manliness, *from* vir (virtūs, 65: *courage, excellence, virtue*). Blandishment, *from* blandire, *verb from* blandus (blandīmentum, 49). Body of citizens; state, *from* cīvis (cīvitas, 69). One who takes-first, *from* primus *and* capere (prin-ceps, 130; *prince, chief:* also as adject. *first*). *Subst. from* princeps, *to express the thing* (principium, *beginning*, 138). *Abst. subst. from* inops[2] (inopia, 61, *want of resources; want; destitution*). Muddy, *from* lutum, *mud* (lut-u-lentus, 103). To draw-together, (contrahere). Remains, *from* reliquus, *left* (reliquiæ). Inhabitant-of-a-town, *from* oppĭdum (oppidanus, 96).

☞ (1) Sta-gnum (that *which is of a standing nature;* sta-gĕn-um. See 135, and note), *pool, pond.*

(2) Căcūmen [=acū-men, *from* acuere, *to sharpen* (see 48), with prefixed *c*], a *sharp, pointed summit: top* of trees, &c.

(3) Legatus (*past part. from* legare, *to delegate*), (1) *an ambassador,* (2) *a lieutenant-general.*

II. One who belongs *or* is subject to death (mort-ālis

[1] Properly fem. partic. agreeing with terra.
[2] Derivation of inops? [in *not;* opes *resources.*]

90). **Emptiness, vanity,** *from* vanus (vanitas, 60). **Bitterness,** *from* acerbus, *bitter* (acerbitas). **That which is enjoyed,** *from* fruct, *sup. root of* fruor (fruct-us, 44: *produce, fruit*, especially of trees). **To bend-inwards** (in-flectere, *bend-down; bend*). **To shine-back; *or* shine much** (refulgēre, *shine*). **Conspiracy,** *from* con-jurare, *to-swear-together* (con-juratio).[1] **Relating to Catiline**[2] (Catilin-arius; *Catilinarian*, or *Catiline's*, gen.). **Change,** *from* mutare to *change* (mutatio). **To flow-together** (con-fluere). **To send-together** (com-mittere).

Committere prœlium (to send the battle together—followed by *cum*) may be variously rendered: to *join battle with: to engage; to commence* the engagement; to *give battle* (to), &c.

Jug-um (that which *joins* or *is joined*, from *jug*, simpler root of *jungere*) (1) *yoke*, (2) *range*, i. e. *connected* line, a *chain* (of hills, &c.)

[Vocab. on some Verbs with perf. *ui* and *vi*.]

***Compound of* ad *and* tonare** (at-tonare: part. attonītus, thunder-struck; astounded). **To be very-silent,** *from* tacere (re-ticēre, *to be silent about; say nothing-about*).[3] **To hold-back** (re-tinēre; also *retain*). **To snatch out of** (eripere, ripui, reptum).

Vocabulary to 16.

Word-building.]—I. ***From what does*** cubīle, *bed, couch*, **come?** (cub-are, *to lie down.*) ***Form an abstr. substantive from*** milit, *root of* miles, *soldier* (militia, 61; *miles* being an *adjective-substantive*). **Uncultivated,** *from* cultus, *part. of* colo (in-cultus, *rude, uncivilized*). **Draw-forth; draw-out** (pro-dūcere). **Stroke,** *from* ict, *sup. root of* icere, *to-strike* (ictus, 44).

Illustris (in-luc-stris, *dwelling-in-light*, 112), *illustrious*. Lacūnar, *a panelled ceiling*,[4] usually gilt· from lacuna, a *hole*, from its *sunk* panels.

[1] Derivation of con-spiracy? [Con-spirare, to breathe together.]
[2] Catiline was a profligate Roman nobleman.
[3] To hold one's tongue, *when one has something to say*, D. The re- may perhaps indicate that the speaking would have been in *reply* to some conduct, charge, &c., of another person.
[4] Or a fret-work roof.

II. *Abstr. subst. from* libet (lib-īdo, 46, lust). To sound-back-again (re-sonare, *resound*). Clamor; shouts, *from* clamare (clam-or, 42). Boyish, *from* puer (puerilis, 89). Joy; gladness, *from* lætus (lætitia, 62). Blame, *subst. from* reprehens, *sup. root of* reprehendere (reprehensio). To make a present, *from* don-um (donare, *to present*). Fearful; timorous, *from* pav-ēre (pav-idus, 82). One who has-fled-across, *from* trans *and* fugere (trans-fūga, 58: *deserter*).

On high, *in sublime*, or *sublime* only.[1]

Vocabulary to 17.

Word-building.]—*Subst. from* audāc, *root of* audax, *bold, daring* (audacia, *boldness, daringness, courage*). Immortality, *from* mortalis (im-mortalitas). Prudence, *from the adj.* prudens (prudentia). That which is paid, *neut. partic. from* tribuere (tributum: *tribute*). *To place-on: impose* (im-ponere). *Adj. from* Cannæ (Cannensis, 94). Of gold; golden, *from* aurum (aureus, 98). To have-often, *from* habere (habit-are, 35: hence *to occupy regularly: to dwell-in*). Consolation, *from* solāt, *root of* solari (solatium, 56). To give-forth (pro-mittere: hence *to promise*). *Verbal subst. from* in, *against, and* petere, *to seek, aim at*, &c. (impĕtus; which is singular in not being formed from the root of the *supine:* it is of the fourth).

Jūmentum (for *jug-mentum*,[2] an animal that is *yoked*), *a beast of burden.*

Viam terere, to *wear* a road: to *travel* it often.

II. A contest, *from* certare[3] (certamen, 48). Age, *from* vetus (vetustas, 60). To move-from, *from* cedere (decēdĕre).

Sermo (related to *serere*, to connect), *discourse.*

Vocabulary to 18.

Word-building.]—I. To grow-down (de-crescere, *decrease:* of the moon, *to wane*). To burst-forth, (prorumpere). Youth, *as abstr. subst. from* juvenis (juven-tūs, tūtis, 65)

[1] Cicero always used *sublime* without *in.*

[2] Or possibly for *juva-mentum* or *jut-mentum, a help;* an animal used by man to *assist* him in his labors. The derivation from *jugum* is the more probable one.

[3] Certare is properly *to make sure*, from *certus;* a *contest* being for the *settling* of some disputed point.

Old-age, *from* senex (senectūs,[1] tūtis). *To leave-from* (de-linquere, *to sin, transgress. Hence,* delictum, *a sin; a transgression*). The office of Consul (Consulatus, G. us; 68: *consulship*).

II. To grow cool, *from* fervescere, *to grow hot* (de-fervescere, ferbui and fervi). Without care (secūrus, 23). *Abstr. subst from* concors (concordia; *concord, harmony*). To place-back, *from* statuere (restituĕre, stitu, stitūt, *restore*). Long, *as adj. from* diu, *for a long time* (diuturnus, 117). To burst-completely (cor-rumpĕre, 7: *corrupt*). To drive-under, *from* agere (sub-igere, *subdue*). Wickedness, *from the anomalous adj.* nequam, *wicked* (nequitia). To give-away (de-dĕre; dedere se, to *give oneself up* to, &c.: to *surrender*).

Quantopere (quanto opere: *with how much work*), *how much.* Securus ago, *I live in security* (vitam, *life*, understood). Neg-otium (nec-otium, *not leisure*), *business, affair.*

Vocabulary to 19.

Word-building.]—I. Writer, *from* scribere (scriptor, *author*). Writing (scriptum, *neut. partic.*). To stand-out (ex-stare, -stiti, *to be extant*). *Abstr. substantive from* elegans (elegantia). To yield-thoroughly (concedere). Truly, *from* verus, *true* (verē). That which is sharpened; point, *from* acuere (acūmen, 48: *sharpness, acuteness*). *Abstr. substantives from* utilis, innocens (utilitas, *utility, usefulness, use:* innocentia, *innocence*). To show-from (de-monstrare: *to show, to prove*). *Adj. from* domus, *home* (domesticus, *domestic, private*). Relating to a family (familiaris). Joking, *from* jocari (jocabundus, 80). *Abstr. substantives from* gravis *and* sevērus (gravitas, *gravity;* severitas, *seriousness*). To place-together (componere, *arrange, adjust*). Oratorical (oratorius). To dis-connect, *from* serere, *to join* (dis-serere, *to discuss:* the object of a discussion being to *separate* a thing from what it was mixed and confounded with). To place-before (pro-ponĕre). To establish-in (instituere, stitu, stitut: *to institute; to train*). *Abstr. subst. from* or-iri, *to arise* (orīgo, 47, *origin*). To draw-down (de-ducere, *to con-*

[1] Which seems to show that the gen. was originally senec-is.

tinue in unbroken order to a lower point; *continue*). Relating to citizens, *from* civis (civīlis, 89: *civil*). To cast-under, *from* jacĕre (sub-jicĕre, jēc, ject). To conquer-down (de-vincere, *conquer*). To become illustrious, *from* clarus (claresco; inclaresco; -clarui, *become famous*).

Res gestæ, affairs carried on; *exploits, achievements, successes.*

Modo—modo, *at one time—at another:* or *now—now.*

Ad—usque, *quite up to: up to;* or *down to.*[1]

II. To become known, *from* nōt, *sup. root of* nosco (notesco; in-notesco, notui). To commission-together, i. e. to bring together by a charge given to each, *from* mandare[2] (com-mendare, *to recommend;* to *introduce* by a commendatory letter, &c.) To touch-together, *from* tangere (con-tingere, -tĭgi, as intrans. *to fall-to-the-lot-of*).[3] A turning, *from* vertere (versus, *a verse*).[4] To knock against, *from the old verb* fendere, (offendere, *offend*). Fertility, *from* uber, *fertile* (ubertas, 60).

VOCABULARY TO 20.

Word-building.]—I. To come-forth (pro-vĕnire, to *grow*). To enlighten-completely, *from* lustrare (collustrare). To send-down (de-mittĕre). To-strengthen-thoroughly, *from* firmare (con-firmare).

II. A little-brother (fratercŭlus, 66). To make free, *from* liber (lĭberare). *Form* proudly, *from* superbus, *proud* (superbē):—unjustly, *from* in-justus (in-justē):—bitterly, *from* acerbus, *bitter* (acerbē). *Form an intensive from* tract, *sup. root of* trahere (tractare, *to treat*). To despise-completely, *from* temnere (contemnere, temps, tempt). Asking, question, *from* interrogare (interrogatio).

By sea and land, terrâ marique.

To wrong a man, or do a wrong-to, aliquem injuriâ afficĕre.

Unless I am deceived, nisi animus me fallit.

[1] Derivation of *publicus?* [populicus, *pop'licus.*]
[2] If mando = manui do, commendare is to bring together, by putting one in the other's hands.
[3] See Syn. 4.
[4] This alludes to the old way of *turning back* at the end of a line, and writing the opposite way.

Vocabulary to 21.

Word-building.]—I. *Form abstr. subst. from* super-stĭt, *root of* superstes[1] (super-stitio). To have- a thing -forth, *that is* away from, *from* habere (prohĭbēre, hibu, hibĭt; to *ward-off, prevent*). Knowledge; *from* cognit, *sup. root of* cognoscere (cognitio). Piety, *from* pius (pietas, 60). Not to know, *from* scire (ne-scire). To be-waiting-on, *or* against, *from* manere (immĭnēre). It stands-before (præstat, *it is better*). Not friendly, *from* amīcus (in-imīcus, *hostile:* as subst. *enemy*). Believable, *from* credere (credibilis, *credible*). Incredible (incredibilis).

Prorsus (pro-versus, *for-wards*), *thoroughly, quite.*
Utinam[2] (uti-nam) *would that* (with subj.).

II. It falls-to, *from* cadere (accĭdit, *it happens, it happened*). To drive-into (impellere; pŭl, puls: *impel*). To give-forth (pro-dere, didi, ditum, *betray*). To cultivate thoroughly (ex-colĕre, *cultivate*). To come-together (con vĕnire, trans. *to visit*). Verb of the first conjug. *from* vigil *awake* (vigilare, *to be awake; to watch*). Cruelly, *from* crudelis (crudeliter).[3] From-thence (de-inde, *thenceforth; then*). To-thither (ad-eo, *so*). Knowledge, *from* sciens, *knowing* (scientia: conscientia; *consciousness, conscience*).

Vocabulary to 22.

Word-building.]—I. Strong, *from* robur, *strength* (robustus, 109). To give *or* put together (condere, didi, ditum (1) *to hide*, (2) *to found*). To speak-against (contradicere *contradict*). To make-forward (pro-fĭcĕre, fēc, fect, *to make progress*).

Quo-mŏdo (in what manner), *how.*
Iterum, a second time; once more; again.
Nihil curare, not to care *at all.*
Succensēre, *to be angry*, does not come from *censeo*, but from *succensus*, kindled, *part.* of *succendĕre*. just as *denseo*, from *densus*.

[1] *Superstes* was perhaps used absolutely, as *superstes sui*, one who has *survived himself:* hence *superstitio* expresses the *childish weakness* of such a person.
[2] Uti is '*that*,' and *nam* is a strengthening affix, added to many interrogatives, &c. Hence *utinam* is properly, '*that* it were so!' 'Oh *that* it were so!'
[3] Give the degrees of comparison of *crudeliter* [*crudelius, crudelissime.*]

II. To run-against (oc-currere, *to meet*). To come-to (ad-venire). To be wondered-at; *from* mirari (mirabilis.)

How short, *quam brevis, -e.*

Negligere (=nec legere, *not to pick up*), *to neglect; disregard.*

Insidiæ (in-sedēre), *a sitting down against* a man; *a plot*, &c.

Insidias struere, *to waylay, plot against*, &c.

Vocabulary to 23.

Word-building.]—I. Relating to Marius; Marius's (Marianus). One who is opposite, *from* adversus (adversarius). To act as a minister (ministrare: administrare, *to administer*). Worth, *from* dignus, *worthy* (dignitas, *dignity*). To hold-against, i. e. *against other claimants or opponents* (obtinēre, *obtain*). To establish-completely, *from* statuere (constituere, stitu, stitūt; *resolve, determine*). Envy, *from* invīdēre, *to see into* or *against* (invidia). That which is enjoyed, *from* fruct, *sup. root of* frui (fructus, *profit, advantage*). To press-in, *from* premere (im-primere, *impress*). To receive-thoroughly (per-cipere, cep, cept, *to receive*).

Per-pet-uus, *perpetual:* from *per* and *petere* (in the meaning of *to aim at; to endeavor, to arrive at,*) that which is (*throughout* =) *ever endeavoring to arrive* at some object.

II. To take-away-quite,[1] *from* emere, *to take* (per-imere, ēm, empt: *to carry off*, spoken of *diseases*, &c.) To make-thoroughly (efficere, fēc, fect: *bring to pass; cause*). Abounding in leisure, *from* otium (otiosus). To hold-together, *from* tenēre (contīnēre, *keep, detain*).

To speak the truth, verum dicere.

Voluntas (volo, *am willing*), *will.*

Re-cūsare (re-caus-are), *to give causes* or *excuses against: to refuse.*

Vocabulary to 24.

Word-building.]—I. *Form an intensive from* occult, *sup. root of* occulere, *to hide* (occultare, *to hide*). To take-from

[1] Or *per* has here a *depravative* meaning: to take away *prematurely*, by *bad means*, &c.

(de-cipere, io, cēp, cept, *deceive*). *Abstr. subst. from* pot-, *root of the obsolete* potis, *able* (potestas, *power*). To send-away (a-mittere, *to lose*). Freedom, *from* liber, *free* (libertas). To fall-into, *from* cadere (in-cīdere, cĭd). To throw-across (trā-jicĕre, jēc, ject: *to cross—army* being understood). To fly-away (au-fugere, io.) Otherwise, *from* ali, *root of* alius (aliter).

Re-cuperare, *related to* cap-ere, *recover*.

II. Very-narrow, *by adding a prefix to* angustus (per angustus). To choose-out, *from* legere (e-ligere, lēg, lect). To go-out, i. e. *out of the way of* (e-vadere, vās, vās).

Ef-fig-ies (*ex* and *fig*, shorter root of *fingere*, to fashion), *a likeness; a statue.*

Vocabulary to 25.

Word-building.]—I. To have-to (ad-hibēre, ui, ĭtum; *use, employ*). Sorrow, *from* mœrēre (mœror, 42). Repentance, *from* pœnitens (pœnitentia). *Adv. from* vehemens (vehementer, *violently, earnestly*). *Give its degrees of comparison* (vehementius, vehementissime). Madness, rage, *from* furere (furor, 42). To excite-completely, *from* cīt, *sup. root of* ciēre (con-cītare: *to excite, rouse*). To hold-from (abs-tinēre, *abstain from*). Not easy, difficult, *from* facilis (dif-ficilis, 10). To judge, *from* judic, *root of* judex (judĭcare, *to judge*). A sin, *neut. part. from* peccare (peccatum).

Cautus, *cautious; from* caut, *sup. root of* cavere, to beware.

E-mend-are (e, mendum, *blemish, fault*), *to remove a fault.* Emendatissimus *most nearly faultless*

Quam-vis (*how-you-please:* vis, *2d sing. from* volo), *however; however much; although.*

Tan-quam (tam-quam, *so—as*), *as if.*

II. Valuable, *from* pretium (pretiosus, *precious*). Beauty, *from* pulchr- (pulchr-itūdo). Bountifulness, goodness, *from* benignus (benignitas). Clemency, mercy, *from* clemens (clementia). To stand-through (per-stare, stĭt, stat: *persist*). To do-enough (satis-facere, *satisfy*). *Adv. from* facilis (facilĕ.)

Quidni? (quid-ni, *what unless?*) *why not? why should we not?*

Quanquam (quam-quam), *although.*

VOCABULARY TO 26.

Word-building.]—I. To bridle, *from* frenum, *bridle* (frenare). Bridled-out, i. e. having the bridle let loose (ef-frenatus: *unbridled*). Passionateness, *from* iracundus, *passionate* (iracundia: *anger*, as a *temper* of which *ira* is one outbreak). Relating to Varius; of Varius (Varianus). To cry-out (ex-clamare). Lightness, frivolity, *from* lĕvis, *light* (levitas). Hungry, *from* fames, *hunger* (famelĭcus, *starving*). To allot-back, to give-back (re-tribuĕre). To stretch-on (in-tendere, tend, tens: *exert*).

Centurio (centum, *a hundred*), an officer over 100 men: *a centurion.*

Aciem instruere, *to draw up in line of battle.*

Retribuere gratiam (*to return gratitude*), *to recompense.*

II. To begin to be completely well, *from* valēre (convalescere, 36). One-who-wishes-well (bene-vŏlus, *benevolent, beneficent*). *Abstr. subst. from* benevolus (benevolentia, *as if from* bene-volens). *Abstr. subst. from* honestus (honestas, *good-conduct*). Suddenly, *from* sŭbitus (subito).

Quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

VOCABULARY TO 27.

Word-building.]—I. Dwelling in heaven, heavenly, *from* cœlum (cœlestis, 110). Relating to man, human, *from* hom-o (humanus). Not-pious, impious (impius). To learn-to (ad-discere, *to learn something additional.*)

Invĭcem (in vicem), *mutually;* to be rendered '*one another.*'

II. Cultivation, *from* cult, *sup. root of* colere (cultūra). One who dwells-in, *from* colere (in-cŏla, *inhabitant*).

Æque ac, (*equally and* =) *equally as; just as; as much as; as.*

Colonus (*from* colere), *farmer.*

Vocabulary to 28.

Word-building.]—I. To grow-ripe, to ripen, *from* maturus (maturescere). That which nourishes, *from* nutrire (nutrimentum, *nourishment*). Cultivator, *from sup. root of* colere (cult-or). Strong, *from* val-ēre (validus, 104). Compassion, *from* misericors (misericordia). Inconsiderateness, *from* considerans, *partic. of* considerare (in-considerantia). Not-never (non-nunquam, *sometimes*). To come around (circum-venire, *circumvent*). *Adv. from* segnis (segniter). To restrain-together, *from* arcēre (co-ercēre). To make-crowded, *from* frequent, *root of* frequens (frequentare, *to frequent*).

Illecēbra (il-licĕre, *entice*), *enticement, allurement.*

Auctumnus (*from* auct, *sup. root of* aug-ēre, *to increase*), *Autumn.*[1]

II. To cover-about (ob-tegere, *to cover*). *Adv. from* lætus (lætē). To blossom-forth (ef-florescere, *put forth their blossoms*). To make-ripe *or* ripen, *from* maturus (maturare). To devour-down (de-vorare, *consume*). Difficulty (difficultas). To snatch-away, *from* rapere (ab-ripere).

Vocabulary to 29.

Word-building.]—I. To take-back (re-cip-ere, cēp, cept, *recover*).

From statuere, *to place, establish, form compounds with* in, con (instituere; constituere).

Re-med-ium (*re* and *med*, root of *mederi*, to heal), *remedy*

II. To hold-a-different-way-from (distinēre, *withhold, prevent*). To leave-behind (re-linquĕre, liqu, lict). To make-common, *from* vulg-us (vulg-are). To make common in different directions (di-vulgare, *divulge*). To do-to (afficĕre, fec, fect). *Form intensive from* vent, *sup. root of* venire (ventare: ad-ventare, *to be approaching*). To pray-out (ex-orare, *to prevail upon by prayers*).

[1] Note. The names of the months are *adjectives:* hence '*in the month of January,*' mense *Januario.*

To hold-up (sus-tinēre, *sustain*).

Form intensive from sup. root of jacĕre (jactare).

To draw up an army in order of battle, aciem instruere (strux, struct).

As quickly as possible, quam celerrime.

Vocabulary to 30.

Word-building.]—I. To go-back (red-ire; red-eo: *return*). To make obscure, *from* obscurus (obscurare). To lead-to (ad-dūcere). To send-back (re-mittere, *remit*). To cast-back, *from* jacĕre (re-jicere, *reject*). To choose-apart (dı-ligere, lēg, lect, *to love*, i. e. with preference). Very-illustrious, *from* clarus (præ-clarus, 18).

Im-bēcillis (in, *upon;* bacillum, *staff, stick*), *weak.*

Su-spicio (*a looking under*, to see if any thing is concealed; or, *a looking secretly*), *suspicion.*

II. To be very earnest, *from* per-sevērus (perseverare, *intrans.* to *persist, persevere*). Born-together (co-gnatus,[1] *related;* as subst. *relation*). To dis-connect, *from* sĕrere (de-serere, -rui, -rtum, *desert*). To place-behind (post-ponere, posu, posĭt). To laugh-down (deridēre, rīs, rīs, *deride*). To lead-away (de-ducere). To remain-through-out (per-manēre, mans: *continue*). To fight-against (im-pugnare). Diligently, *from* diligens (diligenter). Standing, *from* stare (statio, *military post*).[2] To place in different directions (disponere, *arrange, dispose*). To cast back (re-jicere, io: of an enemy, *drive back*).

Lăbefactare (labare, facere), *to make to totter.*

Vocabulary to 31.

Word-building.]—I. Abounding in fables (fabulosus, *fabulous*). Having much of fair appearance, *from* species (speci-osus, *specious, plausible*). To give completely (con-donare, *to pardon, to grant*). Deceitful, *from* fallere (fallax, 85). To give-across, *from* dare (trā-dere, dĭd, dit: *to deliver*). To weave-together (con-texere, -xui, -xtum, *in-*

[1] *Gnatus*, part. of *gnascor*, the older form of *nascor: gnascor = genascor:* with root *gen*, as in γίνος, γεννάω, &c.

[2] '*Guards*' may be translated by *stationes.*

terweave). *Abstr. subst. from* pravus (prāvitas). To do-in (in-ficere, *to stain*). Injustice, *from* in-justus (in-justitia).

De-lir-are (lira, *a furrow*), *to go out of the furrow*: hence *to be foolish, crazy*, &c.

Prorsus (pro-versus, *for-wards*), *entirely, quite.*

Quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

II. Custom, *from* consuet, *sup. root of* con-suescere (con-suetudo). Exercising; exercise, *from* exercitare, *intensive from* exercēre (exercitatio). To strengthen-completely, *from* robor, *root of* robur, *strength* (cor-roborare). Liberality, *from* liberalis (liberalitas). To move-completely (com-mŏvēre). To strike-to (af-fligere, flix, flict). To make a heap, *from* cumulus (cumulare). To press-against, *from* prĕmere (op-primere, press, *oppress*). To make a number, to count, *from* numerus (numerare). To reckon-to (ad-numerare, *to reckon-amongst*).

Vocabulary to 32.

Word-building.]—I. To make a race, *from* gener, *root of* genus (generare, *to beget*). Severity, gravity, *from* sevērus (severitas). Dwelling on the earth (terrestris). To join-apart (sejungere, *separate*). To make an end, *from* terminus (terminare, *end, terminate*).

Rē-fert = *rei*, fert, i. e. *ad rem* fert; it bears to the matter, *is of importance*, &c.

Inter-est, *it is between*; so, that is, as to make a *difference: it matters, concerns, is of importance.*

II. To make firm (firmare). To take back, *from* pre-hendere, *to seize hold of* (re-prehendere, *blame*).

☞ *Guards* in this exercise is to be translated by excubiæ; *force* by præsidium.

Excubiæ (ex, *out*; cubare, *to lie*), *a watch, a body of guards watching.*

Præ-sid-ium (præ, *before*, sedēre, *to sit*—that which *sits before* to protect).

VOCABULARY TO 33.

Word-building.]—Con-nūbium (con-nubere, *to marry*), *marriage*. Pro-miscuous (pro ; misc-eo, *mix*), *that which is mixed forth ; promiscuous, mixed.*

Re-nov-are, to *re-new.*

VOCABULARY TO 34.

Word-building.]—I. To do-thoroughly (con-ficere : *pass* confici, *to be worn-out*).

Com-mŏdus (con, modus, *manner*), *convenient, suitable*, &c. : neut. *an advantage.*

II. *Form intensive from* oblect, *sup. root of* ob-licere (oblectare, *to delight, beguile*). To entice thoroughly (pellicere, lex, lect, *entice*).

VOCABULARY TO 35.

Word-building.]—Act of ruling, *from* dominari, *to rule* (dominatio, *rule, dominion*). *Adv. from* publicus, *public* (publice, *publicly, at the public expense*). To frighten away (de-terrēre, *deter*). Not good, wicked, *from* probus (imprŏbus).

Res-publica (see p. 136, 128).

VOCABULARY TO 36.

Word-building.]—I. To cast under, *from* jacĕre (subjicĕre, jec, ject : *subject, subdue*). To make myself turned-towards, *from* ad-versus, *turned towards, partic. of* advertere (adversari : *to stand opposite to ; to oppose*). To give help, *from* auxilium, *help* (auxiliari, *to help, to assist*). To make myself a companion, *from* comit,[1] *root of* comes, *companion* (comitari). *Trans. deponent verb from* insidiæ, *a plot* (insidiari, *to plot against*). *Trans. verb from* numerus, *number* (numerare, *to count, to number*). *Trans. deponent verb from* gloria (gloriari, *to boast*). *Trans. verb from* labor (laborare, *to labor ; to be in distress*).

[1] *From* 'com' *with*, 'it,' *sup. root of* ire, *to go.*

II. To make prosperous, *from* secundus, *favorable* (secundare). Return, *from* redit, *sup. root of* redeo (reditus, ûs).

To give a prosperous return, *reditum secundare.*
It goes ill with me, *in rebus adversis versor.*

VOCABULARY TO 37.

Word-building.]—I. Ungrateful, *from* gratus (ingratus). Thing promised, promise, *from* promittere (promissum). Dearness, *from* cārus, *dear* (caritas, *affection*).

Justum prœlium, *a pitched battle* (i. e. *not* a mere skirmish).

II. *Subst. to express the* act, *from* rapere (raptus, ûs, *rape, robbery*). To rise to *or* against (adoriri, adort, *to fall on, to attack*). *Adv. from* communis (communiter). To make sound, *from* sanus (sanare, *to heal*).

To be named joint-king, *in consortium regni adscisci* (perf. *adscītus sum*).

VOCABULARY TO 38.

Word-building.]—I. Moderation: *from* temperans (temperantia). Intemperance (in-temperantia). In-active, *from* gnavus, *active* (i-gnavus, *sluggish, slothful*). Sloth, sluggishness, *from* ignavus (ignavia, *indolence, weakness of the will*). *Subst. to express the act from* remittere (remissio, *remission*).

To *plead* a cause, *causam dicere.*
Condemned to death, *capite damnatus* (*condemned by the head*). *Also,* capitis damnatus.

II. Not-never (non-nunquam, *sometimes*). To connect-from *or* dis-connect, i. e. from *myself, from* serere (desĕrere, seru, sert), *to desert.*

VOCABULARY TO 39.

Word-building.]—I. *Abstr. subst. from* integr, *root of* integer, *whole* (integritas, *wholeness, entireness—integrity, uprightness*). To do-completely, *from* facere (con-ficere,

accomplish, complete). *Abstr. subst. from* curs, *sup. root of* currere, *to run* (cursus, ûs, *course*). To take-to, *from* capere (ac-cipere, cep, cept: *to receive*). Cultivation, *from* cult, *sup. root of* colere (cultus, *civilization*).

In-scitia (in, *not:* scire, *to know*), *ignorance.*

Con-stat (*it stands together*, as a consistent fact), *it is well known, allowed,* &c.

II. One who oppresses, *from* oppress, *sup. root of* opprĭmere (oppressor, *oppressor*).

VOCABULARY TO 40.

Word-building.]—I. *Adv. from* accuratus (accurate, *accurately*). *Give its degrees of comparison* (accuratius, accuratissime). To touch-to, *from* tangere, (at-tingere, attĭg, attact, *to touch, to attain, to reach*). *Abstr. subst. from* elegans (elegantia).

Verum attingere, *to hit* or *arrive at the truth.*

Audita (*things heard*) may be translated by a relative sentence: '*what he had heard.*'

II. To rattle-against, *from* crepare (in-crepare, *to scold*). *To* read-through, *from* legere (per-legere, lĕg, lect).

V. QUESTIONS

ON

THE LATIN ACCIDENCE.

Numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to the page and paragraph.

To what question does the *nom.* answer? (To *who* or *what* with the verb.) To what question does the *gen.* answer? (To *whose? of what?*) To what question does the *dat.* answer? (To *for whom* or *what? to whom* or *what?*) To what question does the *acc.* after the verb answer? (To *whom?* or *what?* with the verb and its nom. case.) How is the *voc.* known? (The vocative denotes the person addressed by name: it is generally *stopped off* by commas.) To what questions does the *abl.* answer? (To the questions *with what? by what? when?* and *whence?* sometimes to *on what? from what? at what? in what?*) To what question does the abl. answer after a comparative? (To *than what?*)

When are nouns called common? (When they are used as *mas.* or *fem.* according as *males* or *females* are spoken of.) When are nouns called *epicene?* (When they are always of *one* gender, which cannot be altered to specify the sex.) *How then can the sex be specified?* (By adding *mas* or *femina.*)

Go through: Musa—Magister—Puer—Dominus—Regnum—Nubes—Lapis (*root*, lapid)—Opus (*root*, oper, neut.)—Parens (*root*, parent)—Gradus, Facies. What is the voc. of *Virgilius* (131)? of *filius* (131)? What cases are always alike in neuters? In what letter do these cases end in the plural?

What is the gender of nouns of the first (128) Mention some plurals of the first that have a sing. meaning (129, 29).

Mention some nouns of the first whose dat. and abl. plural is *abus*. (Dea, domina, filia, anima, equa, asina, famula, liberta, mula, socia, serva.) Go through pater-familias. (G. patris-familias: D. patri-familias, and so on. *Familias* is an old *gen.*) What form of the gen. sing. is found in poetry? (*Ai*—as *aulaï.*) What form of the gen. plur. is sometimes found? (*Um* for *arum.*)

What is the gender of nouns of the second (130)? Give the exceptions (130). Mention some nouns in *er* that do not throw away the *e* (130, 33). Go through *domus* (136, 52). Mention some nouns of the *sec.* that are used in the plur. only. (Castra, *a camp;* fasti, *the calendar;* and some names of towns: Vèii, Gabii, &c.) Go through *vir.*

What terminations are mas. in the third (132)? what fem. (132)? what neuter (132)? What peculiarities have neuters in *e, al, ar* (126, 13)? What nouns take *ium* in gen. plur. (126, 12)? What *monosyllables* take gen. in *um* (127)? What exceptions are there to the rule that nouns in *is, es, er,* not increasing in gen., take *ium* (127)? What is generally the acc. of *aër, æther?* (Aera, æthera.)

What is the gender of nouns of the fourth (135)? Give the exceptions. How did this declension arise (135)? What words have *ubus* in dat. plur.?

[Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus,
Et tribus, *et* partus, specus, *adde* veru*que* pecu*que*. (Zumpt.)]

What is the gender of nouns of the fifth (136)? What is the only exception? When must *dies* be mas. (136)? When is *e* in *ei* long (136, 56)?

Adjectives.

Go through the terminations of adjectives of three terminations (137, 65).

Go through *bonus, tener, unus.* When only has *unus* a plural? (When used with a noun that has no singular.) What declension do adjectives of three terminations follow in the *mas.?* in the *fem.?* in the *neut.?*

What is the *abl.* of *tristis?* the *neut. plur.?* the *gen.*

plur. (138, 70)? What is the *neut.* of comparatives? the *abl. sing.*? the *neut. plur.*? the *gen. plur.* (138, 71)? Go through *amans* (*loving*), *vetus*, *felix*. What is the abl. sing. of *participles* in *ns*, when used as such? Which term. of abl. is the more common in adj. (139, 73)? What adjectives have *e* only (139, 74)? Go through the terminations of an adj. in *is*; a *comparative*: an adj. of *one* termination (140). In comparatives is *e* or *i* the more common term. of abl.? (*e* in the best writers).[1] What adjectives very rarely, if ever, take *e* in the abl.? (Those in *-x*, *-cors*, *-ceps*: together with *par*, *memor*, *iners*, *ingens*, *inops*, *recens*, *teres*, &c.) Go through *duo*, *ambo*[2]; *tres* (142). Go through *acer* (139). Go through *plus* (141, note).

Go through *senex* (141). What adjectives have gen. in ĭus (138, 68)? Go through *uterque* (each); *unusquisque* (141). Go through *alius* (138). What is the gen. of *alter* (*another*, of two—)? Go through *summus mons*, *ima quercus*, *reliquum opus* (141, 78). What is the Eng. of *mediæ aquæ* (*nom. plur.*)? of *extremus liber*?

Comparison of Adjectives. [Page 143.]

How is the *comparative* formed? (By adding *ior* to the *root*.) How is the *superlative* formed? (By adding *issimus* to the root.) How do adjs. in *er* form their *superlatives*? (By adding *rimus* to *nom.*) What adjectives in *is* make *superl.* in *limus*? (*Facilis*, *agilis*, *similis*, *gracilis*, *humilis*; with *difficilis*, *dissimilis*, of course.) How do adjectives in *fĭcus*, *dĭcus*, *vŏlus*, from *facio*, *dico*, *volo*, form *comp.* and *superl.*? (In *entior*, *entissimus*.) What is *superl.* of *vetus*, *nuperus*? (*Veterrimus*, *nuperrimus*.) Of *maturus*? (*Maturissimus* or *maturrimus*.) Give the degrees of comparison of *bonus*: (melior, optimus)—*malus*: (pejor, pessimus)—*magnus*: (major, maximus)—*parvus*: (minor, minimus)—*multus*: (plus, *neut.*; plurimus)—*dives*: (divitior, divitissimus, *or* ditior, ditissimus)—of *nequam*, indecl. (nequior, nequissimus)—*exterus* (exterior, extremus *and* extimus)—*in-*

[1] Cicero and Livy furm abl. of comparatives in *e* rather than *i*. In later writers *e* is the more common ending. (Billroth.)
[2] Like *duo*.

ferus (inferior, infīmus *or* īmus)—*superus* (superior, supremus *or* summus). What *compar.* and *superlat.* are related in meaning to the adv. *intus?* (interior, intimus)—to *citra?* (citerior, citimus)—to *ultra?* (ulterior, ultimus)—to *prope?* (propior, proximus)—to the Greek word ὠκύς, *swift?* (ocior, ocissimus.) What is the *superl.* of *prior?* (primus)—the comp. of *juvenis?* (junior)—of *senex?* (senior.) When must the comparison be formed by *magis, maxime?* (When the adj. ends in *us* pure.) When may an adjective in *us*, pure, form its comparison regularly? (When *qu*, which sounds like *kw*, precedes *us:* as, *antiquus, iniquus.*) What is used for the comparative of an adverb derived from an adjective? (The neuter of the comparative adjective.) What is the superlative of such an adverb? (It is formed by adding *ē* to the root of the superlative adjective.)

The Numerals. [Page 142.]

What are *cardinal* numbers? (Those that answer to, *how many?*) What *ordinals?* (Those that mark *the place* that any individual holds *in a series.*) What *distributives?* (Those that answer to, *how many apiece?*) Are cardinal numbers declinable? (From 4 to 100 *not:* the names of the *hundreds* are, *ducenti, trecenti,* &c. *Mille* is indecl. as an *adj.:* but as a *subst.* has plur. *millia, ium, ibus,* &c.) Are the ordinals and distributives declinable? (Yes.) Give the first ten numerals in the three series; and the num. adverbs answering to *how many times* (142). Give them from 10 to 20 (172).

Give the Latin for 20: for 18. Do the '*teens*' end in *decim* or *decem?* Give the Latin for 11th, 12th, 13th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st. Give the Latin for *eleven apiece, twelve apiece, thirteen apiece, twenty apiece.* What is the difference between cardinals in *ginta* and in *genti?* (Those in *ginta* are so many *tens;* those in *genti* so many hundreds.) Between ordinals in *cesimus, gesimus,* and those in *centesimus, gentesimus?* (Those in *cesimus, gesimus,* are so many *tens;* those in *centesimus, gentesimus,* so many *hundreds.*) Do the distributives in *ceni, geni,* belong to *tens* or *hundreds?* (To *both.*) Is there *any* difference of form between them? (Yes: the *hundreds* are added to a root end-

ing in a *consonant*, except in *triceni*, *treceni*, where the form with *e*, *treceni*, belongs to *hundreds*.)

Turn into Latin 366, (143, Obs. 2.)

What are the forms for 1000, 2000, &c.? (*Mille*, *millesimus*, *milleni*, or *singula millia*, *millies*; and then: *bis mille*; *bis millesimus*, *bina millia*, *bis millies*, &c.) How are the intermediate forms supplied? (By the combination of two forms: unus *et* viginti, or *viginti unus*, one *and* twenty; *or*, twenty-one: but the forms *duode-*, *unde-*, are mostly used for the *two before* every *ten* or *hundred*.)

With what sort of words are the *distributives* used as *cardinals*? (With subst. used in plur. only: *binæ* literæ, *two* letters: but *uni* is used, not *singuli*: and *trini*, not *terni*.)

Pronouns. [Page 144.]

Go through: *ego*, *tu*, *sui*.—*meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*. What is voc. mas. of *meus*? (*Mi*.) What syllable is often appended to *strengthen* the pers. pron.? (*Met*: ego*met*, mihi*met*, te*met*.) What is appended to the nom. of *tu*? (*Te*: tu*te*.) How is the acc. *se* strengthened? (By doubling, *sese*.) How is *own* strongly expressed? [By adding gen. *ipsius*[1] to *poss*. pron. or (to the abl.) the syll. *pte* in *suopte*, *suapte*, (not in Cicero,) for *suo ipsius*, *suâ ipsius*.]

Go through, *is*: through *ille*, *iste*, (as if from ill*us*, ist*us*, *a*, *ud*, G. *ius*, &c,) Go through *idem*. What is the difference between mas. and neut. sing. of *idem*? (The neut. has *ĭ*: the mas. *ī*.) Go through *qui*; through *quis*. When has *quis* fem. sing. and neut. plur. *qua*? (Generally after *si*, *ne*, *num*.) What is neut. sing. of the compounds of *qui* and *quis* indef.? (*Quid* and *quod*; of which the forms in *quid* are used, when the *noun* they refer to *is not expressed*.) What is the neut. of *quis*, *who*? (*Quid*.) Go through *aliquis*, *quidam*, *quivis*, *quicunque*, (which has only *quodcunque* in neut.,) *quispiam*, *quilibet*, *quisquam*. Go through *quisquis*, (it has only *quisquis*, *quicquid*, abl. fem. *quaqua*. Nom. plur. *quiqui*; abl. *quibus*, *quĭbus*.) Into what letter is *m* often turned before *d* in *idem*, *quidam*? (Into *n*: quorundam, &c.) By what syllables is *hic* strengthened? (*Ce*. *cine*: *hicce*, hæcce, hocce; *hiccine*, hæccine; hoccine.) By

[1] For the pl. *ipsorum*, or *ipsarum*.

what are *ille*, *iste*, strengthened? (By *ic*: *illic*, *illæc*, *illoc*; *istic*, istæc, istoc.)

The Verb.

Go through the terminations of the Latin verb (150). In what tenses do verbs of the third in *io* drop the *i* (165)? Go through *suscipio—suscipior* (165). Give the first person of each tense of *suscipio*, that has root of present. Go through *esse* (154). In what persons and tenses of *prosum* is *prod*, not *pro*, prefixed to the tenses of esse (177)?

Go through *possum* (177), *volo*, *nolo*, *malo* (178), *edo*, *fero* (178). Of what verb is *fio* used as the passive? (Of *facio*.) What peculiarities has it? (The perfect tenses are regular from facio; *factus sum*, &c.; the imperfect ones regular from *fio* of the *fourth*, with this exception, that *imperf. subj.* and *infin.* keep the *e* with ĭ before it; *fierem*, *fieri*.) Go through *eo* (178). What is the compound of *eo* with *re?* (*Red-eo*.) Go through *ajo*.[1] What is *ain' tu?* (= aisne tu? *say you so?*) Go through *inquam*,[2] *I say*. What *tenses* and what *meaning* have

[1] **Ajo.**

1. Present.

Indicative.			Conjunctive.		
Ajo	Ais	Ait	Ajam	Ajas	Ajat
—	—	Ajunt.	——	——	Ajant.

2. Imperfect.

Aje*bam* *-bas* *-bat*
Aje*bamus* *-batis* *-bant.*

Imper.: Ai. Partic.: Ajens.

[2] **Inquam.**

1. Present.

Indicative.				Conjunctive.	
Inquam	Inquis	Inquit	—	Inquias	Inquiat
Inquimus	Inquitis	Inquiunt.	—	Inquiatis	Inquiant.

2. Imperfect.

Inquie*bam* *-bas* *-bat*
Inquie*bamus* *-batis* *-bant.*

3. Future.

—	Inquies	Inquiet	Imperat.: Inque, Inquito.
—	——	Inquient.	

4. Perfect.

—	Inquisti	—	Partic.: Inquiens.
—	Inquistis	—	

memini, cœpi, odi? (Perfect tenses. In *memini, odi, perf.* has *present* meaning: pluperf. of imperf., and so on.—*I remember, I hate: cœpi* is, *I began* or *have begun.* Perf. *cœptus est*, when followed by *infin. pass.* of *strictly passive* meaning.) What is *imperat.* of *memini?* (*Memento*, pl. *mementote.*) What are *ausim, faxim?* (Old forms for *ausus sim, fecerim.*) What has *quæso?* (Pl. 1. *quæsŭmus.*)

What is English of *defit?* (*fails* [me])—*infit?*—(*begins to speak*)—*confit?* ([it] *is accomplished*; or, *a sum is made up.*) What is the English of *salve, ave?* (*Hail!* salve also *farewell*)—of *vale?* (farewell)—of *cĕdo?* (*tell* me, *give* me, *pray.*)

Prepositions.

What prepositions always govern the ablative (180)?

See Appendix 2.

Go through *Penelope, Æneas, Anchises, Orpheus, Delos, Evangelion, melos.* What are the principal peculiarities of Greek nouns of the third? Go through *poëma*, (ătis) n. *poësis, Erinnys, Nerēis, tigris, Echo, Dido, Achilles, Ulysses, Pericles, Chremes.*

What are patronymics? What do *mas.* patronymics end in? What do *fem.* patronymics end in? From what man's name does *Œnīdes* come? Give the *fem.* form. Give *mas. and fem.* patronymics from *Æneas, Anchīses, Tyndārus, Theseus, Atlas.*

What are the *mas.* termin. for *an inhabitant of such a country?* The *fem.* terminations? Give *mas.* and *fem.* words for a *Persian, Cretan, Trojan, Thracian, Lacedæmonian, Phœnician, Roman, inhabitant of Clusium*, of *Abdera*, of *Arpīnum*, of *Miletus*, of *Athens.*

Give the initials of the Roman Prænomina. What does COS. mean? (*Consul.*) COSS.? (*Consulibus.*) D.O.M.? (*Deo optimo, maximo.*) S.P.Q.R.? (*Senatus, populusque Romanus.*) A.V.C.? (*Ab urbe conditâ.*)

VI. QUESTIONS ON LATIN SYNTAX.

§ 1.

1. In what respects does a verb agree with its nominative case? (In number and person.) 2. An adjective with its substantive? (In gender, number, and case.) 3. What verbs take a substantive or adjective after them in the nominative?

(Verbs of *becoming*, *being*, *seeming*,
And passive verbs of *making*, *calling*, *deeming*.[1])

4. In what case does the thing *by which* stand? (In the abl.) 5. In what case does the *agent*, or person *by whom*, stand?[2] (In the *abl.* with *a* or *ab:* but sometimes in the *dat.*) 6. When should the pronoun that is the nom. to the verb be expressed? (When the pron. is emphatic.)

7. When two or more nom. cases sing. come together, in which *number* should the verb be put, and in what *person?* (In the plural number, and in the *more worthy* person.)

8. With *et—et*, *quum—tum* (both—and), in which number is the verb generally put? (In the sing.)

9. When an adjective belongs to more than one substantive or pronoun, with which should it agree in *gender?* and in which number should it stand, even when the substantives, &c. are all *sing.?* (It should agree with the *more worthy* gender, and be in the plur.) 10. When the substantives are things that *have not life*, in what *gender* is the *adj.* generally put? (In the neut.)

[1] Verba substantiva; ut *sum, forem, fio, existo;* Verba vocandi passiva; ut *nomi nor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncupor:* et iis similia; ut *videor, habeor, existimor.* utrinque eosdem casus habent.

[2] Passivis additur ablativus agentis, sed antecedente *a* vel *ab* præpositione; et interdum dativus.

11. What substantives are seldom to be translated? (Man, woman, thing.)

12. What tenses of the indic. are followed by the *pres.* and *perf.* of the subj.? (The *pres.*, *fut.*, and *perfect* with '*have*' are followed by the *pres.* and *perf.* of the subj.) 13. What tenses of the indic. are followed by the imperf. and pluperf. of the subj.? (The *past* tenses of the indic. are followed by the imperf. and pluperf. of the subj.) 14. Is the perf. with *have* considered a past tense? (No: it is a *present-perf.* expressing an action that has been done in some space of time, *however large*, that is still *unexpired.*) 15. Is the *fut. perf.* a *subj.* tense? (No.)

§ 2. *Sequence of Tenses. Translation of* 'that.'

Obs. The *pres.* and *perf.* of the subjunctive form one pair, the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* another.

(*a*) *Accusative* and *infinitive.*] 16. When is '*that*' to be omitted, and the sentence turned into the *accusative* and *infinitive?*

('*That*' to omit is mostly best
With forms impersonal, as *certum est:*
With verbs of *thinking*, *knowing*, *wishing*,[1]
Feeling, *hearing*, et *credendi;*
And other verbs that fill the class
Declarandi et *sentiendi.*

But the impersonals,
Contingit, *evĕnit*, and *accĭdit*,
With *restat*, *reliquum est*, and *fit*,
are followed by *ut:* as *sequitur* is sometimes.)

(*b*) *ut.*] 17. When is '*that*' to be translated by '*ut*' with the subjunctive? (When it introduces a *purpose* or a *consequence:* and after the impersonals
Contingit, *evĕnit*, and *accĭdit*,
With *restat*, *reliquum est*, and *fit.*

Obs. When it introduces a *purpose* it is followed by '*may*,' '*might.*' When it introduces a *consequence* it refers to a '*so*,' or '*such.*')

[1] Verbs of wishing may also be followed by *ut*. Cicero *always* uses *ut* after *opto*.

(*c*) *nē.*] 18. When is '*that*' to be translated by *nē* with the *subjunctive ?* (When '*that*,' expressing the *purpose*, is followed by a negative word. ☞ *Ne* being really '*not*,' the following '*not*' is to be untranslated, and '*nobody*,' '*nothing*,' turned into '*anybody*,' '*anything*.')

(*d*) *Quin.*] 19. When is '*that*' to be translated by *quin ?* [When a *negative* sentence precedes : especially after *non dubito, non dubium est, quis dubitat ? facere non possum* ('I cannot help'), and *fieri non potest* ('it cannot be,')—when a negative *follows*.]

20. When is '*that*' to be translated by *quod ?* (After verbs that express an *emotion* of the mind, as *gaudeo*, rejoice ; *miror*, wonder ; but most of these also take the accusative with *infin.*[1]—Also, when '*that*' refers to a '*this*' or '*that*' in the preceding sentence.)

21. When is '*that*' to be translated by '*quo ?*'
(Let '*that*' translated be by '*quo*,'
When with *comparatives* it does go.)

22. How is '*that*' translated after verbs of *fearing ?*
(Vereor *ne*, I fear he *will*,
Vereor *ut*, I fear he *won't*.
Turn *future* by subjunctive *present*
After *fear :* forget it don't.)

§ 3. *The Relative.*

23. What are respectively the *demonstratives* or *antecedent pronouns* to *qui, qualis, quantus, quot ?* (Is, talis, tantus, tot.)

24. Is the relative ever governed in *case*, by a word that is not in its own clause ? (No.)

25. In what respects does the relative agree with its antecedent ? (In *gender*, *number*, and *person*.) 26. When the antecedent is expressed in the *relative*, and omitted in the *principal* clause, where is the relative clause often placed ? (First.) 27. What *pronoun* often represents it in the principal clause ? (*Is* or *hic*.)

27.* What is the relative '*what*' equivalent to ? ('*That which*.')

[1] Obs. With gaudeo, miror, use *quod* when the verb that follows '*that*' is in a past tense.

28. When the *relat.* agrees with some case of a *subst.* expressed in its own, but not in the principal clause, what must be done? (Some *case* of that subst. must be supplied in the principal clause.)

29. For what does an infin. sometimes stand? (For the *nominative case* to a *verb:* the *substantive* to an *adjective:* or the *antecedent* to a *relative.*[1]) 30. When an adj. or rel. is to agree with an infin. mood or *sentence,* in what gender must it be put? (In the *neuter gender.*) 31. When the rel. has a sentence for its antecedent, what do we often find instead of the rel. only? (*Id quod,* or *quæ res,* where *id* and *res* are *in apposition* to the former sentence.)

32. How may '*but*,' or a *relative* with '*not*,' be translated after *nobody, nothing,* &c.? (By *quin,* with subj.: but *quin* may not stand for *cui non,* or *cujus non.*)

33. In such a sentence as '*Thebes,* which is a *town*,' &c., should *which* agree with *Thebes,* or with *town?* (With *town.*[2])

35. When the antecedent has a *superlative* with it, in which clause does the superlative generally stand? (In the relative clause.) 36. HE WAS THE FIRST PERSON WHO DID IT. (Primus fecit.)

§ 4. *Nē, with Imper.—Infinitive expressing* purpose.

37. How is '*not*' to be translated before the *imperative,* or *subj.* used imperatively? (By *nē.*) 38. How is '*as*' before the *inf.,* and after *so, such,* to be translated? (By *ut:* 'as not to—,' by *quin.*)

39. What does the Lat. *inf.* never express? (A purpose.) 40. When the Eng. inf. expresses a *purpose,* how may it be translated?[3] 41. After what verbs is the *inf.* to

[1] Aliquando oratio est verbo nominativus.
Aliquando oratio supplet locum substantivi, adjectivo in neutro genere positio.
Aliquando oratio ponitur pro antecedente.

[2] Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, interdum cum posteriore concordat.

[3] The various ways of expressing a *purpose* are given in the following table:—

Eo ut ludos spectem,			
Eo	ludorum spectandorum / ludos spectandi	causâ,	*I am going* to see the games
Eo ludos spectaturus,			
Eo ad ludos spectandos,			
Eo ludos spectatum (*sup.*),			

be translated by *ut*—or if there is a *not*, *nē*—with the subjunctive ?

(By '*ut*,' translate infinitive,
With *ask*, *command*, *advise*, and *strive*.
But never be this rule forgot,
Put '*ne*' for '*ut*,' when there's a '*not*.'

Under 'ask' are included *beg*, *pray*, &c.: under 'command,' *charge*, *direct*, &c.: under 'advise,' *exhort*, *admonish*, *warn*, &c.)

42. How must '*as not to . . .* &c.,' after a negative be translated? (By *quin* with subj.)

43. By what conjunctions are verbs of *hindering* generally followed? (By *quominus;* to be rendered by '*from*' with the participial subst.)

§ 5. *Interrogatives.*

44. Which interrogative particle asks simply for information? (*Nĕ.*) 45. Which expects the answer '*yes?*' (Nonne.) 46. Which the answer '*no?*' (*Num:* but not in dependent questions, where it is simply '*whether.*')

47. When are questions *dependent?* (When they are connected with a preceding word or sentence.) 48. Mention some words on which questions *depend.* (*Ask*, *doubt*, *know*, or *not know*, *examine*, *try*—*it is uncertain*, &c.)

49. In what mood does the verb stand in a dependent question? (The subj.) 50. In what mood must the verb be put in sentences that stand as the *acc.* to a preceding verb? (The subj.)

51. How must '*whether*' be translated in double questions? (By *utrum*, *num*, or the appended *ne.*) 52. How '*or?*' (By *an.*) 53. If '*whether*' is untranslated, how may '*or*' be translated? (By *an*, *anne*, or the appended *ne.*[1]) 54. Does *an* ever stand before a single ques-

[1] (Whether) — (or)
utrum ... — an
num ..... — an
nĕ ..... — an
(*untranslated*) — an *or* ne.

In rendering, the *utrum* or *ne* is not translated in a *direct* question: i. e. when the verb is in the *indicative mood.*

tion? (Yes: when the answer '*no*' is confidently expected; and often with something of impatience.)

55. How is '*yes*' to be translated? (Either by the particles *ita, ita est, sane, etiam, vero;* or by repeating the *word* about which the question is made.)

56. How is '*no*' to be translated? (Either by *negative particles* (*non, minime, nihil minus*, &c.), *with* or *without* the verb of the interrogative sentence; or by *imo* with a *noun, adjective*, or *verb*, which is the *opposite* to the one in the interrogative sentence.)

§ 6. (*May, might; can, could; should, ought.*)

57. Go through *I may go*, &c.
(*mihi* ire licet, *I may go.*
tibi ire licet, *thou mayest go*, &c.)

58. *I might have gone.*
(*mihi* ire licuit, *I might have gone.*
tibi ire licuit, *thou mightest have gone*, &c.)

59. *I can do* it.
(*ego* facere possum, *I can do* it.
tu facere potes, *thou canst do* it, &c.)

60. *I could have done* it.
(*ego* facere potui, *I could have done* it.
tu facere potuisti, *thou couldst have done* it, &c.)

61. *I ought to do* it.
(*me* facere oportet, } *I ought to do* it;
or *ego* facere debeo, } or, *should do* it.)

62. *I ought to have done* it.
(*me* facere oportuit, } *I ought to have done* it;
or *ego* facere debui, } or, *should have done* it.)

63. Translate, *I ought to do it*, omitting *ut*.
(*ego* faciam oportet, *I ought to do* it.
tu facias oportet, *thou oughtest to do* it, &c.)

64. I MAY BE DECEIVED. (*Fieri potest* ut fallar.)

65. How is the *perf. infin.* to be translated after *might, could, ought?* (By *pres.* infin. unless it is meant that the action should *have been completed before* the time spoken of.)

§ 7. *Apposition.*

66. How is the case of a substantive in *apposition* determined? (It agrees in case with the subst. *of which it is spoken.*) THE CITY OF ROME. (Urbs Roma.) 67. When *urbs* or *oppidum* stands in apposition to the *name of a town*, does the verb agree with *urbs*, *oppidum*, or with the name of the town? (With urbs or oppidum.) 68. When there is a *fem.* form of a substantive, for instance, *magistra*, when should it be used? (When it stands in apposition to a fem. subst.)

§ 8. Case of Subst. or Adj. after *esse.*

69. HE WISHES TO BE THE FIRST. (Vult esse *princeps;* or *se* esse *principem.*) 70. HE SAYS THAT HE IS READY. (Ait esse *paratus;* or, *se* esse *paratum.*)
71. THEY MAY BE HAPPY. (Licet *esse beatis:* or, less commonly, *beatos.*)

§ 9. *Genitive.*

72. When may a *substantive* and *preposition* generally be translated by the *gen.?* (When the prepos. joins it to another substantive.) 73. HOW MUCH PLEASURE; MUCH GOOD; SOME TIME. (Quantum voluptatis; multum boni; aliquid temporis.)
74. What do you mean by a *partitive* adj.? (A *partitive* adj. is one that expresses *some* individuals considered as *parts* of a larger number or body.) 75. What case follows *partitive* adjectives; and what prepositions are often used instead of it? (The *genitive:* but the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, are often used.) 76. With what does the partitive adj. generally agree in gender? (With the governed genitive, because that expresses the *thing meant.*[1]) 77. In what *gender* does a *superlative* or *solus* stand when it governs a *genit.*, and also refers to another subst.? (In the gender not of the

[1] Nomina partitiva, numeralia, comparativa, et superlativa, et quædam adjectiva partitive posita, genitivum, a quo et genus mutuantur, exigunt.
Usurpantur autem et cum his præpositionibus, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *inter*, *ante.*

gen., but of the *other substantive.*) 78. In what case does a substantive of *description* stand when it *has an adjective agreeing with it?* (In the genitive or ablative.[1]) 79. By what cases are *opus est* followed? (By an *ablative of what is needed, a dative of the person who needs.*[2]) 80. What other construction is there with *opus est*?[3] (*Opus* is often used in the *nom.* or *acc.* after *esse.*) 81. THERE IS NO NEED. WHAT NEED IS THERE? (Nihil opus est. Quid opus est?) 82. THE TOP OF THE MOUNTAIN. THE MIDDLE OF THE WAY. THE REST OF THE WORK. THE WHOLE OF GREECE. (Summus mons; media via; reliquum opus; universa Græcia.)

83. What adjectives govern the genitive? (Adjectives which signify *desire*, *knowledge*, *recollection*, *fear*, *participation*, and their *opposites*, with many of those that express *fulness* or *emptiness.*[4]) 84. What case do participles *used adjectively* and verbals in *ax* govern? (The genitive.[5]) .

85. What substantives are omitted after *to be?* (Such substantives as *property*, *duty*, *part*, *mark*, &c.[6]) 86. IT IS CICERO'S PART. (Ciceronis est.) IT IS YOUR PART. (Tuum est.[7]) 87. What case do verbs of *accusing*, &c. take of the *charge?* (Genitive.[8]) 88. What case do *satago*, &c. govern? (Genitive.[9]) 89. What case do verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* govern? (Acc.

1 *Laus*, *vituperium*, vel *qualitas* rei, ponitur in ablativo, etiam genitivo.

2 *Opus* et *usus* ablativum exigunt.

3 *Opus* autem adjective, pro *necessarius*, quandoque poni videtur.

4 Adjectiva quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem, significant, atque iis contraria, genitivum exigunt: cum plurimis aliis quæ affectionem animi denotant.

5 Participia, cum fiunt nomina, genitivum exigunt.
Adjectiva verbalia in *ax* etiam genitivum exigunt.

6 *Sum* genitivum postulat, quoties significat possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet.
a. This genitive may be rendered in various ways, (besides '*it is the duty*,' or '*part* of:' '*a mark* of:') '*it is characteristic* of;' '*it is incumbent on*;' '*it requires*;' '*it demands*;' '*it shows*;' '*it betrays*;' '*it is for*, (you, &c.;') &c.
Non cujusvis est, *it is not every man who can*, &c.

7 Excipiuntur hi nominativi, *meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, *humanum*, *belluinum*, et similia.

8 Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum postulant, qui crimen significat.
(*Eng.*) To condemn *to death.*
(*Lat.*) To condemn *of the head*, (capitis.)

9 *Satago*, *misereor*, et *miseresco*, genitivum postulant.

or gen.[1]) 90. In what case may a *neut. pron.* stand with *accusare, admonēre,* &c.? (Accusative.)

§ 10. *Impersonals.*

91. With *interest* and *refert* in what case is the person *to whom* it is of importance put? (In the *gen.*, but instead of personal pronouns, the possessives are used in the *abl. fem.*[2]) 92. How is the *degree* of *importance* expressed? (Either by the *gen.* of *price*, or by an *adverb.*[3]) 93. How is the *thing that is of importance* expressed? (By an *infinitive* clause; or its representative, a *neuter pronoun;* or a clause introduced either by an *interrogative*, or by a *conjunction.*) 94. What case of the *person feeling* do *pudet*, &c., take? and what case of what *causes* the feeling? (*Pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret,* take an *accusative* of the *person feeling*, a genitive of what *causes* the feeling.[4]) 95. What case do *instar* and *ergo* take? (Genitive.[5])

96. What adverbs govern the genitive? (Some adverbs of *place, time,* and *quantity.*[6])

§ 11. *Dative.*

97. What adjectives govern the *dat.?* (Adjectives which signify *advantage, likeness, agreeableness, usefulness, fitness, facility,* &c., with their *opposites*, govern the *dative.*[7]) 98. Mention some adjectives that are followed by *ad.* (Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, accommodatus, idoneus, may also be followed by *ad* with an *acc.* of the *purpose.*[8]) 99. What cases may follow *propior, proximus?* (*Dat.*, but

1 *Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, recordor,* genitivum, aut accusativum, admittunt.

2 Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur; præter hos ablativos fœmininos, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ,* et *cujâ.*

3 Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem.* [Quanti interest, *of how great importance it is.*]

4 His impersonalibus subjicitur accusativus cum genitivo, *pœnitet, tædet, miseret, misereseit, pudet, piget.*

5 *Instar* et *ergo*, adverbialiter sumpta, genitivum post se habent.

6 Quædam adverbia loci, temporis, et quantitatis, genitivum admittunt.

7 Adjectiva, quibus commŏdum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant.

8 *Natus, commŏdus, incommŏdus, utilis, inutilis, vehĕmens, aptus,* cum nullis aliis, interdum etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur.

sometimes the *accus.*) 100. When should *similis* take the gen. ? (To express like a person in *character.*)

101. In what case do you put the person *to*, *for*, or *against whom* the action is done, or the feeling entertained ? (Dat.) 102. Mention the classes of verbs that take the *dat.* (Verbs that signify *advantage* or *disadvantage*; verbs of *comparing*; of *giving* and *restoring*; of *promising* and *paying*; of *commanding* and *telling*; of *trusting* and *intrusting*; of *complying with* and *opposing*; of *threatening* and *being angry*, &c.[1]) 103. Do any of these take the *acc.* also ? (Yes : many govern the *acc.*; and many an *acc.* of the *immediate*, a *dat.* of the *remoter* object.) 104. By what prepositions may verbs of *comparing* be followed ? (By the *prepositions*, *cum*, *ad*, and *inter se*, 'together.') 105. What verbs of *advantage* and *disadvantage* govern the *acc.* ? (*Juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, and *offendo*, govern the *acc.*[2]) 106. Of verbs of *commanding*, which govern the *acc.* only, and which the *dat.* or *acc.* ? (*Rego* and *guberno* govern the *acc.*, *tempero* and *moderor* the *acc.* or *dat.*[3])

107. What case do *sum* and its compounds govern? (*Sum* with its compounds, except *possum*, governs the dative.[4])

108. Mention the compound verbs that generally govern the dat. (Verbs compounded with the adverbs *bene*, *satis*, *male*. *Most* of those compounded with

Præ, *con*, *sub*,
Ad, *in*, *inter*, *ob*.

Many of those compounded with

Ab, *ante*, *de*, and *e*,
Post, *super*, *pro*, and *re*.[5])

1 Verba *dandi* et *reddendi*; *promittendi* ac *solvendi*; *imperandi* et *nuntiandi*; *fidendi*; *obsequendi* et *repugnandi*; *minandi* et *irascendi*; regunt dativum.

His jungas *nubo*, *faveoque*, *indulgeo*, *parco*,
Gratulor, *auxilior*, *studeo*, *medeorque*, *vacoque*.*

☞ 'He threatens *me with death*,' should be
In Latin, 'threatens *death to me*.'

2 Ex his *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, et alia quædam, accusativum exigunt.

3 Excipe *rego*, *guberno*, quæ accusativum habent; *tempero* et *moderor*, quæ nunc dativum. nunc accusativum habent.

4 *Sum* cum compositis, præter *possum*, regit dativum.

5 Dat um ferme regunt verba composita cum his adverbiis, *bene*, *satis*, *male*; et cum his præpositionibus, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*.

* In the sense of '*to have leisure for*;' '*to be engaged in.*'

109. He surrounds the city with a wall. He presents me with a garland. (Urbem muro, *or* murum urbi circumdat. Mihi coronam, *or* me coronâ donat.)

110. What verbs govern two datives? (*Esse*, *donare*, *mittere*, *proficisci*, &c., with *dare* and *vertere*, to impute.[1]) 111. What case often follows *sum* where *we* should put the nom.? (The dative.) 112. How is *have* often translated? (By *esse* with a dative.) 113. My name is Caius. (Mihi nomen est *Caio*, or *Caius*, or sometimes *Caii*.) 114. I have a cow. I have six cows. (Est mihi vacca: sunt mihi sex vaccæ.)

§ 12. *Accusative.*

115. Do neuter verbs ever take the *acc.?* (Yes: when the substantive is of kindred meaning or origin.) 116. Explain *sitire* honores. (The verb *sitire* here implies the *transitive* notion of *desiring*.)

117. What verbs take two accusatives? (Verbs of *asking*, *teaching*, *clothing*, *concealing*, generally govern *two accusatives*.[2]) 118. Do *all* the verbs that have any of these meanings take two accusatives? (No: either the *person* or the *thing* is often governed by a *preposition*.) 119. What transitive verbs take *two* accusatives, one in a sort of *apposition* to the other? (Transitive verbs that take *two nominatives* in the passive.)

§ 13. *Ablative.*

120. What does the *abl.* express? (The thing *with which:* and often the manner *how*, and cause *why*.[3]) 121. In what case is the *specified price* put? (Abl.[4]) 122. What adjectives stand in the *abl.* to express the price, *pretio* being understood? (*Magno*, *permagno*, *parvo*, *minimo*, *plurimo*, *nimio*, *vili:* but the genitives, except

[1] *Sum*, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum.
[2] Verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, celandi, fere duplicem regunt accusativum.
[3] Quodvis verbum admittit ablativum significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis.
[4] Quibusdam verbis subjicitur nomen pretii in ablativo casu.

vilis, are also found, especially with verbs of *valuing*.[1]) 123. What adjectives *always* express price in the *gen.*? (*Tanti* and *quanti*, with their compounds; *pluris*, *minoris*.[2]) 124. What substantives stand in the *gen.* after verbs of *valuing*? (*Flocci*, *nauci*, *nihili*, *pili*, &c.[3]) 125. What should be used instead of *multi* and *majoris*? (*Magni* and *pluris*.)

126. What case do verbs of *abounding*, &c., govern? (Verbs of *abounding*, *filling*, *loading*, &c., and their opposites, such as verbs of *wanting*, *depriving of*, *emptying of*, govern the *ablative*.[4]) 127. What case may *egeo* and *indigeo* govern? (Gen.) 128. What case do verbs of *freeing from*, &c., take? (Some verbs of *freeing from*, *removing from*, *differing from*, *being at a distance from*, &c., are sometimes followed by the *ablative*.) 129. What is their more general construction in prose? (They are followed by a preposition.) 130. What case do *fungor*, &c. govern? (*Fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, with their compounds, *potior*, *vescor*, *dignor*, *glorior*, take the *ablative*; as does also *supersedeo*.[5]) 131. In what case is the *manner*, *cause*, &c. put? (Abl.)

§ 14. *Passive Voice.*

132. In what *case* is the *agent* expressed after the pass. verb, when *a*, *ab*, is not used? (Dat.) 133. After what part of the verb is this the regular construction? (Part. in dus.[6]) 134. What verbs cannot be used *personally* in the pass. voice? (Those that govern the *dative* in the active.) 135. Go through *I am believed*.[7] 136. Mention some verbs that have a *pass. construction*. (*Vapŭlo*, *vēneo*, *fio*.) 137. What is the substi-

1 *Vili*, *paulo*, *minimo*, *magno*, *nimio*, *plurimo*, *dimidio*, *duplo*, per se sæpe ponuntur, subaudita voce *pretio*.

2 Excipiuntur hi genitivi sine substantivis positi; *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*, *tantidem*, *quantivis*, *quantilibet*, *quanticunque*, &c.

3 *Flocci*, *nauci*, *nihili*, *pili*, *assis*, *hujus*, *teruncii*, verbis æstimandi peculiariter adduntur.

4 Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his diversa, ablativo junguntur.

5 *Fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, *vescor*, *dignor*, *muto*, *communico*, *supersedeo*, ablativo junguntur.
Potior, aut genitivo, aut ablativo, jungitur.

6 Participiis passivæ vocis additur interdum dativus, præsertim si exeunt in *dus*.

7 Mihi creditur, *I am believed*. Nobis creditur, *we are believed*.
Tibi creditur, *thou art believed*, Vobis creditur, *you are believed*.
Illi creditur, *he is believed*. Illis creditur, *they are believed*.

tute for a *fut. inf. pass.*, when the verb has no supine to form it with *iri?* (*Fore* or *futurum esse*, followed by *ut* with the subjunctive.) 138. I HOPE HE WILL RECOVER. (*Spero* fore ut *convalescat.*)

139. What verbs can govern an *acc.* in the *pass.?* (Those that govern *two accusatives* in the active.[1]) 140. Can a *pass.* verb or participle take an *acc.* of the *part affected?* (Yes.[2]) 141. Translate WE HAVE WALKED ENOUGH by the *pass.* (*Satis ambulatum est.*[3]) 142. Which is the more common in Lat.: '*Caius* videtur, dicitur, &c. *esse*,' or '*videtur, dicitur*, &c. Caium *esse?*' (The *personal* construction is far the more common.)

§ 15. *Time.*

143. How is a noun of *time* put in answer to *when?* (Abl.[4]) 144. in answer to *for how long?* (Acc.[5]) 145. How do you express the time *in* or *within which?* (By *inter, intra;* or by the *abl.*) 146. How do you express time in answer to *how long before* or *after?* (Abl.) 147. How are *ante, post*, used in this construction? (As *adverbs*, unless there be *another noun* or *pronoun* to be governed by them.) 148. How do you express a point or space of *future* time *for* which any arrangement is now made? (By *in* with acc.) 149. How do you express the *exact* time *by* or *against* which a thing is to be done? (By *ad* with acc.) 150. FOUR YEARS AGO. (Abhinc annos, *or* annis, quatuor.) 151. THREE YEARS OLD. (Tres annos natus.) 152. ABOVE TWENTY YEARS OLD. (Major annis viginti.) 153. THREE YEARS AFTER HE HAD RETURNED. (Post tres annos *quam* rediit; *or*, redierat, &c.)

[1] Hujusmodi verba (i. e. verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, celandi) etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent.

[2] Verbis quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ, et poëtice accusativus. Quædam usurpantur etiam cum genitivo.

[3] Verbum impersonale passivæ vocis pro singulis personis utriusque numeri elegantur accipi potest. [Thus *statur* may be, I stand (statur *a me*); thou standes (statur *a te*); and so on. *Thus*, curritur, *there is running*, or *they are running*.]

[4] Quæ significant partem temporis, in ablativo frequentius ponuntur

[5] Quæ autem durationem temporis significant, in accusativo fere ponuntur.

§ 16. *Place.*

154. In what case is the town *at which* a thing is done, to be put? (In the gen. if it is a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declension: if not, in the *ablative.*[1]) 155. In what case is the name of a town to be put in answer to *whither?* (Acc.[2]) 156. In answer to *whence?* (Abl.[3]) 157. To *what* proper names do these rules apply? (To the names of *towns* or *small islands.*) 158. In what case do *urbs* and *oppidum* stand in apposition to the name of a town in the *gen.?* (In the *ablative.*) 159. How is *at* translated before the name of a town, when the action was not done *in*, but *near* it? (By *ad* or *apud.*) 160. How is *local* space expressed? (By the *acc.*, sometimes by the *abl.*)

160.* AT HOME. FROM HOME. HOME, after a verb of motion. INTO THE COUNTRY. FROM THE COUNTRY. IN THE COUNTRY. ON THE GROUND. IN THE FIELD. (*At home*, domi. *From home*, domo. *Home*, domum. *On the ground*, humi, *which may follow a verb of either* rest *or* motion. *In the field*, militiæ. *Into the country*, rus. *From the country*, rure. *In the country*, ruri; *or less commonly*, rure.)

§ 17. *Gerunds.*

161. Decline '*grieving*' throughout.[4] 162. OF WRITING A LETTER. (Scribendi epistolam; *or*, scribendæ epistolæ.) 163. THE LETTER IS TO BE WRITTEN; or, THE LETTER MUST BE WRITTEN; or, WE MUST WRITE THE LETTER, (scribenda est epistola, *the letter is to be written.*) 164. Go through, I MUST WRITE.

[1] Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis, in quo fit actio, modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit.
Verum si oppidi nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur.

[2] Verbis significantibus motum ad locum fere additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione.

[3] Verbis significantibus motum a loco fere additur nomen loci in ablativo sine præpositione.

[4] N. Dolere, *grieving.*
G. dolendi, *of grieving.*
D. dolendo, *to grieving.*
Acc. dolere, *grieving*, (ad dolendum, *to grieve.*)
Abl. dolendo, *by grieving.*
The *acc.* is *dolendum* only, when governed by a preposition.

Sing. (mihi) scribendum est, *I must write.*
(tibi) scribendum est, *thou must write.*
(illi) scribendum est, *he must write.*
Plur. (nobis) scribendum est, *we must write.*
(vobis) scribendum est, *you must write.*
(illis) scribendum est, *they must write.*

165. Go through, *epistola scribenda.*

(N. Epistola scribenda, *a letter to be written.*
G. epistolæ scribendæ, *of writing a letter.*
D. epistolæ scribendæ, *to* or *for writing a letter.*
Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, *to write a letter,* (or, *to* or *for writing a letter.*)
Abl. epistolâ scribendâ, *by writing a letter.*)

166. When must the *part. in dus* not be used in agreement with its substantive? (When the verb does not govern the *acc.*) 167. WE MUST SPARE OUR ENEMIES. (Parcendum est inimicis.)

§ 18. *Participles.*

168. What kind of sentences may be translated by participles? (Subordinate sentences connected with a principal one by *relative pronouns*, or such *conjunctions* as *when, after, if, since, because, although*, &c.) 169. In what case do a noun, or pronoun, and participle, stand when the *noun* or *pronoun* is not governed by any other word? and what is this construction called? (They stand in the abl., and the construction is called the *ablative absolute.*[1])

170. HE GAVE THEM THE COUNTRY TO DWELL IN. (He gave them the country *to-be-dwelt-in: habitandam.*) 171. What does the part. in *rus* often express? (The purpose with which a person acts.) 172. What does the part. in *dus* often express? (The *end* or *purpose for which a thing is done.*) 173. Express 'to have a thing *made*,' in the sense of *causing* it to be made. (Faciendum curare.)

174. How may '*without*' before the participial substantive

[1] Quibuslibet verbis additur ablativus absolute sumptus.

be translated? (By a participle with *non* or some other *negative* word.)

175. What participle is wanting in all but deponents and neuter-passives? (The participle of the *perfect active*.) 176. HAVING LEFT HIS BROTHER. (Relicto fratre, *or* quum reliquisset fratrem.)

§ 19. *Pronouns.*

177. MY OWN FAULT. OUR OWN FAULT. (Mea *ipsius* culpa; Nostra *ipsorum* culpa.) 178. When *—self, —selves*, are to be translated by *ipse*, and a personal pronoun, in what case may *ipse* stand? (The *ipse* generally in the *nominative*, but sometimes in the same case as the personal pronoun.) 179. When may *him, his, her, its, theirs*, in a dependent sentence, be translated by *sui* or *suus*, even when they denote the nom. not of their *own*, but of the principal sentence? (Whenever, from the *grammar* or the *obvious sense*, there would be no danger of understanding the *sui* or *suus* to mean the *nominative of its own verb*.) 180. By what pronoun must *him, her*, &c. be translated, when *sui* or *suus* would be understood to mean the nom. of its own verb? (By *ipse*.) 181. Does *suus* ever relate to the *accusative*, or any oblique case? (Yes.) 182. With what pron. is this very common? (With *quisque* or *unusquisque*.) 183. Which gen. pl., *ûm* or *i*, is used after partitives? (The pl. *ûm*.)

184. What is the difference between '*is* qui pugnat,' and '*hic* or *ille* qui pugnat?' ('*Is* qui pugnat' means '*the combat*' or '*a combatant*;' while '*hic* qui pugnat,' '*ille* qui pugnat,' signify respectively '*this* combatant,' '*yonder* combatant.') 185. Which of these three pronouns is to be used when *he, him*, &c. is without emphasis, simply describing a person or thing *before mentioned*, or *about to be described* by a rel. clause? (*Is, ea, id*.) 186. By what *case* only of '*is*' can *his, her, their*, be translated? (By the *gen*.) 187. Of two things already mentioned, what pronoun means the *latter*? what the *former*? (*Hic* relates to *the nearer*, the *lat-*

ter ; ille to the *more remote*, the *former*.[1]) 188. Which pron. means *that of yours ?* (*Iste.*) 189. MEDEA ILLA. (The famous *Medea.*) 190. Distinguish between *hic, iste, ille*, referring to different objects. (*Hic* denotes the nearest, *ille* the most remote, *iste* that which is the nearest to the party addressed.[2])

191. When is *any* to be translated by *quisquam* or *ullus ?* ('*Any*' when all are *excluded* is *quisquam* or *ullus.*) 192. When by *quivis, quilibet ?* ('*Any*' when all are *included* is *quivis*, or *quilibet :* it then means '*any you please, no matter which.*') 193. When by *quis ?* ('*Any*' is *quis* after *si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto.*) 194. When by *aliquis, quispiam ?* ('*Any*' is translated by *aliquis* or *quispiam*, when it means '*some* one or other,' '*some.*') 195. Does *quisquam* ever follow *si ?* (Yes : but it then generally implies that the *existence* of the exception is very doubtful.) 196. By what pronouns may '*a*' sometimes be translated ? (By *quidam, aliquis*, or *quispiam.*) 197. What *prefix* do interrogatives often take ? (The syllable *ec.*) 198. What *affix ?* (The syllable *nam.*)

§ 20. *Comparison.*

199. How should '*always*' with two superlatives be translated ? (By *quisque*, agreeing with the same substantives that the superlatives agree with.)

Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur,
The deepest rivers always *flow with the least sound.*

200. When are the pronouns *that, those*, not to be translated ? (When they stand in the *second* member of a comparative sentence for a substantive expressed in the first.) 201. When *quam* is omitted, in what case is the following *subst.* put ? (In the abl.[3]) 202. What case goes with comparatives and superlatives to express the measure of *excess* or *defect ?* (The abl.[4])

[1] *Hic* et *ille*, cum ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius refertur.

[2] Hæc demonstrativa, *hic, iste, ille*, sic distinguuntur : *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat : *iste* eum, qui apud te est ; *ille* eum, qui ab utroque remotus est.

[3] Comparativa, cum exponantur per *quam*, ablativum admittunt.

[4] *Tanto, quanto, hoc, eo* et *quo*, cum quibusdam aliis quæ mensuram excessûs significant, item *statu* et *natu*, comparativis et superlativis sæpe junguntur.

203. How are the Eng. *the—the*, = *by how much—by so much*, to be translated? (By *quanto—tanto; quo—eo* or *hoc*.)

§ 21. *Remarks on the Tenses, &c.*

204. When may the present be followed by the *imperf. subj.*? (When the present is used, as it often is in narrative, for the *past*.[1]) 205. When is the Eng. *pres.* generally translated by the Latin *future*? (When the action expressed by it is *still future*, which it generally is when the verb in the principal clause is in a *future* tense or the *imperative* mood.) 206. By what tense is the *perf. definite* often translated? (By the *future perfect*.) 207. How are assertions *softened* in Latin? (By putting the verb in the *present* or *perf.* of the *subjunctive*.) 208. What subjunctives are very frequently used in this way? (*Vĕlim, nolim, malim*.) 209. What conjunction is often omitted after *velim*, &c.? (*Ut*.) 210. I HAVE LONG DESIRED. (Jam pridem cupio.)

211. Is the *perf. subj.* ever used as an *imperat.*? (Yes.) 212. What other tense is sometimes used as an *imperat.*? (The future.) 213. By what tense are questions of *appeal*, or questions for *assent*, to be translated? (By the *present* or *imperfect* of the *subjunctive*, according as a present or past time is referred to.)

§ 22. *Conditional Sentences.*

[☞ The clause with '*if*' is the *conditional* clause: the other the *consequent* clause.]

214. In a conditional sentence, how are the verbs translated when *both* are in the indicative? (By the indicative, as in English: but if the *consequent* verb is in the *future*, the conditional verb is more commonly in the present or perf. subjunctive.)

215. If both verbs have '*should*,' '*would*,' or '*were to*,' that is, are of the form that generally corresponds to the *imperfect subjunctive*, how should they be translated?

[1] This is called the *præsens historicum*.

(Generally by the *present subjunctive:* but sometimes by the imperfect.)

216. When the consequent verb has a '*would*' or '*should*,' but the conditional verb not, how is the translation to be made? (By the subjunct. *imperf.* or *pluperfect.*[1])

(214.) { Si quid habet, dat. / Si quid habebit, dabit. / Si quid habeat, dabit.

(215.) { Si quid habeat, det. / Si quid haberet, daret.

(216.) { Si quid haberet, daret. / Si quid habuisset, dedisset.

217. With what tenses may *si* take the indic.? (With *pres.*, *perf.*, and *fut.*) 218. With what tenses does *si* always govern the subjunctive? (With the *imperfect* and *pluperfect.*)

219. What are the conditional forms of the *subj.?* (*Scriberem, scripsissem,* and *scripturus essem:* but *scribam* is often used conditionally.) 220. When should *scripturus essem, eram* or *fui,* be used for '*should have written?*' (When the thing *would probably have happened,* because it was so *intended* or *arranged.*) 221. What tenses of the *indic.* are used for the *subj.* in conditional sentences? (The *imperfect* and *pluperfect.*) 222. Is *si* ever omitted? (Yes.) 223. Where should the verb of the sentence then stand? (First.)

224. In a dependent conditional sentence, the verb of the consequent clause will be in the infin.: what infinitives will take the place respectively of *dat?* of *dabit? daret? dedisset? daturus esset?* (Dat will become *dare.* dabit, det, and daret, *daturum esse:* dedisset, *daturum fuisse:* daturus esset, erat, *or* fuit, *daturum fore.*)

§ 23. *Oblique Narration.*

225. Explain the meaning of *oblique narration.* (When the *speech of another* is *reported* in the *third* person.) 226 In oblique narration, in what mood will the principal verbs stand? (The *infinitive.*) 227. In what mood will the verbs of the *subordinate clauses* stand, provided

[1] Of course, '*would have*,' '*should have*,' by the *pluperf.*

they express the words and opinions, not of the *narrator*, but of the speaker? (In the subjunctive.) 228. In oblique narration what is often omitted? (The verb or participle on which the infinitives depend.) 229. In what mood are *questions for answer* asked? (In the *subjunctive*.) 230. In what mood are *questions of appeal* asked? (In the *infinitive*.) 231. When questions are thus asked in the *infin.*, may *interrogative pronouns* and *adverbs* be used with the *infin.*? (Yes.) 232. In what mood is the *charge* expressed with *quod?* (In the subj.) 233. How are the *acc.* and *infin.* used with *nĕ* in direct narration? (In indignant exclamations.)

§ 24. *The Relative.*

234. Mention some words, phrases, &c., with which *qui* takes the subj. (After *sum*, in 'sunt qui,' 'erant qui,' &c., and in *negative* and *interrogative* sentences, *nemo, nihil*, &c. *est? quis est? an quisquam est? quotusquisque est?* &c. Also after *adsunt qui, non desunt qui*, &c., and similar phrases with *reperio, invenio* [to find].)

235. What mood does *qui* govern, when it introduces the *ground* of an assertion? (The subj.) 236. What mood does *qui* take after *quippe, utpote?* (*Generally* the subjunctive.) 237. What mood does *qui* take, when it is equivalent to *ut* with a *personal* or *possessive* pronoun? (Subj.) 238. Mention some phrases with which *qui* has this force.

(After (1) *dignus, indignus, idoneus*, &c.
(2) *tam, talis, ejusmodi, is* (*such*), &c.
(3) comparatives with *quam*.
(4) *is sum* (= talis sum), '*I am a man to*.'
(5) quis sum? *who am I?*
(6) when it expresses a *purpose*.)

239. In what other cases does *qui* govern the subj.? (After *unus* and *solus* signifying '*alone*,' '*only*,' and to express a *repeated action* taking place in *past time*.[1])

[1] The verb is then in *imperf.* or *plup rf.*

§ 25. Quum *and other Conjunctions.*

240. When does *quum* take the *indic.?* (When it expresses the *time*, either *simply* or in a *very marked manner;* and in such sentences as '*when* you say this, *you* are mistaken."[1]) 241. What mood does *quum*, 'when,' govern with the *imperf.* and *pluperf.:* and generally when the sentence with *when* can be turned into a *participle?* (The subj.) 241.* Mention some conjunctions that always govern the subjunctive. (Quasi, tanquam, *as if;* utinam, *would that;* dum, modo, *or* dummodo, *provided only;* forsitan, *perhaps;* licet, *although.*) 242. When are the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* used with *utinam?* (When the thing wished is not to be *represented* as *impossible to be realized.* The *imperf.* and *pluperf.* express wishes that *are*, in the speaker's opinion, *impossible*, or *unlikely to be realized.*) 243. How is '*not*' generally expressed after *utinam, dum,* &c.? (By *nē.*)

244. When the principal verb is in the present tense, in what mood is the verb after *antequam* or *priusquam* expressed? (In the *pres. indicative* or *subjunctive.*) 245. When the principal verb is in the *fut.*, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? (In the *future perfect* or the *present subjunctive;* sometimes in the *present indicative.*) 246. When the principal verb is in the *past* tense, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? (In the *perfect indicative*, or in the *imperfect subjunctive.*) 247. When should the *subj.* always be used after *antequam, priusquam?* (Whenever it is stated or implied to be *necessary, proper*, or *designed* with a view to some *purpose*, that the one action or event should precede the other.)

248. When do *dum, donec, quoad,* = *until*, take the *in-*

[1] In such sentences what is said in the principal clause is not only *contemporaneous* with the action expressed in the *quum* clause, but is actually *included* in it.

When does *quum* always take the subjunctive? [When it means *although, whereas, since,* (when *since* does not express *time.*)]

dicative? (When they merely *mark the time* up to which the action or state is to be continued.) 249. When the *subjunctive?* (When that up to which the action or state is to be continued, is to be represented, not as a *fact*, but only as what *may possibly* occur; especially when it is itself *the object pursued.*) 250. What mood do they and *quamdiu* always take, in the sense of *as long as?* (The *indicative.*) 251. With the adverbs meaning *after, as soon as*, how should the English *pluperf.* generally be translated? (By the perf.)

252. What are the conjunctions by which '*although*' is to be translated? (Etsi, tametsi, quamquam, with the indicative; or *licet* with the subjunctive.)

253. What is *quamvis*, and what mood does it govern? (*However much; however*, with subj.: it may often however be rendered *although.*) 254. What is *etiamsi*, and what mood does it take? (*Even if; even though:* it governs indic. or subjunct.) 255. Do any other conjunctions express *though?* (Yes: sometimes *quum* and *ut.*)

256. What is the Lat. for '*because*,' and what mood does it take? (*Quia* with indic.)

257. What is the conjunction for '*since?*'[1] (*Quoniam* with indic.)

(*Examples.*)

244. Ante rorat quam *pluit, It drops before it rains.*
Tempestas minatur antequam *surgat, A tempest threatens before it gets up.*

245. *Antequam* aliquo loco *consedero*, longas a me literas non exspectabis, 'Till *I settle somewhere, you will not expect long letters from me.*
Antequam de republicâ *dicam*, exponam vobis breviter, &c.
Priusquam *respondeo* . . . dicam, &c. (Phil. ii. 3.)

[1] When it gives a reason: not '*since*' of *time*; which is *ex quo*, &c.

246. Hæc omnia *ante* facta sunt, *quam* Verres Italiam *attigit*, *All these things were done before Verres reached Italy.*
Ducentis annis *ante quam* Romam *caperent*, in Italiam Galli transcenderunt, *The Gauls crossed over into Italy two hundred years before they took Rome.*

249. Exspectabo dum venias, *I will wait till you come.*
Exspecto dum venias, *I am waiting till you come.*
Exspectabam dum venires, *I was waiting till you came.*

VII. CAUTIONS.

1. *Him, her, them,* (or *he, she, they,* when they are to be translated by the *accusative.*) must be translated by the proper case of *sui,* when they and the *nominative of the verb* stand for the *same person.* Also, in the same case, *his, hers, its, theirs,* must be translated by *suus.*
2. *In a sentence with* 'that' *dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated by the* present (*and* imperfect) infinitive, *whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as* over before the time *of the principal verb.*
3. 'Should' *after* 'that' *is to be translated by the* present infinitive *when it does not express either* duty *or a* future event.
4. 'Would,' 'should,' *after a* past *tense are* future forms:
   He *says* that he *will* come.
   He *said* that he *would* come.
5. '*Thing*' should be expressed by '*res,*' (fem.,) when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant:
   Thus '*of many things,*' not *multorum,* but *multarum rerum.*
6. Cum is written *after,* and *as one word with* the ablatives me, te, &c.: *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.*
7. Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition;* for instance, *to smile at,* &c.
8. '*For*' before a substantive or pronoun followed by the *infin.* is not to be translated. The construction is the *acc.* with *infin.*
   It is a sin { *for* a boy not *to obey* his parents. / that a boy should not obey his parents.
9. '*As*' and '*but*' are often (in effect) *relatives:* '*but*' being equivalent to the relat. with *not.*
10. '*Such*' in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality.* It should then be translated into Latin by *tantus, quantus;* not *talis, qualis.*
11. '*That,*' when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.
12. *Neuter* verbs *of motion* often form their *perfect definite* of the *active* voice with '*am,*' not '*have.*'
13. '*To*' is omitted after many verbs, which thus *seem* to govern two accusatives.
14. When '*that*' introduces a *consequence,* '*that not*' is *ut non,* not *ne.*
   That—not { for a *purpose* . . . *ne.* / —— *consequence* . . . *ut non.*
15. After verbs of *fearing,* the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated by the *present* or *imperfect* subjunctive, with *ut* or *nē.*
16. *Who, what, which,* are often *dependent interrogatives,* especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting,* &c.
17. '*May,*' '*might,*' sometimes mean '*can,*' '*could,*' and must be translated by *possum.*
18. The *perf infin.* must be translated by the *present infin.* after *might, could, ought,* unless the action is to be represented as *over* before the time to which *might, could,* &c., refer.
19. '*Of you,*' '*of us,*' are not to be translated after *how many,* or *other numerals,* when the *whole party* are spoken of. When *of us, of you,* are omitted, the verb will be of the *first* and *second* pers. respectively.
20. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used *adjectively,* and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.
21. '*What*' is sometimes used for '*how,*' (quam;) sometimes for '*how great,* (quantus.)

22. '*For*' and '*as*' are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.
23. When *one, two*, &c., mean *one, two*, &c. *apiece*, or *for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive* numerals, *singuli, bini*, &c. See C. 38.
24. To express the *future subjunctive passive*, we must not use the *participle in dus* with *sim, essem*, &c., but *futurum sit, esset*, &c., followed by *ut*.
25. After an expression of time, '*that*' is often used for *on which*.
26. What is *in form* the *present participle active* is often '*the participial substantive*' or gerund. It is always so, when it *governs* or *is governed*, instead of merely *agreeing*.
27. '*I have* to do it' must be translated by the part. in *dus*.
    (*Eng.*) With whom we *have* to live.
    (*Lat.*) With whom *it is to-be-lived*, (quibuscum vivendum est.)
28. '*It is*,' followed by what is in form the *infin. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness*, or something *intended*.
29. But '*is to be*' sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness*, or *intention*, but *possibility* as, 'the passage *is to be found* in the fifth book,' = the passage *may* or *can* be found in the fifth book.
30. A *present participle* must be translated by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.
31. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.*, when the verb is *deponent*.
32. '*But*' (= *except, unless*) after a negative is *nisi*, or (if it stands before a substantive) the prepos. *præter*.
33. When the action was not done *in*, but only near a town, '*at*' must be translated by *ad* or *apud*.
34. '*One*' often means '*some one*' (aliquis) or '*a certain one*,' (quidam.)
35. '*Will*' and '*would*,' '*will not*' and '*would not*,' are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.
    They are to be so translated when for
    will, *would*, we may substitute
    is (are, &c.) *willing*, *was* (were, &c.) *willing*.
36. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case: and then by what preposition, or what case.
37. O never translate, puer admodum care,
    '*I am going to plough*,' by '*sum iens arare*.'
    With *eo* the phrase has got nothing to do:
    Be *sum araturus* the Latin for you.
38. In so many *apiece*, leave '*apiece*' quite alone,
    But of numerals choose *a distributive* one.

VIII. DISTINCTION OF SYNONYMES.

1. Qui *quærit*, REPERIT: *non quæsita* INVENIUNTUR.
2. Tu SUCCENDE rogum; tædas ACCENDE facesque.
3. Navis, equus, currusque VEHUNT; PORTABIT asellus
   Pondera, PORTABUNTque humeri; leviora FERUNTUR.
   Læva GERIT clipeum; vestesque GERUNTUR et arma.
4. CONTINGIT use of things we *like*;
   But ACCIDIT, when *evils* strike.
5. Villa DESPICIMUS: CONTEMNE pericula, miles:
   SPERNE voluptates, fœdasque libidinis escas.
   DESPICERE relates to what we *might value* or *respect*: CONTEMNERE to what we *might fear* or *think important*: SPERNERE, to what we *might accept* or *pursue*.
6. EXIMO quæ *mala* sunt; ADIMO *bona*: DEMERE possum *Quidlibet*: hæc teneas justo discrimine verba.
7. Pars ORÆ est LITUS: retinentur flumina RIPIS.
   Hence ORA, *coast*; LITUS, *shore*; RIPA, *bank*.

APPENDIX I.

Verbs followed by *Gen.*, *Dat.*, or *Abl.*, where we use *no* preposition, and should therefore be likely to put the accusative. (Those with asterisks take also an *acc.* of the *thing*, though some of them only when the acc. is a *neut. pron.*)

GEN.		DAT.		ABL.	
obtain,	potior, (*abl.*)	*abuse,*	maledīco.	*abuse,*	abūtor.
to pity,	misereor.	*revile,*		*discharge,*	fungor.
forget,	obliviscor, (*acc.*)	*advise,*	*suadeo.	*perform,*	
remember,	memini, (*acc.*)	*answer,*	*respondeo.	*enjoy,*	fruor.
recollect,	recordor, (*acc.*)	*believe,*	credo.	*obtain,*	potior, (*gen.*)
require,	egeo,	*command,*	*impero.	*require,*	egeo,
need,	indigeo, *abl.*	*commission,*	*mando.	*need,*	indigeo, (*gen.*)
		charge,		*want,*	
		congratulate,	*gratulor.	*use,*	utor.
		displease,	displiceo.	*want,*	careo.
		direct,	*præcipio.	*be without,*	
		envy,	*invideo.		
		favor,	faveo.		
		flatter,	adūlor, (*acc.*)		
		give,	*do.		
		help,	auxilior,		
		aid,	opitulor.		
		assist,			
		succor,	subvenio, succurro.		
		heal,	medeor.		
		cure,			
		hurt,	noceo.		
		indulge,	*indulgeo.		
		marry,	nubo.		
		obey,	pāreo, obedio, obtempero.		
		pardon,	*ignosco.		
		permit,	*permitto.		
		persuade,	*persuadeo.		
		please,	placeo.		
		resist,	resisto,		
		oppose,	repugno.		
		rival,	æmulor, (*acc.*)		
		satisfy,	satisfacio.		
		spare,	parco.		
		suit,	convenio.		
		threaten,	*minor, *minitor.		
		trust,	fido, confido, *abl.*		

APPENDIX II.

GREEK NOUNS.

1st Decl.	Ænē-ās,	æ,	æ,	am (ān),	ă,	ă,		
	Anchīs-ēs,	æ,	æ,	ēn,	ē,	ē,		Voc. sometimes ă and ā.
	Pēnēlŏp-ē,	ēs,	æ,	ēn,	ē,	ē,		
2d Decl.	Del-ŏs,	i,	o,	um *or* ŏn,	e,	o,		
	Orph-eŭs,	eï,	eo,	eum *or* ĕă,	eu,	eo.		
	(*or*, N. eus,	G. eos,	D. ĕi (ei),	Acc. ĕă poetical.)				
	Ath-ōs,	ō,	ō,	ōn *or* ō,	ōs,	ō.	(In Greek ως.)	
3d Decl.	Pŏēs-is,	is, (eos,)	i,	im, (in,)	is, i.		es, eōn (Ibus *not found.*)	
	Nerē-is,							
	G. Nerēĭd-is,	(ōs,)	i,	em, (ă,)	(Nerēĭ,) ē.		ēs, um, ibus, es. (ās.)	
	Perĭcl-ēs,	is, i,	i,	em, ea,	es, e,	e.		
	Did-ō,	ūs,	ō,	ō,	ō,		(also, ōnis, &c.)	

Obs. Neuters in *a*, G. ătis, have D. plur. in *atis*; thus, *poēma*, D. plur. *poēmătis*, not *poēmatibus*.

EXAMPLES OF PATRONYMICS, (or names from a *father* or *ancestor*.)

	Ænēas,	Anchīses,	Tyndărus,	Thēseus,	Atlas, (antis,)
m.	*Ænēădes*,	*Anchisiădes*,	*Tyndarides*,	*Thēsīdes* [1]	*Atlantĭdes*, *Atlantiădes*,
f.	(*Ænēis*,)	*Anchisias*,	*Tyndăris*,	*Thesēis*,	*Atlantis*, *Atlantias*.

EXAMPLES OF NAMES (DERIVED FROM ONE'S TOWN OR NATIVE COUNTRY.)

m.	Persa,	Cres,	Tros,	Thrax,	Laco, (Lacon,)	Phœnix,
f.	*Persis*,	*Cressa*, *Cretis*,	*Troas*,	*Threissa*, *Thressa*,	*Lacæna*,	*Phœnissa*,

Romānus, (*Roman*) Clusīnus, (*of Clusium*) Athenienses, (*an Athenian*) Abderītēs, (fem. *Abderītis*) (*of Abdera*)

Milesius, (*of Miletus*) Arpīnas, (*of Arpinum.*)

[1] For *Thesēides*. Hence ĭdes comes from nom. in *eus*.

INITIALS OF ROMAN NAMES. (*Prænomina.*)

A.	stands for	*Aulus.*	N.	stands for	*Numerius.*
APP.	———	*Appius.*	P.	———	*Publius.*
C.	———	*Caius.*	Q.	———	*Quintus.*
CN.	———	*Cnæus.*	SER.	———	*Servius.*
D.	———	*Decimus.*	SEX.	———	*Sextus.*
K.	———	*Kæso.*	SP.	———	*Spurius.*
L.	———	*Lucius.*	T.	———	*Titus.*
M.	———	*Marcus.*	TI.	———	*Tiberius.*
M'. or M?	———	*Manius.*			

APPENDIX III.

CONJUNCTIONS.

(1) ***Conjunctions governing the subjunctive.***

ut,[1]	*that, in order that,* (often rendered by the *infinitive.*!) *that* and carry '*not*,' (after verbs of *fear.*)
quo,	*that,* (and carry '*the*' to the comparative.)
ne,	*not,* (with *imperat.* or *subj.* used imperatively.) *that,* and carry '*not*:' *lest.* *that,* (after verbs of *fear.*) It may often be rendered by *not* with the *infin.*
neve, neu,	*and that not; nor.*
quin,	*but,* (as used after *negatives.*) the *relative* with *not.* '*as not*' with *infin.* *from* or *without* with the *participial substantive.*
quomĭnus,	(*by which—the less,*) *that not.* *from,* with the participial substantive.
utĭnam, *would that.*	
dum, modo, dummŏdo,	*provided that: if only.* (after these conjunctions '*not*' is *nĕ.*)
quasi, ut si, ac si, tanquam,	*as if.* (*pres. subj.* rendered by the *perfect* after these conjunctions.)
licet, *although.*	
quamvis, *however much; although.*	
quum, *since; although.*	
nedum, nedum ut,	*much less.*

(2) ***Other conjunctions***, several of which take the subjunctive occasionally, (especially with the *imperfect* and *pluperfect.*)

quod,	*because, that,* (after verbs expressing *emotions,* and when it refers to a *demonstrative* pronoun.)
quum,[2] *when.*	
postquam, posteaquam,	*after.* (generally with *perf.* indicative.)
simŭlac, simulatque, ut primum, quum primum,	*as soon as,* (generally with *perf.* indicative.)
ut, ubi,	*when; after.*
antequam,[3] priusquam,	*before.*

---

[1] Sometimes *ut* = *so that; on condition that.* Sometimes = *although.*

[2] *Quum,* '*when,*' often takes the subjunctive: it should generally do so, when the *verb* with *when* could be turned into a *participle.*

[3] *Antĕquam* and *priusquam* mostly take the *subj.* of the *imperf.* and *pluperf.*; and whenever it is meant that one thing is *necessary* or *designed* to precede another. The *indicative* is used when *mere priority* is to be expressed.

dum,[1] donec, } *until; as long as*, (dum, quoad, } *whilst.*)
quam diu, *as long as.*
si,[2] *if.*
sin, *but if:* sin minus, *but if not.*
nisi, nl, *unless.*
etsi, } *although; even though.*
tametsi, }
etiamsi, }
et, que, ac, atque, *and*, (*ac* seldom before *k* sounds.)
etiam, (*before its* word,) } *even; also; too.*
quŏque, (*after its* word,) } (*etiam*, in answers, is '*yes.*')
et, }
aut, vel, ve, *or.*
verum, vero, *but.*
autem, at, ast, atqui, sed, *but.*
tamen, attămen, } *yet; notwithstanding;*
veruntamen, } *nevertheless.*
quia, *because.*
quippe, *because; inasmuch as*
quoniam, } *since.*
quandoquidem, }
quando, *when, since.*
siquidem, *since; if indeed.*
quatĕnus, *in as far as.*
nam, namque, } *for.*
enim, etĕnim, }

itaque, *and so; therefore.*
igĭtur, }
propterea, }
idcirco, } *therefore*
ergo, }
ideo, }
hinc, *hence; therefore*
quare, }
quapropter, } *wherefore.*
quamobrem, }
quocirca, }
et—et, }
atque—atque, }
ac—ac, } *both—and;*
tam—quam, } *not only—but also.*
tum—tum, }
quum—tum, }
non solum, } verum (*or* } *not only, but*
non modo, } sed) etiam } *also*
aut—aut, } *either—or.*
vel—vel, }
sive—sive, } *be it that—or be it that;*
seu—seu, } *either—or: whether—or.*
nunc—nunc, } *now—now; one while—*
modo—modo, } *another.*
nec—nec, }
neque—neque, } *neither—nor.*
nec, alone, may often be rendered by '*and*' and '*not*' carried to the verb.

Obs. *Enim, autem, vero, quidem, quoque, cannot stand* as the *first words* of a sentence or clause: *igitur* seldom does.

---

[1] *Dum, donec, quoad*, in the sense of *until*, take the *subj.* when there is reference to an *object to be obtained.* In the sense of '*as long as*' they have the *indicative.*

[2] *Si* and its compounds take the *subjunctive* of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, and of the other tenses when the condition is to be expressed *doubtfully.*

INDEX.

(On finding root of *present* from root of *perfect*.)

To find the root of the *present* from the root of the *perfect*, we must remember how the root of the perfect was formed.

a) Thus if *āv*, *īv*, *ŭ* precede '*it*' or any other termination of the tenses tha have the root of the *perfect*, we get the root of the present by throwing them away. But sometimes *ŭ* is to be retained.

b) We must remember that *x* is made up of *cs*, or *gs*, or *qus*: and therefore the root of the *present* ends in *c*, *g*, or *qu*: sometimes however in *v*, *h*, or the vowel that precedes *x*.

[*duxi*, *texi*, *coxi*, from *duco*, *tego*, *coquo*.
vēxi, *vexi*, *struxi*, from *vivo*, *veho*, *struo*.]

c) We must remember that *ps* may be made up of *bs*: so that the root of the present may end in *b*; not necessarily in *p*.

(scrips-it = *scrīb*-sit: R. scrīb.)

d) Sometimes an *n* or *m* must be inserted before the final mute, to give the root of the present.

(vīc-it; R. vinc: rūp-it; R. rump.)

e) Sometimes *ī* must be turned into *ĕ*, to get the root of the present.

(jēc-it; R. *jăc*.)

f) Before *s*, a *d* has often been thrown away.

(clausi = claud-si; R. claud.)

g) An *s* before *s* is a *b*, *d*, or *r*, in the *present*.

(*jussi*, *cessi*, *gessi*, from *jub-eo*, *cod-o*, *ger-o*.)

☞ When a verb is followed by *io*, the meaning is that the first person of the pres. ends in *io*.]

LATIN INDEX.

p. refers to the *page*. Numerals below 7 refer to the Exercises, Part II. Above 6, to the Vocabularies, Part II. Numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to the Exercises, Part II.]

A, ab, abs, *from; by:* a fronte, (24,) *in front:* ab u. c. *stands for* ab urbe conditâ, *from the city built; from the building of the city*
abesse, *to be absent; to be far from.*
abire, *to go away.*[1]
abolēre, *to abrogate.*
abŏlescere, *pass away, decay.*
abrīpere, (ripŭi, rept,) 28, *to snatch away; hurry away.*
abs-condere, (did, dĭt,) *to hide.*
absens, (23,) *absent:* construe '*in his absence.*'
absolvere, (solv. solūt,) *to acquit,* 12.
abstinēre, *to abstain from,* 25.
absumere, *to take away, destroy.*
ac, *and.*
accēdere, (cess,) *go up to; approach.*
accĭdere, Syn. 4, *to happen; befall:* accĭdit, 21, *it happens;* or, *it happened.*
accĭpere, (cēp, cept,) *to receive,* 2, 39.
accipiter, *a hawk,* 2.
accommodare se, *to adapt.*
accūrāte, *accurately,* 40.
accurrere, *to run up.*
accusare, *to accuse.*
acer, p. 139. *sharp, active, fierce.*
acerbe, *sharply,* 20.
acerbitas, *sharpness,* 15.
acerbus, 36, *sour; bitter.*
Achilles, (23.) *Achilles, the bravest of the Greeks who fought at Troy:* Gen. is.
ăcies, *sharpness; sight; line* or *order of battle;* '*ranks:*' aciem instruere, 26, 29.
acquīrere, *to acquire.*
acuere, *to sharpen.*
acŭleus, 13, *a sting, a thorn.*
acūmen, 19, *acuteness.*
acute, *sharply; wittily.*
ad, *to, at;* ad tempus, (25,) *for a time;* ad—usque, 19, *up to.*
addere, *to add.*
addictus morti, *condemned to death,* [addīcere.]
addiscere, 27, *to learn more.*
addūcere, 30, *to lead to; induce.*
adeo, 21, (23,) *so; in such a manner.*
adesse, (32,) *to be present, to be at hand.*
adferre, (fero, irreg. verb,) *to bring.*
adhærēre, *to adhere; to be joined to; to stick;* or, *be caught.*
adhibēre, 25, *to use, to employ.*
ad-hinnire, *to neigh at* any thing.
adhuc, 12, (22,) *hitherto, yet.*
adīmere, (ēm, empt,) *to take away* something desirable.
adipisci, (adept,) *to obtain, gain, win.*
adjuvare, *to help,* (acc.)
administrare, 23, *to administer.*
admirābilis, *admirable, wonderful.*
admŏdum, *very.*
admonēre, (monŭi, monit,) *to admonish, remind.*
admōvēre, *to move* (a thing) *to.*
adnumerare, 31, *to reckon to.*
adolescere, *to grow up; grow to maturity*
adoriri, 37,[2] *to attack, fall on, accost.*
adornare, (25,) *to adorn.*
ad-scendere, 12, *climb to, ascend, mount.*
ad-scribere, [*to write in addition to.*] ut se ad amicitiam tertium adscriberent, (*to admit him as a third person into their friendship;*) *to let him too be their friend.*
adspectus, (10,) *look, sight:* Gen. ūs.
adspergere, (spers, spers,) *to besprinkle.*
adspĭcere, io, (spex, spect,) *to behold.*

[1] See Conjug. of *eo*, inf. *ire.* Irreg. verbs, p. 123, *First Latin Book.*

[2] In Fab. 4. p. 256, *to address* or *accost:* meaning, however, that it was done with a *deceitful intention.*

adsuescere, (suev, suet,) *to accustom*, (*trans.*;) *to accustom myself.*
advect, *see* advehere.
advehere, (vex, vect,) *to bring.*
advenire. (10.) *to come to.*
adventare, 29. *to approach.*
adventus, 10, *approach*; G. ûs.
adversarius, 23, *enemy.*
adversus, *adverse, towards*; adverso tempore, (*at an adverse season,*) *in adversity.*
ædes. pl. *house.*
ægre ferre, *to take* (any thing) *ill*; *to be displeased at* (any thing.)
ædificare, *to build.*
ædilitas curulis, (33.) *the Curule Ædileship*; *the dignity of Curule Ædile.*
ædilitius, (37,) *one who has been Ædile.*
ægrotus, *sick.*
Ægyptii, *the Egyptians.*
Æneas, *Æneas, a Trojan prince*; G. æ, App. ii.
æqualis, (adj.,) *of the same age.*
æquare, (33.) *to make equal*; *to equalize.*
æque ac, 27, *just as, as.*
æquitas, *equity, justice.*
æquus, *even, equal, just, fair*; æquus animus, *resignation.*
aër, *the air.*
æs alienum, 33, (*another's money* =) *debt.*
æstas, *summer.*
æstimare, *to value.*
ætas, *time of life, age.*
in æternum, *forever.*
ævum, *age, an age.*
afficere, io, *to affect*; injuriâ afficere, *to wrong*; animum voluptate, *to give pleasure to the mind*; pœnâ, *to visit with punishment*; ultimo supplicio, *to execute, to put to death.*
affirmare, *to affirm.*
affligere, (flix, flict,) *to afflict.*
Agamemnon, *the commander-in-chief of the Greeks at Troy*; G. ōnis.
agāso, *muleteer*; G. ōnis.
age, (26,) *come!*
ager, 5, *field, territory*; G. agri.
agere, (ĕg, act.) *to do, to act, to drive, to spend*, (life, time, &c.;) causam, *to plead a cause*; quid agis?
ag-grĕdior, (gress,) *to attack*, [from ad *to*, grădior *to walk.*]
agitare, *to drive.*
agnoscere, (nov, nĭt,) *to recognise, acknowledge.*
agnus, *lamb.*
agricŏla, 3, 7, *a husbandman.*
agricultūra, *agriculture, tillage.*
ain' tu? (for aisne tu?) *say you so? how so?*
Alcibiades, Gen. is, *an Athenian, a pupil of Socrates, and general in the Peloponnesian war.*
alere, p. 172, *to nourish, support.*
Alexander, G. dri, *a king of Macedon, called* 'the Great'
alienus, *belonging to another*: render '*another's*,' '*other men's.*'
alimentum, *nourishment, food.*
aliquamdiu, *for some time.*
aliquando, p. 180, *some time or other.*
aliquis, p. 146, *any one, any, some.*
aliquid, (*neut.,*) *something*; *some.* Before a *genitive* it is to be translated by *some*, and the genitive not to have '*of.*'
aliquot, *some, several.*
aliquŏties, *several times.*
aliter, 24, *otherwise.*
alius, p. 138, *other, another*; G. īus.
al-ligare, *to tie up.*
allŏqui, (locut,) *speak to, address.*
aloë, *the aloe*; G. es, App. ii.
Alpes, *the Alps*; G. ium.
alter, p. 138, *another*; *one more*: alter—alter, *the one—the other.*
alteruter, *one or the other, one of the two.*
altitudo, *height.*
altus, *high, deep*; *loud.* altum mare, *the deep sea*, or *high sea.*
amare, *to love.*
amārus, *bitter.*
ambire gratiam, *to court the favor* (of.)
ambitio, *ambition.*
ambitus, *bribery*; G. ûs.
ambulare, *to walk*; in jus ambulare, *to go to law*; *to go before a magistrate.*
amĭcŭlum, *cloak, mantle.*
amicitia, *friendship.*
amīcus, 3, *friend*; amīcum habēre aliquem, *to have a man for your friend*
āmittere, (mīs, miss,) 24, *to lose.*
amnis, *river.*
amœnitas, *beauty*, (*of* places, &c.)
amor, *love.*
amussis, Abl. i, *carpenter's rule, plumb line.*
amphibium, *an amphibious animal.*
an.—Synt. 54,
anas, ătis, *duck.*
an-ceps, (cipitis,) *doubtful.*
Anchises, *a Trojan, the father of Æneas*; G. æ, App. ii.
ancilla, *maid-servant*; *maid.*
angiportus, ûs, *lane.*
anguis, *snake.*
Anglus, *English*; *an Englishman.*
angustiæ, *a narrow pass.*
angustus, *narrow.*
anĭma, *breath, vital principle, soul.* animam agere, (*to be spending the vital principle,* =) *to be near death*; *to be about to die.*
animal, *animal*; G. ālis.
animi levitas, *lightness of mind, thoughtlessness.*
animus, *mind, soul, heart, feeling, intention*; animus me fallit, *I am mistaken.*
Anio, G. ēnis, *a river that flows into the Tiber.*
annŭlus, *ring.*

annus, *year*. tertius est annus, ex quo, (*it is the third year from that which*, =) '*it is three years since*,' &c.
antea, *before*, (adv.)
antecēdere, *to go before; to excel.*
anteferre, *to prefer.*
antequam, *before*, (conjunctional adv.)
antīquus, *ancient.*
antrum, *cave.*
anus, *old woman.*
anxius, *anxious.*
Apelles, G. is, *a celebrated Grecian painter.*
aperire, (aperu, apert.) p. 174, *to open.*
Apollo, G. Inis, *Apollo, the god of poetry and prophecy.*
ap-pārēre, (paru,) *to appear.*
appellare, *to call to, appeal to.*
appellere classem, (24,) (*to drive a fleet to*, =) *to put into a port, to land.*
appētere, *to desire, long to attain.*
ap-properare, *to hasten up.*
aptus, *fit.*
apud, *at, by, amongst, in the house of.*
ăqua, 3, *water.* aqua marina, *sea-water, salt water.*
ăquila, 2, *eagle.*
ăra, (13,) *altar.*
ărare, 1, *to plough.*
Arăris, (*a river in Gaul,*) *the Saône.*
arbitrium.—See note on Ex. 43.
arbor, (8,) *tree.* fem. G. ŏris.
arcānum, *secret.*
arcēre, *to ward off, keep off,—exclude from.*
arcessere, p. 173, *to send for, summon.*
architectus, *architect.*
arcus, *bow;* G. ûs, (Dat. pl. ūbus.)
arēna, 3, *sand.*
argentum, *silver.*
Argi, G. ōrum, *Argos, a town of Greece, in the Peloponnesus.*
Aristīdes, *a noble Athenian, famed for his justice.*
arma capere, *to take arms.*
ar-rĭgere, (rex, rect,) *to raise up, prick up.*
ar-rĭpere, io, (ripu, rept,) *to snatch up, to snatch hold of, seize.*
ars, tis, *art.*
ars oratoria, *oratory:* vid. *bonus.*
arti-fex, (ficis.) *artist.*
arvum, *ploughed land, cornfield, field.*
arx, *citadel.*
ascendere, *to ascend, climb.*
asĭnus, 2, *ass.*
assidultas, *assiduity, industry.*
astrum, *constellation, star.*
at, *but.* at vero, *but.*
Athenæ, ārum, *Athens.*
Athenĭensis, 14, *an Athenian.*
atque, *and.*
atqui, *but.*
atrāmentum, 13, *ink.*
attentus, (at-tendere,) *attentive.* parum attentus, (*too little attentive,*) *very inattentive.*
atrox, *terrible, wild;* G. atrōcis.
attingere, (tig, tact,) 40, *to touch, reach.*
attonare, *to astound.*
auceps, (*for* avi-ceps,) *bird-catcher,* [avis, *bird;* capere, *to take.*] G. aucŭpis.
auctor, *an adviser.* quibus auctoribus, ('*who* being the advisers') may be rendered '*by whose advice.*'
auctoritas, *authority.*
auctumnus, 28, *autumn.*
audacia, 17, *boldness.*
audax, 17, *bold;* G. ācis.
audēre, (ausus sum,) *to dare, to presume.*
audire, *to hear.*
aufugere, io, 24, *to fly away.*
augēre, (aux, auct,) *to increase:* trans.
aureus, *of gold, golden.*
auris, *ear.*
aurum, 4, *gold.*
auscultare, 6, *to listen.*
aut, *or;* aut—aut, *either—or.*
autem, *but.*
auxilium, 5, *help;* auxilia, 5, *auxiliary forces.*
avaritia, *avarice.*
avārus, *greedy, avaricious.*
āvis, 3, *bird.*
avunculus, *uncle.*

Baculus, *or* baculum, *stick, staff.*
balæna, *whale.*
barbarus, *barbarous.*
barbarus, *barbarian; one who was* not *a Greek.*
beate, *happily.*
beatus, *happy.* beatum ferre aliquem, *to call a man happy.*
bellare, *to wage war;* bellandi studium = *love of war.*
bellua, *beast.*
bellum, 5, *war;* gerere, *to wage war.*
bĕne, *well.*
beneficium, 14, *benefit.*
beneficus *bountiful.*
benevolentia, 26, *benevolence, goodness.*
benignitas, 25, *bountifulness, goodness*
benignus, *bountiful.*
bestia, *beast, wild beast.*
bĭbĕre, (bĭb, bĭbĭt,) *to drink.* p 171,
blandimentum, 15, *blandishment.*
biennium, *the space of two years.*
bis, *twice.*
Bœotia, *a country in middle Greece;* capital, *Thebes.*
bonĭtas, *goodness.* G. ātis.
bŏnum, *a good thing, a blessing.*
bŏnus, *good:* bonæ artes, = *useful learning; the arts and sciences.*
bos, bŏvis, ox.
brachium, 5, *arm.*
brĕvis, *short.*
Brīsēis, *Briseis;* G. Idis.
Britannĭcus, *British.*

Brundusium, *Brundusium, a town of lower Italy.*
brutus, *brute, brutish.*

Cacūmen, 15, *the top, peak.*
cadaver, (n.,) *corpse.*
cădere, p. 171, *to fall.*
cæcus, *blind.*
cædere, (cecīd, cæs,) p. 171, *to slay, kill.*
Cæsar, *Cæsar;* G. ăris.
calamitas, *a calamity.*
calcar, *a spur;* G. aris.
cālidus, *warm.*
callēre bene, *to be well skilled in.*
callĭdus, *skilful;* callidissime, *very skilful.*
calor, *heat;* G. ōris.
campus, *field.*
candĭdus, *white.*
cănĕre, p. 172, *to sing.*
cānis, *dog;* G. is.
Cannæ, ārum, *Cannæ, a town in Campania.*
Cannensis, 17, *of Cannæ.*
cantare, 9, *to sing.*
cantilēna, (9.,) *song.*
cantillare, 4, *to trill.*
cantus, *song;* G. ûs.
căpere, io, p. 171, arma capere, *to take arms.*
capessere, p. 173, *to seize hold of, undertake.*
capĭtis, (*of the head*, ==) *to death.*
capra, *goat.*
captīvus, 15, *captive.*
captūrus, fut. part. of capio, *to take.*
Capua, *Capua, the capital of Campania, in southern Italy.*
căput, ĭtis, *head;* capĭte *or* capĭtis damnatus, 38, *condemned to death.*
carcer, ĕris *prison;*
cārēre, p. 169, i. (governs abl.) *to want, to be without.*
caritas, 37, *affection.*
carmen, G. ĭnis, *song.*
cāro, carnis, *flesh.*
carpere, p. 171, *to pluck.*
Carthāginiensis, 15, *Carthaginian.*
Carthāgo, ĭnis, *a powerful city in Africa, founded by Queen Dido, (from Tyre;) the rival of Rome.*
cārus, *dear.*
castīgāre, *to chastise.*
castra, (pl.,) *a camp.*
castus, *chaste.*
casus, (31.) *misfortune;* G. ûs.
casu, *by chance.*
Catilinarii, *the Catilinarian conspirators.*
Cāto, ōnis, *a Roman famed for his inflexible adherence to his principles; he lived between the second and third Punic wars.*
causa, *cause;* causā, *for the sake of;* causam agere, *to plead a cause.* (as advocate;) causam dĭcere, *to plead one's own cause.*
cautus, 25, *cautious.*
cāvea, *a cage.*
cavēre, (cāv, caut,) p. 170, *to beware of.*
cāvus, *hollow.*
cēdere, p. 171, *to yield.*
cēlebratus, part. of celebrare, *celebrated.*
celeritas, *swiftness;* G. ātis.
celeriter, *quickly.*
celsus, *high, tall.*
censēre, p. 169, *to think, value.*
centurio, 26, *centurion;* G. ōnis.
cēpi, see capere.
cera, *wax.*
Cĕres, ĕris, *Ceres, the goddess of corn, &c.*
cernere, (crēv, cret,) *to see, perceive*, p. 172,
certamen, 17, *contest.*
certare, 3, 17, *to fight, quarrel.*
certus, *certain.*
cervus, *stag.*
cēteri, æ, a. *the other; other.*
Chæronēa, *a town in Bœotia.*
Christĭanus, *Christian.*
Chryses, G. æ, *Chryses, a priest of Apollo.*
cibus, i, *food.*
cingere, (cinx, cinct,) p. 171, *to gird, surround.*
circa, } *about.*
circum, }
circum-dăre, (circumdĕdi, circumdătum,) *to surround.*
☞ 'to surround *a city with a wall*,' is either 'circumdare *urbem muro*,' or 'circumdare *murum urbi*.'
circum-linere, (lēv, lĭt,) *to smear round, anoint, cover.*
circum sĕdēre, (*to sit around,*) *to invest or besiege* a town.
circum-spicere, io, (spex, spect,) *to look around.*
circum-vēnire, 28, *to surround, to circumvent.*
cis, } *on this side of.*
citra, }
cito, *quickly.*
civilis, 19. *civil.*
cīvis, p. *a citizen.*
cīvĭtas, *state; admission to citizenship*, p. 134,
clādes, *defeat, overthrow;* clades Variana, *the defeat of Varius.*
clam, *secretly.*
clam, (prep.,) *without the knowledge of.*
clamare, 3, *to shout.*
clamor, 16, *clamor, shouting.*
clarus, *clear, illustrious.*
classis, p. 134, classem appellere, (appŭli, appulsum,) *to put into a port; to land*
claudere, (claus, claus,) p. 171, *to shut.*
clāvus, *a nail.*
clementia, 25, *clemency, mercy.*
clipeus, *shield.*
clitellæ, *panniers; a packsaddle.*
cœlestis, 27, *heavenly.*
cœlum, *heaven.*

cœna, *dinner;* **ad cœnam vocare**, *to invite to dinner.*
cœnare, *to dine.*
co-ërcēre, *to restrain.*
cōgere, (coēg, coact,) *to compel*, p. 172.
cogitare, *to consider.*
co-gnatus, 30, *related.*
cognitio, 21, *knowledge.*
co-gnoscere, (co-gnōvi, co-gnĭtum,) *to know well*, generally from information; *to learn;* cognĭtus, *known.*
☞ Obs. The original root is *gno*, as in γνο, γνω, γιγνωσκ.
colere, p. 172. *cultivate, worship.*
collineare, *to hit the mark.*
collis, (m.,) *hill.*
col-lŏqui, (locut,) *to converse.*
collum, *neck.*
col-lustrare, *enlighten, illuminate.*
colōnus, 27, *former.*
color, ōris, *color.*
columba, *dove.*
com-būrere, p. 268, *to burn down; to burn*, (= consume by burning.) See *uro*, p. 173.
com-ĕdere, *to eat up, to devour, to eat.* See *edo*, p. 178.
cōmes, (comĭtis,) *companion.*
cōmis, *affable, polite.*
comĭtia, (pl.,) *an assembly of the people* for the election of magistrates. From '*com*' and '*it*,' sup root of *eo.*
commemorare, *to make mention of.*
☞ *De* after *commemorare* must be rendered by '*of.*'
commendare, 19.
committere, *to commit;* prœlium, 15.
com-mŏdum, 34, *advantage.*
com-morari, [*to tarry together,*] *to live together.*
commovēre, *to move;*
communicare, *to make common; to share*, (followed by *cum.*)
communiter, 37, *in common.*
com-parare, *to procure.* Comparare copias, *to raise troops* or *forces.*
comparātus, *formed.*
compellare, *to call.*
compĕrire, p. 174, *to ascertain.*
compescere, *to restrain, repress.*
complēre, (plēv, plēt,) *to fill.*
compōnere, *to arrange.*
compositus, (from componere,) *arranged, disposed, &c.* In Ex. 19: 'compositus ad gravitatem ac severitatem,' may be rendered, '*adopting a grave and serious tone.*'
com-prehendere, (prehend, prehens,) *to take prisoner, to seize.*
concedere, 19, (43,) *to yield, to go.*
concha, *shell.*
conciliare, *to conciliate, reconcile, win over.*
concio, onis, *assembly.*
concitare, 25, *to excite, rouse.*
concordia, 18, *concord.*
concupiscere, *to wish for, desire.*
concutere, (con-quatere,) *to shake.*
condere, 22, *to build, found.*
condīmentum, (from condīre,) *seasoning.*
conditio, *condition.*
condonare, 31, *to pardon, grant.*
conducere, (dux, duct,) *to hire.*
confĕro, *to carry*, (togĕther;) **confĕro culpam**, I *throw the blame.*
conferre se, *to betake themselves.*
conficere, 12, 34, 39.
confidĕre, *to feel confident.*
confidens, *trusting, confident.*
confirmare, *to strengthen.*
con-fĭteri, (fess,) *to confess.*
confūsus, (particip. of confundere.)
confluere, 15, *to flow together.*
conjicere, (42,) *to hurl, to shoot.*
conjungere, (34.) *to join.*
conjuratio, 15, (ii.,) *conspiracy.*
connubium, 33, *marriage.*
conquīrere, *seek after, collect.*
con-scendere, (scend, scens,) *to climb up.*
conscientia, 21, *knowledge.*
consentāneus, *reasonable, agreeable.*
con-sĕrere, (sĕv, sĭt,) *to plant.*
conservare, (21,) *to preserve, observe.*
considerare, *to consider.*
consīdĕre, (sĕd, sess,) *to settle; to perish.*
consĭlium, *design, plan, intention;* **căpere**, *to form a resolution.*
con-sistere, (stĭt,) *to stop.*
consĭtus. *See* **consĕrere**, *planted.*
consolatio, (36,) *consolation.*
consortium, *partnership.* See 37.
conspectus, ūs, *sight.*
conspicere, io, (spex, spect,) *to behold, to see.*
constantia, *firmness, constancy.*
constat, *it is known, evident.*
con-stituere, 23, 29, (32,) *to appoint.* Constituere exemplum, *to set an example.*
construere, (strux, struct,) *to construct, build*, (a nest.)
consuetudo, 31, *custom;* G. ĭnis.
consul, (15,) G. ŭlis, *consul.*
consularis, (37,) *consular; of consular rank.*
consulatus, 18, *consulship;* consulatum pĕtere, *to be a candidate for the consulship*, (23.)
consulere, *to consult;* consulere alicui, (21,) *to consult a man's interests.*
consumere, (42,) *to consume, spend.*
consumptus, *worn out.*
contaminare, (35,) (for con-tagminare,) *to contaminate.*
contegere, *to cover.*
contemnere, (temps, tempt,) *to despise*, 20.
contemplari, *to look at.*
contemplatio, *sight.*
contentus, *contented, content*, (abl.)
contexere, 31, *to weave, join to.*
contĭnens, G. ntis, *continent*, (adj.)
con-tinēre, 23, *to hold, contain.*
contingere, 19, (ii,) *to touch, lay hold of.*

contra, *against.*
contrādicere, 22, *to speak against.*
contrăhere, 15. contrăhere familiaritātem cum aliquo, *to make acquaintance* (or *strike up an intimacy*) *with anybody.*
con-trectare, *to handle; to pull about.*
convălescere, 26. *to grow strong, amend.*
convēnire, 21, *to assemble.*
convīcium, *an invective.*
con-viva, *guest.* (Com. Gender.)
copiæ, *forces, troops;* copiæ equestres, *cavalry.*
copiam făcere, *to make plenty = to give an opportunity.*
cŏquere, (cox, coct,) *to cook, bake, ripen.*
coram, *before.*
cor, cordis, *heart.*
Corinthus, *Corinth, a rich commercial city of Greece.*
Cornelius, *a Roman family name;* C. Nepos, *a Roman historian.*
cornu, *horn.*[1]
corōna, *crown.*
corrīgere, *to correct.*
corpus, ŏris *body;*
corrōborare, 31, *to strengthen.*
corruere, (ru. rŭt,) *to fall down.*
corrumpere, (35.) *to corrupt.*
cortex, icis, *bark.*
corvus, *raven.*
crabro, *hornet.*
cras, *to-morrow.*
crastinus, *to-morrow's.*
crastinus dies, *to-morrow.*
crassus, *thick, coarse.*
creare, *to create.*
crēdere, *to believe, to trust;* credīdi, credĭtum, (dat.)
cremare, *to burn, burn down.*
crepare, p. 168, *to make a noise.*
crescere, p. 173, of the moon, *to wax, to grow.*
crīmen, *crime, charge.*
cruciare, *to torment.*
crudelis, *cruel.*
crudeliter, 21, *cruelly.*
crumēna, *purse.*
crus, crūris, *leg.* n.
cūbare, p. 168, (ui,) *to lie down.*
cubile, 16, *bed, couch.*
cubitu surgere, *to rise from bed, to get up;* cubitum ire, *to go to bed,* (supines of cubare.)
cūdere, 5, *to forge.*
culpa, *fault.*
culter, G. tri, *knife.*
cultor, 28, *cultivator.*
cultura, 27, *cultivation.*
cultus, -ūs, 39, *civilization.*
cum, *with, when;* cum—tum, *both—and.*
cum maxime, *at the moment that; as he was just.*
cumulare, (34,) *to heap, to load.*
cunctatio, *delay.*
cuncti, *all.*
cunctus, (with sub.) *the whole.*
cŭpere, (from cupio, cupivi, cupītum, p. 171,
cupīditas, ātis, *desire.*
cupīdo, G. dĭnis, *desire.*
cŭpĭdus, *desirous.*
cur? *why?*
curare, 10, 22, *to care for, take care of;* nihil curare, *not to care at all:* with part. in dus, *to cause; e. g.* făciendum curare, *to cause to be made; to have any thing made.*
Cures, G. ium, *Cures, a city of the Sabines in Italy.*
curia, *the senate-house.*
currere, (cucurr, curs,) *to run,*
curriculum, *a course.*
currus, ūs, *chariot.*
cursus, 39, G. ūs, *course.*
curulis ædilitas, *curule ædileship; the dignity of curule ædile.*
custōdia, (35,) *custody;* in custodiā tenēre, *to keep in custody.*
custodire, 5, *to keep safe, preserve.*
custos, 5, *guard;* G. ōdis.
Cybēle, *a goddess, the mother of all the gods;* G. es.

Damnare, *to condemn.*
Damnum, *hurt, loss;* damna inferre, *to inflict injuries.*
dăre, (dĕd, dăt,) p. 168; pœnam, *to suffer punishment.*
dē, *from, concerning, about, of.*
dēbēre, *to owe.* See p. 296, 61, 62.
debilis, *weak, feeble.*
decēdere, 17, *to depart, withdraw, to die.*
decernere. (crēv, crēt,) *to decree, resolve.*
decerpere, (cerps, cerpt,) *to pluck down, to pluck.*
decertare, *to contend, to fight.*
dēcet, *it is becoming; it becomes,* (acc.) Sometimes it may be rendered by *ought.*
decīpere, io, (cēp, cept,) 24, *to deceive.*
declarare, *to declare.*
decorare, 7, *to adorn.*
decrescere, (decrēvi,) 18. See crescere, *to decrease, to wane.*
dedēcus. (ōris,) *disgrace, shame;* dedecus sui, *disgrace to himself.*
dēdĕre, (dedĭd, dedĭt,) *to give up; to surrender,* compound of dē and do.
dedūcere, (dux, duct,) 19, 30.
deesse, *to be wanting.*
defătīgare, *to weary, to tire.*
defendere, (fend, fens,) *to defend; to ward off.*
defervescere, 18.
dēgere,[2] (perf. dēgi,) *to spend life, time, &c.; to live.*

[1] See note on the Genitive of the Fourth Declension, *First Latin Book*, p. 16.
[2] *For* de-igere, *from* de *and* agere.

deglubere, (glups, glupt,) *to flay.*
deinceps, *one after another; successively.*
deinde, 21, (ii,) *thenceforth.*
de-jĭcere, io, (jēc, ject,) *to throw down.*
delectare, 5, *to delight, allure.*
dēlēre, (dēlēv, dēlēt,) p. 169, *to blot out, deface.*
delictum, 18, *sin, transgression.*
delĭgere, (lēg, lect,) *to choose out; to choose.*
delinquere, *to transgress.*
delīrare, 31, *to rave, dote.*
delīrus, *crazy.*
Delphi, *a town of Greece, famous for the Oracle of Apollo.*
delphīnus, *a dolphin.*
demens, entis, *mad.*
demissus, (*part of* demittere,) *hung down; down.*
demittere, 20, *to send down.*
demonstrare, *to show, to prove.*
dēnārius, *a denarius,* (*a Roman coin worth about* 8½*d, or* 15 *cents.*)
denĭque, *at last.*
dens, *tooth;* G. dentis.
de-pellere, *to drive away.*
dependēre, *to hang down.*
de-plorare, *to bewail.*
deprehendere, *to catch* (*in the commission of a fault, &c.*)
derīdēre, 30, *to deride, mock.*
descendere, 7, *to come down.*
describere, *describe; lay out,* (gardens.)
descriptio, *laying out,* (*of a garden, &c.*)
desĕrere, (seru, sert,) 30, *to leave off, forsake.*
de-sīderare, *to miss; to feel the want of.*
desīnere, (desĭi, desītum,) *to end; to leave off.*
desīpere, io, *to be foolish,* [de, *from;* sāpere, *to be wise.*] O me desipientem! *O fool that I was!*
despērare, *to despair of.*
de-spĭcere, *to look down* (*upon.*)
destĭnare, *to fix.*
detĕgere, (tex, tect,) 13. (Voc. on perf. si.)
deterrēre, 35, *to deter, frighten.*
de-trăhere, (trax, tract,) *to drag off; take off.*
de-trītus, (*part. of* detĕrere, trīv, trīt,) *rubbed, galled.*
Deus, *God,*
devincere, (vīc, vict,) *to conquer completely; to conquer.*
devincire, (vinx, vinct,) *to bind, enchain.*
devŏrare, *to devour.*
dexter, (tra, trum,) *right,* (opp. *to left.*)
Diana, *Diana, goddess of the chase.*
dīcere, (dix, dict,) *to say, to speak—to call.*
dictator, *dictator,* (*a high office at Rome.*)
dictum, *a saying.*
Dīdo, *a Phœnician princess, queen of Carthage;* Gen. ûs. See App. ii. p. 317.
dies, *day.* Ad diem, *to his day.*
difficĭlis, *difficult.*
difficultas, *difficulty*
diffīdere, *to distrust,* (dat.)
dignitas, *worth, worthiness.*
dignus, *worthy,* abl.
dīlăcĕrare, *to tear to pieces.*
dilăniare, *to tear to pieces.*
diligenter, *diligently.*
diligentia, *diligence.*
dilĭgere, (dilex, dilect,) *to love.*
dilŭvium, *flood.*
dī-mĕtior, (mensus,) *to measure out.*
dīmĭcare, *to fight.*
dimittere, *to send away; to dismiss.*
dirĭgere, (direx, direct,) *to direct—to steer* (*a vessel.*)
discēdere, (discess,) *to depart.*
discere, (dĭdĭci,) *to learn.*
disciplīna, *discipline, teaching*
discīpulus, *pupil.*
discrĕpare, *to be different.*
discrīmen, *difference, danger.*
disjungere, (junx, junct,) *to separate.*
dispensātor, *a steward.*
displicēre, (plicu,) *to displease.*
dispōnere, (pōsu, pōsĭt,) *to dispose; to place, arrange.*
disputāre, *to discuss; to dispute.*
disquīrere, *to examine.*
dissĕrere, (seru, sert,) *to discuss; to argue.*
dissĭdium, *disagreement, quarrel.*
dissīpare, *to scatter; to spread abroad; publish.*
distinēre, (distinu, distent,) *to keep off; to engage or distract* (with business.)
distribuere, *to distribute.*
diu, *long; for a long time.*
diuturnus, *long* (*of duration.*)
diversus, *different:* e diverso contendere, *to maintain the contrary.*
dīves, ĭtis, *rich.*
dividere (divīsi, divīs,) *to divide.*
dīvĭnitas, ātis, *divinity.*
divinus, *divine.*
divĭtiæ, *riches, wealth.*
divulgare, *to publish.*
dŏcēre, *to teach.*
dolēre, *to be pained, grieve.*
dŏlor, *pain, sorrow.*
dŏlus, *trick, stratagem.*
dŏmare, p. 169, ii., *to tame.*
domesticus, *domestic.*
dominātio, *rule, sovereignty.*
domĭnus, *master.*
dŏmus, p. 136, *house, home,* G. ûs and i.
dōnare, *to present.* See Synt. 275.
donec, *till, until—as long as.*
donum, *gift.*
dormire, *to sleep; to be asleep.*
drachma, *drachma,* (*a Greek coin, worth about* 9½*d. or* 18 *cents.*)
dubie: haud —, *without doubt.*
dūcere, p. 162, *to lead.*
ducere nomen, *to take its name.*
ducere in matrimonium, *to marry,* (*of the husband.*)
dudum, *long ago.*

dulcis, *sweet*
dum, *whilst, until, provided.*
duo, *two.*
duodēcim, *twelve.*
durare, *to harden ; to last.*
durescere, *to grow hard.*
durus, *hard, harsh, cruel.*
dux, dūcis, *leader, general.*

E, ex, *out of ; from*
ebĭbere, *to drink up ; to drain.*
ĕbur, ŏris, *ivory.*
ĕdere, (ēd, ēs) p. 178, *to eat.*
ēdere, (ēdĭd, ēdĭt,) *to tell ; to publish ; to exhibit.*
edīcere, *to make a proclamation.*
ediscere, *to learn by heart.*
ēdūcare, *to educate.*
ēdūcere, (edux, educt,) *to draw forth* or *out ; to bring up.*
effĭcax, *effectual.*
efficere, io, (fēc, fect,) *to effect; accomplish.*
effĭgies, *image, likeness ;* G. iēi.
ef-flare, *to breathe (out.)* ef-flare animam (*to breathe out one's breath,*) *to expire ; breathe one's last.*
efflorescere, *to blossom, flourish.*
ef-fŏdere, io, *to dig over*, (effōd, effoss.).
effrēnatus, *unbridled.*
effŭgere, io, *escape, avoid.*
egĕre, p. 169, iv., (gen. or abl.,) *to need.*
ego, *I*, p. 145.
egrĕgie, *admirably ; egregiously.*
egressus, *part. of* egrĕdi, *to go out.*
ēlābi, (lāps,) *to slip away.*
elatus (*part. of* ef-ferre,) *lifted up, elated.*
elegantia, *elegance.*
elephas, antis, *elephant.*
elephantus, *elephant.*
elĕvare, *to depreciate.*
ēligere (lēg, lect,) *to choose out ; elect.*
e-ludere (lūs.) *to deride.*
emendatus, 25, *emended.*
ēmĕre, p. 172, *to buy.*
emittere, *to send out ; to put out ; to let go.*
enim, *for.*
enĭti, *to strive.*
ensis, *sword.*
eo, *thither.* See quo.
Epaminondas, *a Theban general.*
Ephesus, *a city of Asia Minor.* Ephesius, *Ephesian.*
ephippium, *a saddle.*
epigramma, (ātis.) *epigram.*
epistŏla, *letter.*
epitŏme, G. es ; *an epitome ; abridgement.* See App. ii. (Penelope)
ĕques, equĭtis, *horseman, knight.*
equestres copiæ, *cavalry.*
equitatus, ûs, *cavalry.*
equus, *horse :* equo vĕhi, *to ride on horseback.*
erectus, *raised up, erect.*
erga, *towards*, (acc.)
ergo, *therefore—on account of.*
erīgere, (erex, erect,) *erect.*
erīpere, io, (ripu, rept.) *snatch ; snatch away ;* dat. of person from whom.
error, *wandering, error ;* G. ōris.
erudire, *to instruct, teach.*
erumpere, *to break out.*
esse, p. 154, *to be.*
esto, imper. of esse, *to be.*
esurire, *to be hungry.*
et, *and—also, too, even ;* et—et, *both—and*
etiam, *even, too.*
etiamsi, *even if, though, although.*
etsi, *although.*
evadere, (evās,) *to escape ; to turn out, become.*
evectus, *part. of* evehere, *to raise.*
e-vellere, *to draw* or *pluck out.*
evēnit, *it happens ;* evēnit, *it happened.*
evertere, (vert, vers,) *to overthrow, pull down.*
ēvītare, *to avoid.*
evolare, *to fly out of.*
ex, *out of ; from*, (abl.)
ex-animare, *to put to death.*
exărare, [*to plough up a wax tablet,*] *to write.*
exardescere, (exārsi,) *blaze forth ;* (*of a war*) *to break out.*
excellere, (ui,) *to excel ; to be distinguished.*
excĭtare, *excite, arouse, awake ;—stir up.*
exclamare, *to exclaim.*
excŏlere, (colu, cult,) *to cultivate.*
excruciare, *to torment.*
excubiæ, *watches, posts :* to be rendered *guards.*
exercere, (ui,) *to exercise ; to practise.*
exercitatio, *practice.*
exercitus, ûs, *army.*
exiguus, *small.*
exĭlis, *thin.*
exire, (exeo,) *to go out ; to leave.*
existimare, *to think.*
exĭtus, ûs, *egress, issue, end.*
exolescere, *to become obsolete ; to pass away.*
exoptatus, *wished for, desirable.*
exōrare, *to supplicate ; to prevail upon (by entreaties.)*
exorīri, (exortus,) *to rise ; arise.* (See or.or, p. 176.
expĕdit, *it is expedient.*
expedīte, *quickly, promptly, without hesitation.*
expellere, (puli, puls.) *to drive out, banish.*
experīri, (expertus,) *to try ; to experience.*
explīlare, *to plunder.*
explēre, (explēvi, explētum,) *to fill, to fulfil, to complete.*
explorare, *to examine, to explore.*
ex-primere, (press,) *to extort ;* acc. of *thing*, dat. of *person.*
expugnare, 8, *to assault.*
exsilium, *exile, banishment.*
exsistere, (exstĭti,) *to stand forward as ; to become.*

exspectare, *to wait.*
exspīrāre, *to expire.*
exstare, *to be extant.*
exsul, (ūlis,) *an exile.*
externus, *external.*
extimescere, *to dread.*
extra, *without.*
extrēmus, *extreme,*
extrinsēcus, *outwardly.*

Faber, bri, *a mechanic; smith, carpenter, &c.*
fabula, *tale, fable.*
fabulōsus, 31, *fabulous.*
facere, io, p. 172, *to do, to make,* (imperat. fac.)
facessere, (ivi, itum,) *to make, to cause; to make off.*
facies, ēi, *face.*
facĭle, facilius, *easily, more easily.*
facilis, *easy.*
factum, *deed, conduct,* (*in a particular case.*)
facultas, *capacity, power.*
fallax, ācis, 31, *deceitful.*
fallere, p. 172; fallit me animus = *I deceive myself.*
famēlĭcus, *hungry, starved.*
fames, is, *hunger.*
familiāris, *intimate;* (as subst.) *a friend.*
familiarĭtas, *intimacy.*
famulus, *slave, servant.*
fas, *lawful* (*according to* divine *or* natural *law.*)
fatēri, (fassus,) *to confess.*
fatigare, *to fatigue.*
faux, *throat;* fauces, (Ex. 44,) *a pass, neck of land.*
fāvēre (dat.) *to favor.*
febris, (abl. i.,) *fever.*
felicĭtas, atis, *happiness.*
felis, *a cat.*
felix, ĭcis, *happy, prosperous.*
fera, *wild beast.*
fĕre, *almost.*
ferire, *to strike.*
ferox, ōcis, *fierce.*
ferre, p. 178, *to bear, carry.*
ferrum, *iron, sword.*
fero, see ferre.
ferus, *fierce.*
fessus, *weary, tired.*
festus, *festive.*
fidelis, *faithful, true.*
fidere, fisus sum, *to trust.*
fides, *fidelity, faith;* fidem habere, *to believe;* G. ei.
fieri, p. 178, *to be made or done.*
figere, *to fix.*
figūra, *figure.*
filia, *daughter;* abl. pl. ābus.
filius, *son;* voc. fili.
filum, *thread.*
fingere, *feign, fashion.*
finire, *to finish.*
finis, *end.*
firmare, *to strengthen.*
firmitas, *firmness, strength.*
firmus, *firm.*
flagitare, *to demand, call for.*
flagitium, *crime.*
flamma, *flame.*
flectere, *to bend.*
flēre, p. *to weep.*
florēre, *blossom, flourish.*
florescere, *come into flower; blossom; begin to flourish.*
flos, *flower.* flōris
fluere, (flux,) *to flow.*
flumen, ĭnis, *river.*
fluvius, *river.*
fŏcus, *hearth.*
fœdus, ĕris, *league, treaty.*
fons, fontis, *fountain.*
fore, from esse.
fores, ium. *door.*
forma, *beauty, form.*
formīca, *ant.*
formīdo, ĭnis, *fear.*
fortasse, *perhaps.*
forte, *by chance.*
fortis, *strong, brave.*
fortĭter, *bravely.*
fortŭito casu, *by accident.*
fortuna, *fortune;* fortunæ, pl. *property, possessions.*
fortunatus, *fortunate, prosperous.*
forum, *the forum;* i. e. market-place, *used also for the* transaction of public business.
fossa, *ditch, trench, foss.*
fŏvēre, (fōv, fŏt.) *to cherish,*
frangere, (frēg, fract,) *to break.*
frater, G. tris. *brother.*
fraterculus, *little-brother.*
fratricīda, *a fratricide.*
fraudare, *to defraud.*
frenum, *curb, bridle.*
frequentare, *to frequent.*
frētus, *relying on.*
fricare, *to rub.*
frigēre, *to be cold.*
frīgus, ŏris, *cold.*
frons, frontis,
a fronte, *in front.*
fructus, *fruit, produce;* G. ūs.
fructum capere ex, *to derive advantage from.*
frui, *to enjoy.*
frumenta, *all kinds of corn.*
frustra, *in vain.*
frustum, *piece, morsel.*
frutex, ĭcis, *shrub.*
fugare, *to put to flight; to rout.*
fugere, (fugio,) *fly, fly from.*
fulcire, *to prop.*
fulgēre, v. *to shine, glitter.*
fundus, i, *estate, farm.*
fungi, (functus,) *to discharge,* abl.
funis, (m.,) *rope.*
furere, *to rage, to be mad.*

furor, *madness, passion.*
furtum, *theft.*
fusus, *routed:* part. of fundo, (fūd, fus.)
futūrus, (fut. partic. of esse,) *about to be; future.*

Gallīna *a hen.*
Gallus, *a Gaul.*
gallus gallinaceus, *a cock.*
gallus, *a cock.*
garrire, *to babble, to chatter.*
garrulus, *talkative.*
gaudēre, p. 174,
gelidus, *cold.*
generare, *to beget.*
generōsus, *noble.*
gens, *a race, tribe, nation;* G. gentis.
genus, (genĕris,) *race, family, kind.*
gĕrere, p. 163. *to carry, bear.*
gerere bellum, *to wage war.*
Germānia, *Germany.*
gestus, ūs, *action,* (of the hands,) *demeanor, attitude.*
gladius, *sword.*
gloria, *glory.*
gloriabundus, *boasting,* [render by *boastfully.*]
gloriari, *to boast.*
glubere, (glupsi, glupt,) *to pare, to peel.*
Græculus, (diminutive,) *a low Greek; a Greek.*
Græcus, *a Greek.*
gracilis, *slender.*
gramen, Inis, *grass.*
grandinare, *to hail.*
grandis, *large.*
granum, *a grain.*
gratia, *favor, grace, thanks.*
gratiam ambire, *to court the favor.*
——— habēre, *to feel grateful.*
——— retribuere, *to return a favor; to recompense.*
gratulari, *to congratulate.*
gratus, *grateful, agreeable, delightful.*
gratum facere alĭcui, *to oblige a person.*
gravari, *to be reluctant; not to choose.*
gravis, *heavy, weighty, serious.*
gravitas, *weight, seriousness, importance.*
grex, (grĕgis,) *a flock.*
grus, uis, *crane.*
gubernare, *to govern,* (acc.)
gubernator, *pilot.*

Habēre, *to have.*
habēre pro, *to hold for; to consider as.*
——— amīcum alĭquem, *to have a man for a friend.*
habitare, *to dwell.*
hærēre,(hæs,) *to cling to, to stick.*
Hannibal, *Hannibal a great Carthaginian general.*
hasta, *spear.*
haud, *not.*
haurire, *drink off, drain.*
haurire vēnēnum, *to drink poison.*
hĕbes, *blunt, dull;* G. ĕtis.
Helvetia, *Helvetia, Switzerland.*
herba, *herb, grass.*
Hercules, *Hercules.*
hĕri, *yesterday.*
hic, hæc, hoc, *this,* p. 145. [When it has no noun in agreement, it is rendered as a personal pronoun, *he, she, it.*]
hic, *here.*
hiems, ēmis, *winter.*
hinc, *hence.*
hinnire, *to neigh.*
historia, *history.*
hŏdie, 7. *to-day, this day.*
Homērus, *Homer.*
hŏmo, hominis, *man.*
honestas, *honor, integrity.*
honeste, *honestly, virtuously.*
honestus, *honorable.*
honor, *honor;* G. ōris.
honorificus, *laudatory.*
hora, *hour.*
horrēre, *to be frightened at.*
hortari, *to exhort.*
hortulus, 8, *a little garden.*
hortus, *garden;* G. i.
hostis, *enemy.*
huc, *hither.*
humānus, *human,* (Ex. 27, *earthly:*) *courteous, kind.*
humĕrus, *shoulder.*
humi, *on the ground.*
humilis, (humillimus,) *low, humble.*
humus, *ground, soil,* f.

Ibi, *there.*
ictus, G. ūs, *a stroke, a blow.*
Idem, p. 145, *the same.*
idem ac, *the same as.*
ideo, *therefore.*
idōneus, *suitable.*
igitur, *therefore.*
ignārus, *ignorant,* (gen.)
ignavia, *sluggishness; weakness of the will.*
ignis, (m.,) *fire.*
ignorare, *to be ignorant of,* (acc.;) ignoratio, *ignorance.*
ignoscere, (ignōvi,) *to pardon,* (dat.)
illacrimare, *to cry over; to weep over* or *at.*
ille, a, ud, p. 145, *that one, the former*
illĕcebra, *enticement, allurement.*
illĭco, *immediately.*
illustrare, *to illumine.*
illustris, 16.
imāgo, Inis, *image.*
imbecillis, -is, *weak.*
imber, bris, m., *shower.*
imbuere, *to dip, imbue.*
imitabilis, *imitable.*
imitari, *to imitate.*
immensus, *immense.*

im-mergere, (mersi,) *to plunge* or *thrust in.*
imminēre, *to hang over; to threaten*, (dat.)
immobilis, *immoveable.*
immolare, *to sacrifice.*
immortalis, *immortal.*
immortālitas, *immortality.*
imo, *no — but.*
impar, āris, *odd*, (of number.)
impēdire, *to hinder.*
impellere, *to impel; to drive on*, (impŭl, impuls.)
impendere, *to spend.*
imperare, *to command*, (dat.)
imperator, *commander-in-chief; general.*
imperium, *command, empire.*
impertire, *to impart.*
impetrare, *to prevail upon; to obtain (by entreaties.)*
impĕtus, *assault, violence*; G. ûs.
impius, *impious.*
implē:us, (part. of implēre,) *filled.*
impōnere, (impōsui, impositum,) *to place upon; to impose.*
imprīmere, (impress,) *impress.*
imprīmis, *especially.*
improbus, *bad.*
imprudens, *ignorant, senseless.*
impugnare, 30.
impūdens, *impudent.*
in, (with abl.,) *in*; (with acc.) *into, to, against.*
in tempŏre, *in good time.*
inānis, *empty.*
incalescere, *to grow warm.*
incendere, *to set on fire, to burn.*
incendium, *conflagration, fire.*
inceptum, (properly, *a thing begun,*) *a purpose; a resolution.*
incertus, *uncertain.*
incessere, (incessīvi *and* incess) *to fall upon.*
incidere, 24, *to fall into, enter.*
incipere, (cēp, cept,) *to begin.*
inceptum, *undertaking.*
inclarescere, *to become famous.*
incognītus, *unknown.*
incŏla, *inhabitant.*
incolŭmis, *safe, uninjured.*
incommŏdum, *inconvenience, disadvantage, hardship.*
inconsiderantia, *thoughtlessness.*
inconstantia, *inconstancy.*
incredĭbilis, *incredible.*
incultus, *uncultivated, uncivilized.*
incurrere, *to run into.*
in-curs-io, (properly, *a running against,*) *an attack.*
inde, *thence, from this;—then.*
indignus, *unworthy*, (abl.)
indoctus, *unlearned.*
induĕre, *to put on.*
indulgēre, *to indulge.*
Indus, *the Indus.*
infēlix, īcis. *unfortunate.*
inferre, (intŭl, illāt,) *to bear against;* bellum inferre, *to wage war against; to attack, invade.*
infestare, *to make unsafe; to infest.*
infestus, *hostile.*
inficere, (fĕc, fect,) *stain, dye.*
infirmus, *infirm, weak.*
inflectere, 15, *to bend in, crook.*
ingenium, *abilities, mind.*
ingenii cultus, *cultivation of the intellect; intellectual cultivation.*
ingens, *huge, immense*; G. entis.
ingignere, (ingĕnui, ingĕnītum,) *to implant.*
ingratus, *ungrateful, disagreeable.*
ingruĕre, *to burst out.*
inhibēre, *to restrain.*
inhonestus, *dishonorable.*
inimīcus, *enemy*; as adj. *hostile.*
inimīcissimus, *most hostile.*
inīquus, *unjust.*
injuria, *injury, wrong.*
injuriā afficere, *to wrong, to injure.*
injuste, *unjustly.*
injustitia, *injustice.*
innocens, *innocent.*
innocentia, *innocence.*
innotescere, (innotui,) *to become known.*
innoxius, *harmless.*
inŏpia, *want, poverty, destitution.*
inscitia, *ignorance.*
insectari, *to persecute, to rail at.*
insequi, *to pursue, to follow.*
inservire, *to be the slave of.*
inservire temporibus, *to comply with the times; to accommodate oneself to the times.*
insidiæ, *plot, stratagem.*
insidiari, *plot against.*
insignis, *distinguished.*
insistere, *to stand upon; to take* a road or course.
inspirare, *to breathe into.*
instare, *to press on; to press; to be at hand.*
instituere, *to establish; to appoint; to train on:* vitam instituere, *to conduct yourself.*
instruere aciem, *to draw up an army in order of battle.*
insŭla, *island.*
insŭper, *besides.*
intĕger, *whole, entire, upright.*
integritas, *uprightness, integrity.*
intellectus, *intellect*; G. ûs.
intellĭgere, *to understand; to be aware*
intemperantia, *intemperance.*
intendere, (tend, tens,) *to put forth.*
inter, *between, amongst.*
interdiu, *in the day-time.*
interdum, *sometimes.*
interea, *in the mean time.*
interesse, *to be engaged in.*
interest, *there is a difference; it is of importance; it concerns, signifies*, &c.
interficere, io, (fēc, fect,) *to kill.*
interīmere, (ēm, empt,) *to kill, to carry off.*
interrogare, *to ask.*
interrogatio, *a question.*

intervallum, *interval.*
intra, *within.*
introĭtus, *entrance.*
intuēri, *to look upon.*
intus, *within, at home.*
inundare, *to inundate; to overflow.*
inutilis, *useless.*
invādere, *to come against; assault; invade; fall upon.*
invēnire, (vēn, vent,) *to find.* See Syn.
invĭcem, *in turn; one another.*
invĭdēre, (vĭd, vĭs,) *to envy, grudge.*
invĭdia, *envy, odium.*
invĭtare, *to invite.*
invĭtus, *unwilling.*
involvere, (volv, volūt,) *to roll up, to bind round,* (with.)
ipse, p. 169, *self, myself, thyself, itself,* &c.
īra, *anger.*
īracundĭa, *passionateness; anger,* (*as a* habit.)
īrasci, (īrat.) *to be angry,* (dat.)
irrĭgare, *to water.*
irrĭtare, *to excite; to provoke; to irritate.*
is, ea, id, p. 146. *that.*
iste, a, ud, p. 145. *that of yours,* &c.
Ister, ri, *the Danube.*
ĭta, *so, in such a manner.*[1]
Italĭa, *Italy.*
ĭtăque, *therefore.*
Iter, G. ĭtĭnĕris, *journey.*
iterum, *a second time; once more; again.*

Jacĕre, jēc, jact,) *to throw, to hurl.*
jacēre, *to lie, to lie low.*
jactare, *to toss.*
jaculari, *to hurl a dart, to shoot.*
jam, *already.*
nec jam, *and—no more.*
jam dudum, *now for a long time.*
jam pridem, *long; for some time.*
janua, *gate, door,* (of a house.)
jŏcabundus, *joking; in a joking manner.*
jŏcus, *joke.*
Jov-, see Jupiter.
jubēre, (juss,) *to order.*
jucundus, *pleasant, delightful.*
judex, *pleasant, delightful,* 12, and p. 134; G. ĭcis.
judĭcare, *to judge.*
jugum, 15, ii., *a yoke, a range,* (of hills.)
Jugurtha, *Jugurtha, a prince of Numidia.*
jūmentum, 17, *a beast of burden.*
jungere, (junx, junct,) *to join;* jungere amicitiam, *to form a friendship.*
Jupiter, G. Jŏvis, *Jupiter.*
jurare, *to swear.*
jus, juris, *right, law.*
jure, *deservedly, with good reason, justly.*
jure meritoque, *deservedly.*
jussu, *by the command.* Domini jussu, *by his master's orders.*
jussum, *command, bidding.*
justĭtia, *justice.*
justus, *just.*
juvare, *to help, assist,* (acc.)
juvat, *it is delightful; it delights.*
juvenĭlis, *youthful.*
juvēnis, *a young man; a man* (from about 20 to 40.)
juventus, ūtis, *youth.*
juxta, *close by,* (prep.)

Lăbare, *to totter.*
labefactare, *to make to totter; to shake.*
labor, *labor;* G. ōris.
labōrare, *to labor.*
lacessere, *to provoke.*
lacrĭma, *or* lacryma, *a tear.*
lacunar, 16, *a panelled-ceiling;* G. āris.
lædere, *to hurt,* (acc.)
læte, *joyfully.*
lætĭtia, *joy.*
lætus, *joyful, glad.*
lævus, *left.*
lana, *wool.*
laniare, *to mangle.*
lătēre, (latu,) *to lie hid, to be concealed.*
Latīne (adv.,) *in the manner of the Latins.* Latīne lŏqui, *to speak Latin correctly.*
Latinus, *Latin.*
latro, ōnis, *robber.*
lātus, *broad.*
lātus, ĕris, *side.*
laudare, *to praise.*
laurus, *a laurel.*
laus, laudis, *praise.*
lavare, Also lavĕre.
lectio, *reading, perusal.* (In 11 it is used for '*lesson*' *set to be studied;* which is an unclassical use of it.)
lēgātus, *ambassador, lieutenant.*
lĕgere, (lēg, lect,) *to read.*
lēgio, ōnis, *a legion or body of Roman soldiers.*
lenire, *to soften.*
lēnis, *soft.*
leo, ōnis, *lion.*
lĕvare, *to relieve.*
lĕvis, *light.*
levitas, *lightness, fickleness.*
lex, lēgis, *law.*
lēgem perferre, *to carry a law through.*
lĭbenter, *willingly;* libenter facio, *I* like *to do it.*
lĭber, era, erum, *free.*
lĭber, bri, *book.*
liberalitas, *liberality.*

[1] *Ita* is often to be rendered by an *adverb* with *so:* '*so violently,*' '*so foolishly,*' &c, according to the manner meant.

lĭbĕrare, *to free.*
lĭbĕre, *freely, spiritedly.*
lĭbĕri, *children.*
lĭbertas, *liberty.*
lĭbīdo, ĭnis, *lust, desire.*
licentia, *permission; the power.*
lĭcet. (See page 296, Questions 57, 58,) *it is allowed.*
lignĕus, *wooden.*
lignum, *wood.*
lĭgo, ōnis, *spade.*
līmen, (ĭnis,) *threshold.*
lĭnere, (lēvi. lĭtum,) *to smear.*
lingua, *tongue.*
literæ, *a letter, literature.*
lĭtus, ŏris, *a shore.*
lŏcare, *to let on hire.*
locŭples, ētis, *rich.*
lŏcus, *a place.*
longe, *far.*
lŏqui, (locūtus,) *to speak.*
lŭbet *or* lĭbet, *it pleases:* to be rendered by *I* (*you, &c.*) *like, please.*
lubīdo, ĭnis, *lust, pleasure.*
lucrum, *gain.*
luctus, ûs, *sorrow.*
lūdere, *to play.*
lūna, *moon.*
lŭpus, *wolf.*
luscĭnia, *nightingale.*
lūsus, ûs, *game.*
lutulentus, 15, *miry, dirty, muddy.*
lux, lūcis, *light.*
luxūria, *luxury.*
lyra, *lyre.*

Măcĕdo, ŏnis, *Macedonian.*
măchĭna, *machine.*
măcies, *leanness:* macle confectus, (*wasted away with leanness,*) *miserably thin.*
măgis, *more.*
magister, tri, *master.*
magistrātus, ûs, *magistracy, magistrate.*
magistratum gĕrere, *to hold a magistracy; to fill a high office.*
magnŏpere, *earnestly.*
magnus, *great.*
mājor, *greater.*
mājŏres, *our forefathers.*
mălĕdictum, *railing, abuse, scurrilous language.*
malĕficium, *misdeed.*
mălum, *evil.* mala, *evils, ills.*
mălus, *bad.*
mālus, i. f., *an apple.*
mālus, i. m., *a mast.*
mancipium, *slave.*
manēre, *to remain.*
manifestus, *manifest.*
mānus, ûs, *hand*, (f.)
Marăthon, *Marathon, the field of a celebrated battle between the Athenians and Persians.*
mare, is, *the sea.*
Marĭānus, *Marian; of Marius.*
marīna, *salt* (*water.*)
maritĭmus, *maritime; living in the sea.*
marītus, i, *husband.*
Marsi, *the Marsians, a people of middle Italy.*
Massilia, *Marseilles.*
mater, *mother;* G. matris.
matĕries, *materials; wood, timber.*
maturare, *to ripen; to hasten.*
matūre, *quickly;—prematurely.*
maturescere, *to ripen*, (intrans.)
matūrus, *ripe.*
maxime, (adv.,) *most, the most.*
maximi, *at a very great price, very highly, the greatest.*
maximus, *the greatest.*
Mediolānum, *Milan.*
medēri, *to heal*, (dat.)
mediocritas, *a middle point, the mean.*
medius, *the middle, amidst.*
mĕdĭcus, *physician.*
Mĕgăra, ōrum, *a town not very far from Athens.*
mel, mellis, *honey.*
membrum, *member, limb.*
memorabilis, *deserving to be remembered; memorable.*
memoria, *memory.*
mendacium, *a lie.*
mendax, ācis, *lying* (*person;*) *liar.*
mens, ntis, *mind.*
mensa, *table.*
mensis, is, m. *month.*
mentīri, *to lie, to deceive.*
merces, ēdis, *pay, reward.*
merēre, merui, *and* merēri, (depon.,) *to deserve.*
meridies, *mid-day*, (m.)
merītum, *desert.*
metallum, *metal, mine.*
mĕtere, (messu, mess,) *to mow; to reap; to pluck off.*
mētīri, (mensus,) *to measure.*
metuere, *to fear.*
mĕtus, ûs, *fear.*
meus, a, um, *mine.* Voc. masc. mi.
mi, Voc. masc. of meus.
mĭcare, *to glitter, glisten.*
migrare, *to remove*, (intrans.)
miles, ĭtis, *a soldier.*
militia, *warfare.*
millia, *thousands,*
Miltiădes, is, *the Athenian general to whom the victory of Marathon was due.*
mĭnari, *to threaten.*
minister, tri, 5, *a servant, attendant.*
mĭnor, *less;—the younger,* (*for* minor natu.)
mirabilis, *wonderful.*
mīrus, *wonderful.*
mirari, *to wonder, express admiration.*
miscēre, *to mingle, mix.*
miser, ĕra, ĕrum, *miserable, wretched.*
miserandus, *to be pitied:* miserandum in modum, *in a horrible manner.*

misere, *miserably.*
miserēri, *to pity.* (Gen.)
misēria, *misery.*
misĕricordia, *compassion, pity.*
mītis, *mild, lenient.*
mittere, *to send.*
mōbilis, *moveable.*
modestia, *moderation, modesty.*
modius, *a peck* (*nearly**)
mŏdo, *only.*
modo—modo, *one while—another.*
mŏdus, *measure, manner.*
mœnia, *walls* (*of a fortified town.*)
mœrēre, *to mourn.*
mœror, ōris, *grief.*
mōliri, *to move, to plan.*
mollis, *soft.*
mŏnēre, *warn, advise.*
monocĕros, ōtis, *unicorn.*
mons, ntis, *mountain.*
mons Apenninus, *the Apennines.*
monstrare, *to show.*
monumentum, *monument.*
morbus, *disease.*
mordēre, (mors.) *to bite.*
mōres, um, *manners, morals, character.*
mōrĭturus, *see* morior, *ready,* or *about to die.*
morōsus, *ill-humored.*
mors, mortis, *death.*
mortalis, *mortal.*
mortifer, *fatal, deadly.*
mortuus, *dead.*
mos, ōris, *custom, manner.*
mōtus, ūs, *motion.*
mŏvēre, *to move.*
mox, *presently.*
mucro, ōnis, *point of a sword; sword.*
mulctare, *to fine,* (abl.)
mulier, ĕris, *woman, wife.*
multitudo, ĭnis, *multitude.*
multo, (abl.,) *much*—before comparatives.
multum, *much.*
multus, a, um, *much;* plur. *many.*
mundus, *world.*
munire, *to fortify.*
munus, ĕris, *gift, task, duty.*
murus, *wall.*
mus, muris, *a mouse.*
mutare, *to change.*
mutatio, *change.*

Nam, *for.*
nancisci, (nactus,) *to get, attain.*
narrare, *to relate.*
nasci, (natus,) p. 176, *to be born, to proceed from.*
natare, *to swim.*
natūra, *nature.*
naturalis, *natural.*
nātus, *born.* See nasci.
nauta, *sailor.*
navigare, *to sail.*
navigatio, *navigation.*
navigium, *vessel.*
navis, *ship.*
ne. See App. iii.,
ne—quidem, *not even.*
ne quis, *that nobody.*
—nĕ, asks a question. See p. 295, 51, 52, &c. ne—an, *whether—or.* See p. 295, (51.)
nec, *neither; nor; and not.*
nec—nec, *neither—nor.*
nec temĕre, *nor easily.*
nec ullus, *and no.*
nec quidquam, [*nor any thing,*] *and nothing.*
necessarius, *necessary.*
nĕgare, *to deny.* It is often rendered by *to say,* a '*not*' being added to the infinitive mood.
negligere, (lex, lect,) *to neglect, disregard.*
negotium, *business, affair.*
nēmo, ĭnis, *nobody.*
nēmus, nemŏris, *grove.*
neque—neque, *neither—nor.*
nequire, *to be unable.*
nequĭtia, *wickedness.*
nĕre, *to spin.*
nescire, *not to know.*
neuter, *neither;* G. neutrius
nĕve, *nor.*
nex, nĕcis, *death,* (a violent death.)
nĭdus, *nest.*
nihil, *nothing.*
nihildum, *nothing as yet.*
nihĭlo secius, *nevertheless.*
nĭmis, *too.*
nĭmium, *too much.*
nisi, *unless; if—not.*
nĭtĕre, *to shine; to be sleek.*
nix, nĭvis, *snow.*
nobilis, *noble.*
nobilitare, *to ennoble.*
nŏcens, (part. of nocĕre,) *a guilty person.*
nocĕre, (dat.) *to injure, hurt.*
noctu, *by night.*
nocturnus, *nightly; by night.*
nōmen, ĭnis, *name.* nōmen ducere, *to take its name.*
non, *not.*
non modo, *not only.*
non satis, (*not sufficiently,* =) *not well; not thoroughly.*
nondum, *not yet.*
nonnulla, (*not-none,* =) *some.*
nonnĕ, *not?*
nonnumquam. (*not-never,* =) *sometimes.*
noscere, (nōvi, = *I know,*) *to know.*
noster, tra, trum, *our, ours.*
notio, *notion;* ōnis.
nōvi, *I know.* See noscere.

* 1 gall. 7.8576 pints.

nŏvus, *new.*
nox, noctis, *night.*
nubere, *to marry*, (dat.)
nūbes, is, *cloud.*
nūdus, *naked.*
nullus, G. ĭus, *no, none :* nullo modo, *by no means*
num, p. 295, 46, *whether.*
num—an. See p. 295, 51, 52, &c.
numerare, *to number, to reckon.*
numerus, *number.*
nunc, *now.*
nuncupare, *to name ; to mention a name.*
nunquam, *never.*
nuntiare, 10, *to announce.*
nuntius, *message, messenger.*
nuptum dăre, *to give in marriage :* nuptum, *supine of* nubo.
nūtrīmentum, *nourishment.*
nutrire, *to nourish ; to support.*

Ob, *on account of.*
ob oculos, *before our eyes.*
obdormiscere, *to be falling asleep.*
obducere, *to overlay, cover.*
obēdire, *to obey*, (dat.)
oberrare, *to wander about.*
obesse, *to be prejudicial to*, (dat.)
ob-jĭcere, io, *to throw against ; to expose*, (to.)
oblectare, *to delight.*
oblĭnĕre, (oblēv, oblĭt,) *to bedaub.*
oblīvio, ōnis, *oblivion, forgetfulness.*
oblivisci, (oblītus,) *to forget*, (gen.)
obscurare, *to obscure, to darken.*
obsĕquium, *obedience.*
observare, *to observe ; to keep.*
obsĭdĕre, (obsēd, obsess,) *to besiege.*
obsistere, *to withstand, prevent.*
obstare, *to stand in the way ; to prevent*, (dat.)
obtĕgere, (obtex, obtect,) *to cover.*
obtemperare, *to obey*, (dat.)
obtĭnĕre, (obtinui, obtent,) *to obtain.*
obviam, *adv. in the direction towards another person ;* obviam mittere, *to send to meet*, (dat. of person *to be met.*) Obviam occurrere alicui, *to meet him accidentally.*
occasio, ōnis, *opportunity.*
occĭdens, *setting :* (as subst.,) *the west.*
occĭdere, (occĭd, occās,) p. 267, *to fall, to perish.*
occĭdere, (occĭd, occīs,) p. 267, *to kill, to slay.*
occultare, *to hide.*
occumbere, (occŭbui,) *to fall* (in battle.)
occupare, *to occupy.*
occurrere, (occurr, occurs,) *to meet*, (dat.)
ōceănus, *the ocean.*
octo, *eight.*
ŏcŭlus, *eye.*
ŏdium, *hatred.*
odor, ōris, *smell, odor.*
odoratus, ûs, *smell, scent.*
offendere, (offend, offens,) *to offend ; to light upon.*
offero, *to offer.*
officium, *duty.*
officium præstare, *to perform a service.*
ŏleum, *oil.*
olfăcere, (olfēc, olfact,) *to smell*, (trans.)
olor, ōris, *a swan.*
olōrīnus, *of the swan*, (adj.)
ŏmittere, (omīs, omiss,) *to omit, neglect.*
omnis, *all, every :* omnia, *all things, every thing.*
ŏnus, ĕris, *burden.*
onustus, *laden, burdened.*
opācus, *shady.*
operam dăre, *to go about* (business.)
opĕrire, *to cover.*
operōsus, *busy.*
opes, um, *means, resources, wealth.*
opinari, *to think, to imagine.*
opperiri, *to wait for.*
oppetere, *to encounter.*
oppidanus, *inhabitant of a town.*
oppressor, *oppressor.*
opprimere, (oppress, oppress,) *to oppress ; to fall upon ; to crush.*
oppugnare, *to attack, assault.*
ops, ŏpis, f., *power, assistance.*
optĭmus, (superl. of bŏnus, *good,*) *the best.*
opus, ĕris, *work.*
opus est, *there is need.* [Render *nom* as *dat. ; est* by '*have ;*' abl. by '*of :*' "mihi *I* est *have* opus *need* cibo *of food.*"]
opus facere, *to work ; to labor.*
orăculum, *oracle.*
ōrare, *to pray.*
orare causam, *to plead a cause.*
oratio, ōnis, *speech, oration.*
orator, *an orator.*
oratōrius, *oratorical.*
orbis, is, m., *orb ; the world.*
orbis terrarum, (*the orb of the lands,* =) *the world.*
ordinare, *to arrange.*
ordo, ĭnis, (m.,) *order.*
oriens, *rising ;* part. from orior: (as subst.,) *the east.*
origo, ĭnis, *origin.*
oriri, (orĕris, orītur, &c.; perf. ortus sum,) *arise.*
ornare, *to adorn.*
ornatus, ûs, *ornament, decoration.*
os, ōris, n., *face.*
os, ossis, n., *a bone.*
ostendere, (tend, tens,) *to show.*
Ostia, *a town in Italy, at the mouth of the Tiber.*
ostia, pl., *mouth* (*of a river.*)
ostium, *door.*
ōtiōsus, *full of leisure, disengaged, inactive, idle.*
ovis, is, f., *sheep.*

Pābŭlātum, *to forage*, (supine.)
pænē, *almost*.
pæninsŭla, *peninsula*.
pālari, *to wander about*.
palātium, *the Palatium*. (*i. e.* the residence of Augustus on the Palatine Hill.)
pallium, *a cloak*.
palma, *the palm*.
palpebra, *eyelid*.
palumbes, is, m. and f., *wood-pigeon*.
părare, *to prepare, to provide, to procure*.
parātus, *prepared*. (*part. of* parare.)
parcere, (pĕperc, et pars, parsum, and parcitum.) *to spare*, (dat.)
pārēre, *to obey*. (dat.)
paries, ĕtis, *wall* (*of a house*.)
parere, io, (pĕpĕri, part.,) *to bring forth*.
pars, partis *part*. partes, *a party*, (in a state.)
parsimonia, *frugality*.
pārum, *little, too little*.
parvŭlus, (*dim. of* parvus,) *little*.
pascere, (păv. past,) *to feed*, (trans.;) pasci, *to feed*, (intrans.)
pastor, ōris, *a shepherd*.
patefieri, (see *fio*, p. 178,) *to be laid bare, to be discovered*.
pater, tris, *father*.
Patres, (*the Fathers* =) *the Senators*.
patientia, *patience*.
patria, (*one's*) *country*.
patrius, *paternal*.
patricii, *patricians*.
pauci, æ, a, *few*. paucis post diebus, *a few days afterwards*.
paulo, *by a little; a little*.
paulo ante, *a little before*.
paulo post, *a little after*.
pauper, ĕris, *poor*.
pāvĭdus, *fearful, timid*.
pavo, ōnis, *peacock*.
pāvor, ōris, *fear, dread*.
pax, pācis, *peace*.
pācem pĕtere, *to sue for peace*.
peccare, *to do wrong; to sin*.
peccātum, *a sin*.
pectus, ŏris, n. *breast*.
pecunia, *money*.
pecuniōsus, *moneyed*.
pĕcus, ŏris, f. *sheep, any tame animal*.
Peleus, *the father of Achilles*.
pellere, (pĕpŭli, puls,) *to drive; to drive back; to banish*.
pellicere, (pellex, pellect,) *to entice*.
pellis, is, *hide*.
pĕnes, *in the power of*, (prep.)
penna, *a wing*.
pensum, *task*.
per, *through, along, by*, (sometimes *over*.)
perangustus, *very narrow*.
percĭpere, io, (percēp, percept,) *to perceive*.
per-cultus, (*part. of* per-cŏlere, cŏlu, cult,) *thoroughly cultivated*.
perdere, (perdĭdi, perdĭtum,) *to lose; to ruin; to destroy*.
peregrinari, *to go abroad*; aves peregrinantes, *birds of passage*.
peregrīnus, *a foreigner*.
perfectus, *perfect*.
perferre, (pertŭli, perlātum,) *to endure*.
perficere, io, (fēc, fect,) *to perform, complete*.
perfidia, *perfidy*.
perfŭga, *a deserter*.
periclitari, *to be in danger*. Homo periclitatur de vitâ, *the man's life is at stake*.
periculosus, *dangerous, full of danger*.
periculum, *danger*.
perinde, *just so*; perinde est ac si, *it is just as if*.
perīmere, (perēm, peremptum,) *to carry off*.
perītus, *skilled in*, (gen.)
permanēre, (permans, permansum,) *to remain; to continue*.
permittere, *to permit*.
pernicies, ēi, *destruction, ruin*.
perpessus, *having suffered*, or *endured*
perpĕtuus, (33,) *perpetual*.
per-pinguis, *very fat*.
Persa, *a Persian*.
perseverare, *to persevere*.
persolvere, (solv, solut,) *to pay*. persolvere pœnas, *to suffer punishment*.
per-spicere, io, *to look through; see plainly*.
perstare, *to persist*.
per-suadēre, (dat.,) *to persuade*.
perturbatio, *perturbation*.
pervēnire, (pervēn, pervent,) *to arrive at*.
pes, pĕdis, *foot*; pĕde prĕmere, (*to press with the foot,*) *to tread upon*.
pestis, *plague, pestilence*.
pĕtere, (petīv, petīt,) *to make for; to seek; to beg; to aim at*.
petere pacem, *to sue for peace*.
phălĕræ, *trappings* or *furniture of a horse*.
phāsianus, *a pheasant*.
Philoctētes, *or* Philoctēta, *a Grecian hero*.
philosophus, *a philosopher*.
piāculum, *an offering of atonement*.
pietas, ātis, *dutiful affection; affection*.
pingere, (pinx, pict,) *to paint*.
pīrāta, *a pirate*.
piscis, is, *fish*.
Pisistrātus, *an Athenian who usurped sovereign power at Athens*.
pius, *dutifully affectionate; pious*.
placare, *to appease*.
placēre, *to please*, (dat.)
placĭde, *calmly*.
plāne, *quite*.
plānĭties, ēi, *level ground, plain*.
planta, *a plant*.
Platææ, *a town in Bœotia*.
Plato, ōnis, *Plato*, (*a Grecian philosopher*.)
plaudere, 3.
plēbēii, *the plebeians*

plebs, *the people*, (*as distinguished from the patricians or nobles*,) *the plebeians*; G. plĕbis.
plectere, *to twist, twine, weave, punish.*
plerique, plera-que, pleraque, *the most.*
plerumque, *generally.*
plōrare, *to cry; to weep aloud; to bewail.*
plus, *more*, G. pluris.
Pœcĭle, *the painted portico at Athens.*
poēma, ătis, *a poem.* App. ii.
pœnam dăre, *to suffer punishment.*
pœnitentia, *penitence, regret* (*for.*)
pœnitet, *it repents.* Take acc. as nom. me *I*, pœnitet *repent.*
Pœnus, *a Carthaginian.*
poēta, *a poet.*
pollicĕri, (pollĭcĭtus,) *to promise.*
pompa, *procession.*
pomum, *an apple, or other fruit.*
pōnere, (pōsui, pōsit,) *to place.*
pons, pontis, *a bridge.*
Pontifex Maxĭmus, *the Pontifex Maximus, or Chief Priest.*
Pontus Euxĭnus, *the Euxine, now the Black Sea.*
pōpulāri, *to lay waste; to ravage.*
populāris, *popular.*
pōpŭlus, i, f., *a poplar tree.*
pōpulus, i, *a people, the people.*
por-rĭgere, (rex, rect,) *to extend, stretch out.*
porta, *gate.*
portare, *to carry.*
portĭcus, ûs, *portico.*
portus, ûs, *port, harbor.*
posse, *to be able, can.*
possidĕre, (possēd, possess,) *to possess.*
post, *after*, (acc.)
postea, *afterwards.*
posthac, *hereafter, afterwards.*
postpōnere, (pōsu, pōsĭt,) *to put after.*
pōstquam, *after.*
postulare, *to demand.*
pōtens, (potentis,) *powerful.*
potentia, *power.*
potestas, ātis, *power.*
pōtio, ōnis, *drink.*
potiri, (pōtior,) *to get possession of.*
pōtius, *rather.*
præ, *before; in comparison with; for.*
præbĕre, *to afford; to supply:* præbere se, *to prove* or *show oneself.*
præceptor, 7, *teacher, preceptor.*
præceptum, 7, *precept.*
præcĭpere, io, (præcēp, præcept,) 7, *to direct, instruct.*
præcipitare, *to cast down headlong; to ruin.*
præclārus, 30, *illustrious.*
præcurrere, *to run before; to outrun*, (dat.)
præda, *booty, prey.* prædæ esse, (*to be for a prey.*) *to be the prey.*
prædĭcare, *to proclaim; to extol.*
prædĭcere, (prædix, prædict,) *to foretell.*
prædĭtus, *endued with.*
præmittere, (mīs, miss,) *to send forward; to send on.*
prœmium, *reward.*
præsens, tis, *present.*
præsĭdium, *a defence; a garrison.*
præstans, tis, *excellent.*
præstare, *to be better; to excel*, (dat. or acc. of *person*:)—*to show*, or *exhibit.*
præstat, *it is better.*
præterea, *besides; more.*
præter-ire, *to pass* (by.)
prætĕrĭtus, *past.*
prætor, ōris, *prætor, a Roman magistrate.*
prætōrius, *relating to a prætor; prætorian; of prætorian rank.*
prætūra, *the prætorship.*
prātum, *meadow.*
pravitas, ātis, *wickedness.*
prāvus, *wicked, depraved.*
prĕces, um, *prayers.*
prĕmere, (press, press,) *to press.*
pretiōsus, 25, *precious.*
prīmum, *first*, (adv.:) ut primum, *as soon as.*
prīmus, *first.*
princeps, *first*; (as subst.) *prince, chief.*
principatus, ûs, *the first place.*
prior, *former.*
priscus, *ancient, old.*
privare, *to deprive*, (abl.)
prīvatus, *private.*
pro, *for; in proportion to*, (abl.)
prōbare, *to approve of.*
prōbari, *to be approved of.*
procĕdere, *to go along.*
procella, *storm.*
prōcĕritas, *tallness, height.*
prōcul, *afar off; at a distance.*
prōdere, (prodĭd, prodĭt,) *to betray.*
prōdesse, (profŭi,) p. 177, *to profit, do good to.*
prodĭtio, ōnis, *treachery.*
prōditor, *a betrayer; a traitor.*
producĕre, (dux, duct,) *to lead forth.*
prœlium, *battle.*
prœlium committere, 15, ii. *to join battle.*
prōfecto, *in truth, assuredly.*
prōfectus, *set out, departed.*
proficere, io, (fĕc, fect,) *to make progress*
profĭtĕri, *to vow.*
prōhĭbĕre, 21, *to prohibit, forbid.*
prōles, is, f. *offspring.*
promiscuus, *mixed.*
promissum, *promise.*
promisso stare, *to stand to a promise to keep a promise.*
prōmittere, (promīs, promiss,) *to promise*
prope, *near.*
propensus, *inclined.*
proplor, *nearer.*
propōnere, (proposu, proposit,) *to place before*, 19; *to draw; to offer.*
propositum, *purpose, intention.*
proprius, *peculiar to*; (*ones*) *own.*
propter, *on account of.*
prorsus, 21, 31, *thoroughly, altogether.*

prorumpere, (prōrūp, prorupt,) *to burst forth; to rush out.*
pro-sternere, Ex. 17, *to overthrow, beat down.*
prostravi. *See* prosterno.
provēnire, *to come forth; to spring up.*
providus, *circumspect, wise.*
provincia, 14, *province.*
proximus, *nearest, next.*
prudens, *cautious, sensible.*
prudentia, *prudence.*
publice, 35.
publicus, *public.*
pudīcus, *modest, chaste.*
pudor, ōris, *shame, bashfulness.*
puella, *girl.*
puer, ĕri, *boy.*
puerītia, *boyhood.*
a primâ puerītiâ, *from his earliest boyhood,* (*childhood.*)
pugna, *battle.*
pugnare, *to fight.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful.*
pulchrĭtudo, ĭnis, *beauty.*
pullus, *young* (*of a bird.*)
pulvis, ĕris, *dust.*
Pūnĭcus, *Punic,* (that is, *Carthaginian.*)
puniri, *to be punished.*
puppis, is, *stern* (*of a vessel.*)
purpurea, *purple.*
purus, *pure.*
putare, *to think.*
Pyrrhus, *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.*
Pyrrhi bellum, *the war with Pyrrhus.*
Pythagorēus, *a disciple of Pythagoras; a Pythagorean.*

Quadraginta, *forty.*
quærere, (quæsīv, quæsīt,) p. 173, *seek; seek for; inquire; ask for.*
quæstio, ōnis, *question.*
quæstorius, *quæstorian; of quæstorian rank,* (i. e. *who has been quæstor.*)
quālis, *such as; of what kind.*
quam, *than, how,* with superl. *as—as possible,* (using the *positive.*)
quam ut, omit these words and render by the inf.
(major, *too great,* quam ut sit, *to be.*)
quam celerrĭme, *as quickly as possible.*
quam prīmum, *as soon as possible.*
quam plurĭmi, *as many as possible.*
quam maxĭme, *as greatly as possible.*
quamdiu, *as long as; how long.*
quamobrem, *wherefore, why.*
quamquam, *although.*
quamvis, *however much; although.*
quando? *when?*
quantŏpere, 18, (il.) *how greatly, as greatly.*
quantus, *how great;* (when tantus is omitted,) *as great as.*
quāsi, *as if; as it were.*
quattuor, *four.*
—que, *and.*
quercus, ūs, *oak.*
quĕri, (quest,) *to complain.*
qui, quæ, quod, *who, which, that.*
quia, *because.*
quid? *what?*
quĭdam, *a certain one.*
quĭdem, *indeed.*
ne—quidem, *not even.*
quidnam, *what,* (as dependent interrogative.)
quidni? *why—not?*
quiescere, (quiēv,) *to rest.*
quin. See list of conjunctions.
Quirītes, ium, *Quirites, a name of the Romans.*
quis, *any.*
quis? *who?*
quid agis? *how do you do? what are you doing?*
quispiam, *some, somebody.*
quisquam, *any, anybody.*
quisque, *each, everybody.*
quisquis, *whoever.*
quo—eo, *the—the.*
quod, *because, that,* (adv.)
quōmŏdo, *how.*
quŏniam, *since.*
quŏque, *also, too.*
quot — ? *how many?*
quŏtĭdie, *daily.*
quŏties, *how often.*
quŏtus, *how many.*
quum, *when, since, although.*
quum—tum, *both—and also.*
quum maxime, *just as.*

Rādius, *a ray, a beam.*
rāmus, *a branch.*
rana, *a frog.*
rāpere, io, (rapu, rapt,) *to snatch, to seize, hold of.*
raptus, -ūs, *rape.*
raro, *seldom.*
ratio, ōnis, *reason, an account.*
rātus, (*part. of* reor,) p. 167, 65.
rēcēdere, (recess,) *to retire, to withdraw.*
recĭpere, io, (recēp, recept,) 29. recipere se, *to return.*
recĭtare, *to recite.*
reclūdere, (reclus,) p. 268. Voc on perf. si, *to open, reveal.*
recte făcere, *to do right: to act rightly.*
rectus, *straight, right.*
re-cumbere, (cubu, cubit,) *to lie down.*
recuperare, *to recover.*
recusare, 23, ii. *to refuse.*
reddere, (reddĭd, reddit,) *to return;* reddere rationem, *to give an account.*
redire, 30, *to return.*
redĭtus, ūs, 36, ii. *a return.*
reditum secundare, *to grant a favorable return.*
reducere, *to lead back.*

rĕfert, *it is of importance*; nihil refert, *it is of no importance*; *make no difference.*
reficio, io, *to refresh, refit.*
refugio, io, *to flee back.*
refulgeo, (refulsi,) *to shine.*
regalis, *royal.*
rēgĕro, (rexi, rectum,) *to rule, to govern*
regna, *queen.*
rēgio, ōnis, *region, district, country.*
regius, *royal.*
regnare, *to reign.*
regnum, *kingdom.*
rejicio, io, (rejēci, rejectum,) 3b, *to reject.*
relinquo, ĕre, (reliqui, relictum,) *to leave.*
relĭquiæ, *remains.*
relĭquus, *remaining*; but see p. 141, 78.
remanēre, (remansi,) *to remain.*
remedium, 2g, *remedy.*
reminisci, *to recollect*, (gen. or acc.)
remissio, onis, *a relaxation, lessening, diminution.*
remittere, (remīsi, remissum,) *to remit*: pœnam remittere, *to excuse a punishment.*
renōvare, *to renew.*
reor, *to think.*
repĕrire, (reperi, repertum,) *to find.* See Syn.
repĕtere, (petīvi, petītum,) *to seek again.*
reportare, *to carry back*: victoriam reportare, *to gain a victory.*
reprehendere, *to blame, censure.*
reprehensio, ōnis, *blame.*
repudiare, *to reject.*
requirere, *to seek again*; *to require*; *to miss.*
rērum natūra, *nature.*
res, rei, *thing, affair.*
res gestæ, *achievements, deeds*, (in war,) *successes, &c.*
resistere, *to resist*, (dat.)
resŏnare, (sonui, sonitum,) *to resound.*
respondēre, (respondi, responsum,) *to answer.*
respublica, *commonwealth.*
restĭtuere, 18.
reticēre, (reticui,) *to keep silence about.*
retinēre, (retinui, retentum,) *to hold back*; *to retain.*
retribuere, *to give back*; *to repay*: gratiam retribuere, *to recompense.*
reus, *an accused person.*
reverti, (reversus,) *to turn back*; *return.*
reviviscere, *to revive.*
rex, rēgis, *king.*
Rhēnus, *the Rhine.*
Rhŏdănus, *the Rhone.*
ridēre, *to laugh, laugh at.*
rigēre, *to be stiff, dried up*
ripa, *bank.* Syn.
risus, ūs, *laughter.*
robustus, *robust, strong.*
rŏgare, *to ask.*
rogātio, ōnis, *asking, proposal*; *a bill proposed.*
rōgus, *funeral pile.*
Rōma, *Rome.*
Romānus, *Roman*
ros, rōris, *dew.*
rosa, *rose.*
rotundus, *round.*
Rūbico, ōnis, *the Rubicon, a stream that formed the boundary between Italy and Gallia Cisalpina.*
rudēre, *to bray.*
rudis, *uneducated.*
ruere, *to rush, hurl down.*
rugire, *to roar.*
rus, rūris, *the country.* See p. 304, (160*.)
rure, *from the country.*
ruri, *in the country.*

Sabine, *a Sabine woman.*
sacer, cra, crum, (devoted to the gods,) hence (1) *sacred*, (2) *accursed.*
sacerdos, ōtis, *priest, priestess.*
sacra, *sacred rites or solemnities*; *festa.*
sacramentum, 9, *military oath, a pledge.*
sacrum, *a sacrifice.*
sæpe, *often.*
sævire, *to rage, to act cruelly.*
sagitta, *arrow.*
Saguntini, *the Saguntines.*
Saguntum, *Saguntum, a town.*
Sălămis, Inis, *an island near the coast of Attica.*
salio, *to spring, leap.*
salĭus, *salt, saltish.*
saltare, *to dance, to leap.*
saltem, *at any rate*; *at all events*; *at least.*
saltus, ūs, *a woodland pasture.*
salŭber, (salubris,) *healthful.*
salus, ūtis, *safety, welfare.*
salutare, *to salute.*
salvus, *safe.*
sanare, *to cure.* *to confirm.*
sancire, *assuredly.* *blood.*
sane, *assuredly.*
sanguis, Inis, *in health.*
sānus, *sound*; *to taste, be wise.*
săpere, *wise.*
sapiens, ntis, *package.*
sarcĭna, *burden, package.*
Sardes, ium, Sardis.
satiare, *to satisfy.*
satis, *enough*; satis magnus, *pretty considerable.*
satisfacere, (satisfēci, satisfactum,) *to satisfy*, (dat.)
Saturnus, i, *Saturn.*
saxum, *rock, stone.*
scēlus, ĕris, *crime.*
sceptrum, *sceptre.*
scientia, *knowledge.*
Scipio, ōnis, *Scipio, a celebrated Roman general.*
scire, *to know.*
scŏpus, *a mark.* *to write.*
scribere, *writer, author.*
scriptor, oris, *thing written*; *writing.*
scriptum,

scūtum, *shield.*
se, *himself, herself, itself themselves*:—or *him, her, it, them.*
sēcēdere, (secess, secessum,) *to withdraw.*
secundus, *second, favorable*: res secundæ, *prosperity.*
securis, is, *axe.*
sēcūrus, *without fear; without anxiety.*
sed, *but.*
sĕdēre, (sĕd, sessum,) *to sit.*
sēdes, *seat, abode, settlement.*
seditio, onis, *sedition.*
sēges, ētis, *corn sown; crop.*
segniter, *lazily.*
sejungere, (junx, junctum,) 32.
sella, *chair.*
sēmen, inis, *seed.*
semper, *always, ever.*
sempiternus, *eternal.*
senator, *a senator.* Quo senatore, (*who being a senator,* =) *for if he was a senator.*
senatus, ūs, *senate.*
senectūs, ūtis, *old age.*
senescere, *to grow old.* sĕnex, sĕnis, *old man.*
sententia, *opinion, meaning.*
sentire, (sensum,) *to feel, perceive.*
sepelire, (sepelio, sepultum,) *to bury.*
septentrio, ōnis, *the north; properly the seven stars in the Great Bear.*
sĕqui, (secūtus, *or* sequutus,) p. 176, *to follow.*
sĕrere, (sēvi, sătum,) *to sow; plant.*
sermo, ōnis, *discourse, conversation.*
sēro, *late; too late.*
serpens, *snake.*
servare, *to keep; to preserve.*
servire, *to be a slave; to be the slave of,* (dat.)
servītūs, ūtis, *slavery.*
servus, *slave.*
sese, the acc. of sui doubled—render before an infin., "*that they.*"
severitas, *seriousness.*
si, *if.*
signum, *sign, standard.*
silēre, *to be silent.*
silva, *wood.*
silvester, *woody,*
similis, *like.*
simplex, ĭcis, *simple.*
simul, *at the same time.*
simul ac, simul atque, } *as soon as.*
simulare, *to pretend.*
sincērus, *sincere, genuine.*
sine, *without.*
sinere, (sīvi,) *to permit, suffer.*
singŭli, *one; one apiece.*
sitire, I, *to be thirsty.*
sitis, is, *thirst.*
situs, *situated*: situm esse in eâ re, *to consist in that.*
situs, -ūs, *situation; nature* (*of a country.*)
sŏcius, *ally, associate; partner, companion.*
Socrates, is, *a great Athenian philosopher*
sol, sōlis, *the sun.*
solatium, *comfort, consolation.*
solemnia, *solemn rites; games.*
solēre, (solitus,) *to be wont* or *accustomed*
solebat, solitus est, *used.*
solium, *throne.*
sōlum, *only.*
sōlum, *soil.*
sōlus, (G. ĭus,) *alone; only.*
solvere, (solv, solūt,) p. 173, *to loosen, to pay.*
somnus, *sleep.*
sonare, (sonu, sonĭt,) *to sound.*
sŏnus, *sound.*
soror, ōris, *sister.*
sors, sortis, *lot.*
spargere, (spars, spars,) *to scatter*
speciosus, 31, *beautiful, handsome.*
spectare, *to behold; to look at; to look to*
speculari, *to watch for.*
sperare, *to hope; to hope for.*
spernere, (sprēv, sprēt,) See Synon., *to despise.*
spes, ei, *hope.*
spiritus, ūs, *breath.*
splendēre, *to glitter.*
spoliare, *to rob of, despoil,* (abl.)
spondēre, (spŏpond,) *to promise solemnly.*
sponsor, *a surety.*
stabilitas, *stability.*
stagnum, 15, *a pool* or *lake.*
stare, (stĕt, stătum,) *to stand;* stare also means *to cost.*
stare promisso, *to stand to* or *keep a promise.*
stătim, 12, *immediately.*
statio, *post, &c.*, (pl. stationes = *guards.*)
statuarius, *sculptor.*
status, ūs, *state, condition.*
stella, *star.*
sternere, (strāv, strātum,) *to strew, throw down.*
stŏmăchus, *the stomach.*
stringere, (strinx, strictum,) *to bind.*
struere, (strux, structum,) p. 173, *to pile up, build.*
studēre, *to pursue,* (*to study, &c.*;) *to be fond of; to favor,* (dat.)
studiōsus, *desirous of; devoted to.*
studium, *zeal, pursuit.*
stultus, *foolish;—a fool.*
stupēre, *to be astounded.*
suavis, *sweet.*
sub, *under;* acc. (after verbs of *motion*) *or* abl.
subigere, (ĕg, actum,) 18, ii.—also *to till, cultivate.*
subire, *to undergo.*
subĭto, *suddenly.*
subĭtus, *sudden.*
subvēnire, succurrere, } *to succor,* (dat.)

subjĭcere, io, (subjĕc, subject,) 36.
subjĕct, subject.
sublīme, *on high.*
sublīmis, *fine-spun, fine, shrewd, &c.*
succēdere, (successum,) *to succeed; take the place of*: successurus, *who was to succeed.*
succensēre, 32, *to be angry,* (dat.)
succumbere, (succŭbŭi,) *to yield to.*
succus, *juice, moisture.*
sūdare, *to be in a perspiration.*
sūescere, *to grow accustomed.*
sufficere, (sufficio,) *to be enough*
sūmere, (sumpsi, sumptum,) p. 172, iv., *to take.*
summa, *a sum.*
summum imperium, *the chief command; supreme power.*
sumptus, ūs, *expense.*
super, *above.*
superāre, *to conquer*:—montem, *to cross a mountain.*
superbe, *proudly.*
superbire, *to behave proudly.*
superbus, *proud.*
superstĭtio, ōnis, 21, *superstitious.*
supervacuus, *unnecessary, superfluous.*
suppeditare, *to supply.*
supervēnire, *to come upon; to approach unobserved,* with dat.
supplĭcium, *punishment.*
suprā, *above.*
surdus, *deaf.*
suscipere, io, (suscēp, suscept,) *to undertake.*
suspĭcio, ōnis, 30, *mistrust, suspicion.*
sustinēre, (sustĭnŭi, sustent,) 29, *to endure.*
suus, a, um, *his, hers, its, their, &c.*
Syracusæ, ārum, *Syracuse.*

T

tăbŭla, *tablet, &c.*; tabulæ, *account-books.*
tacēre, *to be silent.*
tam, *so.*
tamen, *yet, nevertheless.*
tandem aliquando, *at last.*
tangere, (tĕtĭg, tact,) *to touch.*
tanquam, *as if.*
tanti, *for so much*; *for that* (gen. of price.)
tantum, *only.*
tardus, *slow.*
Tarentīnus, *a Tarentine,* (i. e. *inhabitant of Tarentum.*)
taurus, *bull.*
tectum, 9, *roof, house.*
tĕgere, (texi, tect.) *to cover.*
tĕgmentum, *covering.*
tēlum, *missile, dart, weapon.*
temĕrarius, *rash.*
temĕre, *rashly, easily.*
nec temere, *nor—easily*; *and—not easily.*
temĕritas, *rashness.*
temperare, *to govern*; *to regulate.*
tempestas, *season, storm.*
templum, *temple.*
tempus, ŏris, *time.*
tempus anni, *season of the year.*
temporĭbus inservire, *to accommodate oneself to the times.*
tendere, (tetend, tens,) p. 171, (ii.) *to stretch.*
tenēre, p. 169, ii., *to hold.*
tĕnuis, *as far as, up to,* (prep.)
tepēre, *to be warm.*
terere, (trīv, trīt.) *to rub.*
terrere viam, *to tread a way often; to travel it often.*
terminare, 32, *to limit, bound.*
terra, *earth, land.*
terrā marique, *by sea and land.*
terrēre, *to frighten*; *to terrify.*
terrēstris, *earthly*; *on earth.*
tertius, *third.*
Teutoburgensis, *Teutoburgian.*
Thēbæ, ārum, *Thebes.*
thēsaurus, *treasure.*
Tiberis, is, (m.,) *the Tiber, a river in Italy.*
tigris, ĭdis, (f.,) *tiger.*
tilia, *a lime-tree.*
timēre, *to fear.*
timĭdus, *timid.*
Timoleon, ontis, *Timoleon, a Corinthian general.*
tiro, ōnis, *a beginner.*
tŏga, *a toga, the robe worn by Romans of the upper classes.*
tolerare, *to bear*; *to endure.*
tonare, (tonŭi, tonĭt,) *to thunder.*
tondēre, *to shear,* (tonŭi, iv., *to be stiff and motionless.*)
torquēre, p. 169, iv., *to be stiff and motionless.*)
torquis, is, *chain* (worn round the neck.)
torvus, *stern.*
tŏties, *so often.*
totus, G. ŭus, *whole.*
tractare, *to handle*; *to treat.*
trādere, (tradĭdi, tradĭt,) *to deliver*; *to relate.*
trăhere, (trax, tract,) p. 172, (iii,) *to draw, drag.*
trajicere, io, (trajēc, traject,) 24, *to cross.*
trans, *across.*
transfigere, 16, *a deserter.*
transfīga, (fix, fix,) *to transfix.*
transĭtus, ūs, *passing through*; *crossing*
transīre, *to pass over.*
tres, *three.*
tribuere, *to allot to.*
tribūnal, ālis, *tribunal.*
tribūni mĭlĭtum, *military tribunes.*
—— plēbis, *tribunes of the people.*
tribunus, *a tribune.*
tributum, *tribute.*
tristis, *sad.*
triumphare, *to triumph.*
Troja, *Troy.*
trucidare, *to slaughter*; *to butcher.*
truncus, *trunk.*
tu, *thou.*

tuēri, *to defend.*
tum, *then:* tum—tum, *both—and.*
turbare, *to disturb; to throw into confusion.*
Turca, *a Turk.*
turpis, *base, disgraceful.*
turris, is, *a tower.*
tussilāgo, Inis, *the name of a plant.*
tussis, is, *a cough.*
tūtus, *safe.*
tuus, a, um, *thine, thy:* tuum est, *it is your business,* (*part, duty, &c.*)
tympanum, *a drum.*
tyrannus, *tyrant.*

Uber, ĕris, *breast, dugs.*
ubertas, *fertility.*
ubi, *when, where, after*
ubicunque, *wherever.*
ubīnam, *where.*
ubique, *everywhere.*
ullus, *any:* nec ullus, *and no;* G. ĭus.
ultra, *beyond.*
ultro, *of his own accord:* ultro incusare, *to volunteer an accusation against* (*a person;*) *to accuse a man deliberately.*
Ulysses, is, *Ulysses.*
umbra, *shade, shadow.*
umbraculum, *protection from the heat.*
una, *in one place, together.*
unda, *wave.*
unde, *whence.*
undique, *from all sides.*
universus, *whole.*
unquam, *ever.*
unus, G. ĭus, *one.*
urbs, urbis, *city:* ab urbe conditâ, *from the building of the city.*
urere, (ussi, ust,) *to burn.*
ursus, *a bear.*
usque ad, *quite up to; up to.*
usus, *need, want.*
ut. See list of conjunctions, p. 318: ut—sic. Sometimes *so that;*—*on condition that.*
uter, utrius, *which* (*of two.*)
uterque, *each.*
uti, *that, as.*
utilis, *useful, good* (for any purpose.)
utilitas, *utility, use.*
utīnam, *would that.*
utrum, *whether.* See p. 295, (51.) In sentences that are not dependent, it is to be untranslated.
uva, *grape.*
uxor, ōris, *wife.*

Vācare, *to be free from, to have leisure,* (abl.)
vagari, *to wander.*
valde, *very.*
vale, *farewell.*
valens, tis, *strong.*
valēre, *to be strong; to be well; to be able.*
Valerius Maximus, *a Roman historian.*
vallĭdus, *strong.*
vallis, is, *a valley.*
vanitas, *emptiness.*
vanus, *empty, vain.*
vapor, *vapor.*
Varianus, (adj.) *of Varius.*
varietas, *variety:* also *diversity of color.*
vārius, *various.*
vas, vādis, m., *surety:* vādem fieri alicui jus, *to become anybody's surety.*
vas, vāsis, n., *a vessel.*
vastare, 9, *to destroy, lay waste.*
—ve, *or.*
vehĕmens, ntis, *violent, eager.*
vehementer, 25, *vehemently.*
vehere, (vexi, vect.) *to carry*
Vejentes, *the Veientes, or people of Veii.*
vel, *either, or;*—*even.*
vēlox, ōcis, *swift.*
venenum, *poison.*
venaticus, *belonging to hunting:* canis venaticus, *a sporting dog, a hound.*
venatum, (sup,) *a hunting.*
venari, *to hunt:* venatum (*supine*) ire, *to go a hunting.*
vendere, (did, dit,) *to sell.*
vēnire, (ven, vent,) *to come.*
Vēnus, ĕris, *Venus, the goddess of beauty.*
ver, vēris, *spring.*
verbum, *a word.*
vere, *truly.*
verecundus, *modest.*
verisimilis, *probable.*
vero, *but.*
versari, *to be employed: to reside at.*
versus, ûs, *a verse.*
vertere, (vert, vers,) *to turn*
vēru, n. *a spit.*
verum, *truth;* verum dīcere, *to speak the truth.*
vērus, *true.*
vere, *truly.*
verēri, (veritus sum,) *to fear.*
vespa, *wasp.*
vesper, ĕris, *the evening.*
vesci, *to feed* (*on,*) abl.
vester, tra, trum, *your, yours* (*of more than one.*)
vestire, *to clothe.*
vestis, *garment, dress.*
vĕtare, (vetui, vetĭt,) *to forbid.*
vĕtus, ĕris, *old. Pl. neut.,* vetera; *superl.,* veterrimus.
vetustas, *antiquity.*
vetustus, *old.*
vexare, *to vex; to harass.*
via, *way.*
vicinus, *near.*
vicissitūdo, Inis, *change.*
victĭma, *victim.*
victōria, *a victory.*
victus, ûs, *food.*
victus, *conquered.*
vĭdēre, (vid, vis,) p. 170, vii., *to see;* vidēri, *to be seen to seem.*

vigēre, p. 169. iv.
vigilare, *to be awake; to watch.*
villa, *farm-house, country-house.*
vincere, (vic, vict,) p. 172.
vincire, (vinx, vinct,) p. 174.
vinculum, *chain.*
vindicare, *to avenge.*
vinea, *vineyard.*
vinum, *wine.*
violare, *to violate; to wrong.*
vipĕra, *viper.*
vir, viri, *man,* (opposed to *woman*;) *husband.*
virēre, p. 169, iv., *to be green, to flourish.*
vires, ium, *strength.* (See vis.)
virgo *Vestalis, a Vestal virgin, whose duty it was to keep up the sacred fire in the temple of Vesta.*
virgultum, *bush.*
virtus, ūtis, *manly excellence; virtue; courage.*
vis, 2d sing. of volo.
vis, vim, vī; pl. vires; *strength, power, force, multitude*: summis viribus, *with all his might.*
visere, p. 172, (v.) *to visit*
visus, (See vidēre, p. 170, vii.,) *seen.*
vitare, *to avoid.*
vitis, is, *vine.*
vitium, *fault, vice.*
vituperare, *to reprove; to blame; to chide.*
vivere, (vix, vict,) p. 173, (vi,) *to live.*
vivus, *alive.*
vix, *scarcely; with difficulty.*
vōcare, *to call; to invite.*
volo, (velle, volui,) *to be willing, to wish.*
volare, *to fly.*
voluntas, ātis, *inclination, will.*
voluptas, ātis, *pleasure.*
vox, vōcis, *voice; also speech, exclamation.*
vulnerare, *to wound.*
vulnus, ĕris, *wound.*
vulpes, is, (f.,) *fox.*
vultus, ūs, *countenance, look.*

Xĕnŏphon, ontis, *a Grecian general, an elegant writer and historian.*
Xerxes, is, *Xerxes, a king of Persia.*

ENGLISH-LATIN INDEX.

a) p. refers to the page: numerals without p. to the Vocabularies on the Exercises, Pt. II., (if they are above 6.) Numerals enclosed in a parenthesis refer to the Exercises, Pt. II.

b) A verb in *ere*, when the penult is not marked long, belongs to the third conjugation. Verbs of the 2d conj. have the penult marked long, as *ēre*.

c) When a verb is separated by a hyphen from its preposition, the perfect of the simple verb is to be looked for in the lists. Thus *ob-tegere:* look for *teg-o* in the list of the verbs of the third ending in a *k sound*.

Able, (to be,) *posse, quire,* (*ques.*)
abound, *abundare,* abl.
about, (= concerning.) *de,* abl.
above, *super, supra,* (prep.)
absent, (to be,) *abesse.*
accomplish, *conficere, fēci, fect.*
accident, *casus, ūs.*
according to, *secundum,* (prep.)
account of, (on.) *ob, propter.*
accuse, *accusare.*
accused-person, *reus.*
accustomed (to be,) *solēre, solitus.*
accustom themselves, *consuescere.*
accustom yourself, *te assuefacere* (*fēc, fect.*)
acquire the power, *facultatem excolere,* (*colu, cult.*)
acquit, *absolvere,* (*solv, solūt,*) gen. of charge.
across, *trans,* (prep.)
act, *agere,* (*ēg, act:*) act rightly, *recte facere.*
action, *actio, ōnis.*
act-proudly, *superbire,* 9.
add, *addere,* (*did, dit.*)
adorn, *dēcorare,* 7; *ornare.*
advantage, *utilitas:* to offer advantages, *utilitatem* or *utilitates habēre; præbēre,* or *afferre.*
advice, *consilium:* by the advice of my uncle, *avunculo auctore.*
affair, *res, ei.*
affection, *amor, ōris.*
afflict, *affligere,* (*flix, flict.*)
afford, *præ-stare,* (*stit, stāt.*)
after, prep. *post,* (with acc.)
after-that, *posthac.*
afterwards, *postea.*
again, *rursus;* (= once more,) *iterum.*
against, *contra, adversus,* acc.: *in* with acc. (of feelings, actions, &c.; *against* a person.)
Agāmemnon, *Agamemnon,* G. *ōnis.*
age, (= time of life.) *ætas, ātis;* (= length of time.) *vetustas.*
age of Augustus, *ævum Augusteum.*
agreeable, *jucundus; suavis,* (41.)
aim at, *studēre,* (dat.)
air, *aër, aëris,* m.
Alexander, G. dri.
all, *omnis.*
ally, *socius.*
almost, *prope, pæne.*
along, *secundum.*
Alps, *Alpes,* G. *ium.*
already, *jam.*
altar, *ara.*
although, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi; quamquam, quamvis, licet, quum.*[1]
always, *semper.*
ambassador, *lēgatus.*
ambition, *ambitio, ōnis.*
amongst, among, *inter,* acc.
amongst (a people,) *apud,* with acc.

[1] See p. 312, (259—255.)

ancient, *antiquus*.
ancients, the, *veteres*.
and, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *que*.
anger, *ira*.
angry (to be,) *irasci*, dat.: *succensére*, dat.
announce, *nuntiare*.
answer, *respondére*, (*spond*, *spons*.)
ant, *formica*, *æ*.
any. See page 207, (191.)
any-one, See note 3, Ex. 13.
apiece, never to be translated, but the *distributive* numeral to be used.[1] See *quam*.
Apollo, *Apollo*, G. *inis*.
appear, (= seem,) *vidéri*, *vis*.
appearance, p. 24, *spécies*, *ēi*.
appease, *placare*.
approve of, *probare*.
arise, *oriri* (*ortus*,) *ex-oriri*, (45.)
arm, *brachium*.
arms, *arma*, pl.
army, *exercitus*, *ûs*.
arrive, *vénire*; *advénire*.
arrive at, *pervénire ad*.
arrow, *sagitta*.
art, *ars*, *artis*.
as, *ut*.
as, after *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, is *quam*, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quot*, respectively.
as, after *idem*, is *qui*, (or *ac*, *atque*.)
as it were, *quasi*.
as long as, *quamdiu*.
as many as possible, *quam plurimi*.
as possible, *quam* before the superlat.
as soon as, *simul ac*; *ut primum*; *quum primum*; *ubi*; *ut*.
ascertain, *explorare*.
asleep, to be, *dormire*.
ashamed, (am—of,) *pudet*.
ask, *rogare*.[2]
ass, *asinus*.
assault, (a town,) *oppugnare*, *invadere*.
assist, *adjuvare*.
assistance, *auxilium*.
at, (of a place, near which a battle is fought, &c..) *apud*, (or ad.)
at-a-distance, *procul*.
at a great price, *magni*.
at-home, *domi*.
at last, *denique*.
at nothing, *nihili*.
at once, *simul*.
at-the-right-time, *in tempore*.
Athens, *Athēnæ*, *ārum*.
Athenian, *Atheniensis*.
atrocious, *atrox*, *ōcis*.
attack, *adgrédi*, *gressus*; *adoriri*, *ort*: attack, (= *charge* an enemy,) *impétum facere*: to be attacked, *impugnari*.
attentive, *studiósus*, (gen.)
Augustus. See age.
Autumn, *Auctumnus*.
avarice, *avaritia*.
avenge, *vindicare*.
avoid, *vitare*.
awake, to be, *vigilare*.
awaken, *excitare*.
aware, to be, *intelligere*, (*lex*, *lect*.)

Bad, *pravus*, *malus*, *inutilis*.
bake, *cóquere*.
band, *manus*, *ûs*.
banish, *pellere*, (*pépŭl*, *puls*)
banishment, *exsilium*.
bank, *ripa*.
bark, *cortex*, *icis*, m.
base, *turpis*.
battle, *prælium*. — of Marathon, *pugna Cannensis*, — *Marathonia*.
be with me, *mecum una esse*
beam, *radius*.
bear, *ursus*.
bear, *ferre*, (*tul*, *lat*.)
beard, *barba*.
beasts, *feræ*, *bellua*.
beat, *ferire*, (*percussi*, *percussum*.)
beautiful, *pulcher*, (root *pulchr*.)
beauty, *pulchritudo*: (= elegance,) *elegantia*.
because, *quia*.
becomes, *fit*, (see *fio*.)
become, *evádere*, (*vas*, *vas*.)
become acquainted with, *innotescere*,[3] 19.
becoming, (to be,) *décére*, acc.
befall, *accidere*, (*accidi*,) dat.
before, adv., *antea*.
before, prep. *ante*, acc.
before, (standing before a sentence,) *antequam*.
beg, *rogare*, *orare*.
begin, *cœpisse*; (began, before pass. infin. *cœptus est*;) *incipere*, 8.
begin to flourish, *florescere*.
beguile, *fallere*, (prep.)
behind, *pone*, (prep.)
behold, *adspicere*, *cunspicere*.
behave-proudly, *superbire*, (followed by *in* with *acc*.)
believe, *credére*, dat., (*credĭd*, *credĭt*.)
believed, I am, *mihi creditur*.
bend down, *in-flectere*.
benefit, *beneficium*.
besiege, *obsidére*, (*sēd*, *sess*.)
besieger, *obsidens*.
best, *optimus*.
bestow, *tribuere*, *impertire*.

[1] For instance, to translate '*one apiece*;' '*two apiece*,' use the distributive numeral for *one*, *two*, &c., (singuli, bini:) 'Two oboli apiece,' (acc.,) '*binos obolos*.'
[2] In Exercise 21, Pt. II., translate 'we will ask ourselves,' by *quærimus*.
[3] Followed by the *dat*. of the person.

☞ '*Upon*' is to be untranslated, and the person put in the dative.
betray, *prodere, prodĭdi, proditum.*
betray confidence, *fidem fallere.*
better, *melior;* adv. *mĕlius.*
beyond, *præter, ultra.*
bigger, *major.*
bite, p. 170, vii., *mordĕre.*
bird, *avis.*
bitter, *amārus.*
Black Sea, *Pontus Euxinus:* on the Black Sea, *ad Pontum Euxinum.*
blame, *culpa.*
blame, *culpare.*
blind, *cæcus.*
blood, *sanguis, ĭnis,* m., (after it is shed, *cruor.*)
blossom, *florēre.*
blow-off, *jactare,* (properly, to toss.)
boast, *gloriari.*
body, *corpus, ŏris.*
book, *liber, ri.*
booty, *præda.*
born, *natus;* born to, *natus ad.* before the birth of Christ, *ante Christum natum.*
both, *uterque,* both—and, *et—et.*
bough, *ramus.*
boy, *puer;* G. *pueri.*
brave, *fortis;* bravely, *fortiter.*
bray, *rudēre, rudi* and *rudivi, rudītum.*
break, *frangere, (frēgi, fractum.)*
break one's word, *fidem violare.*
break a law, *legem violare.*
break-off, *defringere, (frēg, fract.)*
bribery, *ambĭtus, ūs.*
bridge, *pons, tis.*
Briseis, *Brisēis;* G. *ĭdis.*
brother, *frater, tris.*
build, *ædificare:* a nest, *construere.*
building, *ædificium:* from the building of the city, *ab urbe conditā.*
burst, *rumpere.*
bury, *sepĕlire.*
business, *nĕgōtia,* pl.: much business, *varia negotia.*
but, *sed;—autem,* (which must not stand as the first word.)
but if, *sin; sin autem.*
buy, *emere.*
buyer, 8, *emptor.*
by, (close by,) *juxta,* (prep.)
by chance, *cāsu.*

Cæsar, *Cæsar, ăris.*
calamity, *calamitas, ātis.*
call, *vocare, appellare, nōminare. dicere:* (= *invite,*) *vocare.*
call upon, *convĕnire,* (*vĕn, vent,*) acc.
calm, *tranquillus.*
camp, *castra,* pl.
can, *posse, quire,* (*queo.*)
cannot, *nequeo,* *non possum.*
card, *carpere.*
care, *cura.*
carefully, *dĭlĭgenter.*
carry, *portare;* (in ships, carriages, &c.,) *vehere.*
carry, (a law,) *perferre,* (*tŭl, lāt.*)
carry-off, *rapere,* (*ui, tum:*) (of a *disease,*) *per-imere,* (*ēm, empt.*)
carry on, (war,) *gĕrere.*
Carthage, *Carthāg-o, ĭnis.*
cat, *felis.*
Catilinarian, 15, ii., *Catilinarius.*
cavalry, 10, *equitatus, ūs.*
cave, *antrum.*
cease, *desinere,* (*desi, desĭt:*) ceased, before inf. pass. *desītus est.*
celebrated, *celeber.*
certain, *certus.*
certain, a, *quĭdam,*
chance, (by,) *fortŭito cāsu.*
change, { *mutare.* / *mutatio.*
character, *mores,* pl.; G. *um*
chariot, *currus, ūs.*
chaste, *castus.*
chastise, *castigare.*
cherish, *fŏvēre.*
check, (restrain,) *coercēre,* (47.)
childish, *puerĭlis.*
children, *liberi,* pl.
choose, *eligere,* (*lēg, lect:*) *deligere,* (42.
Christian, *Christiānus.*
Chryses, *Chryses;* G. *æ.*
Cicĕro, *Cicer-o, ōnis.*
circumstance, *res, ei.*
citadel, *arx, arcis.*
citizen, *civis, is.*
city, *urbs, urbis.*
climb-over, *superare.*
cloak, *pallium.*
close-to, *juxta,* (prep.)
clothe, *vestire.*
clothe oneself, *induere,* acc.
clouds, *nubes, is.*
coarse, *crassus.*
coast, *ora.*
cold, *frig-us, ŏris.*
collect, *colligere; conquirere.*
color, *color, ōris.*
combatants, the, *pugnantes,* (pl. participle.)
come, *vĕnire,* (*vĕn, vent.*)
come-in, *inire.*
come into flower *or* blossom, *florescere.*
come-out, *exire.*
command, *impĕrare,* dat.
commander-in-chief, *imperātor.*
commit, *com-mittere.*
common, to make, *æquare.*[1]

[1] In Ex. 33, (*end,*) transl. 'all the rights of patricians and plebeians were equalized,' *æquantur.*

compel, *cōgere*, (*coēg*, *coact.*)
complete a work, *ŏpus*, *conficere*, (*fēc*, *fect.*) or *absolvere*, (*solv*, *solūt.*)
comply with, *obēdire*, dat.
conceal, *cēlare*, (2 acc.)
condemn, *damnare*.
concerning, *dē*.
concerns, (it,) *intĕrest*.
conduct, (in a *particular instance*,) *factum*.
confidence. See betray.
congratulate, *gratulari*.
conquer, *vincere*, (*vīc*, *vict*;) *superare*: (= win by conquest,) *expugnare*, or *cāpere*, (*cēp*, *cept.*)
conquered, *victus*.
conqueror, *victor*, *ōris*.
conscience, *conscientia*: a *pure* or *clean* conscience, *integra conscientia*.
consider, (= think,) *existimare*; *habēre*.
considerably, *āliquanto*, (before comparatives.)
consolation, *consolatio*, *ōnis*.
conspiracy, 15, āi., *conjuratio*.
Constantinople, *Constantinopōlis*, G. *is*, Acc. *im*.
consul, *consul*, *ŭlis*.
consular power, *consularis potestas*.
consulate, *consulatus*, *ūs*.
consult, *consulere*, (*sulu*, *sult*,) acc.
contend, *certare*.
contented, *contentus*, abl.
contest, 17, *certamen*.
continue, *permanēre*, (*mans*;) *persĕverare*.
conversation, *sermo*, *ōnis*.
cool, *defervescere*.
cool-down, *de-fervescere*, 18.
cook, *cŏquere*.
Corinth, *Corinthus*.
Corinthian, *Corinthius*.
correct, *corrĭgere*.
corrupt, *corrumpere*, (*rŭp*, *rupt.*)
cost, *stāre*, (abl. of price.)
cough, *tussis*.
counsel, *consilium*.
count, *numĕrare*.
country, (= land,) *terra*; (= district,) *rĕgio*, *ōnis*; (= *native* country,) *patria*; (as opposed to *town*,) *rus*, *rūris*.
country, in the, *ruri*.
country, into, *rus*.
country, from, *rure*.
courageously, *fortĭter*.
court the favour, *amb-ire gratiam*.
cover, *ob-tĕgere*, (*tex*, *tect.*)
crane, *grus*, *is*.
crackle, *crĕpare*, p. 168, ii.
create, *creare*.
create, (an office,) *instituere*, (*stitu*, *stitut.*)
crop, *seges*, *ĕtis*.
crime, *maleficium*; *scelus*, *ĕris*; *flagitium*.
cross, *transjicere* or *trajicere*, (*jēc*, *ject*,) acc.
to cross the Alps, *Alpes superare*.
crown, *corōna*.
" *cingere*.
cruel, *crudēlis*.
crush, *opprĭmĕre*, (*press*, *press.*)
cry, *clamor*. *ōris*.
cry out, *clamare*.
cry, (weep,) *flĕre*,
cultivate, *cŏlere*, (*cŏlu*, *cult*:) to cultivate our minds, *mentes excŏlere*.
cure, *sānare*.
Cures, G. *ium*.
custom, *consuetūd-o*, *ĭnis*.
customary, *usitatus*.
custody, *custōdia*.
cut-down, *cædĕre*, (*cĕcīd*, *cæs.*)

Daily, *quŏtīdie*.
dance, *saltare*.
danger, *periculum*.
dangerous, *periculosus*.
daughter, *filia*.
day, *dies*, *ēi*.
day and night, *dies noctesque*.
dead, *mortuus*.
death, *mors*, *tis*.
debt, debts, *æs alienum*; *æs*, *ĕris*: *æs alienum*, properly 'another man's brass,' (i. e. money.)
deceive, *decipĕre*, *cēp*, *cept*; (if without intending it,) *fallere*, *fĕfelli*.[1]
decree, *decernere*, (*crev*, *cret.*)
deep, *altus*.
defend, *defendere*, (*fend*, *fens*:)
defend (a town) by a garrison, *præsidio firmare*.
defraud, *fraudare*, (abl.)
delight, *juvare*.
delightful, *jucundus*.
deliver, *liberare*, abl.
demand, *postulare*.
deny, *nĕgare*.
depart, *discēdere*, abl.
deprive, *privāre*, (abl.)
derive, *haurire*.[2]
descend, 7; descent, 7, *descendere*, *descensus*.
desert, *desĕrere*, (*sĕru*, *sert.*)
deserter, 16, ii., *transfūga*.
deserve, *merēri*, (*merĭ*;) well of, *bene de*.
deserving of, *dignus*, abl.
desire, (= eager pursuit,) *studium*.

---

[1] Ex. 20. 'How you deceived yourself!' *ut animus tuus te fefellit!*
[2] '*From*' after '*haurire*' is to be translated by *e* or *ex*.

desire, velle; cupere, (*cupio, cupit:*) = express a wish, *optare.*
desire, *libīdo, inis; cupiditas.*
despise See Synonymes, p. 289
destroy, *delēre,* (*deleo, delet:*) *perdere,* (*perdĭd, perdĭt.*)
destruction, *pernicies,* G. *ei; exitium* (48.)
detain, *detinēre; retardare.*
deter, *deterrēre.*
devote oneself to, *studere,* (dat.)
dictator, *dictator, ōris.*
die, *mŏri, ior,* (*mortuus sum.*)
difference, it makes no—, *nihil rĕfert.*
difficult, *difficilis.*
difficulty, *difficultas, ātis.*
dignity of Curule Ædile, *Curulis Ædilitas.*
diligent, *diligens, entis.*
dinner, *cœna.*
discharge, *fungi,* (*funct.*) abl.
discover, *invēnire, repĕrire.* Syn. I.
discover, (= reveal,) *de-tĕgere.*
disease, *morbus.*
disgraceful, *turpis.*
dismiss, *dimittere.*
disperse, *dissipare.*
displease, *displĭcēre,* dat.
dispute, (= discuss,) *dispūtare.*
disregard, *negligere.*
distinguish oneself, himself, &c., *excellĕre, ui,* (acc. of pron. not to be translated.)
distinguished, *insignis, nobilis, illustris.*
distinguished, to be, *excellere;* (*ui.*)
disturb, *turbare.*
distress, *turbare.*
divide, *dīvidĕre,* (*dīvīsi.*)
do any wrong to a man, *aliquem injuriā afficere.*
do good, *prod-esse.*
do wrong, *peccare.*
do, *facere.*
" *agere.*
dog, *cānis.*
don't know, *nescio.*
doubt, *dubitare.*
doubt, there is no, *non est dubium* (*quin.*)
without doubt, *haud dubie.*
doubtful, *dubius.*
dove, *columba.*
dragon, *draco, ōnis.*
draw, (a sword,) *stringere,*
draw out an army, *aciem instruere* (*struxi, struct.*)
draw up an army in order of battle, 29.
dress, *vestitus.*
drink, *bibere,* (*bib, bibit.*)
to drink poison, *venenum haurire,* (*haus.*)
drive, *pellere,* (*pepŭl, puls:*)—**drive away** *fugare.*
drive-back, *rejicere, io.*
dust, *pulvis, eris.*
duty, *officium:* to do your duty, *officium facere,* or *præstare,* (*stit.*)
dutiful affection, *pietas, ātis.*
dwell, *habitare.*
draw,[1] *trăhere.*

Each. *quisque:* (of two,) *uterque, utraque, utrumque;* G. *utriusque.*
eagle, *aquila.*
early, *matūre.*
early, *præmaturus.*
earth, *terra.*
easy, *facilis:* easily, *facile.*
eat, *ĕdere,* (*ĕd, ēs;*) *vesci,* (as food.)
economy, *parsimonia.*
educate, *edūcare.*
effectual, *efficax.*
Egyptian, *Ægyptius.*
either—or, *aut—aut, vel—vel, sive—sive.*
elder, the, *priscus.*
elect, *ēligere.* (*lēg, lect.*)
elephant, *elephas, antis.*
embrace, *amplecti, complecti.*
employ, *adhibēre:* to employ a trick, *dolo uti,* (*usus sum.*) abl.
employment, *negotium.*
empty, *vanus.*
encounter death, *mortem oppetere.*
end, *finis,* m.
end, *finire.*
never to make an end of reading, *lĕgendi finem nunquam invēnire.*
endure, *sustinēre,* (*tinu, tent:*) *tolerare,* (41.)
endued with, *præditus,* (abl.)
enemy, (private,) *inimīcus.*
enemy, (public,) *hostis.*[2]
enjoy, *frui,* (abl.)
enquire of, *quærere ex, (quæsīv, quæsīt.)*
entice, *pellicere, io,* (*lex, lect.*)
entreat, *rōgare.*
envy, *invidēre,* (*vīd, vīs,*) dat.
equal, *par,* dat.
erect, (a monument, &c.,) *statuere, pōnere,* or *collŏcare:* dat. of person *to whom.*
escape, *vītare.*
estate, *fundus, i.*
eternal, *sempiternus.*
even, *ĕtiam.* (before its word.)
evening, *vesper, ĕris.*
even mind, *æquus ănimus.*
even, not—*ne—quidem.*
every, *omnis.*
everybody, *quisque.*
every day, *quŏtidie.*

---

[1] In Ex. 15, '*after it*' need not be translated after '*drew.*'
[2] '*The enemy,*' meaning a body of enemies, must be translated by the plural, *hostes*

evil, *mălum*, neut. adj., or plur. *mala*.
examine a question, *disquirere*.
example, *exemplum*.
exceedingly, *vehementer*.
excel, *præstare, præstiti*, dat. or acc. of person; abl. of thing in which.
excellent, *præstans, tis*.
excite, *excitare:* excite to anger, *ad īram concītare*.
exclude, *arcēre*, (abl. of thing *from* which.)
exempted, to be, *līberari*, abl.
exercise, *exercēre*.
exercise, *exercitatio*.
exhort, *hortari, adhortari*.
expect, *exspectare*.
expectation, *spes, ei*.
expense, *sumptus, ūs*.
expire, *exspirare*.

Fable, *fabŭla*.
face, *facies, ei*.
fact, (it is an allowed,) *constat*.
faith, *fides, ei*.
faithful, *fidēlis*.
fall, *cădere*,
fall-on, (= seize on,) *incessere*.
fall into, *incurrere*, (*incurri*.)
fall-to-the-lot-of, 19, (dat.)
fall upon, *adoriri*, (*adortus*,) acc.
fall down, *decidere*.
fasten, *figere*.[1]
fasten, (a vessel,) *retinēre, retīnui, retentum*.
fate, *fortuna*.
father, *pat-er, ris*.
fault, *culpa*.
favor, *favēre*, dat. (*fāv, faut*.)
fear, (of body,) *timor;* (of mind,) *mĕtus, ūs;* to be in fear, *in timōre esse*.
fear, *timēre, mĕtuēre*.
feed, (trans. as a shepherd,) *pascere*, p. 173.
feed on, *vesci*, abl.
feel, p. 164, § 14, *sentire*, (*sens, sens*.)
feeling, *animus*.
fellow-citizen, *cīvis;* G. *is*.
fertility, *ubertas*.
fetch water, *aquātum*, (sup.)
fever, *febris*, abl. *i*.
few, *pauci, æ, a*.
fickleness, *levitas, ātis*.
fidelity, *fides, ei*.
field, *ager;* G. *gri;* (if under *tillage*,) *arvum*.
fight, *pugnare; decertare*, (Ex. 37.)
fill, *implīre*, (*plēv, plēt*.) *complēre*.
find, *in-vēnire; repērire*, (*rēpĕri, repertum*.) See Syn. I.
find-out, *de-tegere*.
finish, *conficere. finire;* finish, (life,) Ex. 19, *vitam dēgere*, (*dēgi*.)
fire, *ignis;* (= conflagration,) *incendium*.
firm, *firmus*.
first, *primus;* at first, *primo*.
fish, *piscis*, m. *is*.
fit, *aptus*.
fit for, *idōneus*, (dat.)
flame, *flamma*.
flatter, *adulari*, (dat. or acc.)
flay, *deglŭbere*.
fleet, *classis, is*.
flesh, *caro, carnis*,
flight, *fuga*.
flock, *grex, grĕgis*.
flourish, *florēre*.
flower, *flos, ōris*.
flow together, 15, ii.
fly, *vŏlare*.
fly-from, *fugĕre*.
fly out, *evŏlare*.
foe, *hostis*.
follow *sĕquor*, (*secūtus*.)
folly, *stultitia*.
fond, *cupidus*, (gen.)
food, *cĭbus, i*.
for, *nam, namque, enim*.
for, (= in behalf of,) *pro*.
for-a-long-time, *dū*.
forbid, p. 169, ii., *vētare*, (*vetui, vetĭtum*.)
force, *vis, vim. vi;* a strong force, *validum præsidium*. To be in force, (of a law,) *vălēre*.
forces, *copiæ*.
forefathers, *mājōres*, or *patres*.
foretell, *prædīcere*.
forget, *oblīvisci*, (*oblītus*,) gen.
forgetful, *immĕmor*, gen.
forgetfulness, *oblīvio, ōnis*.
forgive, *ignoscere, ignōvi*, dat.
formed, *comparātus*.
former, *prior*.
for-some-time, *aliquamdiu*.
fortify, *munīre*.
fortune, *fortuna*.
forty-nine, *quadraginta novem;* or *novem et quadraginta;* or *undequinquaginta*.
forty-ninth, *undequinquagesimus;* or *quadragesimus nonus*.
fosse, *fossa*.
found, (a city,) *condere*.
fountain, *fons, tis*.
fox, *vulpes*, f. (7.)
fraud, *fraus, fraudis*.
free, *liber*, (abl.)
free from, *līberare*, abl.
friend, *amicus*.
frighten, *deterrēre*.
friendship, *amicitia*.
from, *after* prevent, deter, &c., *quominus* with subj.
frugality, *parsimonia*.
fruit, (of the earth,) *fruges;* (of a tree,) *fructus:* G. *ūs*.
fulfil, *explīre*.

[1] For '*fastened* to *the wall*,' say, '*fastened* in *the wall*.'

Gain, *lucrum*.
gain, (by begging,) *impĕtrare*.
gain, (by exertions,) *adipisci*, (*adeptus*;) (without exertions,) *nancisci*, (*nactus*.)
gain, (= earn,) *acquirere*, 9.
gain a victory, *victoriam reportare*.[1]
game, *ludus*.
garden, *hortus*, *i*.
garland, *corona*.
gate, *porta*; opened gates, *portæ pătentes*.
Gaul, *Gallus*.
general, *dux*, *dŭcis*; *imperator*, (the title of a victorious Roman general.)
genius, *ingĕnium*.
gentle, *lēnis*, *mitis*.
German, *Germanus*.
Germany, *Germania*.
get well. *convălescere*.
get acquainted with, *noscere*; *cognoscere*.
gift. *donum*.
girl, *puella*.
give, *dăre*.
give pleasure. See pleasure.
give up, *dĕdere*, (*dĕdĭdi*, *dĕdĭtum*.)
glitter, *fulgēre*.
glory, *gloria*.
glorious, *gloriosus*.
go to bed, } *cubĭtum ire*.
— to roost, }
— a hunting, *vēnātum*, *ire*.
go away, *ăbire*, *discĕdere*, (*cess*.)
go-on-board, *conscendere*, *scend*, *scens*, (*navem*, or *in navem*.)
go-to-battle, *in prælium ire*.
God, *Deus*,
gold, *aurum*.
good, *bŏnus*.
good for, *utilis*, (dat.)
good fortune, *felicitas*, *ātis*.
good time, in, *in tempŏre*.
good conduct, *hŏnestas*, *ātis*.
goodness. *benignitas*, *ātis*.
govern, *rĕgere*, *gubernare*.
government, *impĕrium*.
grain, *granum*.
grape, *uva*.
grass, *gramen*, *ĭnis*.
grateful, *gratus*.
gratitude, *gratia*.
great, *magnus*; the great, *nobiles*, *ium*; *illustres viri*.
greatest, (when degree is meant rather than size,) *summus*.
greatest possible, (the,) *quam maximus*.
greatness, *magnĭtūdo*, *ĭnis*.
greatly, *magnŏpĕre*.
greedy, *avidus*, (gen.)
Greece, *Græcia*.
Greek, *Græcus*.
grief, *dolor*, *ōris*.
grieve, *dolēre*, *mærēre*.
ground, *humus*; on the ground, *humi*.
grow-old, *senescere*.
grow-green, *virescere*.
grow-warm, *incalescere*.
grow-accustomed, *consuescere*.
guard, *custodire*.
guard against, } *cāvēre*, acc., (*cāv*, *caut*.)
guard myself, }
guards, *stătiones*, (i. e. parties of soldiers posted in particular places;) *excubiæ*.
guilty, *nŏcens*, *nŏcentis*.

Habit, *mos*, *mōris*.
hang, *pendēre*, (neut.
hang over, *imminēre*.
had rather, *malle*, (from *mālo*.)
hand, *manus*, *ūs*, f.
Hannibal, *Hannibal*, *Hannibălis*.
happen, (of evils,) *accidere*; (of fortunate events,) *contingere*, (*tĭg*;) (= turn out,) *evenire*. Syn.
happy, *beātus*, *fēlix*.
happy, (= joyful,) *lætus*.
harass, *exăgitare*.
harbor, *portus*, *ūs*.
hardly, (= scarcely,) *vix*.
hardship, *labor*, *ōris*.
harm to do, (to,) *obesse*.
harmony. *concordia*.
hate, *ōdisse*, (with tenses derived from perf.)
hatred, *ŏdium*.[2]
have, *hăbēre*.
have rather, *malle*, p. 177.
head, *caput*, *capĭtis*, n.
heal, *medēri*, dat.
hear, *audire*.
heart, (as the seat of the affections,) *animus*.
heart, *cor*, *cordis*, n.
hearth, *fŏcus*.
heat, *calor*, *ōris*.
heavy, *grăvis*.
hen, *gallina*.
hence, *inde*, *hinc*.
help, *auxilium*.
her, acc. sing. *se*, if relating to nom. of sent.; if not, *eam*.
her, adj. *suus*, *a*, *um*, if relating to nom. of sent.; if not, *ejus*.
herb, *herba*.
herd, *armentum*; *grex*, *grĕgis*.
here, (= hither,) *huc*.
hesitate, *dubitare*.
hill, *collis*, *is*, m.: *mons*, *montis*.
him, *se*, if relating to nom. of sent.; if not, *eum*.
himself, *ipse*; in acc. *se*: *seipsum*, or *ipsum se*.
hinder, *impĕdire*, *obstare*.

---

[1] 'When he had gained the victory,' *partâ victoriâ*.
[2] In Ex. 24 use it in the plural.

his, *ejus*; or *suus, a, um.*
hit, (a mark,) *attingere*, (*tig, tact.*)
hither, *huc.*
hold, *tĕnēre*, p. 169, ii.
home, to, *dōmum*; at, *dōmi*; from, *dōmo.*
Homer, *Homērus.*
honey, *mel, mellis*, n.
honor, *honor, ōris.*
honor, (= the honorable,) *honestas*; (= probity,) *fides, ei.*
honor, *cŏlere.*
hope, *spes, ei.*
hope, *spērare.*
hornet, *crabro, ōnis.*
horse-soldier, *ĕques, equĭtis.*
horse, *equus.*
hour, *hora.*
house, *dōmus, ūs* et *i.*
house, at my, *dōmi meæ.*
how, (with adj.,) *quam.*
how greatly, *quantōpere.*
how many, *quot.*
how much, *quantum.*
how often, *quŏties.*
huge, *ingens, tis.*
human, *humanus.*
humor, *indulgēre*, (dat.)
hunger, *fames, is.*
hungry, to be, *esurire.*
hunt, *vēnari.*
hurry-away, *abrīpere, io*, (*rīpu, rept.*)
hurt, *nŏcēre*, dat.
husband, *vir, viri.*
husbandman, 7, *agricola.*
hypocritically pretend, (= lie,) *mentiri, ior*, (*mentītus.*)

Idle, *otiōsus.*
if—not, *nĭsi.*
ignorant, to be, *ignorare*, acc.
ill-humored, *mōrōsus*, 8.
illuminate, *illuminare, illustrare.*
immense, *ingens, tis*, abl. *i.*
immortal, *immortalis.*
immortality, *immortalitas.*
impede, *impĕdire.*
impel, *impellere.* (*pŭl, pulse.*)
importance, it is of, *interest*, gen. it is of no importance, *nihil interest*; it is of very great importance, *permultum interest*; of how great importance it is, *quanti interest*; it is of great importance, *magni interest.*
in, *in*, (abl.)
inactive, *otiosus.*
inclined, *propensus.*
increase, *augēre*, (*aux, auct,*) trans. *crescere*, (*crēv.*) neut.
incredible, *incredĭbilis.*
indulge in, *indulgēre*, (*dulc, dult,*) dat.
inflict punishment on, *aliquem pœnā afficere.*
inglorious, *inglōrius.*
inhabitant-of-a-town, *oppidānus.*
inhabitant, *incŏla.*
injure, *nocēre*, (dat.)
injury, *injuria.*
innocence, *innocentia.*
innocent, *innocens, tis.*
inquire, *quærere*, (followed by *e*, *ex.*)
instead of, *lŏco*, (abl.)
institute, *instituo*, (*i, tum.*)
instruct, *erudire.*
instrument, *præsidium.*
intellectual cultivation, *ingenii cultus.*
intention, *consilium.*
into, *in*, (acc.)
invade, *bellum inferre*, (*intŭl, illāt,*) with dat. of the country.
invading, *invadens.*
invective, *convicium.*
invite, *vŏcare, invitare.*
irrigate, *irrigare*, (= *inrigare.*)
island, *insŭla.*
Italy, *Italia.*
itself, *ipse, a, um*; G. *ius.*

Jewel, *gemma.*
join battle with, *committere prœlium*, (*cum.*)
joint-king, to be named, 37.
journey, *iter, itinĕris.*
joy, *lætitia.*
joyful, *lætus.*
judge, 12. See p. 134, *judex, icis.*
judge, *vindĭcare.*
just, *mŏdo*, (adv.)
justly, *jure, meritoque.*
Jupiter, *Jupiter*; G. *Jōvis.*

Keep, *servare.*
keep in custody, *in custōdiā tĕnēre.*
keep in their camp, *in castris continēre*, (*ui.*)
keep-off, *arcēre.*
kill, *interficere, occidere, nĕcare.*
kill, *cædere*,
kindness, *benĕvŏlentia*; a kindness, *beneficium.*
kind-of-corn, *frumentum.*
king, *rex, rēgis.*
knife, *culter, tri.*
know, *scire, nōvisse, callēre*: not know, *nescire.*
knowledge, *scientia.*
known, (it is,) *constat.*

Labor, *labor, ōris.*
lake, *lăcus, ūs.*
land, *terra.*
language, *lingua.*
large, *grandis.*
lately, *nuper.*
laugh, *ridēre.*
laugh at, *ridēre, deridēre.*
law, *lex, lēgis.*
lay waste, 9, *vastare.*

lay-siege-to, *obsidēre*, (*obsēd obsess.*)
lead, *dūcere.*
lead a life, *ăgere vitam*, (*ēg, act.*) *dēgere vitam.*
lead away, *abdūcere.*
leader, *dux, dūcis.*
leaf, *folium.*
learn, *discere*, (*didic.*) (of facts, events, &c.,) *compĕrire*, (*comperi;*) *cognoscere*, (*nov. nit.*)
learn by heart, *ediscere.*
learned, *doctus.*
leave, *relinquere*, (*līqu, lict.*)
leave, (= to go out of,) *excēdere*, abl. (*cess.*)
leave a province, *discēdere ex provincid.*
left-hand, *sinistra.*
legion, *legio, ōnis.*
less, *minus.*
lessen, (= soften,) *lenire.*
lest, *ne.*
letter, *litterœ*.[1] pl.: *epistŭla.*
liberty, *libertas, ātis.*
lie, *mentiri.*
lie, *mendacium.*
lie down, *cubare,*
lieutenant-general, *lēgātus.*
life, *vita;* (= lifetime,) *ætas, ātis.*
light, *levis.*
light, (= kindle.) *accendere; succendere*, (*cend, cens.*) Syn. ii.
like, *similis*, dat. *simillimus*, (superl.)
likeness, a, *effigies, ei.*
lion, *leo, ōnis.*
listen to, *obedire*, (dat.,) *obtemperare*, (dat.)
little, *parvus.*
little-garden, a, *hortulus.*
live, *vivere*, (*vix, vict.*)
load, *cumulare.*
long, *longus.*
long, *diu.*
look at, *spectare.*
lose, *āmittere.*
lose an opportunity, *occasionem prætermittere.*
lot, *sors, sortis.*
love, *āmare, diligere*, 7.
lowest, *infimus, imus.*
lust, *libido, inis.*
luxuriant-growth, *luxuria.*
luxury, *luxuria.*
lyre, *lyra.*

Macedonians, *Macĕdŏnes, um.*
machine, *māchina.*
magistracy, *magistratus, ūs.*
magnanimous, *magnanimus.*
make myself master of, *pōtiri*, (*potītus sum,*) abl.
make, *făcere*, (*fēc, fact:*) am made, *fio.*[2]
man, *homo, vir.*
manifest, *manifestus.*
Manlius, *Manlius.*
manners, (= morals, character,) *mŏres, um*, pl.
many, *multi.*
march-up, *adventare.*
mark, *scōpus.*
marriage, *connubium.*
marry, (of a female.) *nubere*, dat.
Marseilles, *Massilia.*
master, (who teaches,) *magister, tri.*
master, (who owns,) *dŏminus.*
mean, *significare;* (= to convey an opinion.) *censēre.*
means, *mŏdus, rătio.*
means, (= *remedial* or *preventive* means,) *remedia*, pl.
means-of-escape, *exĭtus, ūs.*
meaning, *sententia.*
meadow, *prātum.*
measure, *mētiri, ior, mensus.*
meet, *occurrere*, (*occurr, occurs,*) dat.
melt, *liquescere.*
mention, *nuncūpare.* See 10.
Milo, *Milo, Milōnis.*
military-oath, *sacramentum.*
milk, *lac, lactis.*
mind, *animus.*
mine, *meus;* voc. *mi.*
mindful, *mĕmor*, gen.
miserable, *miser, ĕra*, &c.
misfortune, *calamitas; casus, ūs*
miss, *ōmittere. prætermittere.*
mistress, *magistra.*
mix, p. 169, ii., *miscēre.*
mixed, *promiscuus.*
modest, *pudicus.*
money, *pecunia.*
moneyed, *pecuniōsus*, 7.
month, *mensis*, m.
monument, *monumentum.*
moon, *luna.*
morals, *mŏres*, um.
more, *plus*, with gen.:[3] even more, *etiam plura.*
more, (adv.,) *magis.*
morose, *morōsus*, 8.
mortal, *mortālis.*
most men, *plerique.*
motion, *motus, ūs.*
mother, *māt-er, ris.*
mount, *ad-scendĕre*, (*scend, scens.*) (See 12.)
mountain, *mons, ntis*, m.
move, *mŏvēre*, (*mōv, mōt:*) move, neut. *mŏvēri.*
move with compassion, *commŏvēre*, (*mōv, mōt.*)

---

[1] *Litterœ* may also be used for *letters.*
[2] Ex. 26, Part II.: 'to make friends *of* enemies,' *ex* inimicis amicos facere.
[3] That is, if *quantity* is meant: if number, *plures, a*, &c., in agreement. 'More gold,' *plus auri:* 'more roses,' *plures rosæ*

much, (= *many* things,) *multa.*
much, *multum,* (followed by subst. in gen.)
much, (before comparative,) *multo,* abl.
multitude, *multitudo, inis.*
my, *meus,* (V. in. *mi.*)
myself, (nom.,) *ipse, a, um.*

Nail, *clavus.*
naked, *nudus.*
name, *nominare,* (also = to appoint.)
(subst.,) *nomen, inis.*
Naples, *Neapŏlis,* acc. *im.*
nations, *populi.*
nature, *natura.*
near, *prope,* acc.
nearest, *proximus.*
nearly, *prope, pæne.*
need, *egēre. indigēre.*
need, there is, *opus est.*
neglect, *negligere,* (*neglex, neglect.*)
neigh, *hinnire.*
neighbor, your, *proximus tuus.*[1]
neighboring, *vicinus.*
neither—nor, { *neque—neque.* / *nec—nec.*
nest, *nīdus.*
never, *nunquam.*
nevertheless, *tamen.*
new, *nŏvus.*
next, *proximus.*
night, *nox, noctis.*
ninety-first, *nonagesimus primus.*
no. *nullus;* after *ne, quis.*
nobody, *nemo. inis.*
no one, *nĕmo, inis.*
no time, *nihil tempŏris.*
no where, { *nusquam.* / no whither, }
no wiser, *nihilo sapientior.*
not, *non.*
not, (in questions,) *nonne?*
not yet, *nondum.*
not even, *ne—quidem.*
not only—but also. { *non solum—verum etiam.* / *non modo—sed etiam.*
not at all, *nihil.*
nothing, *nihil.*
now, *nunc.*
number, *numerus;* (= multitude,) *multitudo, inis.*

Oak, *quercus, ûs.*
obedience, *obsequium.*
obey, *pārēre, obēdire, obtemperare,* dat.
oblige, *satis-facere,* dat.
oblige, *favēre,* p. 170, viii.
obolus, *ŏbŏlus.*
observe, *observare.*
observe moderation, *modestiam retinēre.*
obtain, *părare.*
ocean, *oceanus.*
of, after 'become,' 'deserve well,' &c., 'am persuaded,' and when = concerning, *de.*
of, after, 'inquire,' *ex.*
of others, *alienus, a, um.*
offend against, *violare.*
offend, *offendere,* (*fend, fens,*) acc.
offer, *offerre,* (*obtŭl, oblāt.*) See advantage.
offering-of-atonement, *piāculum.*
often, *sæpe.*
oil, *oleum.*
old, *vĕtus, vetĕris,* n. pl. *vetera.*
old man, *sĕnex,* G. *senis,* G. pl. *um.*
old age, *senectus, ūtis.*
on, *super;* after '*live,*' sign of abl.
on the Black Sea, *ad Pontum Euxinum.*
on high, 16, ii., *sublīme.*
on all sides, *undique.*
one, *unus.*
one, (of two,) *alter,* G. *ius.*
one's, *suus.*
only, adj. *sōlus,* G. *ius.*
open, 13, (Voc. on perf. *si,*) *detĕgere, aperire.*
opportunity, *occasio, ōnis.*
opponent, *adversarius.*
oppose, *repugnare,* dat.; *obstare,* (dat.)
oppress, *opprimere,* (*press, press.*)
oppressor, *oppressor, ōris.*
or, *aut, vel, ve,* (in questions *an.*)
oracle, *oraculum.*
orator, *orātor, ōris.*
order, *ordo, inis,* m.
order, *jubēre,* (*juss,*) acc. with inf.
ornament, *ornare.*
others, *ălii;* the other, (of two,) *alter.*
ought, *ŏportet.* See p. 296.
our, *nost-er, ra, rum.*
out of, *e. ex, extra.*
overthrow, (a plan, &c.,) *lābēfactare.*
over, *super,* (prep.)
owe, *debēre.*
own, (emphatic,) *ipsius* or *ipsōrum,* after *meus, tuus,* &c.

Pain, *dolor, ōris.*
paint, *pingere.*
palace, *domus,*
palm, *palma.*
pardon, *ignoscere,* (*nōv,*) dat.; (of a *superior,*) *veniam dare.*
parent, *parens, tis.*
part, *pars, partis.*
passion, *animus;* (= anger,) *ira.*
path, *via.*
patrician, *patricius.*
pavement, *pavimentum.*
peace, *pax, pācis.*

[1] This word, though given by Grotefend, is not a classical word in this sense. Translate 'love thy neighbor,' by 'love *other* men,' '*alios.*'

peevish, *morōsus*, 8.
Peleus, *Pēleus*, G. *ĕi*.
people, *pŏpŭlus*.
perceive, *intellĭgere*, (*lex*, *lect*.)
perform (a service, promise, &c.,) *præstare*, (*stĭt*, *stat*.)
perform, *fungi*, *perfungi*, (*funct*.)
permitted, it is, *licet*.
permitted, I am, *licet mihi*.[1]
persevere, *perseverare*.
Persian, *Persa*.
persist, *persĕverare*.
person, (= man,) to be generally untranslated.
persuade, (= advise effectually,) *persuadēre*, *suāsi*, dat.; followed by *ut*.
Phædon, *ōnis*, one of Plato's dialogues.
Philip, *Philippus*.
philosopher, *philosŏphus*.
philosophy, *philosophia*.
physician, *mĕdicus*.
picture, *tabula*.
piety, *pietas*, *ātis*.
pilot, *gubernator*.
pity, *miserēri*, gen.
place, *pōnere*, (*posŭi*, *posĭt*.
place, (guards, &c.,) *dispōnere*, (*posŭi*, *posĭt*.)
place in a higher rank, *altiōri lŏco constituere*, (*stĭtŭi*, *stĭtūt*.)
plague, *pestis*.
plain, *manifestus*.
plan, *consĭlium*.
plant, *sĕrere*.
Plato, *Plāto*, G. *ōnis*.
play, *ludere*, (*lūs*.)
pleasant, *jucundus*.
please, *plăcēre*, dat.
pleasing, to be, *placēre*.
to be pleased, *oblectari*.
pleasure, *voluptas*, *ātis*.
to give pleasure, *voluptate afficere*, (*fēci*, *fect*,) with acc. of person.
plebeian, *plebeius*.
plot, *insidiari*.
plough, *ărare*.
pluck, *de-cerpere*, 13; *carpere*.
Pœcile, G. *es*, Acc. *en*.
poet, *poeta*.
point out, *monstrare*.
poison, *venēnum*.
Pompey, *Pompejus*.
poor, *pauper*, *ĕris*.
portico, *porticus*, *ūs*.
portion, *pars*, *partis*.
possess, *possidēre*, (*possēd*, *possess*.)
posterity, *posteritas*; or the pl. *postĕri*.
power, (= ability,) *facultas*, (41.)
power, *potentia*, of actual; *potestas*, of legal, conceded, &c., power.
powerful, *pŏtens*; (of words,) *gravis*.
powers of the mind, *animi vīres*.
practise, *exercēre*, (*ui*, *itum*.)
practise, (= exercise,) *exercēre*.
Prætor, *Prætor*, *ōris*, a Roman magistrate.
prætorship, *prætūra*.
praise, *laus*, *laudis*.
praise, to, *laudare*.
pray, (= beg earnestly,) *orare*.
pray the gods, *a diis prĕcari*.
prayers, *prĕces*, *um*.
precept, 7, *præceptum*.
preceptor, 7, *præceptor*, *ōris*.
prefer, *antepōnere*, (*pŏsŭi*, *pŏsĭt*.)
prepare, *părare*.
present an appearance, *speciem præbēre*.
present (with,) *donare*, S. 109, 110.
preserve, *conservare*; (= retain,) *retinēre*.
press, (= urge,) *instare*, *instĭti*.
pretend, *simulare*.
pretence, *simŭlatio*, *ōnis*.
prevail-upon, *exorare*.
prevent, *prohibēre*, (*ui*, *itum*;) (= prevent, as an obstacle interposed,) *obstare*, *obstĭti*, with dat.; to be prevented by business, *negotiis distineri*.
priest, priestess, *sacerdos*, *ōtis*.
prince, *princeps*, *princĭpis*.
prison, *carcer*, *ĕris*.
privilege, *jus*, *juris*.
prize, *præmium*.
proclaim, *prædicare*.
proclaim, *edīcere*; (a war,) *indicere*, (*dix*, *dict*.)
procure, *parare*.
profitable, *utilis*.
promise, *promissum*.
promise, *polliceri*, (*licĭt*;) *promittere*, (the former of *free*, *gracious* promises.)
property, *bona*, (good.)
proposal, (of a law,) *rogatio*.
prop-up, *fulcire*, (*fulsi*, *fult*.)
protect, (= guard a house, &c.,) *custodire*.
protect, (= foster, encourage,) *fovēre*, (*fovi*, *fōt*.)
proud, *superbus*.
proudly, *superbe*.
prove, *probare*.
prove myself, *præstare me*.
provided, *modo* or *dummodo*.[2]
prudence, 17, *prudentia*.
Punic, *Punicus*, (i. e. *Carthaginian*.)
punish, *punire*, or *pœnd afficere*.
punishment, *pœna*.
pull down, *evertere*.
pupil, *discipulus*.
purchase, 8, *emptio*, *ōnis*.
pure, *castus*.
purpose, for the, *causā*.

[1] The pronoun is generally omitted, if it is plain who are meant.
[2] With subj.—'*not*' after '*provided*' is *nē*.

put-after, *posthābēre*, (*aliquid alicui.*)
put-an-end-to, 12, ii., *conficere.*
put-on, *induere.*
Pyrrhus, *Pyrrhus.*

Queen, *regīna.*
quench, *restinguere*, (*stinx, stinct;*) *pellere.*
question, *interrogatio.*
Quirites, G. *ium.*

Race, *genus, ĕris.*
rage, *sævire, sævii.*
raise, (= excite,) *excĭtare.*
rank, *locus.*
rape, *raptus, ūs.*
reach, (= arrive at,) *pervĕnire*, (the place to be governed by *ad.*)
read, *legere*, (*lĕg, lect;*) (= read through,) *perlegere.*
readily, *făcile.*
reason, *ratio, ōnis.*
recall, *rĕvŏcare.*
receive, *accipĕre*, (*cĕp, cept.*)
reckon, *numerare, ducere.*
recognise, *agnoscere*, (*agnovi, agnĭtum.*)
recollect, *reminisci.*
reconciled to be, *in gratiam redire* (*cum.*)
refuse, *recusare.*
reign, *regnare.*
rejoice, *gaudēre*, (*gavīsus sum.*)
relate, *narrare.*
relations, *cognati.*
relying on, *frētus*, (abl.)
remain, *mānēre*, (*mans, mans;*) to remain in the same mind, *in eodem animo perstare.*
remember, *memĭnisse*, (Imper. *memento;*) *recordari, reminisci.*
remains, it, *restat*, (*ut.*)
remains, the, *rĕliquiæ.*
remedy, *remēdium.*
remind, *admonēre*, Gen. of the thing; or *de* with abl.
remove, (intrans,) *migrare.*
render, *reddere*, (*dĭd, dĭt.*)
renew, *renŏvare.*
repent, I, *me pœnitet*, gen.
reply, *re-spondēre*, (*spond, spons.*)
represent, *fingere*, (*finx.*)
reproach, *reprehendēre, vituperare.*
reproof, *reprehensio, ōnis.*
request, *rogare.*
require, *ĕgēre, indĭgēre*, (gen., abl.)
reside, *habitare.*
resignation, *æquus animus.*
resignation, the greatest, *æquissimus animus.*
resolve, (= decree) *decernere*, (*crēv, cret.*)
resound, *resonare, ui, itum.*
rest, *quiescere.*
rest, the, *ceteri, æ, a.*
rest of, adj. *reliquus.*
rest, to be at, *quiescere*,
restore, *restituere, ui, ūtum.*[1]
restrain, *coercēre;* (= tame, subdue,) *dŏmare, ui, itum.*
retain, *retinēre*, (*ui, itum.*)
return, *redire, reverti*, (45.)
return, tŏ give a prosperous, *reditum secundare;* dat. of person.
revenge, *ulcisci*, (*ultus.*)
revile, *maledicere*, dat.
revive, *reviviscere.*
rewarded, to be, *ornari.*
Rhine, *Rhenus.*
Rhone, *Rhōdănus.*
rich, *dives, ĭtis.*
riches, *divitiæ.*
right, *rectus*, (= rightly,) *recte.*
right, *jus, juris.*
right-hand, *dextra.*
ripe, to make, } 28, ii., *cŏquere.*
ripen, (trans.) }
rise, *oriri, ior*, (*ort.*)
river, *amnis, flumen, ĭnis.*
road, *via;* on the road, *in viâ.*
rob, *spoliare*, (abl.)
rock, *saxum.*
roof, 9, *tectum.*
Rome, *Roma.*
Roman, *Romānus.*
roost, (go to,) *cubitum*, (*ire.*)
rope, *funis*, m.
rose, *rosa.*
round, *circum, circa.*
rouse up, *excĭtare.*
rub, p. 169, ii., *frĭcare*, (*fricui.*)
Rubicon, *Rūbicon, ōnis.*
ruin, *perdere*, (*dĭd, dĭt.*)
rule, *regŭla.*
rule, *rĕgere*, (*rexi, rectum.*)
run, *currere*, (*cucurri, cursum.*)

Sabines, *Sabīni.*
sacrifice, *immŏlare.*
safe, *tutus.*
safety, *sālus, ūtis.*
sail, *navigare.*
sailor, *nauta.*
salt-water, *aqua marīna.*
sake, for the—of, *causâ.*
Salamis, *Salāminis*, Acc. *Salamīna.*
same, *ĭdem.*
Sardis, *Sardes, ium*, pl.
Saturn, *Saturnus.*
satisfy, *satisfacere.* dat., (*satisfacio;*) (with food,) *satiare.*
save, *servare.*
say, *dicere.*
says he, *inquit.*

[1] '*To*' after '*restore*' is to be translated by '*in*' with the acc., in such expressions as, 'to be restored *to* a rank,' &c.

scarcely, *vix*.
scatter, *spargere*.
sceptre, *sceptrum*.
sciences, *artes ; disciplinæ ; literæ*.
Scipio, *Scipio, ōnis*.
scold, *increpare*, (dat.,)
sculptor, *statuarius*.
Scythian, *Scytha, æ*.
sea, *mare ;* by sea and land, *terrâ marique ;* Black Sea, *Pontus Euxīnus*.
search-for, *conquirere*, (p.)
season, *tempestas, ātis*.
seasoning, *condimentum*.
second, *alter*.
second, *sĕcundus*.
secret, *secrētum, arcanum*.
see, *vidēre ;* (= distinguish ; have the sense of sight,) *cernere ;* to be seen (of objects becoming visible,) *conspici*, (*conspect.*)
see that you don't, *vide nē*, with subj.
seed, *sēmen, ĭnis*.[1]
seek, } *quærere*, (*quæsīv, quæsit.*)
seek-out, }
seem, *vidēri*, (*vis.*)
seize, *căpere*, (*cēp, capt,*) *arrīpere*.
sell, *vendere*, (*vendidi, venditum.*)
send, *mittere*.
sensible, *prudens, tis*.
sensible people, *sāni*.
senate, *senātus, ūs*.
senseless, *imprudens*.
service, *officium*.
service, on, *militiæ*.
set, 11. [Voc. on perf. *i*, p. 267.]
set out, *proficisci*, (*fect.*)
several, *plures*.
shake *quătere*.
share, (intrans.,) *communĭter hăbēre*.
share, *communicare*, (33. *cum.*)
sharpen, p. 173, vi., *acuere*.
shear, *tondēre*, (*totondi, tonsum.*)
shed, *profundere*, (*fūd, fūs.*)
sheep, *ŏvis*.
shepherd, *pastor, ōris*.
shield, *clipeus*.
shine, *fulgēre*.
ship, *nāvis*, abl. *e* or *i*.
shoot, *flagellum*.
shoot, (= hurl,) *conjĭcere*, (*jēc, ject.*)
shoot-up, (of plants,) *emergere super* or *extra terram : efflorescere*.
shore, *lit-us, ōris*.
short, *brĕvis*.
shoulder, *humĕrus*.
should, (= ought,) *debēre, ŏportet*.
show myself (brave,) *præbēre*.
shut, *claudere*.
side, *lātus, ĕris*.
sight, *aspectus, ūs*.
silent, to be, *silēre, tăcēre*.
silver, *argentum*.
simple, *simplex, ĭcis*.
sin, *peccare*.
since, *quum, quŏniam*.
sincere, *sincērus*.
sing, *cănere*, (*cĕcĭn, cant*)—*cantare*.
sister, *soror, ōris*.
sit, p. 170, vii., *sĕdēre*.
site, *lŏcus*, (pl. *loci* et *loca.*)
sixty, *sexaginta*.
skilled in, *perītus*, (gen.)
skin, *pellis, is*.
slave, *servus*.
slave, to be the, *servire*, dat.
slay, *occīdere*, (*cīd, cīs.*) See 11.
sleep, *somnus*.
sleep, *dormire*.
slow, *tardus*.
slip away, *elābi*.
slothful, *ignavus*.
small, *parvus*.
snatch, *eripere*, (*rīpu, rept,*) with dat.
snake, *anguis, is*,
snow, *nix, nivis*.
so, (= to such a degree,) *ădeo ;* (= in such a manner,) *ita*.
so-great, *tantus*.
so-many, *tot*.
so often, *tōties*.
Socrates, *Socrātes, is*.
soft, *mollis*.
soldier, *miles, ĭtis*.
some, *aliquis, quispiam*.
some—others, *alii—alii*.
some, (when the persons are *known*, but it is not necessary to name them,) *quīdam*.
sometimes, *nonnunquam*.
something, *aliquid*.
somewhat ; omit, and put adj. in comparative.
son, *filius*.
song, *cantilēna*.
soon, *cito*.
sorely, (= violently,) *vehĕmenter*.
sorrow, *dŏlor, ōris*.
soul, *anĭmus, anima*.
sound, *sŏnus*.
sow, *sĕrĕre*, (*sēv, sāt.*)
spare, *parcere*, (*peperc,*) dat.
speak, *lŏqui*, (*locut.*)
speak the truth, *vērum dicere*.
spear, *hasta*.
speech, *oratio*.
spend, (life, time, &c.,) *agere*, (*ēg, act ;*) *impendere*, (dat.)
spend, (wastefully,) *con-sumĕre*.
spin, *nēre*.
spirit, *animus*.
spring, *ver, vēris*.
sprinkle, *ad-spergere*, (*spers, spers.*)
stake, to be at, *ăgi*, pass.
stand, *stāre*.

---

[1] In Ex. 28 translate *seed* by *seges*, the *seed* sown, the *young crop*, or *crop*.

stand by promises, *stare promissis.*
standard, *signum.*
star, *stella.*
state, *civitas; urbs, urbis,* (if a city;) (= condition,) *stātus, ūs.*
steer, *dirigĕre,* (*rex, rect.*)
steersman, *gubernator.*
stern, *puppis;* at the stern, *in puppi*
still, (before comparatives,) *etiam.*
Stolo, *Stolo, ōnis.*
stone, *lāpis, lapidis.*
storm, *tempestas, ātis; procella.*
storms of war, the, *belli tumultus.*
strange, (= surprising,) *mīrus.*
strength, *vires, ium; robur, ŏris.*
strengthen, *firmare.*
strengthen, *corroborare.*
strive, *nīti, enīti.* (*nīsus, nixus.*)
stupid, *hebes, ētis.*
subdue, *sub-igere,* (*ĕg, act:*) *domare, ui, itum,* (50.)
succeed, (= follow,) *excīpere,* (*cēp, cept,*) acc.; *succedere,* (*successi.*) dat.
successive—omit this word and govern '*years*' by '*per.*'
such, *talis;* (= so great,) *tantus.*
suddenly, *subito.*
suffer, *sinere.* (*siv;*) *pāti,* (*passus.*)
suitable, *idōneus.*
sum of money, *pecunia.*
summer, *æstas, ātis.*
sun, *sol, solis.*
superstition, *superstitio, ōnis.*
support, (= nourish,) *ălere,* (*ălu, alit* or *alt.*)
support, (= assist, allies, &c.,) *auxilium ferre,* (dat.)
surprised, to be, *mīrari,* (dep.)
surround, (p. 168, i.) *circumdăre,* (*dĕd, dăt;*)[1] *cingere.*
surround, (of enemies, &c.,) *circumvenire.*
swallow, *hirundo, dĭnis.*
swallow-up, *devŏrare.*
sway, *regnare.*
swear, *jurare.*
sweet, *dulcis.*
swift, *vēlox, ōcis.*
swim, *nare, natare.*
sword, *ensis,* m.; *gladius.*
Syracuse, *Syracūsæ, ārum.*

Table, *mensa.*
take, *căpere,* (*cēp, capt;*) *sumere,* (*sums, sumpt.*)
take, *expugnare.*
take away, *eximere,* (*ĕm, empt;*) *erīpere,* (by violence.)
take away my life, *vitam* mihi *erīpere.*
take pride, *gloriari,* (abl.)
take care, *cāvēre,* (*cav, caut.*)
take care of, *curare.*
take care that, *vide,* (*nē.*)
taking, (of a city,) *expugnatio,* 8.
tale, *fabŭla.*
tame, p. 169, ii., *domare,* (*domui.*)
task, (= work, labor,) *opus, operis:* (= task set to pupils,) *pensum.*
Tarentine, *Tarentinus,* 9.
teach, *docēre,* 2 acc.
teacher, *magister, præceptor.*
teaching, *præcepta,* pl.
tear, *lacrima.*
tear-to-pieces, *dilāniare.*
tell, *dicere;* (of tales, &c., related,) *narrare.*
temper, *animus.*
temple, *templum.*
terrify, *terrēre.*
that, (after doubt, deny, &c., with neg.,) *quin.*
that, (after fear,) *ne;* that—not, *ut.*
that, *ille, a, ud.*
that, *ut.*
that—not, *nē.*
that-of-yours, *iste, a, ud.*
the more—the more, *quo—eo.*
Thebes, *Thebæ, ārum.*
theft, *furtum.*
then, (= at that time,) *tum.*
then, (= after,) *deinde, inde.*
their, *suus.*
there, *ibi.*[2]
thereof, (= of it, of them, &c.,) *ejus, eorum, &c.*
Thetis, *Thĕtis, ĭdos.*
think, *putare.*
think, (= think of doing, purpose, &c.,) *cōgitare.*
thing, *res, ei.*
thirst, *sitis, is.*
thirsty, to be, *sitīre.*
this, *hic,* (*hæc, hoc.*)
thorn, 13, *aculeus.*
those who, *qui.*[3]
thoughtlessly, *tēmĕre.*
thoughtlessness, *temeritas, ātis.*
thoughts, *sententiæ.*
thread, *filum.*
threaten, *minari;* (of dangers,) *immĭnere,* (dat.)
three, *tres.*
three days ago, *nūdius-tertius,* (= *nunc dies tertius.*)
three hundred and seventy-eighth, (*annus*) *trecentesimus septuagesimus octavus.*
three hundred and tenth, *trecentesimus decimus.*
through, *per,* expressing the cause, sign of abl.

---

[1] Urbem muro, *or* murum urbi.
[2] '*There,*' before *is, are, were,* &c., is to be left untranslated.
[3] Properly *ii qui,* but the *ii* is generally omitted.

thunder, to, *tŏnare*, p. 169.
thunderbolt, *fulmen, ĭnis.*
Tiber, *Tibĕris, is*, acc. *im.*
tiger, *tigris, ĭdis*, f.
till, *cŏlere*, (*colu, cult.*)
till, *donec*, (subj.)
time, *tempus, tempŏris ;* in a short time, *brĕvi tempŏre.*
time, at the right, *in tempŏre.*
timid, *timĭdus, pavĭdus.*
tired, am—of, *tædet me*, gen.
to bed, *cubitum*, (sup. of *cubare.*)
to day, *hodie.*
to death, (after condemn,) *capitis.*
to the city, (after return,) *in urbem.*
together, (after to compare,) *inter se.*
too much, *nimius*, (*nimius somnus*, or *nimium somni.*
too late, *sĕro.*
top of, *summus.*
torch, *tæda.*
torment, *cruciare.*
totter, *labare.*
touch, *tangere.*
towards, *erga*, acc. ; *in*, acc. ; *adversus.*
town, *oppĭdum.*
Trasimene lake, *lăcus Trasimēnus.*
treasure, *thesaurus ; ŏpes*, (pl. ;) G. *opum.*
treachery, *proditio, ōnis.*
treat, *tractare.*
treaty, *fœdus, ĕris.*
tree, *arbor, ŏris.*
tribunal, *tribūnal.*
tribune, *tribūnus.*
tribune of the people, *tribunus plebis.*
trick, *dolus.*
triumph, *triumphus.*
Trojan ;—in the Trojan war, *bello Trojano.*
troops, *copiæ, milites.*
troublesome, *molestus.*
Troy, *Trōja.*
true, *vērus.*
truly, *vĕre.*
trust, (= believe, have confidence in,) *credere*, (dat.)
truth, the, *verum.*
turn out, *evadere*, (*vas.*)
tussilago, G. *ĭnis.*
twice, *bis.*
two apiece, *bīni.*
tyrant, *tyrannus.*

Umpire, *arbĭter, tri.*
unbecoming, it is, *dedĕcet*, acc.
uncertain, *incertus.*
uncover, *aperire, detĕgere.*
understand, *intelligere*, (*lex, lect.*)
undertake, *suscipere*, (*cĕp, cept.*)
undertaking, *inceptum*, 8.
undertaking, an, 8, *inceptum.*
unfeeling, *durus.*
unfortunate, *miser*, (*era, erum.*)
unheard, *inaudītus.*
unjustly, *injuste.*
unlearned, *indoctus.*
unless, *nisi.*
unlike, *dissĭmilis*, dat.
unmindful, *immĕmor*, gen.
unnecessary, *supervăcuus.*
unprofitable, *inutilis.*
unskilled in, *imperītus*, gen.
unwilling, *invītus.*
unwilling, to be, *nolle.*
unworthy, *indignus*, abl.
upper, *summus.*
upright, *hŏnestus.*
use, *uti*, (*usus,*) abl.
useful, *utilis.*
useless, *inutilis.*
usual, *suetus.*

Valley, *vallis*
valuable, *pretiosus.*
value, (= value highly,) *magni æstimare*, (not *æstimare* only ;) of persons, *dilĭgere.*
vanity, *vanitas, ātis.*
vapor, *vapor, ōris.*
various, *vārius.*
vary, *vāriare.*
vast, *ingens, ntis.*
verse, *versus, ūs.*
very-confined, *per-angustus.*
vessel, *navis, is.*
vice, *vitium.*
victim, *victĭma.*
victory, *victoria.*
vie, *certare.*
vile, *turpis.*
violence, *vis*, (— *vim, vi ;*) pl. *vīres.*
violent, *vehemens, ntis.*
violently-carry-off, *crĭpere*, (*crĭpui, creptus.*)
virtue, *virtūs, virtūtis.*
virtuous, *hŏnestus.*
voice, *vox, vōcis.*

Wage, *gerere*, (*gess, gest.*)
wait, *manēre, exspectare.*
wait for, *opperiri.*
walk, *ambulare.*
wall, *murus ;* (of a walled city,) *mœnia*, pl. ; (of a house,) *paries, ĕtis ;* (of a garden, &c.,) *maceria :* on the walls, *per muros.*
want, *carēre*, (abl.)
want, *inopia.*
war, *bellum.*
ward off, *arcēre.*
warm, *tĕpēre.*
warm, *călĭdus.*
warn, *mŏnēre.*
warrior, *mīl-es, ĭtis.*
wasp, *vespa.*
watch-over, *custōdīre.*
water, *aqua.*
wave, *fluctus.*
way, *via.*

waylay, to, *insidiis struere*, (*struxi*, *structum*.) With dat. of person.
weak, *imbecillus*.
wealth, *opes*, *opum*.
weary, an, *tædet me*, gen.
weather, *tempestas*.
weight, *onus*, *eris*.
well, *bene*; (= rightly,) *recte*.
well-known, it is, *constat*.
what? (interrog.,) *quis*, *quæ*, *quid*, (but what? (interrog.,) with a subst., *quod*.)
if it agrees with a subst., *quantus*.
what, (meaning how great,) *quantus*.
whatever, *quicquid*, neut. as subst.; *quicunque*, adj.
when, *quum*, *quando*, (*quum* not in dependent sentences.)
whence, *unde*.
where, *ubi*.
which, (of two,) *uter*.
white, *albus*.
whither, *quo*.
who? *quis*?
whole, *totus*.
wholesome, *salúber*.
why, *cur*.
wickedness, *nequitia*: wicked, *málus*, *improbus*.
wife, *mulier*, *ĕris*.
wild, (of cries, &c.,) *atroz*, *ōcis*.
wild-beast, *fera*, (*bestia* understood.)
will, *voluntas*, *ātis*.
willing, to be, *velle*.
willingly, *libenter*.
win-by-arms, *ex-pugnare*, 8.
win, (a country by arms,) *expugnare*.
wine, *vinum*.
winter, *hiems*, *hiēmis*.
wisdom, *sapientia*.
wise, *sapiens*, *tis*.
wish, (= choose, have a mind,) *velle*
wish, *cupĕre*,
with, *cum*, (abl.)
with me, *apud me*.
without, *sine*, (abl.,) *extra*.
withhold, *arcēre*.
withstand, *sustinēre*, (*sustinui*, *sustentum*.)
wolf, *lupus*.
wonder, *mirari*.
wonderful, *mirus*.
wont, to be, *solēre*, (*solitus sum*.)
wood, *silva*; the Teutoburgian wood, *saltus Teutoburgensis*, (*saltus*; G. 4.)
wool, *lana*.
word, *verbum*.
work, *ŏpus*, *ĕris*,
world, *mundus*; *orbis terrarum*.[1]
worship, *cōlere*,
worse, *pejor*.
worst, *pessimus*.
worthy, *dignus*, abl.
would that, *utinam*.
wound, *vulnus*, *ĕris*.
wrath, *ira*.
write, *scribere*.
writing, a, *scriptum*.
wrong, *violare*.

Year, *annus*.
yesterday, *hĕri*.
young man, *adolescens*, *tis*.
young, (bird,) *pullus*.

Zama, *Zama*; G. 8.

[1] *Orbis terrarum*, when it is considered as made up of various lands or nations: hence it should be used when we speak of *subduing the world*.

THE END.

A LIST

OF

NEW AND IMPROVED

EDUCATIONAL WORKS,

EXTENSIVELY ADOPTED AS

TEXT BOOKS

IN

VARIOUS COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS;

INCLUDING

M. Ollendorff's New Method

OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK

THE FRENCH, SPANISH, ITALIAN, AND GERMAN LANGUAGES;

AND

ARNOLD'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

PUBLISHED BY

D APPLETON & CO., 200 BROADWAY, N. Y.

AND

GEO. S. APPLETON, 148 CHESNUT-ST., PHILA.

1848.

I.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD
OF
LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,

With an Appendix, containing the Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers, and full Paradigms of the Regular and Irregular, Auxiliary, Reflective, and Impersonal Verbs.

By J. L. JEWETT. One Volume, 12mo. $1.

II.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD
OF
LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE SPANISH LANGUAGE.

With an Appendix, containing a brief, but comprehensive Recapitulation of the Rules, as well as of all the Verbs, both Regular and Irregular, so as to render their use easy and familiar to the most ordinary capacity.

TOGETHER WITH

PRACTICAL RULES FOR SPANISH PRONUNCIATION, AND MODELS OF SOCIAL AND COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENCE.

The whole designed for young learners and persons who are their own instructors.

By M. VELASQUEZ and T. SIMONNE, Prof. of the Spanish and French Languages.
One Volume, 12mo. of 560 pages. Price $1 50.

III.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD
OF
LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

Reprinted from the Frankfort edition, to which is added a Systematic Outline of the different Parts of Speech, their Inflection and Use, with full Paradigms, and a complete List of the Irregular Verbs.

By GEORGE J. ADLER, A. B., Prof. of German in the University of the City of New-York. One Volume, 12mo. $1 50.

IV.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD
OF
LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE.

With Additions and Corrections by FELIX FORESTI, Prof. of the Italian Language in Columbia College, New-York City. One Volume, 12mo. $1 50.

In separate Volumes, uniform with the Grammars,

A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

Price 75 cents each.

CRITICAL OPINIONS ON

M. OLLENDORFF'S METHOD OF LEARNING

The French, German, Spanish, and Italian Languages.

In an article in the "*Methodist Quarterly Review*," entitled Modes of Teaching Languages, after describing the various modes of Teaching, it goes on to state:—

"Some ten years ago, it seems, Captain Basil Hall, of famous memory, first found out how to earn German. He had tried it again and again, but always found it impracticable until he stumbled on Herr OLLENDORFF, who was teaching German at the time in Paris, and who led him along not by the nose, but by the mouth, most gently and delectably, into a sufficient knowledge of that noblest of modern tongues. As the captain has always been distinguished for his gratitude, he repaid the skilful teacher a hundredfold, by a puff in 'Schloss Hainfeld,' that made him at once a man of notoriety and fortune.

"'After six months of close application, I can venture to pronounce, that by Mr. Ollendorff's method alone, so far as I have been able to understand the subject, can this very difficult, but very charming language be taught without confusion. By it the scholar advances step by step, understands clearly and thoroughly every thing he reads, and as he goes on, he becomes sensible that all he learns he retains, and all that he retains is useful and practically applicable. At the same time, he scarcely knows how he got hold of it, so slightly marked are the shades of daily progression; and so gentle is the rise, that he feels no unpleasant fatigue on the journey. Of course, the student is called upon to exert no small degree of patient application, and he must consent to devote a considerable portion of his time to this pursuit; but he will have the encouraging conviction, that every particle of effort is well bestowed.'

"Every body in Paris began to learn German *a la mode d' Ollendorff*, and in all German towns you might find Englishmen and Frenchmen thumbing the 'New Method,' and repeating its thousand phrases with commendable perseverance. In 1838 the system was introduced into England by the publication of the 'New Method of learning to read, write, and speak a Language in Six Months, *for the Use of Schools and Private Teachers*;' and although the complete work extended to three octavo volumes, and was sold at an enormous price,* it soon acquired a great circulation. We have before us the fourth edition. Nor was the reputation of the work confined to Europe; many copies were imported into this country, and of late the demand has been so great, that an American edition has been brought out in excellent style by the Messrs. Appletons, with the addition of a clear 'Systematic Outline of German Grammar,' prepared by Mr. Adler, of the University of New-York. Nor has this success been by any means undeserved: the book certainly goes further in smoothing the rugged road to German than any other book extant; and that too, not by attempting to dispense with the industry of the pupil, but by making all his industry profitable.

"It takes all that is good in the Hamiltonian method, by giving the words to be used at once to the student, and not sending him to the Dictionary to hunt them out; and it involves Jacotot's best principle of fixing the forms of the language by constant repetition, and supplying grammatical principles only as they are required. These are its chief excellences, and they are essential to any good system. The book, especially with Mr. Adler's appendix, is infinitely better adapted for use as an introduction to the German language than any other that we know of, and we hope it will obtain a wide circulation."

* "Teaching is worse paid than any other kind of labour; but it seems that when any particular teacher becomes the *rage*, he takes revenge on the public, and 'puts money in his purse.' We see from an advertisement at the end of Herr Ollendorff's second volume, that he teaches German in London at the pleasant price of £12 12*s.* sterling per quarter!"

New Orleans Commercial Times.

"Mr. OLLENDORFF's new method of teaching languages—a method founded upon an analytical system, which simplifies and connects information, and proceeds by gradations from the easy to the difficult—has found more favour among teachers than any previous system. It has been applied with the utmost success, and has elicited the approbation of the best minds in the country. The system is one which it requires the patient study of a German to elaborate, but when once framed, its results are practical, complete, and speedy of attainment. We have known an intelligent person will master the intricacies of the French tongue, by the assistance of this system, in the time it would require to wade through the interminable exercis

Critical Opinions on Ollendorff's Method of Learning Languages.

CONTINUED.

New-York Commercial Advertiser.

"NEW METHOD OF LEARNING THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.—This grammar must supersede all others now used for instruction in the French language. Its conception and arrangement are admirable,—the work evidently of a mind familiar with the deficiencies of the systems, the place of which it is designed to supply. In all the works of the kind that have fallen under our notice, there has been so much left unexplained or obscure, and so many things have been omitted—trifles, perhaps, in the estimation of the author, but the cause of great embarrassment to the learner—that they have been comparatively valueless as self-instructors. The student, deceived by their specious pretensions, has not proceeded far before he has felt himself in a condition similar to that of a mariner who should put out to sea without a compass to direct him. He has encountered difficulty after difficulty, to which his grammar afforded no clue; when, disappointed and discouraged, he has either abandoned the study in disgust or if his means permitted, has resorted to a teacher to accomplish what it was not in his power to effect by the aid of his 'self-instructor.'

"Ollendorff has passed his roller over the whole field of French instruction, and the rugged inequalities formerly to be encountered no longer discourage the learner. What were the difficulties of the language, are here mastered in succession; and the only surprise of the student, as he passes from lesson to lesson, is, that he meets none of these 'lions in the way.'

"The value of the work has been greatly enhanced by a careful revision, and the addition of an appendix containing matter essential to its completeness either as a book for the use of teachers or for self-instruction."

Buffalo Commercial Advertiser.

"By Ollendorff's method, and its general use, applied to both the dead and living languages, we hope this reproach upon our country's character for elegant scholarship will be wiped away. When by reasonable application, a person of but ordinary attainments, and quickness of perception, can easily acquire another tongue, it is a shame not to do so, and nothing will more essentially aid him, whether he turn his attention to the German, French, or Italian, than Ollendorff's system."

Whig Review.

"Ollendorff's works on the German, French, and Italian, have met with marked approbation from those who are critical judges, and his system is pronounced 'the best, the only one of the kind for all who desire a practical knowledge of the language.'"

Catholic Magazine.

"The elementary works of Ollendorff have met with the most ample encouragement and success in England, and so far as they have been tested, in America also; and in both countries the use of them has become daily more extensive. * * * The distinguished feature in Ollendorff's method of imparting a knowledge of the language is, that it follows that of nature herself."

New Haven Herald.

"OLLENDORFF'S FRENCH METHOD.—The same plan of teaching the principles of the language and their application is presented in this admirable text-book as that developed in the German method. It is the only correct system of teaching modern languages.

"This method is in perfect accordance with the order of nature. In the old system, the learner does not commence speaking and writing the language until he is supposed to be acquainted with etymology and syntax. The rules are learned with difficulty, and amid unnecessary perplexities, to be forgotten before their application is attempted; and consequently large numbers abandon the study as irksome and useless, instead of finding it pleasant and profitable, as they would, were it not for reversing the order of nature.

"In this method, speaking and writing French is commenced with the first lesson, continued throughout, and thus is made the efficient means of acquiring almost imperceptibly, a thorough knowledge of grammar; and this without diverting the learner's attention for a moment from the language itself, with which he is naturally most desirous of becoming familiar.

"The general use of such a series of text-books will give us a very different class of French scholars in this country. Our systems of learning the French language have been a mere burlesque, instead of being at once a useful and ornamental branch of education. We most warmly recommend the Ollendorff series to teachers and all others interested, as philosophical and natural in arrangement, and as the only text-books involving correct principles of acquiring an available knowledge of modern languages."

United States Gazette.

"OLLENDORFF'S ITALIAN GRAMMAR.—The system of learning and teaching the living languages by Ollendorff is so superior to all other modes, that in England and on the continent of Europe, scarcely any other is in use, in well-directed academies and other institutions of learning. To those who feel disposed to cultivate an acquaintance with Italian literature, this work will prove invaluable, abridging, by an immense deal, the period commonly employed in studying the language."

Critical Opinions on Ollendorff's Method of Learning Languages.

CONTINUED.

New-York Courier and Enquirer.

"OLLENDORFF'S SPANISH GRAMMAR.—This is another number of the admirable series of elementary books of instruction in the language of Modern Europe, for which the public is indebted to the Appletons. Ollendorff's method of teaching languages, especially living languages, is now in universal use, and enjoys a very decided pre-eminence over any other now in use, inasmuch as it combines the merits, and avoids the faults of all others, and has, besides, many very marked and admirable peculiarities. No other books are now in general use, and his elementary treatises have won a unanimous favor not often accorded to any work in any department of human knowledge. Their chief peculiarity consists in this, that they lead the learner, by gradual steps, each perfectly simple and easy, from the first elements even to the nicest idioms of the various languages, comprehending, in the process, a complete mastery of Grammatical rules and colloquial phrases. They are in common use, not only in this country, but throughout Europe, and are likely to supersede, every where, all similar works.

"This method of learning SPANISH, which has just been issued, is likely to be even more widely useful, especially in this country, than those which have preceded it, since recent events have rendered a knowledge of Spanish more than usually important to all classes of our people. The editors of the work are widely known as accomplished scholars and distinguished teachers, and the book derives still higher authority from their connection with it. We commend it with great confidence to all who desire to become acquainted with the Castilian tongue."

The Tribune.

"The admirable system of teaching and learning modern languages, by Mr. Ollendorff, has attained a popularity and extension unprecedented in the history of education. Its effect upon the community of learners especially, is even now evident, and as time elapses will become still more so in the ease and correctness with which German, French, Italian, and Spanish are acquired and applied to the practical purposes of life. Mr. Ollendorff's books have now been some time before the public, not only in Europe, where he practically carries out the plans of instruction, but also in America, where the system has been faithfully tried and is appreciated by our best teachers and by thousands of learners. The present work seems to be prepared by gentlemen thoroughly conversant with the system in all its details. It is well worthy the attention of those desirous to become familiar with the noble Castilian tongue, that tongue which Charles V. once said those who spoke it used to speak like kings. The mechanical execution and appearance of the volume are in the usual style of clearness and beauty which characterizes Messrs. Appleton's publications."

Evening Post.

"OLLENDORFF'S METHOD APPLIED TO SPANISH.—D. Appleton & Co. have published "Ollendorff's new method of learning to write and speak the Spanish language, by M. Velasquez and S. T. Simonne. The authors of this work are experienced instructors in the Spanish language. To Mr. Velasquez, many of our citizens are indebted for their acquaintance with the harmonious and majestic dialect which its admirers delight in calling Castilian.

"The method of Ollendorff is admirably suited to many minds—to young persons in particular, by whom the peculiar forms of a language are most easily learned by practice and a mere effort of memory. To persons of any period of life it is useful in imparting an accurate acquaintance with the idioms and conversational peculiarities of a language, and nobody could go through the course prescribed by it without some essential improvement in the accuracy with which he speaks the language.

"The work is neatly got up as respects its typographical execution."

Hunt's Merchant's Magazine.

"OLLENDORFF'S *new method of Learning to Read, Write, and Speak the German Language*, with a systematic outline of German Grammar by George J. Adler, is one of those rare works which leave nothing to be desired on the subjects of which they treat. The learner's difficulties are so fully and exactly provided for, that a constant sense of satisfaction and progress is felt from the beginning to the end of the book. A bare inspection of one of the lessons will satisfy any one acquainted with the elements of German grammar, that it adapts itself perfectly to his wants. With the systematic outline of grammar by Prof. Adler, the new method is substantially perfect, and it is probably second in its advantages only to residence and intercourse with educated Germans."

Protestant Churchman.

"The study of the German is becoming so essential a part of an ordinary education, that every work tending to facilitate the acquisition of the language should be welcomed. An American edition of Ollendorff has been much wanted. His system is based upon *natural* principles. He teaches by leading the student to the acquisition of phrases, from which he deduces the rules of the language. The *idioms* are also carefully taught, and the entire construction of the system is such that, if adhered to with fidelity and perseverance, it will secure such a practical knowledge of the German as can be acquired by no other mode, so rapidly and thoroughly. We heartily commend the book to all who really wish to understand a tongue which contains so many treasures."

Critical Opinions on Ollendorff's Method of Learning Languages.

CONTINUED.

Newark Daily Advertiser.

"We have already expressed our opinion upon Ollendorff's method of teaching language as decidedly the best extant. His method is so simple, and divests the process of teaching of so much of its drudgery both as teacher and scholar, that when generally known it must be generally adopted."

Hartford Courant.

"We have already pronounced the Ollendorff series to be far superior to any other system for imparting an available knowledge of modern languages. These works, including those of the German, the French, the Italian, are but the transcript of nature's own method of teaching language; and hence they form a most complete and valuable series of text-books, alike adapted to the wants of the most critical student of these modern languages, or of those who wish to acquire merely a conversational use of the same.

"We most cordially and unqualifiedly recommend these books to Teachers and Friends of Education as decidedly the best series we have ever examined."

The Publishers have received over two hundred Letters from practical teachers, expressing their great satisfaction in the merits and usefulness of M. Ollendorff's Grammars. The following few are selected:

Hobart Hall, April 23d, 1847.

MESSRS. D. APPLETON & Co.— * * * Ollendorff's German Grammar acts like a charm, and with a use of only three months my German class can speak the German with great facility. The fact is, that Ollendorff has discovered the secret, the long-sought desideratum for overcoming the difficulties pertaining to the attainment of a new language. He only copies nature, and the dry mechanical arrangement of most Grammars being cast aside, he follows the natural way, and I can say, without hesitation, that he succeeds perfectly.

Very gratefully, L. H. DeLOSS CRANE

Blue-Hill Academy.

For beginners, Ollendorff's Grammars are worthy to supercede every other work; and even on the table of the scholar, by the side of the most elaborate German Treatises, they will not be useless. ISAIAH DOLE, A. M.

Princeton, Dec. 3d, 1846.

MESSRS. APPLETON & Co. Gentlemen—I am in the daily use of Ollendorff's German Grammar, and consider it decidedly superior to any other elementary work in this language. Immediately on the appearance of the French Grammar, I procured a copy of it, and have made some use of it, sufficient to satisfy myself that Ollendorff has applied his principles to the instruction of this language with the same success as that of the German.

Very respectfully, yours, LYMAN COLEMAN.

Kinderhook Academy, April 7th, 1847.

MESSRS. D. APPLETON & Co. Gentlemen—We have introduced the entire course of French Books, re-published by your house in a style that does credit to American taste. We think Ollendorff's French Book decidedly superior to Manesca's Course in exciting and retaining the interest of the pupil; and we are well satisfied with the proficiency which our classes have made by the aid of this work. The elegant arrangement of the *verbs*, both regular and irregular, deserves special notice; and in our opinion the work is worthy of a place in every academy in the land.

Very respectfully, yours,

SILAS METCALF.

Theological Sem. and Pa. College.

MESSRS. APPLETON—Having introduced Ollendorff's method of teaching German into my classes as an experiment, and tested it for one session, I have become fully satisfied that it is the one best calculated to impart to the learner a readiness in the use of the language; in the acquisition of modern languages it is now almost universally conceded that this plan is the best.

Respectfully yours, CHARLES H. RAY.

THE

STANDARD PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY

OF THE

FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES.

IN TWO PARTS.

PART I. FRENCH AND ENGLISH.—PART II. ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

The FIRST PART comprehending words in common use—Terms connected with Science—Terms belonging to the Fine Arts—4000 Historical Names—4000 Geographical Names—1100 terms lately published, with the PRONUNCIATION OF EVERY WORD, according to the French Academy and the most eminent Lexicographers and Grammarians; together with 750 *Critical Remarks*, in which the various methods of pronouncing employed by different authors are investigated and compared with each other.

The SECOND PART containing a copious vocabulary of English words and expressions, with the pronunciation according to Walker.

THE WHOLE PRECEDED BY

A Practical and Comprehensive System of French Pronunciation.

By GABRIEL SURENNE, F. A. S. E.,

French Teacher in Edinburgh; Corresponding Member of the French Grammatical Society of Paris, &c., &c.

Reprinted from a duplicate cast of the stereotype plates of the last Edinburgh edition.
One stout volume, 12mo., of nearly 500 pages. Price $1 50.

A FEW CRITICISMS ON ITS MERITS.

Kinderhook Academy, April 7, 1847.

Surenne's French Dictionary is in many respects superior to those of "Meadow" and "Boyer." The Proper Names at the bottom of each page, and the method of explaining the pronunciation, (by the French sounds of the vowels, with which the pupil has become familiar,) are in my opinion distinguishing excellences. SILAS METCALF.

Princeton, Dec. 13, 1847.

We use habitually the admirable Dictionary of Surenne.

LYMAN COLEMAN.

National Magazine.

"This work must have been one of very great labour, as it is evidently of deep research. We have given it a careful examination, and are perfectly safe in saying, we have never before seen any thing of the kind at all to compare with it. Our space will not permit us to give more than this general testimony to its value. Long as the title is, and much as it promises, our examination of the work proves that all the promises are fulfilled, and we think that no student of the French language should, for a moment, hesitate to possess himself of it. Nor, indeed, will it be found less useful to the accomplished French scholar, who will find in it a fund of information which can nowhere be met with in any one book. Such a work has for a long time been greatly needed, and Mr. Surenne has supplied the deficiency in a masterly style. We repeat, therefore, our well digested opinion, that no one in search of a knowledge of the niceties of the French language, should be without it."

New-York Observer.

"Every student of the French language, and every person of taste who is fond of reading French, and wishes to become proficient in that tongue, should possess this comprehensive but complete dictionary. It embraces all the words in common use, and those in science and the fine arts, historical and geographical names, etc., with the pronunciation of every word according to the French Academy, together with such critical remarks as will be useful to every learner. It is published in a form of extreme condensation, and yet contains so full a compilation of words, definitions, etc., as scarcely to leave any thing to be desired."

Boston Courier.

"This is, we believe, the first French pronouncing dictionary that has appeared in the English field of French education, and the compiler, Mr. Surenne, may well felicitate himself on the decided success which has attended his efforts to furnish us with this long expected desideratum. Mr. S. has rendered precise what was before uncertain, clear what had hitherto been obscure, in short, put into the hands of both teachers and scholars, an authority in philology and pronunciation, as good, as correct, as authoritative as Johnson, Walker, or Webster, in the English tongue. The method adopted for representing the sounds of words, is for the English or American eye and ear, so that faultless pronunciation may be depended upon. The phraseology is often that of the French Academy, consequently of the highest authority, and is both copious and practical. The English pronunciation is precisely after the plan of Webster, imitated or followed with the scrupulous accuracy, thus giving two extraordinary advantages in one work, viz., a diction-
nciation, with words and meanings, and a standard of English pronunciation.
teachers, parents, guardians, all interested in the education of youth, to
of industry and ingenuity, and they will see and recognize its supe-

ACCOMPANIMENT TO OLLENDORFF'S GERMAN GRAMMAR.

A PROGRESSIVE GERMAN READER,

PREPARED WITH REFERENCE TO

OLLENDORFF'S GERMAN GRAMMAR,

WITH COPIOUS NOTES AND A VOCABULARY,

BY G. J. ADLER,

Prof. of the German Language and Literature in the University of the City of New-York.

One neat Volume, 12mo. $1.

The favourable reception which Ollendorff's German Grammar has received from the American public, has induced the Publishers and the Editor to comply with the very general demand for a *German Reader*.

Complaints, more or less loud, have been made both by teacher and learner, against most of the Readers heretofore offered to the public in this country, as well as in England and Germany. Books of this kind now in the market, may be reduced to two classes: 1st. *Selections from the German Classics*, or *Elegant Extracts*, corresponding somewhat to our English Readers. Of these, two deserve special notice, viz., GEORGE MUHL'S PROSE ANTHOLOGY, (Carlsruhe and London, 1839,) and in this country, FOLLEN'S GERMAN READER. The objections to the former are, that it contains no poems, and hence lacks an essential element of an introduction to German Literature, and presents too little variety to the learner; it has, moreover, no vocabulary, and the most difficult passages are often left unnoticed in the annotations. The latter is, as it regards the variety and the good taste exhibited in its matter, far superior to any other similar work, and has for many years been almost the only Reader in use among us. To learners not classically educated, however, (and to many that are,) the pieces near the beginning are by far too difficult, and the assistance too scanty. The arrangement is not progressive, so that pieces near the end of the book are much easier than many in the beginning or middle.

2d. The second class of Readers are such as profess to *facilitate* the business of reading. They are generally based on the *Hamiltonian* method, i. e., the pieces are accompanied with translations, either *interlinear* and *literal*, or *free* and *opposite*. The difficulty with the books of this class is, that they leave the learner where they found him, unable by himself to account for the grammatical construction of a sentence; and when he lays aside the book to take up another, he finds that it is one thing to read by the aid of a translation and quite another to read understandingly. The principal books of this class are *Zimmer's German Teacher*, (Heidelberg and London, 1839,) *Gand's Literary Companion*, (Frankfort, 1841,) better in its selections than the first, and *Bokum's German Reader*, (Philadelphia.)

The plan of this German Reader is as follows, viz.:

1. The pieces are both prose and poetry, selected from the best authors, and are so arranged as to present sufficient variety to keep alive the interest of the scholar.

2. It is progressive in its nature, the pieces being at first very short and easy, and increasing in difficulty and length as the learner advances.

3. At the bottom of the page constant references to the Grammar are made, the difficult passages are explained and rendered. To encourage the first attempt of the learner as much as possible, the twenty-one pieces of the first section are analyzed, and all the necessary words given at the bottom of the page. The notes, which at first are very abundant, diminish as the learner advances.

4. It contains *five* sections. The *first* contains easy pieces, chiefly in prose, with all the words necessary for translating them; the *second*, short pieces in prose and poetry alternately, with copious notes and renderings; the *third*, short popular tales of GRIMM and others; the *fourth*, select ballads and other poems from BUERGER, GOETHE, SCHILLER, UHLAND, SCHWAB, CHAMISSO, etc.; the *fifth*, prose extracts from the first classics.

5. At the end is added a VOCABULARY of all the words occurring in the book.

ACCOMPANIMENT TO OLLENDORFF'S ITALIAN GRAMMAR.

CRESTOMAZIA ITALIANA:

A COLLECTION OF

SELECTED PIECES IN ITALIAN PROSE

DESIGNED AS A

CLASS READING-BOOK FOR BEGINNERS

IN THE STUDY OF

THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE.

By E. FELIX FORESTI, LL.D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN COLUMBIA COLLEGE AND IN THE UNIVERSITY OF THE CITY OF NEW-YORK.

One neat Volume, 12mo. Price $1.

South Carolinian.

"These selections are from different authors, and on various subjects, exhibiting the manifold peculiarities of style and idiom found in this mellifluous tongue. Dr. Foresti has consulted the American taste of his readers, in judiciously selecting from the works of those authors who are most imbued with the liberal sentiments which belong to our own age and clime. He has done this to enlist the sympathy of the student, and thereby facilitate his progress in the language. This is a capital thought. We perceive that C. Botta is laid under contribution for two or three articles, in which some of our American worthies appear in Italian costume. A glossary accompanies each lesson—anglicizing those idiomatic phrases which present peculiar difficulty to the student. As the work is a companion to Ollendorff's Italian Grammar, it will of course be adopted by all who adopt his unrivalled system of teaching or acquiring a foreign language."

Savannah Republican.

"The *Italian Reader* is compiled by Mr. Foresti, Professor of the Italian Language in the Columbia College and the University of New-York. It appears to be designed to follow the study of Ollendorff's Italian Grammar, on which work many correct judges have pronounced that no important improvement can well be made. In making selections for the book before us, Mr. Foresti has preferred modern Italian writers to the old school of novelists, historians, and poets. In this he has done a good thing; for the Italian Reader contains the modern language. True, there are some innovations, some changes which many would deem a departure from original purity, but nevertheless it is *the* language which one finds and hears spoken in Italy. These changes have gone on under the eye and against the stern authority of the Academy *della Crusca*, and in their magnificent new dictionary now in process of publication, they have found themselves compelled to insert many words which are the growth not only of modern necessity, but of caprice.

"The selections in the Italian Reader are from popular authors, such as Botta, Manzoni, Machiavelli, Villani, and others. They are so made as not to constitute mere exercises, but contain distinct relations so complete as to gratify the reader and engage his attention while they instruct. This is a marked improvement on that old system which exacted much labor without enlisting the sympathies of the student. The selections from Manzoni, for example, are from the "*Promessi Sposi*," one of the noblest works of fiction ever issued from the press—a work so popular as to have gone through an incredible number of editions in Italy, while it has been translated into every language of Europe. There have been, we believe, no less than three distinct English translations made, two of which were done in this country. The Reader contains six extracts from this novel, among which are the beautiful episodes of Father Cristoforo and the Nun of Monza, and a description of the famine and plague of Milan in the year 1630. The account of the plague rivals the celebrated one of Bocaccio in his Decameron. The idioms that occur in the selections are explained by a glossary appended to each. The Italian Reader can with confidence be recommended to students in the language as a safe and sure guide. After mastering it, the Italian poets and other classicists may be approached with confidence."

NEW MODERN FRENCH READER.

MORCEAUX CHOISIES DES AUTEURS MODERNES,

A LA USAGE DE LA JEUNESSE;

With a Vocabulary of the New and Difficult Words and Idiomatic Phrases adopted in Modern French Literature.

BY F. ROWAN.

Edited by J. L. JEWETT, Editor of Ollendorff's French Method.

One Volume, 12mo. 75 cents.

The chief object of the present volume is to offer the means of making the youth acquainted with the French Language, as it is spoken in the present day, and as it is presented in the works of the modern authors of France, without the risk of sullying the mind of the young reader, by an introduction to such scenes and principles, as but too often disgrace the pages of writers who would be an honor to humanity, were their moral qualities but equal to their genius.

The second is to facilitate the task of the teacher, by endeavoring to render the work attractive in the eyes of the pupil; and such selections have therefore been made, as will, it is hoped, be interesting and entertaining to the young reader, while, at the same time, they will prove worthy specimens of the peculiar style of their respective authors, and sufficiently demonstrate the great idiomatic revolution which has taken place in the French Language within the last quarter of a century.

The American edition of the work is rendered still more valuable and interesting by the addition of extracts from the writings of Sismondi and Mignet, modern historians of distinguished merit. The vocabulary of new and difficult words and idiomatic phrases is also more conveniently arranged for reference, and considerably enlarged; while the whole has undergone thorough revision, with a view to accuracy in every particular; and the orthography has been made to conform to that of the Dictionary of the Academy and the usage of modern writers.

List of Authors.—Alex. Dumas, Alex. de Tocqueville, Alfred de Vigney, Alph. Karr, Aug. Thierry, Bignon, Capetigue, De Balzac, De Lamartine, E. Souvestre, Eugène Sue, F. Soulié, Guizot, Gust. de Beaumont, Jules Janin, Leon Goslan, D'Aubigné, Mérimée, Michelet, Salvandy, Lavallée, Thiers, Victor Hugo, Villemain, Sismondi, Mignet.

NEW ELEMENTARY FRENCH READER.

AN

INTRODUCTION TO THE FRENCH LANGUAGE:

CONTAINING

Fables, Select Tales, Remarkable Facts, Amusing Anecdotes, etc.

WITH

A DICTIONARY

OF ALL THE WORDS, TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH

By M. DE FIVAS, Member of several Literary Societies.

One neat Volume, 16mo. Price 50 cents.

This work has passed through five editions in England, and rapidly found its way as a class-book into the most eminent public and private seminaries.

The pieces contained in this volume comprehend a great variety of subjects, and are generally of a lively and familiar style, the phrases will serve as elements of conversation, and enable the student to read with facility other French books.

In the Dictionary at the end, is given the meaning of every word contained in the book.

The explanatory words are placed at the end of the book, instead of at the foot of the page; by this method learners will derive considerable benefit.

Though this work is designedly for the use of schools, the author has borne in mind, that many of the learners of French are adults, therefore while it is adapted for youthful students, an endeavor has also been made to make it acceptable to those of more advanced age.

NEW DRAMATIC FRENCH READER.

CHEFS-D'ŒUVRES DRAMATIQUES

DE LA

LANGUE FRANCAISE.

Mis en Ordre Progressif, et Annotés, pour en faciliter L'Intelligence.

PAR A. G. COLLOT,

Professeur de Langues et de Litterature.

One Volume, 12mo of 520 pages. Price $1.

Courier and Enquirer.

"We have examined this book with great interest, and can confidently recommend it to students and teachers of the French language, as better adapted to the purposes of a reading-book than any other with which we are acquainted. It is made up of fourteen complete dramas, taken from the works of the best and purest writers, among which are the great names of Corneille, Racine, Moliere, and Piron. The pieces are systematically arranged in progressive order, and the idiomatical difficulties of the language are fully and clearly explained in the notes. To those who are desirous of speaking French this book is invaluable, as the conversational and idiomatic phrases, so indispensable to this accomplishment, are met with on every page; and to those who wish to cultivate their taste, and to obtain a knowledge not only of the French language, but of the writings of its most eminent dramatists, this volume will supply the place of voluminous collections not easy to be obtained. 'Its typographical accuracy and appearance has seldom been equalled in any French book that has heretofore issued from the press of this country."

Christian Examiner.

"This book is made up of pieces of progressive difficulty, as exercises in the study of French. We have first a Proverb or two in the simplest style, with foot-notes explanatory of idiomatic phrases; then a couple of Berquin's pieces, intended for learners; then some half dozen of Scribe's popular dramas, full of action, and exhibiting many peculiarities of French manners and language; Moliere's Misanthrope; Voltaire's Mérope; Racine's Athalie; and, lastly, the Cinna of Corneille—*all entire;* which is, certainly, an improvement on all other French reading-books, the fragmentary style of which has often vexed us. The whole appears to us admirably adapted for its purpose."

Tribune.

"This work is intended as a reading-book for students of the French language; and for two very important reasons, we consider it better adapted to its purpose, and likely to be of far greater utility, than any other that has hitherto been compiled. First, the language is easy, the constructions are simple, and the whole is in the form of dialogue, the only kind of reading that can afford the scholar any efficient aid in speaking French. Secondly, the engrossing interest of the most elegant and vivacious drama now in existence is brought to the aid of the student in enabling him to endure with patience the labour necessary to perform his task. There is little fear that any one who has read twenty pages of this book will ever lay it down until he has mastered its entire contents. Professor Collot has been remarkably successful in his selection, and the pieces are in every respect unexceptionable, and well adapted to varieties of taste. The humour of Moliere, the beautiful comedies of Scribe and Berquin, and the tragic grandeur and pathos of a Corneille, a Racine, and a Voltaire, need no recommendation."

Protestant Churchman.

"This new French reader is precisely the kind of book which an intelligent teacher of the language will desire to place in the hands of his advanced pupils. At least such is our opinion. The selections are made with great judgment, and consist not of mere disjointed fragments, but of entire works of the best dramatic authors, in sufficient variety, 'from grave to gay, from lively to severe.' While they offer peculiar facilities for acquiring the language, by a free exhibition of all its peculiarities, their effect upon the literary taste of the student must be no less salutary."

Evening Mirror.

"The dramatic pieces embraced in this volume are all complete, and they comprise some of the best and most unexceptionable performances of Berquin, Scribe, Piron, Moliere, Voltaire, Racine, and Corneille, arranged so that the learner takes up first those which present the fewest difficulties, and then advances to the higher departments of dramatic writing. The dramatic portion of French literature is generally considered its best. Such a book as this, therefore, is necessary for every student who wishes to become acquainted with the master-pieces of the French writers."

ARNOLD'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

I.

A FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK

And Practical Grammar. By THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A.M. Revised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. Spencer, A.M. One vol. 12mo., 75 cts.

II.

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION:

A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. By THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A.M. Revised and Corrected by J. A. Spencer, A.M. 12mo. $1.

III.

A FIRST GREEK BOOK;

With Easy Exercises and Vocabulary. By THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A.M. Revised and Corrected by J. A. Spencer, A.M. 12mo. 62½ cts.

IV.

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION:

A Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition. By THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A.M. Revised and Corrected by J. A. Spencer, A.M. One volume, 12mo. 75 cts.

V.

GREEK READING BOOK,

For the Use of Schools; containing the substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing, and a Treatise on the Greek Particles, by the Rev. THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A.M, and also a Copious Selection from Greek Authors, with English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, and a Lexicon, by J. A. Spencer, A.M. One vol. 12mo. $1 50.

VI.

CORNELIUS NEPOS;

With Practical Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. By THOMAS K. ARNOLD, A.M. Revised, with Additional Notes, by Prof. Johnson, Professor of the Latin Language in the University of the City of New-York. 12mo.

A new, enlarged edition, with Lexicon, Index, etc. $1 00.

"ARNOLD'S GREEK AND LATIN SERIES.—The publication of this valuable collection of classical school books may be regarded as the presage of better things in respect to the mode of teaching and acquiring languages. Heretofore boys have been condemned to the drudgery of going over Latin and Greek Grammar without the remotest conception of the value of what they were learning, and every day becoming more and more disgusted with the dry and unmeaning task; but now, by Mr. Arnold's admirable method—substantially the same with that of Ollendorff—the moment they take up the study of Latin or Greek, they begin to learn sentences, to acquire ideas, to see how the Romans and Greeks expressed themselves, how their mode of expression differed from ours, and by degrees they lay up a stock of knowledge which is utterly astonishing to those who have dragged on month after month in the old-fashioned, dry, and tedious way of learning languages.

"Mr. Arnold, in fact, has had the good sense to adopt the system of nature. A child learns his own language by *imitating* what he hears, and constantly *repeating* it till it is fastened in the memory; in the same way Mr. A. puts the pupil immediately to work at Exercises in Latin and Greek, involving the elementary principles of the language—words are supplied—the mode of putting them together is told the pupil—he is shown how the ancients expressed their ideas; and then, by repeating these things again and again—*iterum iterumque*—the docile pupil has them indelibly impressed upon his memory and rooted in his understanding.

"The American Editor is a thorough classical scholar, and has been a practical teacher for years in this city. He has devoted the utmost care to a complete revision of Mr. Arnold's works, has corrected several errors of inadvertence or otherwise, has rearranged and improved various matters in the early volumes of the series, and has attended most diligently to the accurate printing and mechanical execution of the whole. We anticipate most confidently the speedy adoption of these works in our schools and colleges."—*Cour. & Enq.*

*** Arnold's Series of Classical Works has attained a circulation almost unparalleled in England, being introduced into nearly all the great Public Schools and leading Educational Institutions

ARNOLD'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

OPINIONS OF SCHOLARS.

PRINCETON, December 3, 1846.

GENTLEMEN,—In reply to your letter, I have to say that I can, from the most satisfactory experience, bear testimony to the excellence of your series of Text Books for Schools. I am in the daily use of Arnold's Latin and Greek Exercises, and consider them decidedly superior to any other Elementary Works in those Languages.

LYMAN COLEMAN, D., D.,
Prof. of the German, Greek, and Latin Languages.

DEAR SIR,—I am much pleased with *Arnold's Latin Books*. A class of my older boys have just finished the first and second books. They had studied Latin for a long time before but never *understood* it, they say, as they do now.

CHAS. M. BLAKE,
Classical Teacher in Brown's Prince-street Academy, Philadelphia.

ARNOLD'S LESSONS in Latin I find unsurpassed; and, if the Greek Lessons by the same author shall prove as useful, they will form the commencement of a new era in the study of the classics in this country. I wish you abundant success in so noble an enterprise as furnishing our schools and scholars with such valuable books.

SETH DAVIS,
Rector of Zion's Church, Rome.

ARNOLD'S LATIN AND GREEK COMPOSITION. In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the Ancient Languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an *interest* in the study of language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste.

N. WHEELER,
Principal Worcester County High School.

MESSRS. APPLETON: PENN. COLLEGE, GETTYSBURG, Oct. 29, 1846.

Dear Sirs,—The friends of education are under great obligations to you for the valuable service you have rendered by the recent publication of Arnold's Cornelius Nepos. I have examined the edition with much interest, and it gives me pleasure to say that I highly approve of it. A text-book prepared by a man so distinguished for scholarship, experience, and success in teaching, as Dr. Arnold, cannot fail to secure universal favor. The mechanical execution, and the great accuracy which prevails throughout, are highly creditable to the American editor and the publisher.

I have determined to introduce the edition at once into the Academical Department of Pennsylvania College, and have accordingly directed our book merchants to procure copies.

Respectfully, yours,
M. L. STOERER, A. M.,
Prof. of History in Pennsylvania College, and Principal of the Academical Department.

MESSRS. APPLETON & CO.: OAKLAND HIGH SCHOOL, April 28, 1846.

Gentlemen,—I acknowledge with many thanks the receipt of T. K. Arnold's First and Second Latin Book, and his Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. The style in which the books are got up is not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction, on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to begin I have little doubt of the result of the experiment.

Very respectfully,
A. B. RUSSELL.

Extract from a Report of an Examination of the Male Department of the Parochial School of St. Paul's Church, Rome, N. Y., on Friday, March 26, 1847.

* * * * "But were we to single out any part of the examination as worthy of special notice, it would be that upon "Arnold's First Book in Latin." Many an Academician, who has studied Latin in the ordinary way for two years, could not sustain an examination as did the lads of this class, who have studied Arnold's First Lessons only about six months. Arnold's method is admirable for making *thorough* scholars and accurate grammarians; but then it needs a thorough and industrious teacher to use it to advantage. Such, evidently, is Mr. Platt. He has not been content to put his pupils upon *writing out* the exercises, but they have been required to commit thoroughly to memory the vocabulary of words in each lesson, beginning with nouns and verbs; and as soon as they have learned the words they begin to make sentences. Then they learn occasionally a declension, and immediately are made to put it to use by constructing sentences that require the cases of that declension. A similar method was pursued in the English Grammar and in the French."

LINCOLN'S LIVY.

TITUS LIVIUS.

CHIEFLY FROM THE TEXT OF ALSCHEFSKI,

WITH

ENGLISH NOTES, GRAMMATICAL AND EXPLANATORY,

TOGETHER

WITH A GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL INDEX.

BY J. L. LINCOLN,

Professor of Latin in Brown University.

WITH AN ACCOMPANYING PLAN OF ROME, AND A MAP OF THE PASSAGE OF HANNIBAL.

One Volume, 12mo. Price $1.

The publishers believe that, in the edition of Livy herewith announced, a want is supplied which has been universally felt; there being previous to this no American edition furnished with the requisite apparatus for the successful prosecution of the study of this Latin author.

The extracts selected for this edition will secure the material for an amount of reading in Livy equal to that which is accomplished in any of our colleges, and comprise the finest as well as the most useful and interesting passages in the writings of the great Latin historian. They are taken chiefly from the first five books (the first nearly entire), the twenty-first, twenty-second, and the subsequent books on the Second Punic War, with such other portions as could be introduced without increasing the volume beyond the size suited to its intended purpose.

The text is based upon that of Drakenborch, with some changes from subsequent editors, and especially, in the earlier books, from the recent valuable work of Dr. Alschefski, of Berlin, of which the first volume was published in 1841, the second in 1843, and the third has just appeared.

The notes consist of selections from the best commentators, as Drakenborch, Crevier, &c., and smaller school editions; and, to a considerable extent, of original matter, embodying the results of the editor's own labors and experience in reading Livy with his classes in college.

OPINIONS OF CLASSICAL PROFESSORS.

From Professor Kingsley, of Yale College.

"I have not yet been able to read the whole of your work, but have examined it enough to be satisfied that it is judiciously prepared, and well adapted to the purpose intended. We use it for the present year, in connection with the edition that has been used for several years. Most of the class, however, have procured your edition; and it is probable that next year it will be used by all."

From Professor Tyler, of Amherst College.

"The notes seem to me to be prepared with much care, learning and taste, the grammatical illustrations are unusually full, faithful and able. The book has been used by our Freshman Class, and will I doubt not come into general use in our colleges."

From Professor Packard, of Bowdoin College.

"I have recommended your edition to our Freshman Class. I have no doubt that your labors will give a new impulse to the study of this charming classic."

From Professor Anderson, of Waterville College.

"A careful examination of several portions of your work has convinced me that for the use of students it is altogether superior to any edition of Livy with which I am acquainted. Among its excellences you will permit me to name, the close attention given to particles—to the subjunctive mood—the constant references to the grammars—the discrimination of words nearly synonymous, and the care in giving the localities mentioned in the text. The book will be hereafter used in our college."

From Professor Johnson, of New-York University.

"I can at present only say that your edition pleases me much. I shall give it to one of my classes next week. I am prepared to find it just what was wanted."

SPENCER'S CÆSAR.

C. JULIUS CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES

ON THE

GALLIC WAR.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, CRITICAL AND EXPLANATORY; A LEXICON, GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL INDEXES, &c.

BY THE REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.,

Editor of "Arnold's Series of Greek and Latin Books," etc.

One handsome vol. 12mo, with Map. Price $1.

"The press of Messrs. Appleton is becoming prolific of superior editions of the classics used in schools, and the volume now before us we are disposed to regard as one of the most beautiful and highly finished among them all, both in its editing and its execution. The classic Latin in which the greatest general and the greatest writer of his age recorded his achievements, has been sadly corrupted in the lapse of centuries, and its restoration to a pure and perfect text is a work requiring nice discrimination and sound learning. The text which Mr. Spencer has adopted is that of Oudendorp, with such variations as were suggested by a careful collation of the leading critics of Germany. The notes are as they should be, designed to aid the labors of the student, not to supersede them. In addition to these the volume contains a sketch of the Life of Cæsar, a brief Lexicon of Latin words, a Historical and a Geographical Index, together with a map of the country in which the great Roman conqueror conducted the campaigns he so graphically describes. The volume, as a whole, however, appears to be admirably suited to the purpose for which it was designed. Its style of editing and its typographical execution reminds us of Professor Lincoln's excellent edition of Livy—a work which some months since had already passed to a second impression, and has now been adopted in most of the leading schools and colleges of the country."—*Providence Journal.*

TYLER'S TACITUS.

THE GERMANIA AND AGRICOLA

OF

CAIUS CORNELIUS TACITUS.

WITH NOTES, FOR COLLEGES.

BY W. S. TYLER,

Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College.

One very neat volume, 12mo. 62½ cents.

"We welcome the book as a useful addition to the classical literature of our country. It is very correctly and elegantly prepared and printed. Thirteen pages are occupied by a well written Life of Tacitus, in which not merely outward events are narrated, but the character of the historian, both as a man and a writer, is minutely and faithfully drawn. The notes to each of the treatises are introduced by a general *critique* upon the merits and matter of the work. The body of the notes is drawn up with care, learning, and judgment. Points of style and grammatical constructions, and historical references, are ably illustrated. We have been struck with the elegant precision which marks these notes; they hit the happy medium between the too much of some commentators, and the too little of others."—*North American Review.*

Among the numerous classical Professors who have highly commended and introduced this volume are FELTON of Howard, LINCOLN of Brown University, CROSBY of Dartmouth, COLEMAN of Princeton, NORTH of Hamilton, PACKARD of Bowdoin, OWEN of New-York, CHAMPLIN of Waterville, &c., &c.

BOJESEN AND ARNOLD'S
MANUALS of GREEK and ROMAN ANTIQUITIES

I.

A MANUAL OF GRECIAN ANTIQUITIES.

BY DR. E. F. BOJESEN,

Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in the University of Soro.

Translated from the German.

EDITED, WITH NOTES AND A COMPLETE SERIES OF QUESTIONS, BY THE REV. THOMAS K. ARNOLD, M. A.

FIRST AMERICAN EDITION, REVISED WITH ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS

One neat volume, 12mo. Price 62½ cents.

II.

A MANUAL OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.

WITH A SHORT

HISTORY OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

BY DR. E. F. BOJESEN.

EDITED BY THOMAS K. ARNOLD, M. A.

One neat volume, 12mo. Price 62½ cents.

*** THE ABOVE TWO VOLUMES BOUND IN ONE. PRICE $1.

The present manuals of Greek and Roman Antiquities are far superior to any thing on the same topics as yet offered to the American public. A principal Review of Germany says of the Roman Manual:—"Small as the compass of it is, we may confidently affirm that it is a great improvement (on all preceding works of the kind). We no longer meet with the wretched old method, in which subjects essentially distinct are herded together, and connected subjects disconnected, but have a simple, systematic arrangement, by which the reader easily receives a clear representation of Roman life. We no longer stumble against countless errors in detail, which, though long ago assailed and extirpated by Niebuhr and others, have found their last place of refuge in our Manuals. The recent investigations of Philologists and jurists have been extensively, but carefully and circumspectly used. The conciseness and precision which the author has every where prescribed to himself, prevents the superficial observer from perceiving the essential superiority of the book to its predecessors, but whoever subjects it to a careful examination will discover this on every page."

The Editor says:—"I fully believe that the pupil will receive from these little works a correct and tolerably complete picture of Grecian and Roman life; what I may call the POLITICAL portions—the account of the national constitutions and their effects—appear to me to be of great value; and the very moderate extent of each volume admits of its being thoroughly mastered—of its being GOT UP and RETAINED."

From Professor Lincoln, of Brown University.

I found on my table after a short absence from home, your edition of Bojesen's Greek and Roman Antiquities. Pray accept my acknowledgments for it. I am agreeably surprised to find on examining it, that within so very narrow a compass for so comprehensive a subject, the book contains so much valuable matter, and indeed so far as I see, omits noticing no topics essential. It will be a very useful book in Schools and Colleges, and it is far superior to any thing that I know of the same kind. Besides being cheap and accessible to all students, it has the great merit of discussing its topics in a consecutive and connected manner."

A MANUAL OF ANCIENT AND MODERN HISTORY.

COMPRISING

I. ANCIENT HISTORY, containing the Political History, Geographical Position, and Social State of the Principal Nations of Antiquity, carefully digested from the Ancient Writers, and illustrated by the discoveries of Modern Scholars and Travellers.

II. MODERN HISTORY, containing the Rise and Progress of the Principal European Nations, their Political History, and the Changes in their Social Condition; with a History of the Colonies Founded by Europeans. By W. Cooke Taylor, LL. D., of Trinity College, Dublin. Revised, with Additions on American History, by C. S. Henry, D. D., Professor of History in the University of N. Y., and Questions adapted for the Use of Schools and Colleges. One handsome vol., 8vo., of 800 pages, $2,25; Ancient History in 1 vol., $1,25, Modern History in 1 vol., $1,50.

The ANCIENT HISTORY division comprises Eighteen Chapters, which include the general outlines of the history of Egypt—the Ethiopians—Babylonia and Assyria—Western Asia—Palestine—the Empire of the Medes and Persians—Phœnician Colonies in Northern Africa—Foundation and History of the Grecian States—Greece—the Macedonian Kingdom and Empire—the States that arose from the Dismemberment of the Macedonian Empire—Ancient Italy—Sicily—the Roman Republic—Geographical and Political Condition of the Roman Empire—History of the Roman Empire—and India—with an Appendix of important illustrative articles.

This portion is one of the best Compends of Ancient History that ever yet has appeared. It contains a complete text for the collegiate lecturer; and is an essential hand-book for the student who is desirous to become acquainted with all that is memorable in general secular archæology

The MODERN HISTORY portion is divided into Fourteen Chapters, on the following general subjects:—Consequences of the Fall of the Western Empire—Rise and Establishment of the Saracenic Power—Restoration of the Western Empire—Growth of the Papal Power—Revival of Literature—Progress of Civilization and Invention—Reformation, and Commencement of the States System in Europe—Augustan Ages of England and France—Mercantile and Colonial System—Age of Revolutions—French Empire—History of the Peace—Colonization—China—the Jews—with Chronological and Historical Tables and other Indexes. Dr. Henry has appended a new chapter on the History of the United States.

This Manual of Modern History, by Mr. Taylor, is the most valuable and instructive work concerning the general subjects which it comprehends, that can be found in the whole department of historical literature. Mr. Taylor's work is fast superseding all other compends, and is already adopted as a text-book in Harvard, Columbia, Yale, New York, Pennsylvania, and Brown Universities, and several leading Academies.

GESENIUS' HEBREW GRAMMAR.

FOURTEENTH EDITION, AS REVISED BY DR. E. RÖDIGER.

Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Madison University, N. Y

With the Modifications of the Editions subsequent to the Eleventh,
By Dr. DAVIES, of Stepney College, London.

To which are added, A COURSE OF EXERCISES IN HEBREW GRAMMAR, and a HEBREW CHRESTOMATHY, prepared by the Translator. One handsomely printed volume, 8vo. Price $2.

Extract from the Translator's Preface.

"The fourteenth edition of the Hebrew Grammar of Gesenius is now offered to the public by the translator of the eleventh edition, by whom this work was first made accessible to students in the English language. The conviction expressed in his preface to that edition, that its publication in this country would subserve the interests of Hebrew literature, has been fully sustained by the result. After a full trial of the merits of this work, both in America and in England, its republication is now demanded in its latest and most improved form.

"Of the general character of this grammar it is unnecessary to speak. It passed through thirteen editions with continual improvements from the author's own hand. The fourteenth edition was prepared, after the death of Gesenius, by his friend and former pupil, Prof. Rödiger, one of the most accurate oriental scholars of the age, who for some time lectured on Hebrew Grammar in the University at Halle, with the work of Gesenius for his text-book. Traces of his accurate scholarship are found, in the form of corrections and additions, in every part of the work; and some portions have been re-written, but on the same general philological principles, and in the same spirit as the preceding editions.

"The exercises, which follow the translation, are designed to facilitate the study of the grammar. They were prepared after several years' observation, as a teacher, of the difficulties which embarrass the student in his first attempt to learn an oriental language. They have been used with great advantage by a teacher under my direction during the last seven years, and by teachers in other Institutes.

"The notes to the Chrestomathy have been prepared on the plan which every teacher of experience will appreciate, of re-printing nothing which is contained in the grammar; and what is equally important, of repeating nothing which has once been stated and learned. On a different plan, the same amount of information might easily have been extended over a hundred pages, and with no other effect than to retard the real proficiency of the learner. The Exercises and Chrestomathy have been carefully revised, and the numerous references, in which it is believed not an error remains, have been adapted to this edition of the grammar

A NEW SCHOOL AND REFERENCE DICTIONARY.

A

DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

CONTAINING THE

PRONUNCIATION, ETYMOLOGY, AND EXPLANATION

OF ALL WORDS AUTHORIZED BY EMINENT WRITERS;

TO WHICH ARE ADDED,

A VOCABULARY OF THE ROOTS OF ENGLISH WORDS,

AND AN ACCENTED LIST OF GREEK, LATIN, AND SCRIPTURE PROPER NAMES

BY ALEXANDER REID, A.M.,
Rector of the Circus School, Edinburgh.

WITH A CRITICAL PREFACE,

BY HENRY REED,
Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania,

AND

AN APPENDIX,

Showing the Pronunciation of nearly 3000 of the most important Geographical Names.

One volume 12mo, of near 600 pages, neatly bound in leather. Price $1 00.

Among the wants of our time was a good Dictionary of our own language, especially adapted for academies and schools. The books which have long been in use were of little value to the junior students, being too concise in the definitions, and immethodical in the arrangement. Reid's English Dictionary was compiled expressly to develop the precise analogies and various properties of the authorized words in general use, by the standard authors and orators who use our vernacular tongue.

Exclusive of the large numbers of proper names which are appended, this Dictionary includes four especial improvements—and when their essential value to the student is considered, the sterling character of the work as a hand-book of our language will be instantly perceived.

The primitive word is distinguished by a larger type; and where there are any derivatives from it, they follow in alphabetical order, and the part of speech is appended, thus furnishing a complete classification of all the connected analogous words of the same species.

With this facility to comprehend accurately the determinate meaning of the English word, is conjoined a rich illustration for the linguist. The derivation of all the primitive words is distinctly given, and the phrases of the languages whence they are deduced, whether composite or simple; so that the student of foreign languages, both ancient and modern, by a reference to any word, can ascertain the source whence it has been adopted into our own form of speech. This is a great acquisition to the person who is anxious to use words in their utmost clearness of meaning.

To these advantages is subjoined a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, which is of peculiar value to the collegian. The fifty pages which it includes, furnish the linguist with a wide-spread field of research, equally amusing and instructive. There is also added an Accented List, to the number of fifteen thousand, of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names.

With such novel attractions, and with such decisive merits, the recommendations which are prefixed to the work by Professors Frost, Henry, Parks, and Reed, Messrs. Baker and Greene, principals of the two chief grammar schools at Boston, and by Dr. Reese, Superintendent of Common Schools for the city and county of New-York, are justly due to the labors of the author. They fully corroborate the opinion expressed by several other competent authorities, that "Reid's English Dictionary is peculiarly adapted for the use of schools and families, and is far superior to any other existing similar compilation."

ENGLISH SYNONYMES,

CLASSIFIED AND EXPLAINED,

WITH

PRACTICAL EXERCISES.

DESIGNED FOR SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE TUITION

BY G. F. GRAHAM,

Author of 'English, or the Art of Composition,' &c.

WITH AN INTRODUCTION AND ILLUSTRATIVE AUTHORITIES

BY HENRY REED, LL. D.,

Prof. of English Literature in the University of Penn.

One neat Vol. 12mo. $1.

CONTENTS.—SECTION I. (Generic and Specific Synonymes.) II. (Active and Passive Synonymes.) III. (Synonymes of Intensity.) IV. (Positive and Negative Synonymes.) V. (Miscellaneous Synonymes.) Index to Synonymes. General Index.

Extract from American Introduction.

"This treatise is republished and edited with the hope that it will be found useful as a text-book in the study of our own language. As a subject of instruction, the study of the English tongue does not receive that amount of systematic attention which is due to it, whether it be combined or no with the study of the Greek and Latin. In the usual courses of education, it has no larger scope than the study of some rhetorical principles and practice and of grammatical rules, which, for the most part, are not adequate to the composite character and varied idiom of English speech. This is far from being enough to give the needful knowledge of what is the living language, both of our English literature and of the multiform intercourse—oral and written—of our daily lives. The language deserves better care and more sedulous culture; it needs much more to preserve its purity and to guide the progress of its life. The young, instead of having only such familiarity with their native speech as practice without method or theory gives, should be so taught and trained as to acquire a habit of using words—whether with the voice or the pen—fitly and truly, intelligently and conscientiously.

"For such training this book, it is believed, will prove serviceable. The '*Practical Exercises*,' attached to the explanations of the words, are conveniently prepared for the routine of instruction. The value of a course of this kind, regularly and carefully completed, will be more than the amount of information gained respecting the words that are explained. It will tend to produce a thoughtful and accurate use of language, and thus may be acquired, almost unconsciously, that which is not only a critical but a moral habit of mind—the habit of giving utterance to truth in simple, clear and precise terms—of telling one's thoughts and feelings in words that express nothing more and nothing less. It is thus that we may learn how to escape the evils of vagueness, obscurity and perplexity—the manifold mischiefs of words used thoughtlessly and at random, or words used in ignorance and confusion.

"In preparing this edition, it seemed to me that the value and literary interest of the book might be increased by the introduction of a series of illustrative authorities. It is in the addition of these authorities, contained within brackets under each title, and also of a general index to facilitate reference, that this edition differs from the original edition, which in other respects is exactly reprinted. I have confined my choice of authorities to poetical quotations, chiefly because it is in poetry that language is found in its highest purity and perfection. The selections have been made from three of the English poets—each a great authority, and each belonging to a different period, so that in this way some historical illustration of the language is given at the same time. The quotations from Shakspeare (born A. D. 1564, died 1616) may be considered as illustrating the use of the words at the close of the 16th and beginning of the 17th century; those from Milton (born 1608, died 1674) the succeeding half century, or middle of the 17th century; and those from Wordsworth (born 1770) the contemporary use in the 19th century.

PROFESSOR MANDEVILLE'S NEW ENGLISH READER.

A COURSE OF READING

FOR COMMON SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES,

ON THE PLAN OF THE AUTHOR'S 'ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY.

By H. MANDEVILLE,

Professor of Moral Science and Belles Lettres in Hamilton College, N. Y.

One neat Volume, 12mo. Price 75 cents.

This work is divided into three parts. The first relates to Grammar; it contains a description of the different letters of the alphabet and their various sounds, of syllables, and also of words as parts of speech. The second part contains a classification and description of all the sentences or formulas of thought in every degree of expansion, to be found in the English language. Part the third contains a series of exercises on paragraphs: the sentences not detached and classified as in part second, but appearing in the connections and relations of ordinary discourses.

All who acknowledge any degree of interest in having the young acquire the largest amount of information in the shortest possible time, and at the least possible expense, will be led to examine the method this work proposes to substitute for the prevailing one. To further illustrate the plan of the Author, the following Extract from the Preface is given:

"1. It will impart a kind of knowledge which can be acquired in no other way, and which indeed no one has hitherto attempted to teach; a knowledge of sentential structure; of the anatomy, the bones, nerves, and muscles of the language; of the various forms of expression which thought assumes in obtaining utterance in conversation or books.

"2. It lays a foundation in the nature of things, in the very structure of language, for a correct, intelligent, and graceful delivery, in reading and speaking.

"3. It will prepare the pupil for the study of grammar. There are few teachers, I presume, who have not felt the want of an intermediate stage of instruction between that study and reading; of something to bridge the chasm between the two, and render the transition from the one to the other less abrupt and difficult. To pass at once, with a mere capacity to put the words of a sentence together and make sense out of them, to the study of grammar, is equivalent to a leap from arithmetical enumeration to the abstraction of algebra. Perceiving this, not a few teachers of eminence have recommended the study of the Latin language, as a preparation for that of English grammar; and in the present state of things the recommendation is, in my opinion, a judicious one. I distinctly remember, that I myself obtained more knowledge of the principles of English grammar from a few weeks' study of the Latin, than I obtained during a year of previous application to the English alone. But the study of Latin is not pursued in our common schools; and if it were, an immense majority of the youth taught in them have neither the means, time, nor inclination to pursue it. If possible, therefore, a substitute should be provided. In the following work I have attempted this; and it cannot be read, I think, more than once, certainly not more than twice through, if read with any degree of care, without fixing in the mind of the pupil some very important grammatical ideas; and this while yet ignorant, perhaps, of what the word 'grammatical' means."

Preamble and Resolutions passed by the Oneida County Normal Institute, at the close of its Session at Rome, October 16, 1846.

Whereas, in our opinion, reading is the most important branch of education taught in our schools, demanding the best qualifications in teachers, as well as an *improved method* of instruction; and whereas it has been hitherto, to a lamentable extent, underrated and neglected, or if cultivated with due diligence, cultivated on principles which afford but little hope of improvement; and whereas Professor Mandeville, of Hamilton College, has made it clear to us that a better method than the prevailing one may and ought to be substituted—a method which, if adopted, *must* produce striking improvement, and feeling grateful to him for the information he has imparted to us; therefore

Resolved, As the settled conviction of the Board of Instruction, and of the members of this Institute, that the system taught by Professor Mandeville is the *system of nature;* at once scientific and practical, sound in its theory and principles, simple in its statements, and pertinent and ample in its illustrations; and that this work, in which this system is most beautifully developed, should be carefully studied and mastered by every practical teacher.

At a Meeting of the Special Committee appointed to examine and recommend books for the use of the Common Schools of Oneida County, this work was examined and adopted as a Text Book.

MANDEVILLE'S ELEMENTARY READER.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE AUTHOR'S

"Course of Reading" and "Elementary Reading and Oratory."

By H. MANDEVILLE, D. D.,

Professor of Moral Science and Belles Lettres, in Hamilton College.

In two Parts, boards, Price 38 cents each.

This work may be used independently; but teachers will derive much advantage from its use in connection with the "Course of Reading," in which the Author's theory and practice of elocution is fully developed.

PROF. MANDEVILLE'S COURSE OF READING.

OPINIONS OF ITS MERITS.

[Letter from the Rev. J. R. Boyd, Author of the "Elements of Rhetoric and Literary Criticism," and "Eclectic Moral Philosophy."]

WATERTOWN, Dec. 28, 1846.

Having examined, with some care, the recent work of Prof. Mandeville, entitled a "Course of Reading," I am free to express the opinion that it possesses transcendent claims to public acceptance and use. It is not a mere collection of pieces in Prose and Verse, like the reading books in common use, but a work on the art of reading, constructed upon a plan that seems peculiarly well adapted to accomplish more by far than other reading books. It embraces a philosophical analysis of the English language, in its letters, elementary sounds, and various forms of sentences. The nature and uses of the various parts of speech are very properly and minutely explained as a preliminary to the classification and description of all the sentences or formulas of thought to be found in the English language. Numerous examples of each kind of sentence are given *separately*, and instructions for the manner of reading them are furnished. By this process the acquisition of the art of reading must be greatly facilitated. The next process carries the student forward to the reading of paragraphs, as found in the connections and relations of ordinary discourse, and these are to be analyzed into their component parts according to instructions previously given and acted upon in the reading of separate and classified sentences.

I agree with the author in the belief that his work is peculiarly well adapted to impart a knowledge of the structure of the English language; that it lays a broad and just foundation for an intelligent and correct delivery; that it prepares the pupil for the study of English Grammar and indeed introduces him to a practical and useful acquaintance with not a small part of what properly belongs to the science of Grammar, but not less so to the art of Reading; and further, that it furnishes a very happy introduction to the art of Rhetoric, or of English Composition.

The peculiarities of the work are briefly set forth by the author in the following words—"Every sentence in the language is described; and every sentence has its own delivery. The structure learned therefore by one, two, or at most three reviews, it is learned forever. Henceforward as soon as a sentence falls under the observation of the pupil, he knows how it should be read; and while he can read it, he can give a solid reason for its being read in that particular manner."

Such being the general features of the work under consideration, I shall consider it a pleasing duty to make an experiment of its value with classes under my care, and to recommend the same experiment to other instructors.

J. R. BOYD,
Principal Jefferson County Institute.

November 27, 1846.

DEAR SIR,—Having examined with considerable care "Mandeville's Course of Reading," I consider it of far more practical value, as a means of making correct readers, than any other that has come under my observation; and although sensible of the inconvenience arising from a frequent change of books, I cannot avoid the conviction that the introduction of the work under consideration, would greatly facilitate the progress of the pupil in this elegant and useful accomplishment. The author has not attempted a servile imitation of what others have done, but has originated an entirely new plan—a plan as scientific as it is original, and as useful as it is beautiful. I cannot but deem it a valuable accession to the means of instruction employed in our common schools and academies. I shall introduce it into my own school.

Very respectfully,
J. H. PURKITT.

MT. PLEASANT BOARDING AND DAY SCHOOL,
Roxbury, Mass.

HISTORY OF ENGLAND,

From the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Queen Victoria.

BY MRS. MARKHAM.

A new edition, with Questions, adapted for Schools in the United States.

BY ELIZA ROBBINS,

Author of "American Popular Lessons," "Poetry for Schools," &c.

One volume, 12mo. Price 75 cents.

Extract from the American Editor's Preface.

There is nothing more needed in our schools than good histories; not the dry compends in present use, but elementary works that shall suggest the moral uses of history, and the providence of God, manifest in the affairs of men.

Mrs. Markham's history was used by that model for all teachers, the late Dr. Arnold, master of the great English school at Rugby, and agrees in its character with his enlightened and pious views of teaching history. It is now several years since I adapted this history to the form and price acceptable in the schools in the United States. I have recently revised it, and trust that it may be extensively serviceable in education.

The principal alterations from the original are a new and more convenient division of paragraphs, and entire omission of the conversations annexed to the chapters. In the place of these I have affixed questions to every page that may at once facilitate the work of the teacher and the pupil. The rational and moral features of this book first commended it to me, and I have used it successfully with my own scholars.

PRIMARY LESSONS:

BEING A SPELLER AND READER, ON AN ORIGINAL PLAN,

In which one letter is taught at a lesson, with its power; an application being immediately made, in words, of each letter thus learned, and those words being directly arranged into reading lessons.

BY ALBERT D. WRIGHT,

Author of "Analytical Orthography," "Phonological Chart," &c.

One neat volume, 18mo, containing 144 pages, and 28 engravings. Price 12½ cents, bound.

In this new work on an original plan, for teaching the rudiments of reading, the following are some of its peculiar features:

1. One letter of combination is presented at a lesson, and at the same time its elementary sound is taught.

2. As fast as the letters are learned, an application is immediately made, by using them synthetically in familiar words.

3. No word is given, in which a letter occurs, that has not been previously learned, in the above synthetic method.

4. The capital letters are taught one at a time, and by review in reading lessons.

5. The plan of putting the letters, with their elementary sounds, together into words, by this original system of synthesis, it is believed will greatly facilitate the acquisition of words, and of letters and their powers.

6. The words are systematically presented in the synthesis, being classified by their vowel sounds and terminating consonants; and generally, at the end of each class, they are arranged into little spelling lessons.

7. The learner is immediately initiated into reading lessons, composed of words of two or three letters, and is then led, progressively, into more difficult words.

8. The reading lessons are composed entirely of the words previously presented in the synthesis, or the spelling lessons.

9. The cuts are intended to illustrate the reading lessons, to attract the attention of the young, and to suggest thoughts for oral instruction, and for conversation to children.

10 The book constitutes a Primary Spelling Book and Reader,—thus combining two books in one of 144 pages, adapted to families and schools.

The advantages of a system of *application*, by which the child is permitted to use the letters as fast as they are learned, by forming little words with them, and then by arranging these words into easy sentences, must be obvious to every parent and teacher.

At a Meeting of the County and Town Superintendents of the County of Greene, Oct. 27, 1846,

It was unanimously Resolved, that we are favorably impressed with the method of teaching the Alphabet, and an early course of reading, as exhibited in the plan and arrangement of Wright's Primary Lessons—and believing that instruction in this branch of education will be much facilitated by the use of that work, we recommend it to the teachers, and to those who have children to be instructed; and add it to the list of Text Books recommended in this County.

WM. F. TERHUNE, *County Superintendent*, CHAIRMAN.

HISTORICAL
AND
MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS.

BY

RICHMAL MANGNALL.

FIRST AMERICAN, FROM THE EIGHTY-FOURTH LONDON EDITION. WITH LARGE ADDITIONS: EMBRACING THE

ELEMENTS OF MYTHOLOGY, ASTRONOMY, ARCHITECTURE, HERALDRY, ETC.

ADAPTED FOR SCHOOLS IN THE UNITED STATES BY

MRS. JULIA LAWRENCE.

Illustrated with numerous Engravings. One volume 12mo. $1.

CONTENTS.

A Short View of Scripture History, from the Creation to the Return of the Jews—Questions from the Early Ages to the time of Julius Cæsar—Miscellaneous Questions in Grecian History—Miscellaneous Questions in General History, chiefly ancient—Questions containing a Sketch of the most remarkable Events from the Christian Era to the close of the Eighteenth Century—Miscellaneous Questions in Roman History—Questions in English History, from the Invasion of Cæsar to the Reformation—Continuation of Questions in English History, from the Reformation to the Present Time—Abstract of Early British History—Abstract of English Reigns from the Conquest—Abstract of the Scottish Reigns—Abstract of the French Reigns, from Pharamond to Philip I—Continuation of the French Reigns, from Louis VI to Louis Phillippe—Questions Relating to the History of America from its discovery to the Present Time—Abstract of Roman Kings and most distinguished Heroes—Abstract of the most celebrated Grecians—Of Heathen Mythology in general—Abstract of Heathen Mythology—The Elements of Astronomy—Explanation of a few Astronomical Terms—List of Constellations—Questions on Common Subjects—Questions on Architecture—Questions on Heraldry—Explanation of such Latin Words and Phrases as are seldom Englished—Questions on the History of the Middle Ages.

PREFACE TO THE AMERICAN EDITION.

Having for many years made use of "Mangnall's Questions" in the education of my own children, I was tempted to introduce them into my school; although they were not in general use; it being an expensive book, and at that time (seven years since) difficult to obtain. I then discovered many deficiencies, which I had not before thought of, particularly in having no portion allotted to the history of the United States, so necessary in the education of all Americans; and too much space appropriated to the English Constitution, together with many sentences, the application of which are entirely local. These considerations have tempted me, feeling the value of the work in its original form, and being convinced that no book of the kind has ever been compiled so well calculated—to use the words of the author's preface—"to awaken a spirit of laudable curiosity in young minds," and satisfy that curiosity when awakened in a manner the most concise and clear, to rearrange the work, adapting it more particularly for the use of schools in this country, by adding what has been entirely omitted, and curtailing those portions which, from their diffuseness on matters not particularly interesting to young Americans, are unnecessary. I claim no merit for this effort, even should it prove successful, as the portions of American history I have added have been compiled from standard works—those of Prescott, Bancroft, and Wooster—simplified as much as possible, and arranged according to the plan pursued in the English work. The chronological table has been arranged on Mrs. Willard's plan, in her excellent "History." The "Common Subjects" have been enlarged, and many errors corrected. As a knowledge of Mythology is necessary to the understanding and enjoyment of the Classics, and as I know of none, *in English*, adapted to ladies' schools, I have added to this book a translation of Noel and Chapsall's well-known work, with some slight alterations and additions. In the English book there is only an alphabetical list of the deities, etc. A taste for Architecture is so rapidly increasing in this country, that it becomes necessary for every young person to understand the different orders, and terms made use of, to discriminate between the pure and mixed styles, and to give different portions, of sacred edifices particularly, their proper names; I have therefore devoted a few pages to this subject, which I hope will be found useful.

I have endeavored, in the few pages on the subject of Heraldry, to give as concise an account of it as possible to convey a clear idea of the terms made use of, the orders of knighthood, titles, etc., which are constantly met with in reading history, and which it is difficult to explain to the pupil totally unacquainted with the subject. The plates will give a correct idea of the appearance of the escutcheons, etc. I trust this short explanation will not be thought out of place in our republican country.

IN PREPARATION.

I.

CICERO'S SELECT ORATIONS,

WITH CRITICAL AND PHILOLOGICAL NOTES, INDEXES, ETC.

BY E. A. JOHNSON,

Professor of Latin in the University of the City of New-York.

II.

CICERO DE SENECTUTE ET DE AMICITIA,

WITH CRITICAL NOTES, INDEXES, ETC.

BY E. A. JOHNSON,

Professor of Latin in the University of New-York.

III.

CICERO DE OFFICIIS,

WITH CRITICAL AND PHILOLOGICAL NOTES, INDEXES, ETC.

BY PROF. THATCHER,

Of Yale College, New Haven.

IV.

SALLUST'S CATILINE AND JUGURTHA,

WITH CRITICAL, PHILOLOGICAL, AND EXEGETICAL NOTES, INDEXES, LEXICON, ETC.

BY NOBLE BUTLER, M.A.

V.

TACITUS' HISTORIES,

WITH CRITICAL NOTES, ETC.

BY W. S. TYLER,

Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College.

VI.

HORATII OPERA,

WITH CRITICAL AND PHILOLOGICAL NOTES, INDEX, ETC.

BY J. L. LINCOLN,

Professor of Latin in Brown University.

VII.

A NEW DICTIONARY OF THE GERMAN AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES.

PART I. GERMAN AND ENGLISH. PART II. ENGLISH AND GERMAN.

BASED ON THE DICTIONARIES OF HILPERT, FLUGEL, GRIEB, ETC.

BY G. J. ADLER,

Prof. of the German Language and Literature in the University of the City of New-York.

One vol. large 8vo.

VIII.

AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE ABOVE. One vol. 12mo.

IX.

A NEW SPANISH READER,

ARRANGED IN PROGRESSIVE ORDER, WITH ESPECIAL REFERENCE TO THOSE WHO WISH TO OBTAIN A PRACTICAL KNOWLEDGE OF THE LANGUAGE BY THE OLLENDORFF METHOD, WITH NOTES, LEXICON, ETC.

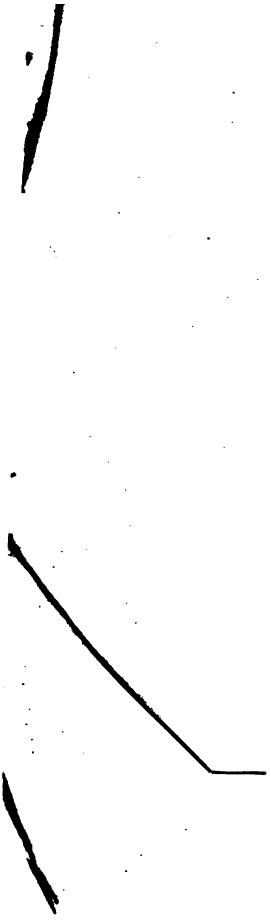
BY MARIANO VELAZQUEZ DE LA CADENA,

Editor of Ollendorff's Spanish Grammar.

X.

DE FIVAS' ADVANCED FRENCH READER,

WITH A FULL AND COMPLETE LEXICON OF ALL THE WORDS, TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

BY J. L. JEWETT,

Editor of Ollendorff's Method of Learning French.